Eur. Phys. J. Spec. Top. (2025) 234:5713–6197
https://doi.org/10.1140/epjs/s11734-025-01967-4

THE EUROPEAN PHYSICAL JOURNAL SPECIAL TOPICS

Review

Future Circular Collider Feasibility Study Report

Volume 2 Accelerators, technical infrastructure and safety

M. Benedikt[1], F. Zimmermann[1], B. Auchmann[1,2], W. Bartmann[1], J.P. Burnet[1], C. Carli[1], A. Chancé[3], P. Craievich[2], M. Giovannozzi[1], C. Grojean[4,5], J. Gutleber[1], K. Hanke[1], A. Henriques[1], P. Janot[1], C. Lourenço[1], M. Mangano[1], T. Otto[1], J. Poole[1], S. Rajagopalan[6], T. Raubenheimer[7], E. Todesco[1], L. Ulrici[1], T. Watson[1], G. Wilkinson[1,8], A. Abada[9,10,11], M. Abbrescia[12,13], H. Abdolmaleki[14,15], S.H. Abidi[6], A. Abramov[1], C. Adam[9,16,17], M. Ady[1], P.R. Adžić[18], I. Agapov[4], D. Aguglia[1], I. Ahmed[19], M. Aiba[2], G. Aielli[20,21], T. Akan[22], N. Akchurin[23], D. Akturk[24], M. Al-Thakeel[1,25,26], G.L. Alberghi[25], J. Alcaraz Maestre[27], M. Aleksa[1], R. Aleksan[3], F. Alharthi[9,10,28], J. Alimena[4], A. Alimenti[29], S. Alioli[30,31], L. Alix[1,9,16], B.C. Allanach[32], L. Allwicher[4], A.A. Altintas[33], M. Altınlı[33,34], M. Alviggi[35,36], G. Ambrosio[37], Y. Amhis[9,10,11], A. Amiri[38,39], G. Ammirabile[40], T. Andeen[41], K.D.J. André[1], J. Andrea[9,42,43], A. Andreazza[44,45], M. Andreini[1], T. Andriollo[46], L. Angel[47], M. Angelucci[48], S. Antusch[49], M.N. Anwar[12,50], L. Apolinário[51], G. Apollinari[37], R.B. Appleby[52,53], A. Apresyan[37], Aram Apyan[54], Armen Apyan[55], A. Arbey[9,56,57], B. Argiento[35,36], V. Ari[58], S. Arias[59], B. Arias Alonso[1], O. Arnaez[9,16,17], R. Arnaldi[60], F. Arneodo[61], H. Arnold[62], P. Arrutia Sota[1], M.E. Ascioti[63,64], K.A. Assamagan[6], S. Aumiller[65], G. Aydın[66], K. Azizi[38,67], P. Azzi[68], N. Bacchetta[68], A. Bacci[44], B. Bai[69], Y. Bai[70], L. Balconi[44,45], G. Baldinelli[63,64], B. Balhan[1], A.H. Ball[1,71], A. Ballarino[1], S. Banerjee[72], S. Banik[2,73], D.P. Barber[4,74], M.B. Barbero[9,75,76], D. Barducci[40,77], D. Barna[78], G.G. Barnaföldi[78], M.J. Barnes[1], A.J. Barr[8], R. Bartek[79], H. Bartosik[1], S.A. Bass[80], U. Bassler[9,81,82], M.J. Basso[83,84], A. Bastianin[45,85], P. Bataillard[86], M. Battistin[1], J. Bauche[1], L. Baudin[1], J. Baudot[9,42,43], B. Baudouy[3], L. Bauerdick[37], C. Bayındır[87,88], H.P. Beck[89], F. Bedeschi[40], C. Bee[62], M. Begel[6], M. Behtouei[48], L. Bellagamba[25], N. Bellegarde[1], E. Belli[1,90], E. Bellingeri[91], S. Belomestnykh[37], A.D. Benaglia[30], G. Bencivenni[48], J. Bendavid[1], M. Benmergui[92], M. Benoit[93], D. Benvenuti[1,40], T. Bergauer[94], N. Bernachot[95], G. Bernardi[9,96,97], J. Bernardi[98], Q. Berthet[99,100,101], S. Bertoni[102], C. Bertulani[103], M.I. Besana[2], A. Besson[9,42,43], M. Bettelini[104], S. Bettoni[2], S. Beuvier[105], P.C. Bhat[37], S. Bhattacharya[106], J. Bhom[107], M.E. Biagini[48], A. Bibet-Chevalier[108], M. Bicrel[109], M. Biglietti[110], G.M. Bilei[63], B. Bilki[111,112], K. Bisgaard Christensen[1], T. Biswas[113], F. Blanc[114], F. Blekman[4,115,116], A. Blondel[9,101,117], J. Blümlein[4], D. Boccanfuso[35,118], A. Bogomyagkov[119], P. Boillon[108], P. Boivin[100], M.J. Boland[120], S. Bologna[121], O. Bolukbasi[33], R. Bonnet[102], J. Borburgh[1], F. Bordry[1], P. Borges de Sousa[1], G. Borghello[1], L. Borriello[35], D. Bortoletto[8], M. Boscolo[48], L. Bottura[1], G. Boudoul[9,56,57], V. Boudry[9,81,82], R. Boughezal[122], D. Bourilkov[123], M. Boyd[83,124], D. Boye[6], G. Bozzi[125,126], V. Braccini[91], C. Bracco[1], B. Bradu[1], A. Braghieri[127], S. Braibant[25,26], J. Bramante[128], G.C. Branco[129], R. Brenner[130], N. Brisa[102], D. Britzger[131], G. Broggi[1,90], L. Bromiley[1], E. Brost[6], Q. Bruant[3], R. Bruce[1], E. Bründermann[132], L. Brunetti[9,16,17], O. Brüning[1], O. Brunner[1], X. Buffat[1], E. Bulyak[133], A. Burdyko[44,134], H. Burkhardt[1,135], P.N. Burrows[136], S. Busatto[44,90], S. Buschaert[86], D. Buttazzo[40], A. Butterworth[1], D. Butti[1], G. Cacciapaglia[137,138,139], Y. Cai[7], B. Caiffi[140], V. Cairo[1], O. Cakir[58], P. Calafiura[141], R. Calaga[1], S. Calatroni[1], D.G. Caldwell[142], A. Çalışkan[143], C. Calpini[144], M. Calviani[1], E. Camacho-Pérez[145], P. Camarri[20,21], L. Caminada[2,73], M. Campajola[35,36], A.C. Canbay[58], K. Canderan[1], S. Candido[1], F. Canelli[73], A. Canepa[37], S. Cantarella[48], K.B. Cantún-Avila[145], L. Capriotti[146,147], A. Caram[148], A. Carbone[44], J.M. Carceller[1], G. Carini[6], F. Carlier[1], C.M. Carloni Calame[127], F. Carra[1], C. Cartannaz[86], S. Casenove[1], G. Catalano[149], V. Cavaliere[6], C. Cazzaniga[150], C. Cecchi[63,64], F.G. Celiberto[151], M. Cepeda[27], F. Cerutti[1], F. Cetorelli[30,31], G. Chachamis[51],

S. Beuvier and M. Klein are deceased.

M. Benedikt is Study Leader.

F. Zimmermann is Deputy Study Leader.

B. Auchmann, W. Bartmann, J.P. Burnet, C. Carli, A. Chancé, P. Craievich, M. Giovannozzi, C. Grojean, J. Gutleber, K. Hanke, A. Henriques, P. Janot, C. Lourenço, M. Mangano, T. Otto, J. Poole, S. Rajagopalan, T. Raubenheimer, E. Todesco, L. Ulrici, T. Watson and G. Wilkinson are Editors

✉M. Benedikt

Y. Chae[4], F. Chagnet[152], I. Chaikovska[9,10,11], M. Chalhoub[86], M. Chamizo-Llatas[6], M. Champagne[153], H. Chanal[9,154,155], G. Chapelier[108], P. Charitos[1], C. Charles[105], T.K. Charles[156], C. Charlot[9,81,82], S. Chatterjee[4], A. Chaudhuri[157], R. Chehab[9,10,11], S.V. Chekanov[158], H. Chen[6], T. Chesne[105], F. Chiapponi[25,26], G. Chiarello[159,160], M. Chiesa[127], P. Chiggiato[1], P. Chomaz[3], M. Chorowski[161], J.P. Chou[162], M. Chrzaszcz[107], W. Chung[163], S. Ciarlantini[68,164], A. Ciarma[48], D. Cieri[131], A.K. Ciftci[165], R. Ciftci[166], R. Cimino[48], F. Cirotto[35,36], M. Ciuchini[110], M. Cobal[167,168], A. Coccaro[140], R. Coelho Lopes De Sa[169], J.A. Coleman-Smith[1], F. Collamati[170], C. Colldelram[171], P. Collier[1], P. Collins[1], J. Collot[9,172,173], M. Colmenero[1], L. Colnot[149], G. Coloretti[73], D. Contardo[9,56,57], E. Conte[9,42,43], F.A. Conventi[35,174], A. Cook[1], L. Cooley[175,176], A.S. Cornell[177], C. Cornella[1], G. Cornette[105], I. Corredoira[178], P. Costa Pinto[1], F. Couderc[3], J. Coupard[1], S. Coussy[86], G. Crawford[179], R. Crescenzi[180], I. Crespo Garrido[1,181], T. Critchley[1,101], A. Crivellin[73], T. Croci[63], C. Cudré[105], G. Cummings[37], F. Cuna[12], R. Cunningham[1], B. Curé[1], E. Curtis[182], M. D'Alfonso[183], L. D'Aloia Schwartzentruber[184], G. D'Amen[6], B. D'Anzi[12,13], A. D'Avanzo[35,36], D. d'Enterria[1], A. D'Onofrio[35], M. D'Onofrio[185], M. Da Col[149], M. Da Rocha Rolo[60], C. Dachauer[186], B. Dağli[24], A. Dainese[68], B. Dalena[3], W. Dallapiazza[187], M. Dam[188], H. Damerau[1], V. Dao[62], A. Das[189], M.S. Daugaard[1], S. Dauphin[108], A. David[1], T. Davídek[190], G.J. Davies[182], J. Davighi[1], S. Dawson[6], J. de Blas[191], A. de Cosa[150], S. De Curtis[192], N. De Filippis[12,50], E. De Lucia[48], R. De Maria[1], E. De Matteis[44], A. De Roeck[1], A. De Santis[48], A. De Vita[1,68,164], A. Deandrea[9,56,57], C.J. Debono[193], M. Deeb[100], M.M. Defranchis[1], J. Degens[185], S. Deghaye[1], V. Del Duca[48], C.L. Del Pio[6], A. Del Vecchio[90], D. Delikaris[1], A. Dell'Acqua[1], M. Della Pietra[35,36], M. Delmastro[9,16,17], L. Delprat[1], E. Delugas[149], Z. Demiragli[194], L. Deniau[1], D. Denisov[6], H. Denizli[195], A. Denner[196], A. Denot[108], G. Deptuch[6], A. Desai[197], H. Deveci[1], A. Di Canto[6], A. Di Ciaccio[20,21], L. Di Ciaccio[9,16,17], D. Di Croce[1,114], C. Di Fraia[35,36], B. Di Micco[29,110], R. Di Nardo[29,110], T.B. Dingley[8], F. Djama[9,75,76], F. Djurabekova[198], D. Dockery[37], S. Doebert[1], D. Domange[1,199], M. Donegà[150], U. Dosselli[68], H.A. Dostmann[1,200], J.A. Dragovich[37], I. Drebot[44], M. Drewes[201], T.A. du Pree[202], Z. Duan[203], C. Duarte-Galvan[204], O. Duboc[205], I. Dubovyk[206], M. Duda[2], P. Duda[161], H. Duran Yildiz[58], H. Durand[105], P. Durand[105], G. Durieux[201], Y. Dutheil[1], I. Dutta[37], J.S. Dutta[207], S. Dutta[208], F. Duval[1], F. Eder[1], M. Eisterer[98], Z. El Bitar[9,42,43], A. El Saied[209], M. Elisei[44], J. Ellis[1,210], W. Elmetenawee[12], J. Elmsheuser[6], V. Daniel Elvira[37], S.C. Eno[211], Y. Enomoto[212], B.A. Erdelyi[68,164], O.E. Eruteya[101,213], M. Escobar[214], O. Etisken[215], I. Eymard[144], J. Eysermans[183], D. Falchieri[25], C. Falkenberg[205], F. Fallavollita[1,131], A. Afalou[1,9,10], J. Faltova[190], J. Fanini[1], L. Fanò[63,64], K. Fanti[105], R. Farinelli[25], M. Farino[163], S. Farinon[140], H. Fatehi[38], J. Fatterbert[105], A. Faure[216], A. Faus-Golfe[9,10,11], G. Favia[1], L. Favilla[35,118], W.J. Fawcett[32], A. Federowicz[37], L. Feligioni[9,75,76], L. Felsberger[1], Y. Feng[23], A. Fernández Téllez[217], R. Ferrari[127], L. Ferreira[1], F. Ferro[140], M. Fiascaris[1], C. Fiorio[45], S.A. Fleury[1], L. Florez[187], M. Florio[45,149], A. Fondacci[63], B. Fontimpe[214], K. Foraz[1], R. Fortunati[2], M. Fouaidy[9,10,11], A. Foussat[1], A. Fowler[1], J.D. Fox[218], M. Francesconi[35], B. Francois[1], R. Franqueira Ximenes[1], F. Fransesini[48], A. Frasca[1,185], A. Freitas[219], J.A. Frost[8], K. Furukawa[212], A. Gabrielli[25,26], A. Gaddi[1], F. Gaede[4], A. Gallén[130], R. Galler[220,221], E. Gallice[105], E. Gallo[4,115], H. Gamper[1], G. Ganis[1], S. Ganjour[3], S. Gao[6], A. Garand[148], C. Garaus[205], D. Garcia[1], R. García Alía[1], R. García Gil[222], C.M. Garcia Jaimes[1,114], H. Garcia Rodrigues[2,223], C. Garion[1], M. Garlaschè[1], D. Garnier[152], M.V. Garzelli[115], S. Gascon-Shotkin[9,56,57], M. Gasior[1], G. Gaudino[35,118], G. Gaudio[127], V. Gaur[224], K. Gautam[73,116], V. Gawas[1], T. Gehrmann[73], A. Gehrmann-De Ridder[73,150], K. Geiger[1], M. Genco[149], F. Gerigk[1], H. Gerwig[1], A. Ghribi[1,9,225], P. Giacomelli[25], S. Giagu[90,170], E. Gianfelice[37], S. Giappichini[132], D. Gibellieri[1,226], F. Giffoni[149], G. Gil da Silveira[227], S.S. Gilardoni[1], M. Giovannetti[48], T. Girardet[105], S. Girod[1,105], P. Giubellino[60], P. Giubilato[68,164], F. Giuli[20,21], M. Giuliani[102], E.L. Gkougkousis[1,73], S. Glukhov[228], J. Gluza[206], B. Goddard[1], C. Goffing[1,132], D. Goldsworthy[1], T. Golling[101], R. Gonçalo[51,229], V.P. Gonçalves[47,230], T. Gonçalves Da Silva[214], J. Gonski[7], R. Gonzalez Suarez[130], S. Gorgi Zadeh[1], S. Gori[231], E. Gorini[159,232], L. Gouskos[233], M. Gouzevitch[9,56,57], E. Granados[1], F. Grancagnolo[159], S. Grancagnolo[159,232], A. Grassellino[37], A. Grau[132], E. Graverini[40,77,114], F.G. Gravili[159,232], H.M. Gray[141,234], M. Grazzini[73], Mario Greco[29,110], Michela Greco[60,235], A. Greljo[49], J.-L. Grenard[1], A.V. Gritsan[236], R. Gröber[68,164], A. Grudiev[1], E. Gschwendtner[1], J. Gu[237], D. Guadagnoli[17,137,238], G. Guerrieri[1], A. Guiavarch[209], G. Guillermo Canton[1,239], M. Guinchard[1], Y.O. Günaydin[240], K. Gurcel[92], L.X. Gutierrez Guerrero[241,242], D. Gutiérrez Rueda[1], A. Gutiérrez-Rodríguez[243], V. Guzey[198,244], C. Haber[141], T. Hacheney[245], B. Hacışahinoğlu[33], K. Hahn[122], J. Hajer[129], T. Hakulinen[1], J.C. Hammersley[246], M. Hance[231], J.B. Hansen[188], B. Härer[132], E. Hauzinger[220], M. Haviernik[190], B. Hegner[1], C. Helsens[114], Ana Henriques[1], C. Hernalsteens[1], H. Hernández-Arellano[217], R.J. Hernández-Pinto[204], M.A. Hernández-Ruíz[243], J. Hernández-Sánchez[217], J.W. Heron[1], L.M. Herrmann[1], R. Hirosky[247], J.F. Hirschauer[37], J.D. Hobbs[62], K. Hock[6], S. Höche[37], M. Hofer[1], G. Hoffstaetter[6,248], W. Höfle[1], M. Hohlmann[249], F. Holdener[250], B. Holzer[1], C.G. Honorato[217], H. Hoorani[251], A. Houver[105], E. Howling[1,8,136], X. Huang[7], F. Hug[252], B. Humann[1], P. Hunchak[120], Y. Husein[1], A. Hussain[1,253], G. Iadarola[1], G. Iakovidis[6], G. Iaselli[12,50], P. Iengo[35], A. Ilg[73], M. Iodice[110], A.O.M. Iorio[35,36], V. Ippolito[170], U. Iriso[171], J. Isaacson[37], G. Isidori[73], R. Islam[254], A. Istepanyan[105], S. Izquierdo Bermudez[1], V. Izzo[35], P.D. Jackson[197], R. Jafari[1,38], S.S. Jagabathuni[1,101], S. Jana[255,256], C. Järmyr Eriksson[1], P. Jausserand[152], M. Jensen[257], J.M. Jimenez[1], F.R. Joaquim[129], O.R. Jones[1], J. Joos[108], E. Jourd'huy[9,258], E. Jourdan[214], J.M. Jowett[1,259], A. Jueid[260], A.W. Jung[207], M. Kagan[7], I. Kahraman[58], V. Kain[1], J. Kalinowski[261], J.F. Kamenik[262,263], A. Kanso[264], T. Kar[265], S.O. Kara[266], H. Karadeniz[267], B. Karmakar[206], S.R. Karmarkar[207], V. Karpati[268], I. Karpov[1], M. Karppinen[1], P. Karst[9,75,76], S. Kartal[33], V.V. Kashikhin[37], U. Kaya[58], A. Kehagias[1,269], J. Keintzel[1], M. Kennouche[1], M. Kenzie[32], M. Kerréveur-Lavaud[46], R. Kersevan[1,270], V. Keus[198,271], H. Khanpour[14,272,273], V.V. Khoze[274], V.A. Khoze[274], P. Kicsiny[1], R. Kieffer[1], C. Kiel[114], J. Kieseler[132], A. Kilic[275], B. Kilminster[73], S. Kim[276], Z. Kırca[275], M. Klein[185], A. Klimentov[6], M. Klute[132], V. Klyukhin[119,277], M. Knecht[137,278,279], B. Kniehl[115], P. Ko[280], S. Ko[1], F. Kocak[275], T. Koffas[281], C. Kokkinos[282,283], K. Kołodziej[206], K. Kong[284], P. Kontaxakis[101], I.A. Koop[119], P. Kopciewicz[1], P. Koppenburg[202], M. Koratzinos[1,2], K. Kordas[285], A. Korsun[9,10,11], O. Kortner[131], S. Kortner[131], B. Korzh[101], T. Koseki[212], J. Kosse[2], P. Kostka[1,185], S. Kostoglou[1], A.V. Kotwal[80], G. Kozlov[1,277], I. Kozsar[1], T. Kramer[1], P. Krkotić[1], H. Kroha[131], K. Kröninger[245], S. Kuday[1,58], G. Kuhlmann[286], O. Kuhlmann[1,287], M. Kuhn[288], A. Kulesza[289], M. Kumar[290], F. Kurian[6], A. Kurtulus[1,150], T.H. Kwok[73], S. La Mendola[1], M. Lackner[98,291], T. Ładziński[1], D. Lafarge[1], P. Laïdouni[1], G. Lamanna[9,16,17], N. Lamas[19], G. Landsberg[233], C. Lange[2], D.J. Lange[163], A. Langner[1], A.J. Lankford[292], L. Lari[6], M.S. Larson[293], K. Lasocha[1], A. Latina[1], S. Lauciani[48], M. Laufenberg[105], G. Lavezzari[1], L. Lavezzi[60], L. Lavezzo[1], M. Le Garrec[1,9,16], A. Le Jeune[102], P. Lebrun[1,294], Y. Léchevin[1], A. Lechner[1], E. Lecointe[105], J.S.H. Lee[295], S.W. Lee[296], S.J. Lee[280,297], T. Lefevre[1], C. Leggett[141], T. Lehtinen[298], S. Leone[40], C. Leonidopoulos[299], S. Leontsinis[73], G. Leprince-Maillère[300], G. Lerner[1], O. Leroy[9,75,76], T. Lesiak[107], P. Levai[78], A. Leveratto[91], R. Levi[152], A. Li[6], S. Li[301,302], D. Liberati[303], G.L. Lichtenstein[47], M. Liepe[248], Z. Ligeti[141], H. Lin[304], S. Linda[144], E. Lipeles[305], Z. Liu[306], S.M. Liuzzo[307], T. Loeliger[288], A. Loeschcke Centeno[308], A. Lorenzetti[73], C. Lorin[3], R. Losito[1], M. Louka[12,309], M.L. Loureiro García[181], I. Low[122,158], K. Lubonis[152], M.T. Lucchini[30,31], V. Lukashenko[73], G. Luminati[48], A.J.G. Lunt[1,310], A. Lusiani[40,311], M. Luzum[312], H. Ma[6], A. Maas[313], E. Macchia[1,90,170], A. Macchiolo[73], G.E. Machinet[264], R. Madar[9,154,155], T. Madlener[4], C. Madrid[23], A. Magalotti[29], M. Maggiora[60,235], A.-M. Magnan[182], M.A. Mahmoud[314], Y. Mahmoud[315,316], F. Mahmoudi[1,9,56], H. Mainaud Durand[1], J. Maitre[108], Y. Makhloufi[101], B. Malaescu[9,117,317], A. Malagoli[91], C.H. Malan[108], M. Malekhosseini[38], A. Maloizel[1,96,97], S. Malvezzi[30], A. Malzac[148], G. Manco[127], L.S. Mandacarú Guerra[163], P. Manfrinetti[91,318], E. Manoni[63], J. Mans[306], L. Mantani[319], S. Manzoni[1], L. Marafatto[167], C. Marcel[1], T. Marcel[109], R. Marchevski[114], G. Marchiori[9,96,97], F. Mariani[44,90], V. Mariani[63,64], S. Marin[1], C. Marinas[319], V. Marinozzi[37], S. Mariotto[44,45], C. Marquis[105], J. Martelain[320], G. Martelli[63,64], A. Martens[9,10,11], I. Martin-Melero[1], V.I. Martinez Outschoorn[169], F. Martinez[217], C.M. Jardim[27], L. Marzola[321,322], S. Masciocchi[259,265], A. Mashal[14], A. Masi[1], I. Masina[146,147], P. Mastrapasqua[201], V. Mateu[323], S. Mattiazzo[68,164], M. Maugis[102], V. Maura[210], D. Mauree[144], G.H.I. Maury-Cuna[324], A. Mayoux[1], E. Mazzeo[1], S. Mazzoni[1], M. McCullough[1], M. Meena[9,42,43], E. Meftah[101], Andrew Mehta[185], Ankita Mehta[1], B. Mele[170], R. Mena-Andrade[1], M. Mentink[1], D. Mergelkuhl[1], V. Mertinger[268], L. Mether[1], S. Meylan[105], T. Michel[102], T. Michlmayr[2], M. Migliorati[90,170], A. Milanese[1], C. Milardi[48], G. Milhano[51], M. Minty[6], C. Mirabelli[325], T. Miralles[9,154,155], L. Miralles Verge[1], D. Mirarchi[1], K. Mirbaghestan[73], N. Mirian[4,326], V.A. Mitsou[319], D.S. Mitzel[245], M. Mlynarikova[1], S. Möbius[89], M. Mohammadi Najafabadi[1,14], G.B. Mohanty[327], R.N. Mohapatra[211], S. Moneta[63], P.F. Monni[1], E. Monnier[9,75,76], S. Monteil[9,154,155], I. León Monzón[204], F. Moortgat[1,328], N. Morange[9,10,11], M. Moretti[146,147], S. Moretti[71], T. Mori[1,212], I. Morozov[119], A. Morozzi[63], M. Morrone[1], A. Moscariello[101], F. Moscatelli[63,329], I. Moulin[216], N. Mounet[1], A. Mueller[330], A.-S. Müller[132], B.O. Müller[286], J. Mundet[222], E. Musa[1,4], V. Musat[1,8], R. Musenich[140], E. Musumeci[319], M. Mylona[1], V.V. Mytrochenko[9,10,133], B. Nachman[141], S. Nagaitsev[6], T. Nakamoto[212], M. Napsuciale[324], M. Nardecchia[90,170], G. Nardini[331], G. Narváez-Arango[332], S. Naseem[61], A. Natochii[6], A. Navascues Cornago[1], B. Naydenov[1], G. Nergiz[1], A.V. Nesterenko[277], C. Neubüser[333], H.B. Newman[334], F. Niccoli[1,335], O. Nicrosini[127], U. Niedermayer[228], G. Niehues[132], J. Nielsen[1], G. Nigrelli[1,90,170], S. Nikitin[119], I.B. Nikolaev[119], A. Nisati[170], N. Nitika[167,168], J.M. No[336], M. Nonis[1], Y. Nosochkov[7], A. Novokhatski[1,7], J.M. O'Callaghan[337], S.A. Ochoa-Oregon[204], K. Ohmi[203,212], K. Oide[1,101,212], V.A. Okorokov[119], C. Oleari[30,31], D. Oliveira Damazio[1,6], Y. Onel[112], A. Onofre[338,339,340], P. Osland[341], Y.M. Oviedo-Torres[342,343,344], A. Ozansoy[58], F. Ozaydin[87,345], K. Ozdemir[346], A. Ozturk[1], M.A. Pérez de León[204], S. Pacetti[63,64], H. Pacey[8], J. Paciello[108], C.E. Pagliarone[347,348], A. Paillex[105], H.F. Pais da Silva[1], F. Palla[40], A. Pampaloni[140], C. Pancotti[149], M. Pandurović[349], O. Panella[63], G. Panizzo[167,168], C. Pantouvakis[68,164], L. Panwar[9,117,317], P. Paolucci[35], Y. Papa[105], A. Papaefstathiou[350], Y. Papaphilippou[1], A. Paramonov[158], A. Pareti[127,351], B. Parker[6], V. Parma[1], F. Parodi[140,318], M. Parodi[1], B. Paroli[44,45], J.A. Parsons[352], D. Passarelli[37], D. Passeri[63,64], B. Pattnaik[319], A. Patwa[353], C. Paus[183], F. Pauss[150], F. Peauger[1], I. Pedraza[217], R. Pedro[51], J. Pekkanen[1], G. Peon[1], A. Perez[109], E. Perez[1], F. Pérez[171], J.C. Perez[1], J.M. Pérez[27], R. Perez-Ramos[137,138,354], G. Pérez Segurana[1], A. Perillo Marcone[1], S. Perna[35,36], K. Peters[4], S. Petracca[35,355], A.R. Petri[44], F. Petriello[122], A. Petrovic[1], L. Pezzotti[25], G. Piacquadio[62], G. Piazza[180], A. Piccini[1], F. Piccinini[127], A. Pich[319], T. Pieloni[114], J. Pierlot[1], A.D. Pilkington[52], M. Pillet[325], M. Pinamonti[167,168], N. Pinto[236], L. Pintucci[167,168], F. Pinzauti[1], K. Piotrzkowski[272], C. Pira[48], M. Pitt[1], R. Pittau[191], S. Pittet[1], P. Placidi[63,64], W. Płaczek[356], S. Plätzer[313,357], M.-A. Pleier[6], E. Ploerer[73,116],

H. Podlech[358,359], F. Poirier[9,16,17], G. Polesello[127], M. Poli Lener[48], J. Polinski[161], Z. Polonsky[73], N. Pompeo[29], M. Pont[171], G. Alexandru-Popeneciu[360], W. Porod[196], L. Porta[1], L. Portales[3], T. Portaluri[308], M.A.C. Potenza[45], C. Prasse[286], E. Premat[184], M. Presilla[132], S. Prestemon[141], A. Price[356], M. Primavera[159], R. Principe[1], M. Prioli[44], F.M. Procacci[12], E. Proserpio[44,134], A. Provino[91,318], C. Pueyo[1], T. Puig[19], N. Pukhaeva[277], S. Pulawski[206], G. Punzi[40,77], A. Pyarelal[361], J. Qian[304], H. Quack[362], F.S. Queiroz[47], G. Quintas-Neves[300], H. Rafique[71], J.-Y. Raguin[2], J. Raidal[321], M. Raidal[321], P. Raimondi[37], A. Rajabi[4], S. Ramírez-Uribe[204], S. Randles[185], T. Rao[6], C.Ø. Rasmussen[6], A. Ratkus[363], P.N. Ratoff[53,364], P. Razis[365,366], P. Rebello Teles[1,367], M.N. Rebelo[129], M. Reboud[9,10,11], S. Redaelli[1], C. Regazzoni[105], L. Reichenbach[1,368], M. Reissig[132], E. Renou[105], A. Rentería-Olivo[319], J. Reuter[4], S. Rey[105], A. Ribon[1], D. Ricci[1], W. Riegler[1], M. Rignanese[68,164], S. Rimjaem[369], R.A. Rimmer[370], R. Rinaldesi[1], L. Rinolfi[1,294], O. Rios[1], G. Ripellino[130], B. Rivas[371], A. Rivetti[60], T. Robens[372], F. Robert[184], E. Robutti[140], C. Roderick[1], G. Rodrigo[319], M. Rodríguez-Cahuantzi[217], L. Röhrig[154,155,245], M. Roig[373], F. Rojat[108], J. Rojo[202,374], J. Roloff[233], P. Roloff[1], A. Romanenko[37], A. Romero Francia[1], H. Romeyer[375], N. Rompotis[185], N. Rongieras[102], G. Rosaz[1], K. Roslon[376], M. Rossetti Conti[44], A. Rossi[63,64], E. Rossi[35,36], L. Rossi[44,45], A.N. Rossia[68,164], S. Rostami[38], G. Roy[1], B. Rubik[37], I. Ruehl[1], A. Ruiz-Jimeno[377], R. Ruprecht[132], J.P. Rutherfoord[361], L. Rygaard[4], M.S. Ryu[296], L. Sabato[1,114], G. Sadowski[9,42,43], D. Saez de Jauregui[132,378], M. Sahin[379], A. Sailer[1], M. Saito[380], P. Saiz[1], G.P. Salam[381,382], R. Salerno[9,81,82], T. Salmi[298], B. Salvachua[1], J.P.T. Salvesen[1,8,136], B. Salvi[300], D. Sampsonidis[285], Y. Villamizar[137,138,139], C. Sandoval[332], S. Sanfilippo[2], E. Santopinto[140], R. Santoro[44,134], X. Sarasola[114], L. Sarperi[288], I.H. Sarpün[383], S. Sasikumar[1], M. Sauvain[384], A. Savoy-Navarro[3,9], R. Sawada[380], G. Sborlini[385], J. Scamardella[35,36], M. Schaer[2], M. Schaumann[1,4], M. Schenk[1], C. Scheuerlein[1], C. Schiavi[140,318], A. Schloegelhofer[1], D. Schoerling[1], A. Schöning[265], S. Schramm[101], D. Schulte[1], P. Schwaller[252,386], A. Schwartzman[7], P. Schwemling[3], R. Schwienhorst[387], A. Sciandra[6], L. Scibile[1], I. Scimemi[388], E. Scomparin[60], C. Sebastiani[1], B. Seeber[389], J.T. Seeman[7], F. Sefkow[4], M. Seidel[2,114], S. Seidel[74], J. Seixas[340,390,391], N. Selimović[68], M. Selvaggi[1], C. Senatore[101], A. Senol[195], N. Serra[73], A. Seryi[370], A. Sfyrla[101], Pramod Sharma[392], Punit Sharma[6], C.J. Sharp[1], L. Shchutska[114], V. Shiltsev[393], M. Siano[44,45], R. Sierra[1], E. Silva[29], R.C. Silva[47,344], L. Silvestrini[170], F. Simon[132], G. Simonetti[1], R. Simoniello[1], B.K. Singh[394], S. Singh[6], B. Singhal[79], A. Siodmok[1,356], Y. Sirois[9,81,82], E. Sirtori[149], B. Sitar[395], D. Sittard[1], E. Sitti[150], T. Sjöstrand[59], P. Skands[396], L. Skinnari[293], K. Skoufaris[1], K. Skovpen[328], M. Skrzypek[107], P. Slavich[137,138,139], V. Slokenbergs[23], V. Smaluk[6], J. Smiesko[1,397], S.S. Snyder[6], E. Solano[171], P. Sollander[1], O.V. Solovyanov[1,9,154], M. Son[398], F. Sonnemann[1], R. Soos[1,9,10], F. Sopkova[190], T. Sorais[399], M. Sorbi[44,45], S. Sorti[44,45], R. Soualah[400], M. Souayah[1], L. Spallino[48], S. Spanier[401], P. Spiller[259], M. Spira[2], D. Stagnara[102], M. Stallmann[187], D. Standen[1], J.L. Stanyard[1], B. Stapf[1], G.H. Stark[231], M. Statera[44], C. Staudinger[1,205], B.A. Stefanek[402], G. Streicher[403], N.P. Strohmaier[2], R. Stroynowski[106], S. Stucci[6], G. Stupakov[7], S. Su[361], A. Sublet[1], K. Sugita[259], M.K. Sullivan[7], S. Sultansoy[24], D. Sutherland[179], I. Syratchev[1], R. Szafron[6], A. Sznajder[404], W. Tachon[405], N.D. Tagdulang[37,171,337], N.A. Tahir[259], Y. Takahashi[123], J. Tamazirt[9,10,11], S. Tang[6], Y. Tanimoto[212], I. Tapan[275], G.F. Tassielli[12,406], A.M. Teixeira[9,154,155], V.I. Telnov[119], H.H.J. Ten Kate[1,407], V. Teotia[6], J. ter Hoeve[299], A. Thabuis[1], G.T. Telles[19], A. Tishelman-Charny[6], S. Tissandier[108], S. Tizchang[14,408], J.-P. Tock[1], B. Todd[1], L. Toffolin[1,167,409], A. Tolosa-Delgado[1], R. Tomás García[1], T. Tomasini[410], G. Tonelli[40,77], T. Tong[411], F. Toral[27], T. Torims[1,363], L. Torino[171], K. Torokhtii[29], R. Torre[140], E. Torrence[412], R. Torres[53,185], T. Mitsuhashi[212], A. Tracogna[149], O. Traver[171], D. Treille[1], A. Tricoli[6], P. Trubacova[1], E. Tsesmelis[1], G. Tsipolitis[269], V. Tsulaia[141], B. Tuchming[3], C.G. Tully[163], I. Turk Cakir[58], C. Turrioni[63], J. Tynan[105], F.P. Ucci[127,351], S. Udongwo[413], C.S. Ün[275], A. Unnervik[1], A. Upegui[99,100], J.P. Uribe-Ramírez[204], J. Uythoven[1], R. Vaglio[36,91], F. Valchkova-Georgieva[414], P. Valente[170], R.U. Valente[170], A.-M. Valente-Feliciano[370], G. Valentino[1,193], C.A. Valerio-Lizarraga[204,324], S. Valette[1], J.W.F. Valle[319], L. Valle[1], N. Valle[127], N. Vallis[1,2,114], G. Vallone[141], P. van Gemmeren[158], W. Van Goethem[1], P. van Hees[59], U. van Rienen[413], L. van Riesen-Haupt[1,114], P. Van Trappen[1], M. Vande Voorde[415,416], A.L. Vanel[1], E.W. Varnes[361], J.-L. Vay[141], F. Veit[286], I. Veliscek[6], R. Veness[1], A. Ventura[159,232], S. Verdú-Andrés[6], M. Verducci[40,77], C.B. Verhaaren[417], C. Vernieri[7], A.P. Verweij[1], J.-F. Vian[418], A. Vicini[44,45], N. Vignaroli[159,232], S. Vignetti[149], M.C. Villeneuve[220], I. Vivarelli[25,26], E. Voevodina[1,131], D.M. Vogt[419], B. Voirin[420], S. Voiriot[105], J. Voiron[144], P. Vojtyla[1], V. Völkl[1], L. von Freeden[1], Z. Vostrel[1,421], N. Voumard[1], E. Vryonidou[52], V. Vysotsky[119], R. Wallny[150], L.-T. Wang[422], Y. Wang[9,10,11], R. Wanzenberg[4], B.F.L. Ward[423], N. Wardle[182], Z. Wąs[107], L. Watrelot[1], A.T. Watson[424], M.F. Watson[424], M.S. Weber[89], C.P. Welsch[53,185], M. Wendt[1,6], J. Wenninger[1], B. Weyer[1], G. White[425], S. White[307], B. Wicki[1], M. Widorski[1], U.A. Wiedemann[1], A.R. Wiederhold[52], A. Wiedl[132], H.-U. Wienands[158], A. Wieser[150], C. Wiesner[1], H. Wilkens[1], D. Willi[426], P.H. Williams[53,427], S.L. Williams[32], A. Winter[424], R.B. Wittwer[73], D. Wollmann[1], Y. Wu[114], Z. Wu[9,16,17], J. Xiao[9,56,57], K. Xie[387], S. Xie[37,334], M. Yalvac[22], F. Yaman[427,428], W.-M. Yao[141], M. Yeresko[9,154,155], A. Yilmaz[195], H.D. Yoo[276], T. You[210], F. Yu[252,386], S.S. Yu[79], T.-T. Yu[412], S. Yue[1], A. Zaborowska[1], M. Zahnd[105], C. Zamantzas[1], G. Zanderighi[65,131], C. Zannini[1], R. Zanzottera[44,45], P. Zaro[102], R. Zennaro[2], M. Zerlauth[1], H. Zhang[203], J. Zhang[158], Y. Zhang[203], Z. Zhang[9,10,203], Y. Zhao[1], Y.-M. Zhong[429], B. Zhou[304], D. Zhou[212], J. Zhu[304], G. Zick[373], M.A. Zielinski[1], E. Zimmermann[105], A. Zingaretti[68,164], J. Zinn-Justin[3], A.V. Zlobin[37], M. Zobov[48], F. Zomer[9,10,11], S. Zorzetti[37], X. Zuo[132], J. Zurita[319], V.V. Zutshi[393], and M. Zykova[2]

Received: 16 June 2025 / Accepted: 16 September 2025 / Published online: 17 November 2025

Abstract In response to the *2020 Update of the European Strategy for Particle Physics*, the Future Circular Collider (FCC) Feasibility Study was launched as an international collaboration hosted by CERN. This report describes the FCC *integrated programme*, which consists of two stages: an electron-positron collider (FCC-ee) in the first phase, serving as a high-luminosity Higgs, top, and electroweak factory; followed by a proton-proton collider (FCC-hh) at the energy frontier in the second phase. The FCC-ee is designed to operate at four key centre-of-mass energies: the Z pole, the WW pair production threshold, the ZH production peak, and the top/anti-top production threshold—each delivering the highest possible luminosities to four experiments. Over 15 years of operation, FCC-ee will produce more than 6 trillion Z bosons, 200 million WW pairs, nearly 3 million Higgs bosons, and 2 million top anti-top pairs. Precise energy calibration at the Z pole and WW threshold will be achieved through frequent resonant depolarisation of pilot bunches. The sequence of operation modes between the Z, WW, and ZH substages remains flexible. The FCC-hh will operate at a centre-of-mass energy of approximately 85 TeV—nearly an order of magnitude higher than the LHC—and is designed to deliver 5 to 10 times the integrated luminosity of the upcoming High-Luminosity LHC. Its mass reach for direct discovery extends to several tens of TeV. In addition to proton-proton collisions, the FCC-hh is capable of supporting ion-ion, ion-proton, and lepton-hadron collision modes. This second volume of the Feasibility Study Report presents the complete design of the FCC-ee collider, its operation and staging strategy, the full-energy booster and injector complex, required accelerator technologies, safety concepts, and technical infrastructure. It also includes the design of the FCC-hh hadron collider, development of high-field magnets, hadron injector options, and key technical systems for FCC-hh.

Note from the editors One of the recommendations of the 2020 update of the European Strategy for Particle Physics was that "Europe, together with its international partners, should investigate the technical and financial feasibility of a future hadron collider at CERN with a centre-of-mass energy of at least 100 TeV and with an electron-positron Higgs and electroweak factory as a possible first stage.

In June 2021, the CERN Council launched the FCC Feasibility Study to be completed by 2025, in time for the next update of the European Strategy for Particle Physics. The study results are made publicly available through this FCC Feasibility Study Report, as input to the European Particle Physics Strategy update process, initiated by the CERN Council in March 2024. The studies presented in this FCC Feasibility Study Report do not imply any commitment by the CERN Member or Associate Member States to build the Future Circular Collider.

This report and the assumptions contained in it do not prejudge further territorial feasibility analysis by the Host States, France and Switzerland, as well as the outcome of their respective public debate and concertation processes, and future decisions of their relevant authorities.

Acknowledgements We would like to thank the **International Steering Committee members:**

F. Gianotti (Chair), CERN
R. Bello, CERN
P. Chomaz, CEA, France
M. Cobal, INFN and University of Udine, Italy
B. Heinemann, DESY, Germany
T. Koseki, KEK, Japan
M. Lamont, CERN
L. Merminga, FNAL, United States
J. Mnich, CERN
M. Seidel, PSI and EPFL, Switzerland
C. Warakaulle, CERN

and the **Scientific Advisory Committee members:**

A. Parker (Chair), Cambridge University, UK
R. Bartolini, DESY, Germany
A. Chabert, SFTRF, France
H. Ehrbar, Heinz Ehrbar Partners LLC, Switzerland
B. Gavela Legazpi, UAM Madrid, Spain

G. Hiller, TU Dortmund, Germany
S. Krishnagopal, FNAL, U.S.
P. Križan, University of Ljubljana, Slovenia
P. Lebrun, ESI, France
P. McIntosh, STFC, ASTeC, UKRI, UK
M. Minty, BNL, U.S.
R. Tenchini, INFN Sezione di Pisa, Italy

for their continued guidance and careful reviewing that helped to complete this report successfully.

The research carried out by the international FCC collaboration hosted by CERN, which led to this publication, has received funding from the European Union's Horizon 2020 research and innovation programme under the grant numbers 951754 (FCCIS), 654305 (EuroCirCol), 764879 (EASITrain), 730871 (ARIES), 777563 (RI-Paths), 101086276 (EAJADE), 101004730 (iFAST), 101131435 (iSAS), 101131850 (RF2.0) and from FP7 under grant number 312453 (EuCARD-2).
This work has also benefited from the support of CHART (Swiss Accelerator Research and Technology, founded in 2016 as an umbrella collaboration for accelerator research and technology activities. Present partners in CHART are CERN, PSI, EPFL, ETH-Zurich and the University of Geneva.
Every effort has been made to correctly acknowledge all image sources and rights holders. Any omission is unintentional, and the FCC Project remains available to review and amend credits upon request from legitimate data owners.

Preface from CERN's director-general

In 2021, in response to the 2020 update of the European Strategy for Particle Physics, the CERN Council initiated the Future Circular Collider (FCC) Feasibility Study.

This report summarises an immense amount of work carried out by the international FCC collaboration over several years. It covers, inter alia, physics objectives and potential, geology, civil engineering, technical infrastructure, territorial implementation, environmental aspects, R&D needs for the accelerators and detectors, socio-economic benefits and cost. It constitutes important input for the ongoing update of the European Strategy for Particle Physics.

The Feasibility Study required engagement with a broad range of stakeholders. In particular, throughout the Study, CERN has been accompanied by its two Host States, France and Switzerland, and has been working with entities at local, regional and national level. I am very grateful to the Host State authorities and teams for their invaluable help. Furthermore, significant sections of the Study were supported by the European Union under the Horizon 2020 and Horizon Europe framework programmes. The Study also greatly benefited from contributions from accelerator laboratories and universities from across Europe, such as the Swiss Accelerator Research and Technology (CHART) initiative, and from the Americas, Asia, Africa and Australia.

The proposed FCC integrated programme consists of two possible stages: an electron–positron collider serving as a Higgs-boson, electroweak and top-quark factory running at different centre-of-mass energies, followed at a later stage by a proton–proton collider operating at an unprecedented collision energy of around 100 TeV. The complementary physics programmes of each stage match the physics priorities expressed in the 2020 update of the European Strategy for Particle Physics.

A major achievement of the Feasibility Study is the choice of placement of the collider ring and the entire infrastructure, including the surface sites and the access shafts, which was developed and optimised over several years following the principle 'avoid, reduce, compensate'. Sustainability studies have assessed energy efficiency, land use, water and resource management, and socio-economic impact, ensuring that the FCC is designed in accordance with the latest environmental and societal standards.

I would like to thank all contributors to this report for their hard work and commitment, which allowed the outstanding results presented here to be achieved.

Fabiola Gianotti
CERN, Director-General

Preface from the FCC collaboration board chair

Building on the earlier Future Circular Collider (FCC) Conceptual Design Study conducted between 2014 and 2018, the FCC Feasibility Study (2021–2025) has been undertaken by a robust international collaboration, now comprising over 160 institutes worldwide. The FCC 'integrated programme', developed in the framework of the Feasibility Study, consists of an initial electron-positron collider, the FCC-ee, which could be followed by a proton-proton collider, the FCC-hh. This staging takes into account the physics priorities as formulated in the updates of the European Strategy for Particle Physics of 2012 and 2020, as well as the relative technology readiness and costs of the FCC-ee and FCC-hh.

Over the years, I have closely followed the steady progress of the study, representing the FCC collaboration at the international steering committee and participating in annual FCC Week meetings, which include sessions of the International Collaboration Board. The commitment and enthusiasm of the members of the collaboration has always been impressive. The collective effort is clearly visible. Participation by students and early-career researchers is increasing. There is a shared determination and momentum to move forward.

The strong international collaboration around the FCC and its global network provides a solid foundation for the future of this project. The FCC community continues to grow, with increasing engagement from new institutes and partners worldwide. This broad support will be essential as the project enters its next phase.

The FCC Feasibility Study demonstrates not only the technical viability of the project, but also the strength of the international community that supports it. As we move towards the next step in the decision-making phase, this collective effort is key to showing a possible path forward. The FCC promises far-reaching scientific opportunities and long-term benefits for innovation, training, and global collaboration in science and technology.

Philippe Chomaz
CEA, Chair of the FCC International Collaboration Board

Contents

Introduction to the FCC integrated project

FCC design and layout considerations The Future Circular Collider (FCC) 'integrated programme' consists of an initial electron-positron collider FCC-ee, which is later followed by a proton-proton collider, FCC-hh. This comprehensive programme is well matched to the current scientific landscape after 15 years of LHC operation. The proposed staging takes into account: (1) the physics priorities as developed and stated by the Updates of the European Strategy for Particle Physics in 2013 and 2020; and (2) the relative technology readiness and costs of FCC-ee and FCC-hh.

Both FCC-ee and FCC-hh are installed in the same 91 km circumference tunnel close to CERN, which allows reusing all the FCC-ee civil engineering and much of the technical infrastructure for the subsequent FCC-hh, thereby maximising the return on investment and ensuring guaranteed physics deliverables along with the broadest and most versatile exploration potential of the intensity and energy frontiers. Taking advantage of a perfect four-fold superperiodicity, FCC-ee and FCC-hh each accommodate four detectors. The two FCC stages, FCC-ee and FCC-hh, are optimised to enable the widest possible physics programme, with ample complementarity and synergies between stage 1 and stage 2.

The FCC-ee serves as an excellent Higgs and top factory. It also enables a rich programme of electroweak precision physics, flavour physics, QCD physics, and searches for feebly interacting particles, making FCC-ee a powerful exploration machine, as is illustrated in Volume 1. The production of several 10^{12} Z bosons opens an intriguing path to discovering new physics. The hadron collider, FCC-hh, operates at a centre-of-mass energy of about 85 TeV, extending the energy frontier by almost an order of magnitude compared with the LHC, and providing a 5–10 times higher integrated luminosity than the upcoming High-Luminosity LHC. The mass reach for direct discovery at FCC-hh amounts to several tens of TeV, and it allows, for example, the direct production of new particles, whose existence could already be indirectly exposed by precision measurements at FCC-ee. The FCC-hh hadron collider can also accommodate ion and lepton-hadron collision options, allowing for complementary physics explorations.

The layouts of the FCC-ee electron-positron collider and its injector design are fully compatible with the demands of, and do not compromise the performance of, the future hadron collider FCC-hh. The main ring optics and RF configurations for both colliders were refined both to simplify operation across the energy range of FCC-ee and to enable a smooth transition to FCC-hh after the completion of the FCC-ee research programme.

The FCC-hh baseline assumes 14 Tesla Nb_3Sn magnets which provide for a collision centre-of-mass energy of 85 TeV, with an R&D path towards HTS magnets, that would enable higher collision energies and/or reduced energy consumption. Designing a detector for a $\sim$100 TeV hadron collider is a challenging enterprise. Recent detailed studies prove that it should be possible to build a detector that can fully exploit the physics potential of such a machine, provided there is investment in the necessary detector R&D. The experience gained from the Phase-II upgrades of the LHC detectors for the HL-LHC, developments for further exploitation of the LHC, and ongoing detector R&D for future Higgs factories will be important stepping stones in this endeavour.

As noted, the FCC layout is designed to accommodate, first, an e^+/e^- and, then, a hadron-hadron collider in the same tunnel. The arc tunnel diameter of 5.5 metres is larger than the LEP/LHC tunnel and satisfies the integration requirements of both colliders while also being fully compatible with the safety concept. Tunnel length and location are chosen to be consistent with the placement constraints described in Volume 3 and to allow hadron injection from either the SPS tunnel or the LHC tunnel at CERN, and lepton injection from an injector situated on the CERN Prévessin site. The FCC tunnel has also been developed so that the lepton and hadron colliders can house four experiments each.

A four-fold super-periodicity, with a particle physics experiment located at each quarter of the circumference, makes the ring appear like a four times smaller machine with a single interaction point. The super-periodicity, therefore, reduces the density of strong resonances in the betatron tune diagram, allowing a maximum beam-beam tune shift and optimum performance, for both lepton and hadron machines. Technical straight sections are located halfway between experiment insertion, and these are used to accommodate important accelerator equipment and systems. The FCC layout accommodates 8 arcs of equal length, 4 technical straights (around the points PB, PF, PH and PL) and 4 experimental straights (around points PA, PD, PG and PJ), with lengths listed in Table 1. The final layout is illustrated in Figs. 1 and 2 for FCC-ee and FCC-hh, respectively. The collision points of FCC-hh lie on top of the FCC-ee interaction points, facilitating the sharing of some experimental infrastructure between FCC-ee and FCC-hh.

Table 1 Parameters of the tunnel layout for the two FCC colliders

Circumference [m]	arc (×8) [m]	Technical straight (×4) [m]	Experimental straight (×4) [m]
90,657.400	9616.175	2032.000	1400.000

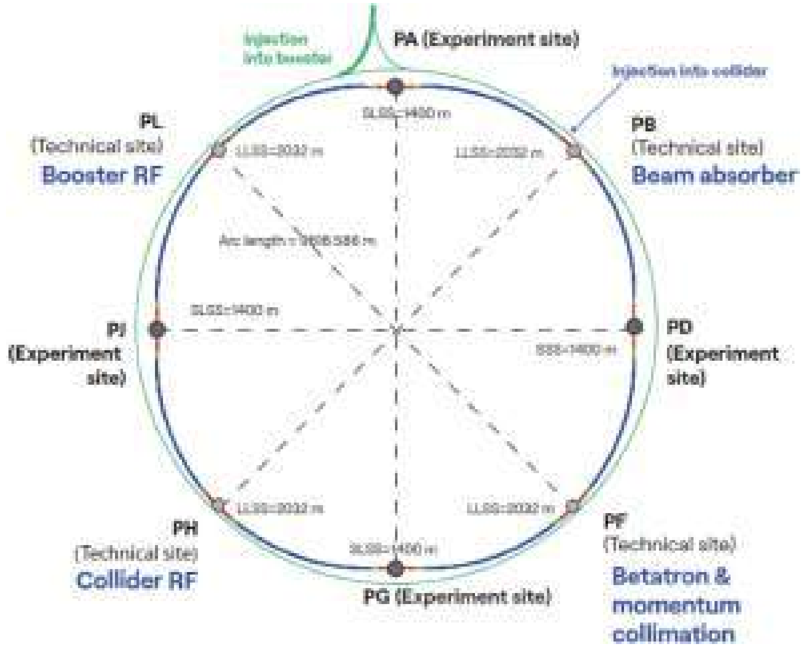


Fig. 1 The layout of the FCC-ee illustrating the four collision points and the four technical insertions

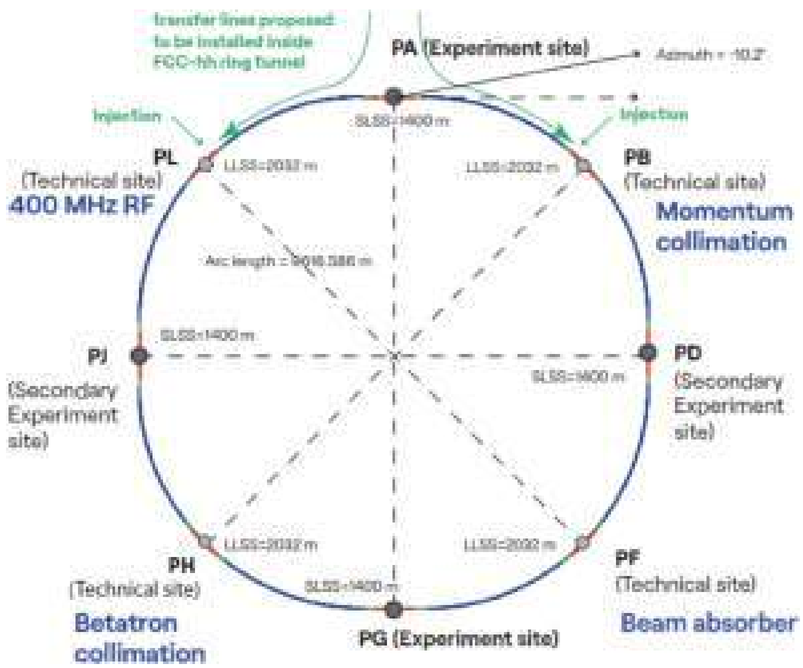


Fig. 2 The layout of the FCC-hh illustrating the four collision points and the four technical insertions

The FCC-ee is conceived as a double-ring collider with separate beam pipes for electrons and positrons. Its luminosity is maximised by regular top-up injection from a full-energy booster synchrotron, which must also be located in the collider tunnel (sketched schematically by the green circle in Fig. 1). Transfer lines connecting from the FCC-ee injector on the CERN Prévessin site to the booster are indicated schematically around PA. For the FCC-ee, the straight around PL houses the booster radiofrequency (RF) system, and the one at PH accommodates the main-ring RF systems, as indicated in Fig. 1. Injection into the collider and extraction are integrated in a single technical straight section at PB. Both betatron cleaning and momentum collimation systems are located in the remaining straight section around PF, as shown in Fig. 1.

For the FCC-hh, two high-luminosity experiments can be installed in the diametrically opposed locations PA and PG, and two special-purpose experiments in PD and PJ. The betatron collimation is accommodated in the technical straight at PH, while the momentum collimation is housed in the technical straight around PB. In the event of an abort, the beam is extracted in the straight sector around the PF. The FCC-hh RF system is installed at PL, which for FCC-ee houses the booster RF. Note that the FCC-hh injection systems are installed in PB and PL, which are, therefore, shared between two accelerator systems. The hadron transfer line tunnels also connect to the main tunnel in the vicinity of PA. The transfer lines themselves continue inside the ring tunnel, on top of the arcs connecting PA with PL and PB where the counter-clockwise and clockwise beams are injected into the collider rings, respectively.

FCC-ee goals and parameters The FCC-ee achieves maximum peak and integrated luminosities at four main working points, corresponding to the Z pole, the WW threshold, the (Z)H production peak and the $t\bar{t}$ threshold. Integrated luminosity targets amount to the production of 6×10^{12} Z bosons (as required by the search for sterile right-handed neutrinos), more than 2×10^8 WW pairs, in excess of 2×10^6 Higgs bosons, and 2×10^6 $t\bar{t}$ pairs. All these objectives can be achieved during a 15-year period, which includes a one-year shutdown necessary to reconfigure the machine and install additional RF systems for the highest-energy $t\bar{t}$ running. With these integrated luminosities, the FCC-ee physics programme improves the precision of all electro-weak observables by two orders of magnitude, allowing measurements of Higgs couplings (in a model-independent way) by up to an order of magnitude more precisely than the HL-LHC, provides ten times the Belle-2 design statistics for bottom quarks, charm quarks and tau leptons, boosts the indirect discovery potential up to approximately 100 TeV, and unlocks direct discovery potential for feebly-interacting particles (e.g., heavy sterile right-handed neutrinos) over the 5–100 GeV mass range.

The lepton-collider beam parameters are limited by various constraints and effects [1], such as beamstrahlung [2], a coherent beam-beam instability in collision with a large crossing angle [3], synchro-betatron resonances, polarisation requirements, and finally impedance effects, as discussed in Sect. 1.1. The parameters were optimised under these constraints [1]. Further refined simulations combining the effect of the full nonlinear lattice and either weak-strong or quasi-strong-strong beam-beam simulations, and the reverse-phase operation scheme for the RF cavities (with the implied transient beam loading effects) have led to parameter adjustments. The latest set of parameters is presented in Table 2. The parameters have been largely stable since 2021.

The bunch population is held approximately constant for all modes of operation, while the number of bunches is varied to adjust the beam current. The beam current is limited by the synchrotron radiation power and decreases strongly at higher beam energies. For the Z operating point, a large number of 11,200 bunches are stored in each of the two collider rings. In this case, the bunches can be separated into 40 bunch trains of 280 bunches, with a bunch-to-bunch separation of 25 ns and a train-to-train separation of roughly 0.6 µs. Similarly, at the WW threshold with 1780 bunches, bunches might be separated into 20 trains of 89 bunches having a bunch-to-bunch separation of roughly 150 ns and a train-to-train separation of roughly 2 µs. At the ZH and $t\bar{t}$ it is likely that the bunches are uniformly distributed around the ring. Two contributions to the beam lifetime are indicated separately: (1) the effect of lattice dynamic aperture and beamstrahlung plus quantum fluctuation, and (2) the unavoidable luminosity-related radiative Bhabha scattering. The total beam lifetime is the inverse of the sum of the individual inverse lifetimes. Finally, the luminosity and integrated luminosity at each operating point are discussed further in Sect. 1.1.

FCC-hh goals and parameters The hadron collider FCC-hh should provide proton–proton collisions with a centre-of-mass energy of the order of 85 TeV and an integrated proton-proton luminosity of about 20 ab^{-1} in each of the two multi-purpose experiments during 25 years of operation. Two specialised detectors are located in the remaining two experiment straights. In addition to colliding protons with protons, also proton-ion and ion-ion collisions, as with the LHC [5–7] but at much higher energy, are envisaged. Furthermore, an interaction point could be upgraded to electron–proton and electron–ion collisions, in which case an additional recirculating energy-recovery linac would provide the electron beam. The FCC–hh would use (modified) parts of the existing CERN accelerator complex for its injector chain.

The design of the FCC-hh hadron collider is based on LHC experience. The key challenges are the magnet technology and power consumption in the presence of strong synchrotron radiation. To limit the latter and also because the radiation damping during storage is significant, the beam current and the bunch population are relaxed compared to those of the HL-LHC [8, 9].

The key parameters for FCC-hh are compiled in Table 3. The bunch population (close to 1×10^{11} protons per bunch) and the beam current (0.5 A) are kept the same as in the 2018 CDR [10]. Table 3 presents a baseline design with 14 T dipole magnets, which could be based on Nb_3Sn technology. The table illustrates how the synchrotron radiation strongly increases with higher magnetic field.

The synchrotron-radiation heat, which must be extracted from inside the cold magnets, is a major contribution to cryogenic power. For the CDR, with 16 T Nb_3Sn magnets, the FCC-hh cryogenics required around 250 MW of electrical power. With the lower field of 14 T, this power can be significantly reduced. However, the cryogenic power might also be lowered for the higher-field magnets based on HTS technology, as these could conceivably be operated at a higher temperature, together with an elevated temperature of the beamscreen intercepting the synchrotron radiation.

Sustainability goals The general FCC implementation is driven by the principles of cost optimisation and sustainability, as described in Volume 3 of this Feasibility Study Report. Examples include the minimisation of the number of surface sites and the length of access roads by the placement optimisation, the planned processing of the excavated spoil for multiple purposes of reuse, and the local use of waste heat and cooling water.

Table 2 Parameters of FCC-ee. Peak luminosity values are given per interaction point (IP), for a total of 4 IPs, integrated luminosities refer to the sum over four IPs. Both natural bunch lengths are due to the synchrotron radiation (SR) and collision values including beamstrahlung (BS) are shown. The FCC-ee collider rings feature a combination of 400 MHz RF systems (at the first three energies) and 800 MHz (additional cavities for $t\bar{t}$ operation), with voltage strengths respectively indicated. For the integrated luminosity, 185 days of operation per year, and luminosity production at 75% efficiency with respect to the ideal top-up running is assumed, as in the report [4]

Running mode	Z	WW	ZH	$t\bar{t}$
Number of IPs	4	4	4	4
Beam energy (GeV)	45.6	80	120	182.5
Bunches/beam	11,200	1856	300	60
Beam current [mA]	1292	135	26.8	5.1
Luminosity/IP [10^{34} cm^{-2} s^{-1}]	144	20	7.5	1.45
Energy loss / turn [GeV]	0.039	0.369	1.86	9.94
Synchrotron Radiation Power [MW]	100	100	100	100
RF Voltage 400/800 MHz [GV]	0.09/0	1.0/0	2.1/0	2.1/9.2
RMS bunch length (SR) [mm]	5.15	3.46	3.26	1.91
RMS bunch length (+BS) [mm]	15.2	5.28	5.59	2.33
RMS relative momentum spread (SR) [%]	0.039	0.069	0.102	0.152
RMS relative momentum spread (+BS) [%]	0.115	0.105	0.176	0.186
RMS horizontal emittance ε_x [nm]	0.71	2.16	0.66	1.65
RMS vertical emittance ε_y [pm]	2.1	2.0	1.0	1.32
Longitudinal damping time [turns]	1171	218	65.4	19.6
Horizontal IP beta β_x^* [mm]	110	220	240	900
Vertical IP beta β_y^* [mm]	0.7	1.0	1.0	1.4
Hor. IP beam size σ_x^* [µm]	9	22	13	37
Vert. IP beam size σ_y^* [nm]	40	45	32	44
Beam lifetime (q + BS + lattice) [min.]	87	75	100	105
Beam lifetime (lum.) [min.]	22	16	10	11
Total beam lifetime [min.]	18	13	9	10
Total int. annual luminosity [ab^{-1}/yr]	68†	9.6	3.6	0.67‡

† The integrated luminosity in the first two years of Z running is assumed to be half this value to account for the machine commissioning and beam tuning; for WW and ZH running no additional commissioning time is allocated since the machine configuration and hardware are unchanged from the Z operation.

‡ The integrated luminosity in the first year of $t\bar{t}$ running, at the slightly lower beam energy of 170–175 GeV, is assumed to be about 65% of this value to account for the machine commissioning and beam tuning. The shorter time for commissioning compared with the lower energy running reflects the LEP/LEP-2 experience.

The existence of a single such tunnel serving the global particle physics community until the end of the century exemplifies the discipline's commitment to sustainability. Moreover, the choice to propose the project in France and Switzerland – where electricity is already largely decarbonised – demonstrates a serious and proactive approach to environmental considerations. Finally, the fact that the FCC-ee is about a hundred thousand times more efficient than its predecessor LEP, in terms of luminosity per unit electrical power, underscores the significant efforts of the community to advance responsibly.

As for the accelerators, storage rings are intrinsically sustainable machines, as they collide the same beams again and again, at multiple interaction points and over millions of turns. Their efficiency is limited only by the energy loss from synchrotron radiation, which, in the case of the FCC, is minimised by its large circumference.

Concerning the technical systems of the FCC-ee accelerators, their energy consumption is restricted by a variety of measures and design choices, such as novel ultra-high efficient continuous-wave (cw) RF power sources like tristrons, with a projected efficiency exceeding 90%, or twin dipole and quadrupole magnets for the FCC-ee arcs, and an increased Q_0 value of the superconducting RF cavities, by deploying exactly the same RF system for the

Table 3 Parameters of FCC-hh compared with the HL-LHC and LHC. For the integrated luminosity, 160 days of operation per year, and luminosity production at 70% efficiency with respect to the ideal running is assumed, as in the report [4]. The regular bunch spacing is 25 ns for all three colliders

	FCC-hh	HL-LHC	LHC
Centre-of-mass energy [TeV]	85	14	
Circumference [km]	90.7	26.7	
Dipole field [T]	14	8.33	
Beam current [A]	0.5	1.1	0.58
Bunch Intensity [10^{11}]	1.0	2.2	1.15
Number of bunches per beam	9500	2760	2808
Total synchrotron radiation power [kW]	2400	15	7
Synchrotron radiation power per unit length [W/m/aperture]	15.6	0.33	0.17
Longitudinal emittance damping time [h]	0.75	12.9	
Interaction Point (IP) beta function $\beta^*_{x,y}$ [m]	0.3	0.15 (min.)	0.55
Normalised rms emittance [µm]	2.2	2.5	3.75
Peak luminosity [10^{34} cm^{-2} s^{-1}]	30	5 (lev.)	1
Peak number of events per bunch crossing	1000	132	27
Stored energy per beam [GJ]	6.5	0.7	0.36
Integrated annual luminosity per IP [ab^{-1}/yr]	0.9	0.25	0.05

first three modes of operation, and choosing a moderate accelerating gradient around 20–22 MV/m for the injector linacs. With regard to materials, by fabricating the main 400 MHz RF cavities using thin-film (niobium on copper) coating technology, the total amount of niobium is greatly reduced and the cavities also become more robust.

For the FCC-hh, the R&D aims to develop magnets with a cold-bore temperature higher than 1.9 K, along with an elevated beamscreen temperature, which will relax the cryogenic power required, while the optimisation of the FCC-hh injector will further reduce the overall energy consumption.

Chapter 1

FCC-ee collider design and performance

1.1 Beam-beam effects, parameter choices, and luminosity

The FCC-ee will run at different beam energies, spanning the range from 45.6 to 182.5 GeV, so as to cover the Z pole, the WW threshold, the ZH production peak, and the $t\bar{t}$ threshold. The latest parameter sets for the various operating energies are listed in Table 1.2. The parameter optimisation process for the FCC-ee was discussed in Ref. [1].

The FCC-ee design for all energies is based on the 'crab-waist' collision scheme, following its successful implementation at both DAΦNE and SuperKEKB [11, 12]. This scheme features flat beams ($\sigma_x^* \gg \sigma_y^*$), a large crossing angle between the two colliding beams, and (either 'virtual' or real) crab sextupoles at suitable betatron phase advance on either side of each of the interaction points (IPs). The crab waist scheme not only allows a small vertical beta function, but it also avoids coupling the vertical and horizontal betatron motion through the crossing-angle collision. It, thereby, ensures good stability of particle trajectories even when the beam-beam interaction is strong, thus enabling a high luminosity.

The luminosity at one IP may be expressed as

$$\mathcal{L} \simeq \frac{\gamma}{2er_e}\frac{I_{tot}\xi_y}{\beta_y^*}R_G\,, \tag{1.1}$$

with the relativistic factor γ, the elementary charge e, the classical electron radius r_e, the total beam current I_{tot}, the vertical beam-beam parameter per IP ξ_y, the vertical optical β function at the IP β_y^* and the geometric

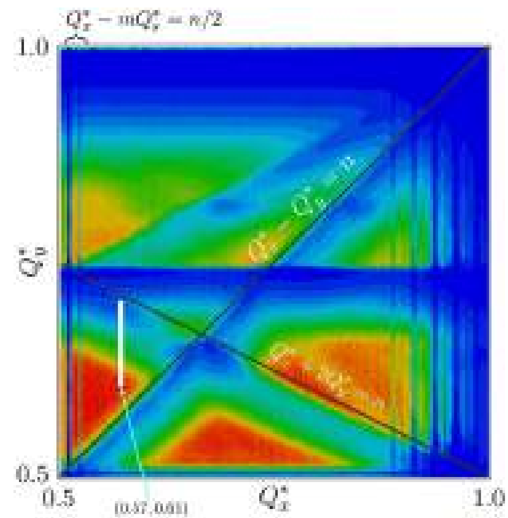


Fig. 1.1 Luminosity at the Z energy as a function of betatron tunes for the CDR configuration [13], represented by a single arc and a single IP. The colour scale extends from zero (blue) to $2.3 \cdot 10^{36}$ cm^{-2}s^{-1} (red) [14]. The white narrow rectangle above (0.57, 0.61) indicates the footprint due to the beam-beam interaction

reduction factor R_G, which represents both the 'hourglass' effect and the reduced overlap due to the crossing angle. The total current is constrained by the design limit for the synchrotron radiation power of 50 MW per beam. Therefore, the highest vertical beam-beam parameter is desired for maximum luminosity. However, in order to keep the tune footprint away from low-order resonances, all FCC-ee configurations feature $\xi_y \approx 0.1$ (Fig. 1.1).

The smallest β_y^* is also desired, yet it is limited by the reduction of the luminosity due to the hourglass effect. The hourglass reduction factor is historically determined by the bunch length. However, in the crab waist collision scheme, the length of the overlap of the colliding beams is minimised through the crossing angle, leading to the condition $\beta_y^* \approx L_i$ with the interaction length defined by

$$L_i = \frac{\sigma_z}{\sqrt{1+\phi^2}}, \text{ with } \quad \phi = \frac{\sigma_z}{\sigma_x^*} \tan\left(\frac{\theta_c}{2}\right) \tag{1.2}$$

the so-called Piwinski angle, related to the rms bunch length σ_z the horizontal rms beam size at the collision point σ_x^*, and the full crossing angle between the beams at the IP θ_c. In the small angle approximation ($\theta_c \ll 1$) for the large Piwinski angle regime ($\phi \gg 1$), the interaction length reduces to $L_i \approx 2\sigma_x^*/\theta_c$. The crossing angle θ_c is imposed by the choice of the layout, in particular, due to the short common chamber around the IP, specifically designed to avoid parasitic beam-beam encounters, and to allow a small β_y^* with the lowest vertical chromaticity possible. Maximum luminosity, therefore, is achieved by minimising the horizontal beam size at the collision point, to allow for a reduction of β_y^*.

The beam-beam tune shifts are given by

$$\xi_x \simeq \frac{N_b r_e}{2\pi\gamma} \frac{\beta_x^*}{\sigma_x^{*2}(1+\phi^2)}, \; \xi_y \simeq \frac{N_b r_e}{2\pi\gamma} \frac{\beta_y^*}{\sigma_x^* \sigma_y^* \sqrt{1+\phi^2}} \tag{1.3}$$

with N_b the number of electrons or positrons per bunch, given by

$$N_b = \frac{I_{tot}}{e f_{rev} n_b} \tag{1.4}$$

with the revolution frequency f_{rev} and the maximum number of bunches n_b. The number of bunches cannot be arbitrarily large due to the need for a minimal spacing between bunches (about 25 ns) in order to avoid adverse effects such as electron clouds (Sect. 1.4) as well as the need for gaps for injection and extraction (Sect. 1.8). This constraint is mostly relevant for the Z, yielding a minimum bunch charge of about $2 \cdot 10^{11}$ e$^{\pm}$.

In the small crossing angle ($\tan\theta_c \approx \theta_c$) and large Piwinski angle ($\phi \gg 1$) approximation, the beam-beam parameters reduce to

$$\xi_x \approx \frac{N_b r_e}{\pi\gamma} \frac{2\beta_x^*}{(\sigma_z \theta_c)^2}, \; \xi_y \approx \frac{N_b r_e}{\pi\gamma} \frac{1}{\sigma_z \theta_c} \sqrt{\frac{\beta_y^*}{\epsilon_y}}. \tag{1.5}$$

The bunch length, therefore, is another key parameter. It is determined by the effect of beamstrahlung, the synchrotron radiation in the arcs, the RF voltage and RF frequency, and by the choice of lattice, mainly through the momentum compaction factor α_C. It can be expressed as:

$$\sigma_z = \sigma_\delta \frac{\alpha_C C}{2\pi Q_s}, \text{ with } Q_s = \frac{1}{2\pi}\left(\frac{eV_{RF}\omega_{RF}C_0}{p_0 c^2}\alpha_C \cos\phi_s\right)^{1/2} \text{ and } \sin\phi_s = \frac{U_0}{eV_{RF}} \tag{1.6}$$

where V_{RF} and ω_{RF} designate the RF voltage and frequency, C the ring circumference, p_0 the reference momentum, and U_0 the total energy loss per turn. The synchrotron tune and synchronous phase are Q_s and ϕ_s, respectively. The momentum spread is obtained from

$$\sigma_\delta^2 = \sigma_{\delta,SR}^2 + \sigma_{\delta,BS}^2, \text{ with } \sigma_{\delta,BS}^2 \simeq \frac{n_{IP}\ \tau_{E,SR}\ c}{4C_0}\frac{55}{24\sqrt{3}}\frac{r_e^2\gamma^5}{\alpha_e}\int ds\left\langle\frac{1}{\rho^3}\right\rangle_{x,y,z} \tag{1.7}$$

where $\sigma_{\delta,SR}$ denotes the rms relative momentum spread caused by synchrotron radiation in the arcs and $\tau_{E,SR}$ the corresponding longitudinal radiation damping time, n_{IP} the number of IPs, α_e the fine structure constant and ρ the local bending radius of the particles' trajectories caused by the beam-beam interaction. Under certain assumptions, the integral over the bending radius can be approximated as follows [2]

$$\int ds\left\langle\frac{1}{\rho^3}\right\rangle \approx \frac{0.77562}{\sqrt{2\pi}^3\sigma_z^2\phi}\left(\frac{2N_b r_e}{\gamma\sigma_x^*}\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}}\right)^3. \tag{1.8}$$

Using the equations above, and introducing the parameter $\alpha_{BS} \geq 0$ to represent the effect of beamstrahlung[1],

$$\sigma_\delta^5 - \sigma_{\delta,SR}^2\sigma_\delta^3 - \alpha_{BS} = 0, \text{ with } \alpha_{BS} \propto \frac{n_{IP}\tau_{E,SR}\gamma^{\frac{1}{2}}N_b^3}{\sigma_x^{*2}\theta_c}\left(\frac{V_{RF}\omega_{RF}}{\alpha_C}\right)^{\frac{3}{2}}. \tag{1.10}$$

The corresponding bunch length follows from Eq. (1.6). Due to its approximate nature, the equation is hardly used in the design process, and the impact of beamstrahlung is often obtained via tracking simulations. Yet this equation reveals that, in the regime of strong beamstrahlung ($\sigma_\delta \gg \sigma_{\delta,SR}$), the sensitivity to RF parameters and momentum compaction factor is reduced from the usual square root dependence due to fact that the beam-beam force, and consequently the strength of the beamstrahlung, depends on the bunch length. In the regime of strong beamstrahlung, the main drivers for the bunch length and momentum spread are the bunch intensity and the horizontal beam size ($\sigma_\delta \propto N_b^{3/5}\sigma_x^{*-2/5}$). These quantities must be adjusted to minimise the magnitude of the beamstrahlung.

As discussed above, the bunch intensity is constrained on the low-energy side, namely at the Z, by the electron-cloud instability. At higher energies, it needs to be kept large enough to maintain the beam-beam parameter (and consequently the luminosity) at the specified level. Also, a low horizontal emittance is required to achieve a low vertical emittance. Indeed, the two quantities are bound by the quality of the optics correction: currently, it is assumed that $\epsilon_y \approx \epsilon_x/10^3$ can be achieved (Sect. 1.4). The low vertical emittance directly impacts the luminosity, but it is also crucial for maintaining a good beam lifetime in the presence of a limited vertical dynamic aperture associated with the low β_y^*. Thus, maintaining a high β_x^* is key to reducing beamstrahlung. Nevertheless, the horizontal β^* is limited on the high side by the corresponding increase of the horizontal beam-beam parameter as well as of the strength of horizontal synchrobetatron resonances. These aspects are critical as the transverse tunes are set just above the half-integer in the horizontal plane and above the coupling resonance but below the third-order resonance in the vertical plane (Fig. 1.1), thus minimising the impact of low-order resonances on the beam quality. In this area, synchro betatron sidebands of the half-integer resonance in the horizontal plane are strongly excited due to the beam-beam interaction with a large Piwinski angle, leading to coherent instabilities, so-called x-z instabilities [3], as well as by incoherent blow up [15]. Consequently, the horizontal β^* must be chosen to maintain the strength of synchrobetatron resonances and the horizontal beam-beam parameter ($\xi_x \ll Q_s$) at an acceptable level. This optimisation, coupled to the relevant longitudinal aspects treated in the next paragraph, is done based on tracking simulation (Sect. 1.4). Thanks to the increase in radiation damping and the shorter bunch length at higher energies, these effects become less severe, and higher β_x^* are allowed.

1

$$\alpha_{BS} \cong 0.77562 \cdot \frac{220}{3\sqrt{3}}\frac{r_e^5\gamma^2}{\alpha_e}\frac{n_{IP}\tau_{E,SR}}{T_{rev}}\left(\frac{Q_s}{\alpha_C C_0}\right)^3\frac{N_b^3}{\sigma_x^{*2}\theta_c} \text{ with } Q_s \text{ from Eq. (1.6)} \tag{1.9}$$

The tune space depicted in Fig. 1.1 corresponds to the CDR configuration, yet the main features have not fundamentally changed. The main difference is the lowering of the tune per quarter of the machine towards the half-integer (layout with 4 IPs), with respect to the half of the machine in the CDR (layout with 2 IPS) in order to maintain the total tune in the same area, thereby avoiding important resonances when considering the impact of the real lattice (Fig. 1.3). The total tune spread is large and a tight control of the resonances driven by the lattice including imperfections is important.

The longitudinal parameters are set to ensure a sufficiently large RF bucket height. At the same time, the spin tune spread needs to remain smaller than the synchrotron tune to allow for energy calibration via resonant depolarisation (Sect. 1.7). These two conditions are

$$\left(\frac{\Delta p}{p}\right)_{\max} = \left(\frac{eV_{RF}\omega_{RF}C_0}{2\pi^2 c\alpha_C E_0}(2\cos(\phi) + (2\phi_s - \pi)\sin(\phi_s))\right)^{1/2} > 0.01, \text{ and } \ Q_s > a\gamma\sigma_{\delta,SR} \tag{1.11}$$

with a the anomalous magnetic moment of the electron. Aiming at a high voltage and a low momentum compaction factor, a high synchrotron tune is favoured. The RF voltage available is an important cost driver, it is kept at a level required to compensate for the energy lost by synchrotron radiation, and to maintain a sufficiently large RF momentum acceptance.

At the Z, an additional constraint on the RF voltage arises from the choice of operating 2-cell cavities in reverse polarity mode in order to keep the same RF system for the Z, WW and ZH energies (Sect. 3.4). The voltage may need to be kept higher than otherwise necessary to minimise the impact of transient beam loading.

Two different lattices are considered, with the one for the two highest energies (ZH and $t\bar{t}$) featuring a lower momentum compaction factor than the optics for the two lower energies (Z and WW). The optics change is required to maintain a low transverse emittance at the higher energies.

While at the Z energy the maximum number of bunches is constrained by the electron cloud instability, at other energies it can be fully optimised to obtain the highest luminosity. This is achieved by choosing the highest bunch charge that does not lead to a significant lifetime degradation or emittance growth (corresponding to a vertical beam-beam tune shift of about $\xi_y \approx 0.1$) [16].

A key difference from existing colliders is the fact that beam parameters are defined by an equilibrium condition that is mostly driven by the beam-beam interaction itself, and in particular by the beamstrahlung. Transverse and longitudinal beam sizes are, thus, strongly coupled, introducing additional constraints on the design and operation of the collider.

An important aspect is the need for a reasonably adiabatic ramp up of the beam-beam force such that the energy spread and the bunch length may increase from the lattice equilibrium to the new equilibrium with beamstrahlung avoiding uncontrolled losses in the process. Indeed, considering, for example, the situation where one nominal beam would be circulating, with the lattice equilibrium emittances, and a second, lower intensity beam would be injected from the booster, a 3D flip-flop mechanism could occur where the injected beam blows up significantly, while the other one remains smaller than nominal. As a mitigation measure, the so-called bootstrap injection scheme was devised, where the intensity difference between colliding bunches does not exceed a few percent [16] (Sect. 1.8).

The 3D flip-flop mechanism is a direct consequence of the strong coupling between the equilibria in the different planes. In the case of an asymmetry in the strength of beamstrahlung between the two colliding bunches, the bunch experiencing lesser beamstrahlung sees its length decrease, thus increasing the strength of beamstrahlung for the other beam. As a result, beamstrahlung decreases further on the shorter bunch, thus again enhancing the effect. These dynamics may reach a stable equilibrium where one beam is large and the other small in the longitudinal direction, a so-called 'flip-flop' effect. Similar 'flip-flop' phenomena, albeit without beamstrahlung and in the transverse direction, have been seen in e^+e^- colliders for the past half a century, e.g., Ref. [17]. At FCC-ee, due to the finite momentum acceptance, as well as the strong beam-beam force generated by the short bunch, the long, 'weak' bunch may also experience transverse blow-up and possibly significant beam losses, making the mechanism three dimensional. The '3D flip-flop' situation is considered irreversible so the affected bunches would need to be dumped. Avoiding this mechanism imposes tight tolerances on the symmetry of the two beams, regarding bunch intensity and optics control [16, 18].

1.2 Optics design

This section describes the main electron and positron collider rings. Subsections describe the arc optics, the experimental insertions, and the design of the various technical straight sections. The baseline optics is called the Global Hybrid Correction (GHC) scheme, since the vertical chromaticity for the low-beta insertion is corrected locally, with two sextupole magnets in the final focus, while the horizontal chromaticity is globally corrected using the arc sextupoles.

The baseline collider optics corresponds to a layout that can accommodate four interaction points (IPs), with a super-periodicity of four and fourfold symmetry, comprising eight arcs, and eight long straight sections (LSS),

Table 1.1 Parameters of the layout in metres

Circumference	arc	Technical LSS (LLSS)	Experiment LSS (SLSS)
90,657.400	9616.175	2032.000	1400.000

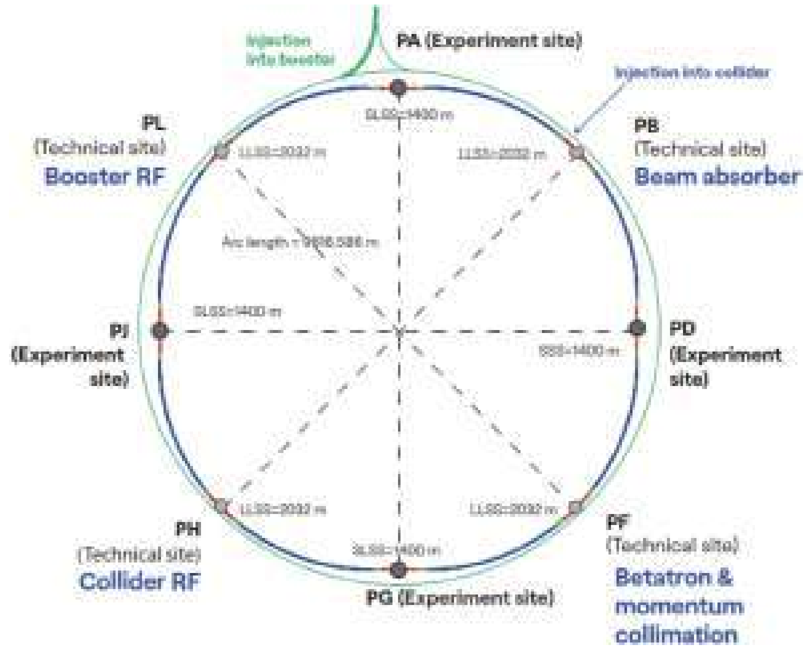


Fig. 1.2 The layout of the FCC-ee illustrating the 4 collision points in the SLSS and the four technical insertions at the LLSS

which are further divided into four technical "long long straight sections" (LLSS, at points PB, PF, PH, and PL), and four experiment "short long straight sections" (SLSS, at points PA, PD, PG, and PJ), as are defined in Table 1.1 and illustrated in Fig. 1.2.

The experiment long straight sections accommodate the optics leading to the interaction points (IPs) and the detectors. The beam crossing angle and the distance between the IP and the face of the first quadrupole (ℓ^*) are maintained at 30 mrad and 2.2 m, respectively. Each beam must arrive towards the IP from the inside to minimise the synchrotron radiation going into the detector; therefore the beams must cross in each technical long straight section. The technical LSSs are used for RF, injection, extraction, and collimation as illustrated in Fig. 1.2. The technical LSS at PH is used for the RF for the collider at all energies, while the LSS at PL is used for the booster RF. The beam optics of the collider RF section will change at the transition from WW to ZH, so as to accommodate RF cryomodules common to both e^+ and e^- for ZH, and separate for WW.

The PL long straight section is used for the booster RF. The RF section for the collider is concentrated in the PH long straight section for all energies. This seems to induce an additional non-structural synchro-betatron resonance, limiting the choice of the transverse tune space at some energies.

The design goal of the LLSS is to use identical optics for the RF, injection/extraction, and collimation at Z and WW, in order to maintain the superperiodicity of the ring in terms of path length, phase advance and chromaticity. Thus, no special tuning of the optics and sextupoles is required. At higher energies, for the ZH and $t\bar{t}$ modes of operation, the optics in the RF section changes, so as to accommodate the RF cavities common to both e^+ and e^- beams.

The optics in the other technical LSSs remain the same for all energies. At the experiment LSSs, the IP localisation and beamline layouts deviate from the reference layout line defined by Table 1.1 to generate the crossing angle for the collision with reduced synchrotron radiation (SR) toward the IP.

The ring vertical chromaticities are set to +5 and +2 at Z and WW, respectively, and to 0 at other energies. This is necessary to suppress the transverse mode coupling beam instability. The dynamic aperture (DA) and beam lifetime are optimised under these chromaticities.

The choice of the betatron tunes and parameters related to beam-beam, such as bunch intensity, β^*, bunch length, chromaticities, etc., assumes the reverse-phase operation of the RF cavities. There are limitations on the combination of parameters, as discussed in Sect. 1.1.

Table 1.2 lists machine parameters associated with the baseline design for four beam energies. The effects of the full non-linear lattice and the beam-beam collisions with beamstrahlung are now modelled simultaneously.

Table 1.2 FCC-ee collider parameters for the GHC lattice. SR: synchrotron radiation, BS: +beamstrahlung

Beam energy	[GeV]	45.6	80	120	182.5
Layout		PA31-3.0			
# of IPs		4			
Circumference	[km]	90.658509			
Bend. radius of arc dipole	[km]	10.021			
Energy loss / turn	[GeV]	0.0387	0.369	1.86	9.93
SR power / beam	[MW]	50			
Beam current	[mA]	1292	135	26.8	5.0
Colliding bunches / beam		11,200	1856	300	60
Colliding bunch population	[10^{11}]	2.18	1.38	1.69	1.58
Hor. emittance at collision ε_x	[nm]	0.71	2.16	0.66	1.65
Ver. emittance at collision ε_y	[pm]	2.1	2.0	1.0	1.32
Lattice v. emittance $\varepsilon_{y,\mathrm{lattice}}$	[pm]	0.87	1.20	0.57	0.82
Arc cell		Long 90/90		90/90	
Momentum compaction α_C	[10^{-6}]	28.52	28.67	7.52	7.57
Arc sext families		73		144	
$\beta^*_{x/y}$	[mm]	110 / 0.7	220 / 1	240 / 1	900 / 1.4
Transverse tunes $Q_{x/y}$		218.168 / 222.200	218.185 / 222.220	398.150 / 398.220	394.148 / 390.218
Chromaticities $Q'_{x/y}$		+5 / +5	0 / +5	0 / 0	0 / 0
Energy spread (SR/BS) σ_δ	[%]	0.039 / 0.115	0.069 / 0.105	0.102 / 0.176	0.152 / 0.186
Bunch length (SR/BS) σ_z	[mm]	5.15 / 15.2	3.46 / 5.28	3.26 / 5.59	1.91 / 2.34
RF voltage 400/800 MHz	[GV]	0.0885 / 0	1.00 / 0	2.09 / 0	2.10 / 9.20
Harm. number for 400 MHz		121,200			
RF frequency (400 MHz)	MHz	400.788026			
Synchrotron tune Q_s		0.0310	0.0809	0.0334	0.0892
Long. damping time	[turns]	1179	218	65.4	19.4
RF acceptance	[%]	1.21	3.32	2.06	3.07
Energy acceptance (DA)	[%]	±1.0	±1.0	±1.9	−2.8/+2.5
Beam crossing angle at IP θ_c	[mrad]	±15			
Crab waist ratio	[%]	60	55	50	40
Beam-beam ξ_x/ξ_y †		0.0023 / 0.098	0.013 / 0.129	0.0108 / 0.130	0.066 / 0.144
Piwinski ang. $(\theta_c \sigma_{z,\mathrm{BS}})/\sigma^*_x$		25.8	3.6	6.6	0.91
Lifetime (q + BS + lattice)	[sec]	5200	4500	6000	6300
Lifetime (lum)‡	[sec]	1330	960	600	640
Luminosity / IP	[10^{34} cm^{-2}s^{-1}]	144	20	7.5	1.45

† including hourglass

‡ only the energy acceptance is taken into account for the cross section, no beam size effect.

Such simulations, using the codes SAD and BBWS,[2] include the complete lattice, synchrotron radiation from all components with realistic photon spectra, tapering, beam-beam collisions, and beamstrahlung. As a result, the beam lifetime is considered realistic, and the blow-up of the vertical emittance due to beam-beam effects and beamstrahlung is quantitatively estimated, as reported in the table.

It is important to distinguish two vertical emittances, namely the emittance including collision and the emittance from the lattice alone, as are shown in Table 1.2. Roughly a factor of 2 blowup in the vertical emittance due the collision is expected at each energy, according to the simulations reported above. The required lattice emittance

[2]Benchmarking simulations were also be carried out with the new code Xsuite.

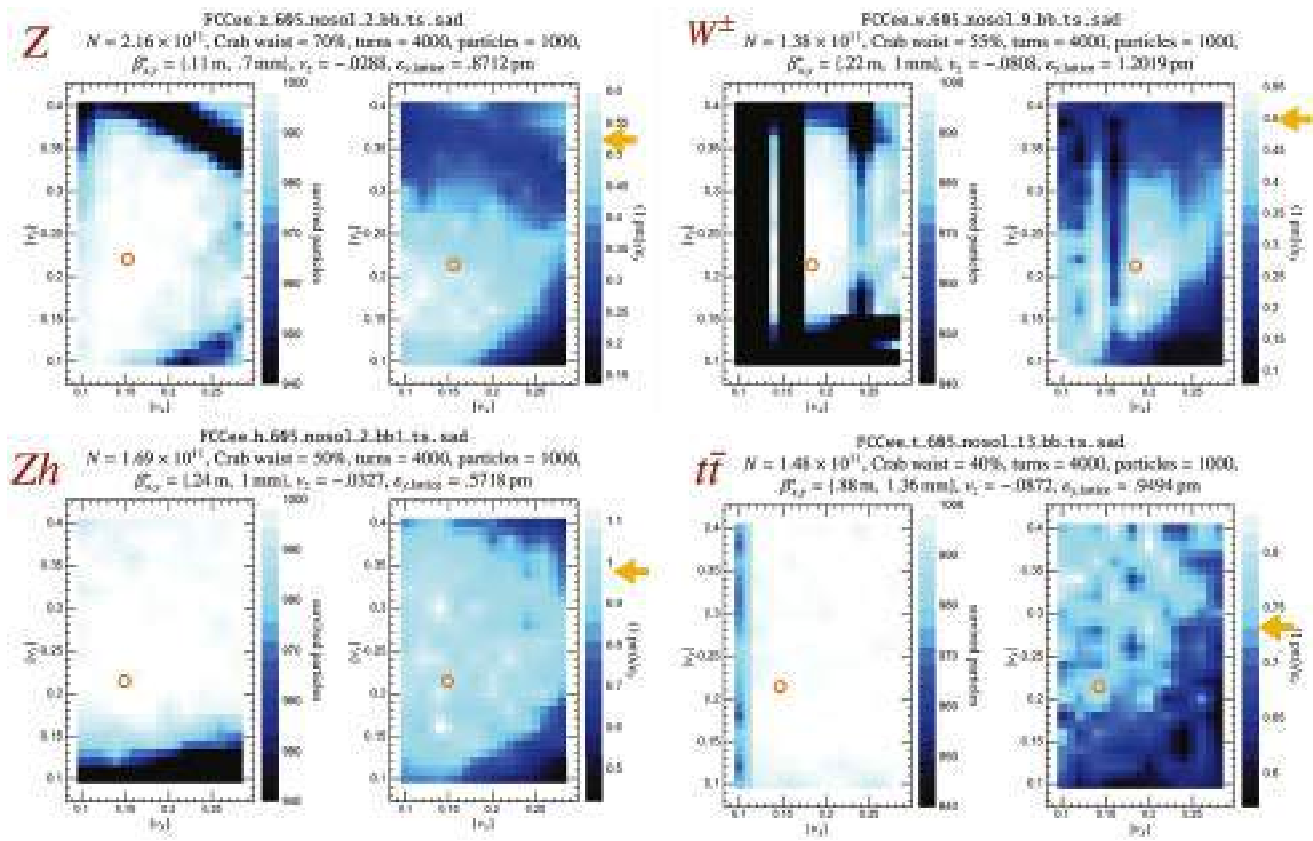


Fig. 1.3 The tune scan of the beam-beam effect with the full lattice, upper-left: Z, upper-right: WW, lower-left: ZH, lower-right: $\mathrm{t\bar{t}}$. At each energy, the left/right plots show the beam loss/vertical emittance blowup, respectively. The whiter areas correspond to longer lifetimes and higher luminosity. At the Z and WW, a strong resonance line $Q_x + 2Q_y - Q_s = \text{int.}$ is seen. Also, at WW, strong vertical lines appear at $Q_x + nQ_s = \text{int.}$, $(n = 1, 2)$. The red circles show the design tunes. Each orange arrow on the colour scale of the blowup indicates the level at the design working point

will be the smallest at Z, namely 0.75 pm, including the vertical emittance generated by the interaction point (IP) solenoid, ~ 0.43 pm. If such a small lattice vertical emittance must be achieved at the Z pole, the lattice emittance at higher energies should be reduced to a comparable level. The contribution to the vertical emittance from the detector solenoid of field B_z scales as B_z^5/E^3, while the emittance from synchrotron radiation in the arcs increases as E^2 so that it will be easier to achieve the same level of vertical lattice emittance at higher energies. We note that the vertical emittances from the lattice, $\varepsilon_{y,\text{lattice}}$, in Table 1.2 are smaller than those in the CDR, where they had been chosen as 2% of the horizontal emittance in collision at each energy, and no distinction had been made between lattice and collision emittances. At ZH, the lattice vertical emittance is required to be smaller than 0.65 pm, which is even smaller than at the Z. However, at the Z there is the large, inevitable vertical emittance contribution from the detector solenoid and its compensation by anti-solenoids, of ~ 0.43 pm, whose relative importance decreases with energy as $\sim 1/E^5$, so that the emittance from the rest of the ring can still be larger at ZH than at Z.

Tune scans for the lattices at the different working points are plotted in Fig. 1.3. It is interesting to note that the resonance $Q_x + 2Q_y - Q_s = \text{int.}$ disappears at ZH and $\mathrm{t\bar{t}}$. One may speculate that it is due to the faster damping rate at higher energies, but it is not. It has been found that even if the energy of the ZH lattice is reduced to the WW energy, this resonance does not appear at all. So, this resonance seems to be related to the lattice itself.

Figure 1.4 shows the vertical emittance in the collision and the beam lifetime as functions of the lattice emittance at each energy. The parameters in Table 1.2 are optimised within the range over which the lifetime due to nonlinear lattice and beamstrahlung is much longer than the luminosity lifetime. However, it is important to note that neither machine errors nor corrections are included in this calculation. The resulting lifetime for the lattice and beamstrahlung may seem long at some energies, such as Z. More luminosity may be obtained by increasing the bunch current, but it was decided not to push the parameters and leave some room for future improvements. Considering that the luminosity simulations do not yet include machine errors and corrections, leaving some margin appears reasonable for this design study phase.

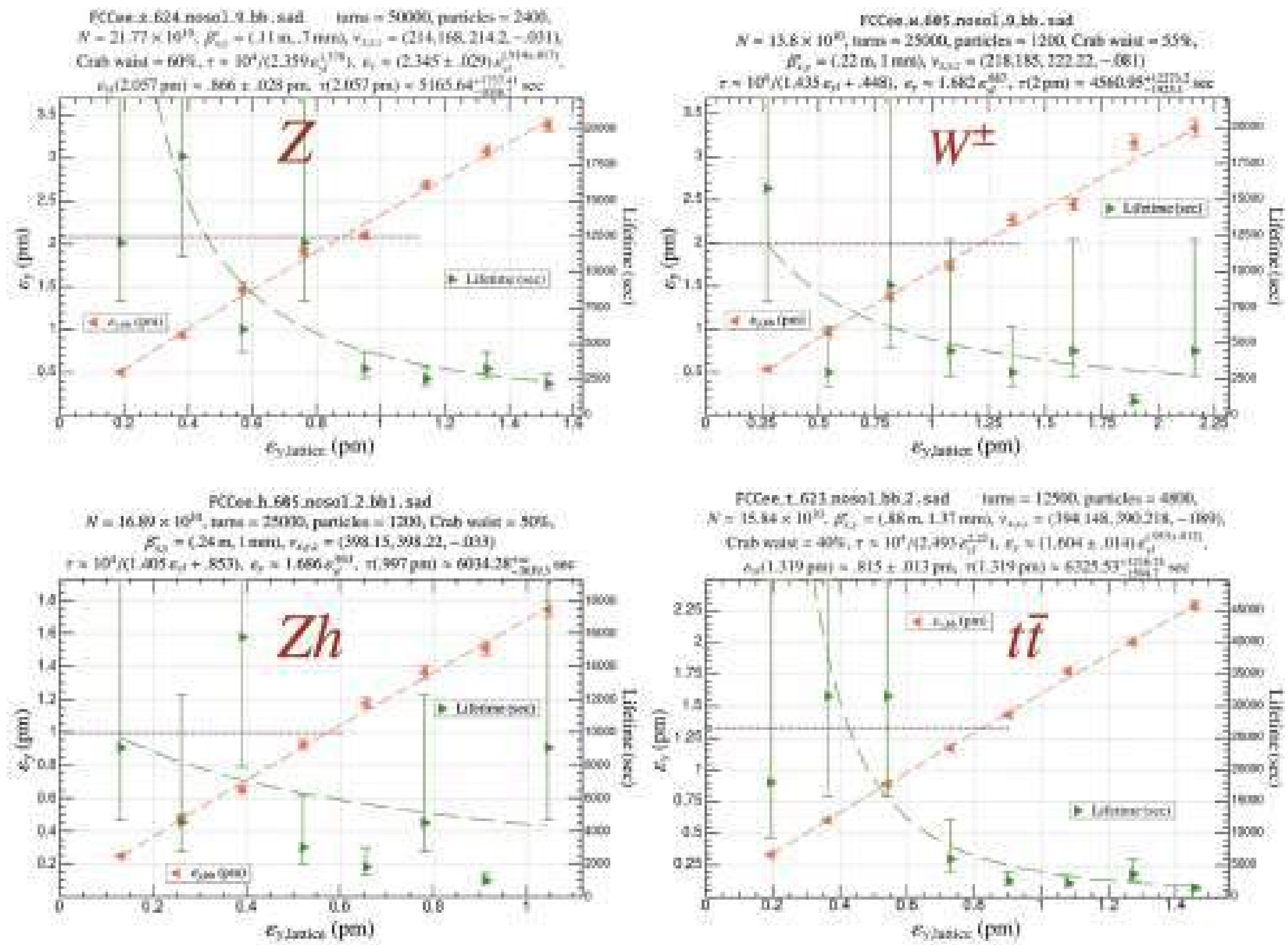


Fig. 1.4 Results of beam-beam tracking with lattice and beamstrahlung for each energy of FCC-ee. Each plot shows the vertical emittance after collision (red) and the lifetime (green) against the lattice vertical emittance at each collision energy. The purple horizontal dashed line shows the target vertical emittance at collision, where the vertical emittance of the strong beam is set at. These results with SAD as well as the DA have been reproduced by independent simulations with XSUITE

1.2.1 Arc optics

The arc FODO cell phase advance at lower energies (Z, WW) is 90°/90° with twice the cell length (long 90/90) of the ZH and $t\bar{t}$ machine, as shown in Fig. 1.5. Twin aperture dipoles and quadrupoles are used in the arcs. The separation between the two beams is 35 cm. Multi-family $-I$-paired sextupoles are deployed in the arc for global chromatic correction, respecting the fourfold superperiodicity. This multifamily scheme provides great flexibility for controlling additional parameters such as the chromatic behaviour at the IP or RF, and the dynamic aperture.

1.2.2 Experiment insertion optics

The critical photon energy of incoming synchrotron radiation from the dipoles in the interaction region is kept below 100 keV at $t\bar{t}$ up to ~ 450 m upstream of the IP, as in Ref. [19]. There are 32 sextupoles in the interaction regions: 2 per side and per IP $\times$ 2 sides $\times$ 4 IPs $\times$ 2 beams. The optics uses the 'virtual' crab sextupoles scheme, using the vertical local chromaticity correction sextupoles as described in [20].

The lattice assumes a perfect solenoid compensation with counter-solenoids between the face of the last quadrupole (QC1L1/R1) and the IP ('local scheme'). This scheme guarantees a perfect achromatic coupling correction with no leak of vertical orbit and dispersion to the outside. It is known that this scheme also guarantees the perfect removal of harmful beam-beam effects coupled to the chromatic coupling, from which SuperKEKB has been suffering so far. The detector solenoid together with the described compensation scheme, due to dispersion and synchrotron radiation generated in the different solenoid fields with crossing angle, results in a vertical emittance of 0.43 pm at the Z. This contribution is included in the lattice emittance numbers presented in Table 1.2.

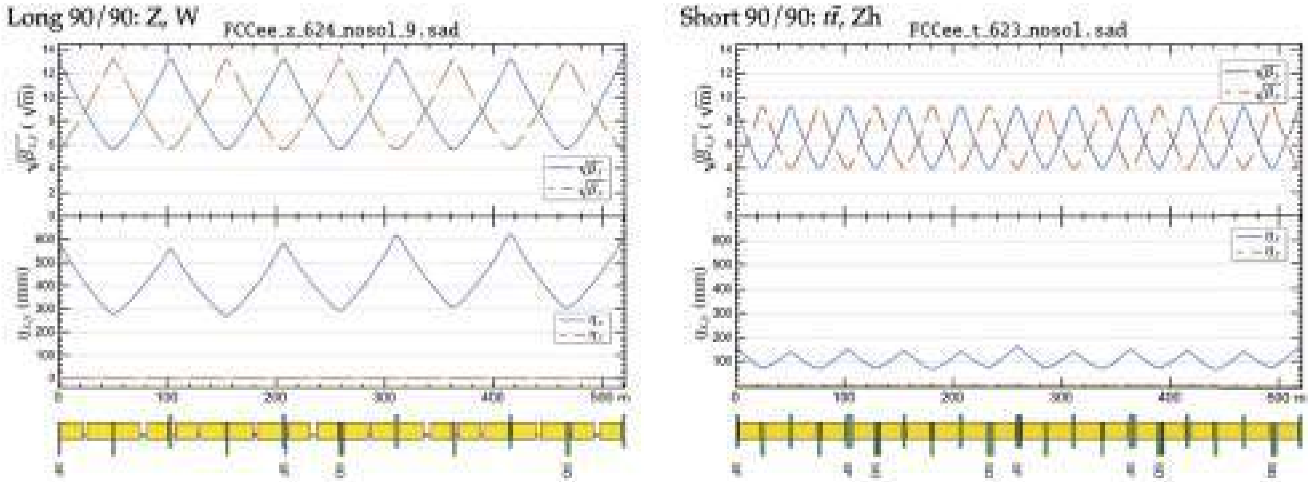


Fig. 1.5 Optics for the arc cell: Z/W operation modes (left) and Zh/t$\bar{\text{t}}$ operation modes (right). Labels show the $-I$ paired sextupoles

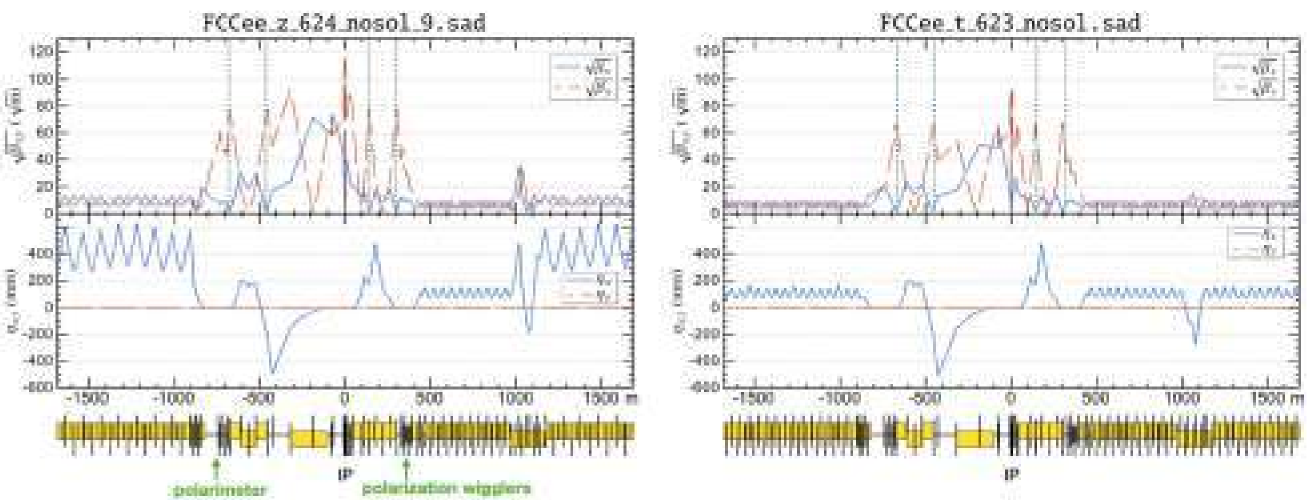


Fig. 1.6 Layout and optics for the experiment straight section: Z/W operation modes (left) and ZH/t$\bar{\text{t}}$ operation modes (right). This section includes sections for an inverse-Compton polarimeter and polarisation wigglers. The vertical lines show the location of the sextupoles for vertical local chromaticity correction and crab waist

The optics of the experiment LSS incorporates the polarisation wigglers and a space for a Compton polarimeter. The latter is essential to detect the spin precession angle at each IP to provide additional constraints for the beam energy calibration.

The optics for the experimental straight sections (short long straight section — SLSS) is shown in Fig. 1.6.

1.2.3 Technical insertion optics

A universal optics for all technical insertions (LLSS) is illustrated in Fig. 1.7 (left picture). This optics ensures a perfect 4-fold superperiodicity. The injection and extraction section at Point B is discussed in Sect. 1.8. In this subsection, the collimation and RF insertions are described.

Collimation insertion optics A global beam halo collimation system will be required in the FCC-ee to protect the machine hardware from unavoidable beam losses and for detector background control. Two global collimation systems are foreseen: one betatron collimation system to remove large amplitude particles and one momentum cleaning section to intercept particles with a significant momentum deviation. Both systems are foreseen to be located in the LSS at PF, as shown in Fig. 1.2. Additional collimation will be located in each interaction region (IR) and is described in Sect. 1.6.4.

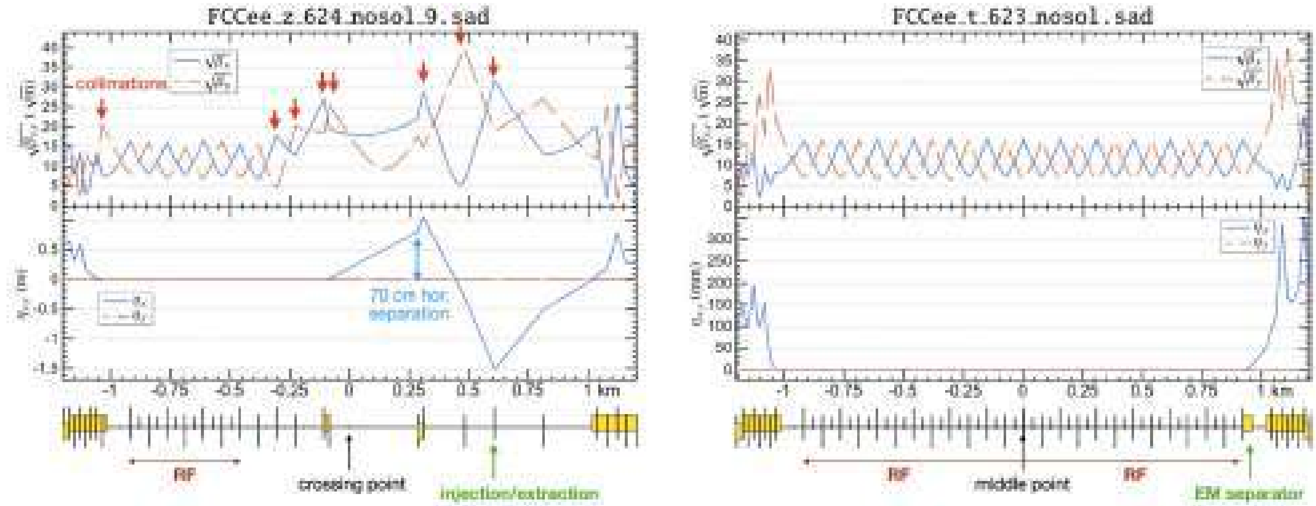


Fig. 1.7 Layout and optics for LLSS: Z/W operation modes for RF, injection/extraction, collimation (left) and ZH/$t\bar{t}$ operation modes for RF (right). The left optics is identical for all four LLSSs at Z/W. Red arrows indicate possible locations of collimators for the case where this optics is implemented in the collimation straight. Betatron collimators are located in the first half of the insertion, with zero dispersion, and the momentum collimators in the second half. The left optics, also used for the RF section at Z and WWW energies, is replaced by the right optics at ZH/$t\bar{t}$ for the common-RF scheme with an electromagnetic separator. The space available for the RF components is 1890 m, except for the intermediate quadrupoles

The layout and optics for the betatron and momentum collimation section is based on the universal optics of Fig. 1.7. Betatron collimation is performed in the first half of the insertion, where the dispersion is null, while momentum collimation is carried out in the second half, where the dispersion is nonzero.

A beam crossing section with a length of 200 m is located at the centre of the insertion, where the incoming beam will cross from the outside to the inside of the ring. The betatron collimation is installed upstream of the crossing, whereas the momentum collimation is located downstream. The optics is matched to obtain collimator half-gaps of more than 2 mm for the required betatron cuts in units of beam sigma. Moreover, the horizontal dispersion is kept low in the betatron collimation section to avoid the collimators there becoming the momentum bottleneck. In the momentum collimation section, the ratio of the horizontal dispersion and β-function is matched such that the collimators there can provide a sufficiently small momentum cut without becoming the aperture bottleneck.

The collimation settings and performance of the collimation system is presented in Sect. 1.5 and R&D challenges for the collimators are described in Sect. 3.6.3.

RF insertion optics Two long-long straight sections (LLSS) of roughly 2000 metres in length will be used for SRF systems. In particular, the LLSS at PL will house the booster RF systems and LLSS PH will house the main ring SRF systems as indicated in Fig. 1.2. The layouts of these insertions are based on initial models for the 400 and 800 MHz cryomodules, which are based on existing cryomodules at CERN. These cryomodule models have not yet been optimised for the FCC-ee.

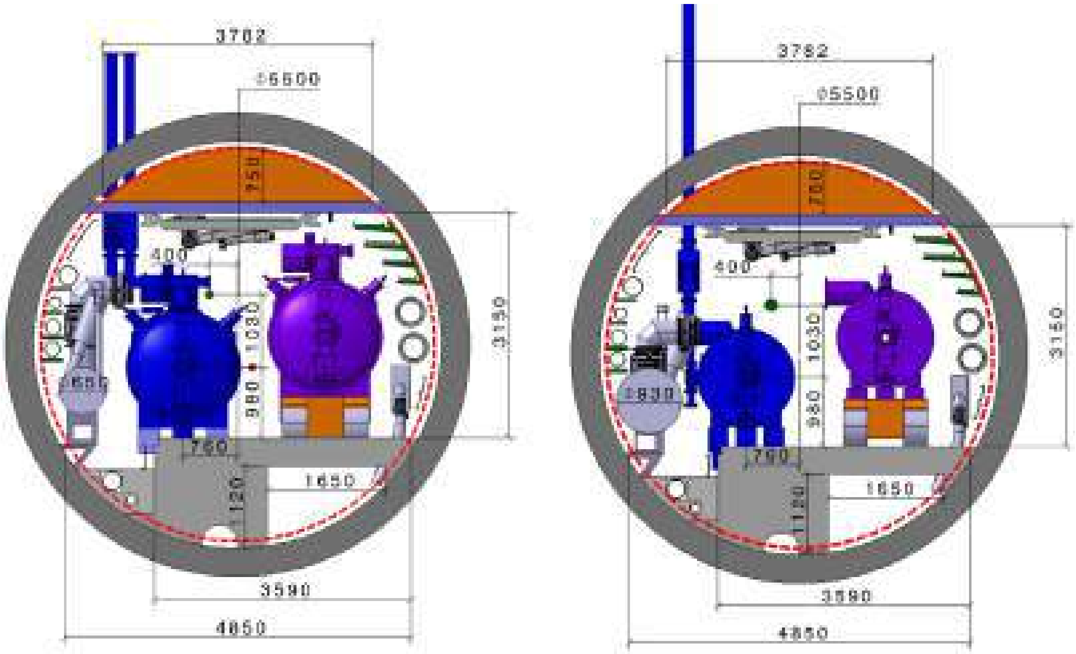
The requirements on the SRF insertions include:

- accommodate the required number of SRF cavities into the 2032 metre long straight section; the details of the SRF systems can be found in Sect. 3.4.
- provide a beam crossing, e.g., the beam entering on the outside of the tunnel leaves the LLSS on the inside of the tunnel.
- minimise synchrotron radiation reaching the SRF cavities.
- provide the appropriate focusing and diagnostics to control the beam through the SRF cavities.

The layout and optics of the RF section for Z/W and ZH/$t\bar{t}$ operation are shown in the two pictures of Fig. 1.7, respectively. As evidenced by the right picture, for ZH and $t\bar{t}$ running, the universal technical insertion optics cannot be maintained in the collider RF straight.

An effort was made to ensure that the SRF systems, along with the accelerators, the booster and e^+e^- main rings, and the technical infrastructure required, could be accommodated in the 5.5 metre diameter tunnel that is used elsewhere in the collider arcs and other LLSS.

Example 400 MHz and 800 MHz cryomodule designs are shown in Sect. 3.4.11. Figures 1.8 and 1.9 present tunnel cross sections including SRF cryomodules at PH and PL, respectively.



(a) 400 MHz SRF cryomodules (b) 800 MHz SRF cryomodules

Fig. 1.8 Tunnel cross sections with 400 MHz (left) and 800 MHz SRF cryomodules (right) for the collider rings at point PH. The cryomodule on the right side of the tunnel indicates the transport path

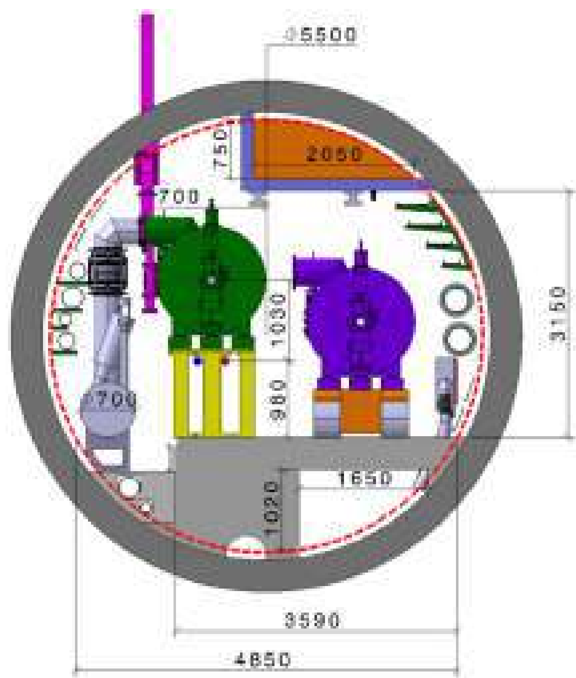


Fig. 1.9 Tunnel cross section with 800 MHz SRF cryomodule for the booster ring at PL. The cryomodule on the right side of the tunnel indicates the transport path

1.3 Impact of misalignments and field errors

Lattice imperfections may restrict the performance of the FCC-ee collider by affecting momentum acceptance (MA), dynamic aperture (DA), beam lifetime, luminosity at the interaction points (IPs), emittance blow-up, injection efficiency, polarisation, energy calibration, and machine protection. The feasibility of the FCC-ee operation in the presence of realistic imperfections is studied via computer simulations.

Table 1.3 Arc alignment and strength tolerances. These values correspond to the 1σ standard deviation for a Gaussian distribution truncated at 2.5σ. Quadrupoles and sextupoles are placed on top of common girders

Element	$\sigma_{x/y}$ [µm]	$\sigma_{\theta/\psi/\phi}$ [µrad]	$\Delta k/k$ [10^{-4}]
Arc quads & sext.	50	50	2
Dipoles	1000	1000	2
Girders	150	150	-
BPMs-to-quad	100	-	-

Table 1.4 Preliminary IR alignment tolerances, determined with reduced arc misalignments of 100 µm and neglecting BPM misalignments

Element	$\sigma_{x/y}$ [µm]	σ_{θ} [µrad]
Final Doublet (FD) quads	10	10
IR quads (excluding FD)	100	100
Sextupoles	30	30

Early studies [21, 22] already indicated that linear optics corrections alone, as are applied, e.g., in the LHC [23], do not ensure a good DA. The tuning simulations need to be extended by beam-based alignment (BBA) techniques and dispersion-free steering (DFS), as was the case for LEP [24, 25] and at the SLC [26, 27]. In addition, starting with relaxed, or even ballistic, optics in the interaction regions (IRs), allows establishing a circulating beam in the uncorrected machine, as an intermediate step towards the collision optics [28]. Ballistic optics was also used for the triplet alignment at the SLC [29, 30].

The currently considered alignment and magnetic tolerances for the FCC-ee magnets and relevant beam instrumentation are discussed in Sect. 1.3.1. The preliminary tolerances on the magnetic field quality are described in Sect. 1.3.4. The field quality tolerances likely require dedicated correction circuits, and further studies are needed to finalise these. A first look at alignment tolerances for the Interaction Regions (IRs) is reported below and in Sect. 2.3.4.

Simulations should, as much as possible, replicate the actual steps to be followed during FCC-ee commissioning, as described in Sect. 2.3.4. Detailed descriptions of the different commissioning steps are presented in Sects. 2.3.4 and 1.3.3. The simulations are mostly carried out for the baseline Global Hybrid Correction (GHC) lattice [31] of Sect. 1.2. In general, the alternative Local Chromatic Correction (LCC) lattice [32], described in Sect. 1.10.1, is less sensitive to lattice imperfections in the arcs.

Only the optics for Z operation has been studied in depth so far. This optics, with smallest β_y^*, is considered the most difficult case. Indeed, earlier simulations with the code MADX indicated that the $t\bar{t}$ optics was easier to tune. The impact of errors on the optics for H, WW and $t\bar{t}$ will be thoroughly studied in the future.

1.3.1 Main tolerances for magnets and beam instrumentation

The target alignment and magnetic strength tolerances for the arc elements are compiled in Table 1.3.

It is assumed that the group of quadrupole and sextupole magnets located between the main arc dipoles are supported by a common girder. Therefore, the total misalignment of these elements needs to take into account the independent alignment errors of the girder and of the elements on the girder.

The tolerance quoted for the BPM-to-quadrupole alignment refers to the offset between the electric and magnetic centres of the BPM and the quadrupole, respectively. Simulations have shown that by applying Beam Based Alignment (BBA), the initial BPM-to-quadrupole alignment tolerance could be relaxed to 150 µm, if required.

The final-doublet quadrupoles, most of the other IR quadrupoles and the IR sextupoles will require tighter alignment tolerances than the arc components. Table 1.4 presents a preliminary set of tolerances for the IR magnets. Details are discussed in Sect. 2.3.4.

Spin dynamics studies demonstrate that, for most error seeds and after orbit correction only, with rms alignment errors of 100 µm in the arcs and 25 µm in the IR, the stringent energy calibration demands can be met. Section 1.7.1 provides further information.

Table 1.5 summarises the arc BPM performance requirements. DA studies using the Xsuite code indicate that the phase advance should be measured with a resolution better than 10^{-3} 2π [33]. Simulated optics measurements based on a turn-by-turn technique demonstrate that this goal is achieved in the arcs using 50,000 turns and a BPM resolution of 1 µm [34]. To sustain betatron oscillations for 50,000 turns it is mandatory to use an AC dipole as in RHIC and at the LHC [35–41]. Location and design specifications of the AC dipoles still need to be defined.

Table 1.5 Arc BPM performance specifications

Closed orbit resolution	0.1 µm
Turn-by-turn (TbT) position resolution	1 µm
Number of turns in TbT mode	50,000

Table 1.6 Location of arc magnet correctors and BPMs

Device	Location
Horizontal orbit corrector	Embedded at the edge of the main dipole next to main quadrupole
Vertical orbit corrector	Embedded at the sextupole or stand-alone
Quadrupolar corrector	Trim coil in all main quadrupoles
Skew quadrupole	Embedded at the sextupole
BPM (H & V)	Attached to the main quadrupole

Table 1.7 Median rms values of several optics parameters before (after sextupole ramping) and after linear optics correction (nominal lattice). $\Delta\psi$ stands for phase advance deviations between nearby BPMs

Parameter	Before correction (rms)	After correction (rms)
horizontal orbit (µm)	120.2	120.5
vertical orbit (µm)	217.5	217.6
$\Delta\beta_x/\beta_x$ (%)	7.41	0.29
$\Delta\beta_y/\beta_y$ (%)	15.79	2.81
ΔD_x (mm)	57.79	0.28
ΔD_y (mm)	62.24	2.80
ε_h (nm)	0.72	0.71
ε_v (pm)	26.01	0.57
horiz. $\Delta\psi$ $[2\pi]$	1.1×10^{-2}	2.9×10^{-4}
vert. $\Delta\psi$ $[2\pi]$	1.9×10^{-2}	2.3×10^{-3}
Re f_{1001}	4.9×10^{-2}	1.7×10^{-4}
Im f_{1001}	4.4×10^{-2}	5.2×10^{-5}
Re f_{1010}	3.7×10^{-2}	1.3×10^{-4}
Im f_{1010}	3.7×10^{-2}	1.3×10^{-4}

In the IR, the sextupoles used for the local chromatic correction represent one of the most critical places where the phase advance must be determined to within $10^{-4}\ 2\pi$. By using only BPMs next to the defocusing quadrupoles in the region of interest and under the same measurement assumptions, this target is achieved, too. The BPM performance requirements so far still need to be validated given transverse coupling and non-linear measurements.

The need for orbit stability determines the closed orbit measurement resolution. For BBA performance, a closed-orbit BPM resolution of 1 µm suffices for optimal results as is described in Sect. 2.3.4.

1.3.2 Location of arc corrector magnets and BPMs

Table 1.6 reports the baseline locations of arc magnets and BPMs. The skew quadrupole embedded in the sextupole magnet generates 65×10^{-4} units of skew octupole at 10 mm when powered at its maximum strength. This presents a concern for the DA and requires further studies with realistic distributions of the skew quadrupole strengths.

Tuning studies performed using the GHC lattice have demonstrated that placing the BPMs attached to quadrupoles yields better results than when attached to sextupoles.

Table 1.7 summarises the closed-orbit deviations, beta beating, and spurious dispersion errors before and after the linear optics correction. The simulated dynamic aperture and momentum acceptance are presented in Sect. 1.3.3.

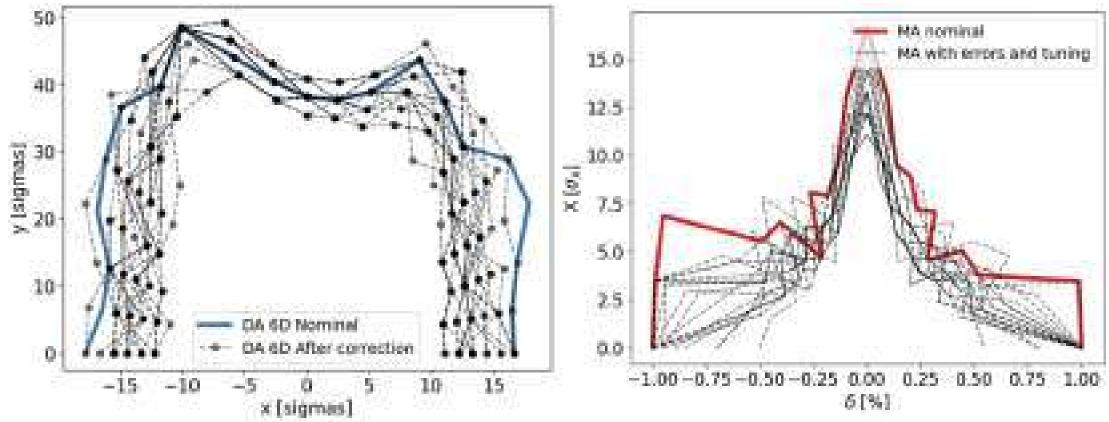


Fig. 1.10 DA (left) and MA (right) after linear optics corrections having used the errors described in Table 1.3, which neglect IR errors and magnetic multipolar errors, for betatron tunes of 217.77 and 220.369

Table 1.8 Values of IP optics parameters after a global correction for the nominal lattice from simulations that did not include any IR errors, nor dedicated IP corrections

Parameter at the IP	After correction (rms)
$\Delta\beta_x/\beta_x$ (%)	0.34
$\Delta\beta_y/\beta_y$ (%)	3.08
ΔD_x (mm)	0.003
ΔD_y (mm)	0.001
Re f_{1001}	6.5×10^{-6}
Im f_{1001}	1.7×10^{-5}
Re f_{1010}	1.6×10^{-5}
Im f_{1010}	2.2×10^{-5}

1.3.3 Performance after global optics tuning

Figure 2.5 shows the general sequence of the commissioning steps to be followed in FCC-ee. First orbit threading steps require the sextupole magnets to be switched off. However, a reduced dynamic aperture for this configuration [42, 43] renders this approach impractical for the baseline optics. A new optics has been designed with both quadrupoles and sextupoles switched off near the IP [44]. This optics features a lower natural chromaticity, lower beta functions in the IR, no synchrotron radiation in the final doublet (FD), and it allows establishing a straight reference trajectory across the IP in the absence of focusing elements. This is why this optics is named ballistic. Refined optics measurements are not possible immediately after threading, but dispersion-free steering (DFS) is effective at allowing the commissioning to then proceed with beam-based alignment (BBA). Global optics corrections are applied iteratively as the optics transitions to the collision optics, following a β^* squeeze. Various relaxed optics have been developed, e.g., Ref. [45]. The optics commissioning is further detailed in Sect. 2.3.4 and in Ref. [28].

For the optics at Z energy (GHC v22), the dynamic aperture and momentum acceptance simulated by PyAT after global corrections, including only arc errors, are presented in Fig. 1.10. Synchrotron radiation and tapering are included in these simulations, which were so far carried out only for the Z mode optics. While alignment errors do not significantly affect the vertical DA, some seeds experience a clear degradation in the horizontal DA, and all seeds suffer from a reduced momentum acceptance (MA). These degradations could significantly affect lifetime and injection efficiency. Dedicated nonlinear corrections will be required at this stage, despite the fact that non-linear aberrations have not yet been introduced in the simulations. Tables 1.7 and 1.8 summarise the residual orbit and optics errors after global corrections.

In the absence of IR errors, the IP optics parameters are under control thanks to the global corrections, yet they are at the edge of the imposed tolerances. For example, a vertical IP dispersion D_y^* of 1 µm was determined as the tolerance for a 5% increase of the vertical beam size [46], and a 3% β-beating causes a measurable luminosity loss.

Transverse coupling is characterised via the sum and difference resonance driving terms, f_{1010} and f_{1001}, see e.g., Ref. [47]. Early tolerance estimates on the average values of f_{1010} and f_{1001} pointed at a few 10^{-3} [48]. However, a specific tolerance for errors in the IP itself is still to be quantified.

Table 1.9 Preliminary bare field quality tolerances, without correction, in units of 10^{-4} at a reference radius of 1 cm, inferred from 6D tracking studies for the GHC Z lattice

Error	Arc dipoles		Arc quadrupoles		Arc sextupoles	
	Random	Systematic	Random	Systematic	Random	Systematic
b_3	0.25	0.1	1.5	1.5	—	—
a_3	—	—	1	2	—	—
b_4	0.5	0.25	—	—	—	—
a_4	—	—	—	—	30	25
b_5	0.3	0.1	—	—	36	25
a_5	—	—	—	—	30	25
b_6	—	—	1	0.5	—	—
	IR Dipoles		IR quadrupoles			
	Random	Systematic	Random	Systematic		
b_3	1	1	—	—		
b_4	—	—	0.1	0.4		
a_4	—	—	—	—		
b_5	1.5	0.6	—	—		
a_5	—	—	—	—		

Table 1.10 Preliminary bare field quality tolerances for arc dipoles, considering top-up injection without correction, in 10^{-4} units at a reference radius of 1 cm, deduced from 6D tracking studies, for the GHC Z lattice

Error	On-axis injection arc dipoles		Hybrid injection arc dipoles	
	Random	Systematic	Random	Systematic
b_3	—	0.12	—	0.14
b_4	—	0.07	—	0.15
b_5	—	0.07	—	0.1

These observations point to the need for robust IP tuning and luminosity optimisation techniques. Pertinent studies are described in Sect. 2.3.4.

1.3.4 Tolerances on magnet field quality

The field quality tolerances for the collision optics and also during top-up injection are studied using 6D tracking simulations with XSUITE, by exploring] limits of non-linear field quality imperfections added to the ideal machine. These studies incorporate various random and systematic relative field errors in dipole, quadrupole, and sextupole magnets within the arcs and in the interaction regions (IRs), along with beam-beam kicks and synchrotron radiation. This ongoing work complements previous studies [43, 49, 50].

Field error tolerances are defined as the value at which a noticeable change is observed in dynamic aperture (DA) or momentum acceptance (MA). Results for 'nominal' colliding beams with the GHC lattice are summarised in Table 1.9. The deterioration of the simulated injection efficiency by 10% or more is used as an additional criterion to define field quality tolerances. Findings for top-up injected beams are presented in Table 1.10. The top-up injection studies consider both the baseline on-axis injection ($\delta p/p$ offset: 0.95%) and also a hybrid injection mode ($\delta p/p$ offset: 0.85%, x offset: 1.5 mm). The injection efficiency and DA/MA criteria yield similar tolerances for the systematic dipolar multipoles (b_3, b_4 and b_5) on the order of 10^{-5}, without any specific corrections.

These tolerances concerning magnetic design and manufacturing [51, 52] are considered challenging. Future work will explore mitigation strategies, such as utilising dedicated corrector coils in the arcs and the IRs as implemented for the LHC [53, 54]. The additional nonlinear correctors, which might require dedicated space in the lattice, would significantly relax the field quality tolerances.

1.3.5 Impact of errors on spin dynamics and polarisation

The precise beam energy measurement in FCC-ee relies on depolarising previously polarised low-intensity pilot bunches using resonant depolarisation (RDP). This method is suitable for beam energies up to about 80 GeV beam energy, above which the beam energy spread becomes too large and polarisation is expected to be lost. Section 1.7 presents more information related to the energy-calibration studies. Resonant depolarisation (RDP) requires a minimum polarisation level of approximately 10%. While the theoretical equilibrium polarisation exceeds 90%, machine errors significantly reduce the achievable polarisation. Additionally, these errors can induce a spin-tune shift that does not correspond to a genuine beam energy shift, but instead leads to an error in the beam energy inferred from the spin-tune measurement.

On the Z pole, the expected uncertainty in the measured collision energy is 100 keV. To assess the impact of misalignments on the spin dynamics, simulation studies [55] are performed using the code BMAD for an IR optics with a local solenoid compensation scheme at the Z pole energy. Arc and IR misalignments are included with varying magnitudes of misalignment errors. Sextupole strengths are ramped up in a step-wise manner, with orbit and tune corrections applied on each step. In simulation studies, up to 100 µm and 25 µm rms misalignments are applied to arc and IR magnets, respectively, along with various BPM errors detailed in Sect. 1.7.1. For the vast majority of seeds at various beam energies around the Z-pole, the resulting bias in the beam energy extracted from the spin tune stays well below 100 keV, and an equilibrium polarisation above 10% is reached. Further details are reported in Sect. 1.7.1.

Future spin dynamics studies should include even larger misalignment errors along with magnetic field imperfections, as in Table 1.3. The polarisation simulations do not yet include specific correction techniques, which could reduce the spurious spin tune shifts or increase equilibrium polarisation, such as harmonic spin matching. Furthermore, alternative optics featuring a non-local solenoid compensation scheme and the latter's impact on polarisation remain to be investigated in greater detail.

1.4 Collective effects

This section describes the impact of collective effects on the main electron and positron rings. The first subsection describes the impedance, while the second and third subsections show its impact on the beam dynamics for both non-colliding and colliding beams, respectively.

The fourth subsection discusses electron-cloud effects, which limit the bunch spacing in the collider. The last two subsections review the minor impact of intra-beam scattering and the increase in emittance due to interaction with residual gas.

1.4.1 Impedance and wakefield model

The low-energy machine, operating at 45.6 GeV, is the most affected by collective effects because of the lowest beam energy combined with the highest beam current, the lowest emittances and the longest damping times. The design of this machine is still in progress and also the coupling impedance budget is continuously evolving in parallel with the updates of the vacuum chamber components. Correspondingly, the collective effects and instability thresholds need constant revision. The latest impedance model includes vacuum chambers, collimators, bellows, taper transitions and initial models of BPMs and RF cavities.

The resistive wall (RW) beam coupling impedance of the arc vacuum chamber is one of the key contributions to be assessed. The beam pipe, shown in Fig. 1.11, with a radius b of 30 mm, is made of copper coated with a 150 nm thin layer of NEG (recently, it has been proposed to increase the thickness to 200 nm) used for pumping purposes and electron cloud suppression. There are two lateral winglets for placing synchrotron radiation absorbers. The impedance model was initially obtained with the electromagnetic code IW2D [56] in the circular vacuum chamber approximation. As a following step, the calculation has been extended to include the effect of the winglets by using appropriate form factors, which have been numerically estimated with CST Particle Studio. The results were also compared with those of the 2D electromagnetic solver VACI [57] that can simulate the geometry, including the winglets.

The collimation system is another important impedance source. The impedance model that is being evaluated accounts for the geometric dimensions, materials, and beta functions at collimator locations. Since a mechanical design of a collimator still does not exist at the moment, the geometric impedance has been evaluated assuming a linear taper with an angle of 15° to go from the collimator aperture to the chamber aperture of 30 mm.

The overall impedance of collimators, including material losses and tapers, has been obtained using CST simulations. Additionally, the resistive part of the collimators' impedance has been evaluated with IW2D using a flat chamber model. Therefore, by combining CST and IW2D results, resistive and geometric contributions can be disentangled. The resistive wall impedance of the collimators is between 5% and 10% of the vacuum chamber

Fig. 1.11 Beam pipe shape

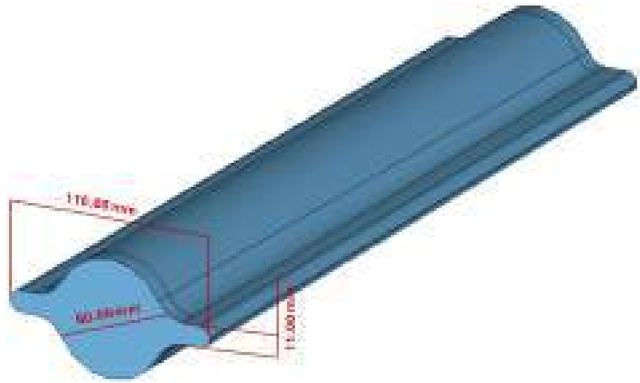
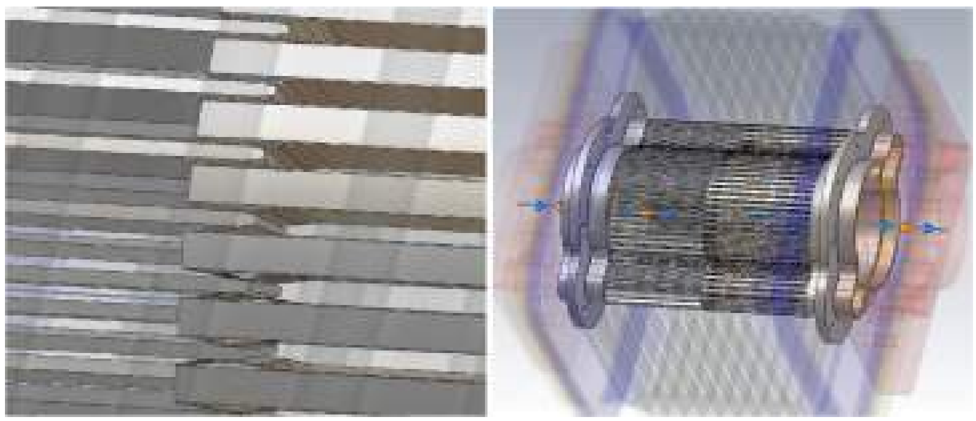


Fig. 1.12 Simulated models of FCC-ee beam vacuum chamber including bellows



contribution, depending on the material choice. The primary vertical collimator (tcp.v.b1) makes the highest contribution to this impedance source due to the very small gap.

The preliminary collimator model with linear tapers gives the largest impedance contribution in the transverse plane. An optimised design of the collimator tapers, for example, by minimising the taper angle (increasing the taper length) and considering optimised nonlinear taper modelling, is crucial.

Bellows are another important source of impedance. A crucial component of the device is the RF shielding with comb-type fingers and small electric fingers to ensure electric contact between the two sides of the shielding. These fingers are shown on the left-hand side of Fig. 1.12 for a model similar to that of SuperKEKB, designed by the vacuum group and shown on the right-hand side of the same figure. The contribution of the shielding is fundamental to suppress the low-frequency resonances due to the bellows, which would otherwise lead to a high impedance contribution.

An important aspect of the bellows' contribution to the impedance model is related to their number. For dipole arcs, quadrupoles/sextupoles sections, and including additional bellows for the RF system, injection system, collimation, etc., a total number of 10,000 devices is assumed. Other geometries are under study by the vacuum group.

Additionally, the impedance contribution due to the 400 MHz RF system has been evaluated. This comprises 132 two-cell cavities per beam, arranged in groups of 4 for each cryomodule, with 50 cm long tapers on both ends, guaranteeing a transition from 50 mm to 150 mm circular pipe inside the cryomodule. Finally, 4000 BPMs have also been taken into account.

The total impedance is shown in Fig. 1.13 for the longitudinal and transverse cases. The contribution of each device to the longitudinal and vertical dipolar impedance is displayed in Fig. 1.14.

1.4.2 Impedance induced collective effects

Longitudinal effect Below the microwave instability threshold, longitudinal wakefields result in bunch lengthening and bunch shape distortion. Above the instability threshold, the energy spread also starts growing, and the internal bunch motion becomes more turbulent. The internal bunch oscillations can be harmful to the process of reaching the nominal luminosity. However, in the FCC-ee the longitudinal dynamics is strongly affected by the beam-beam interaction with a large Piwinski angle and beamstrahlung. Both the bunch length and the energy spread increase in collision due to beamstrahlung helps mitigate the longitudinal collective effects.

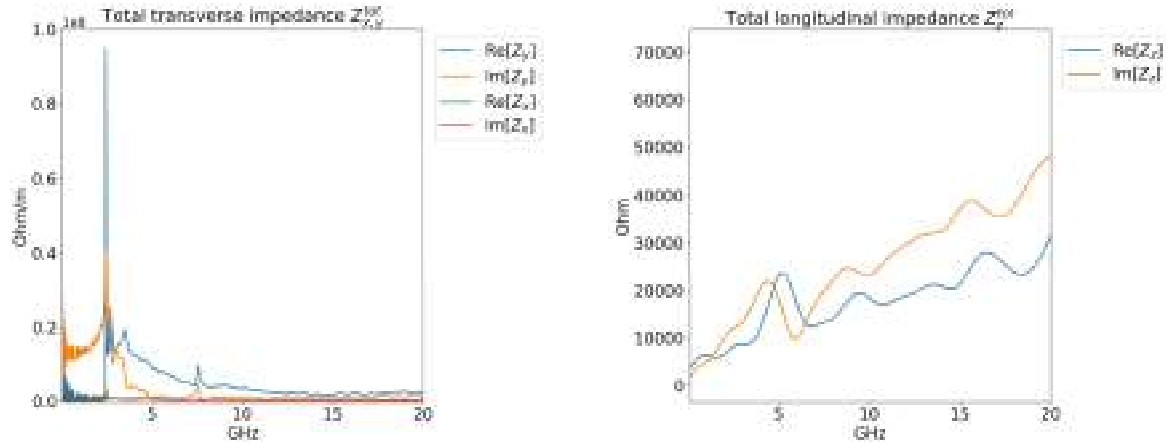


Fig. 1.13 Total longitudinal (on the right) and transverse (on the left) impedance model

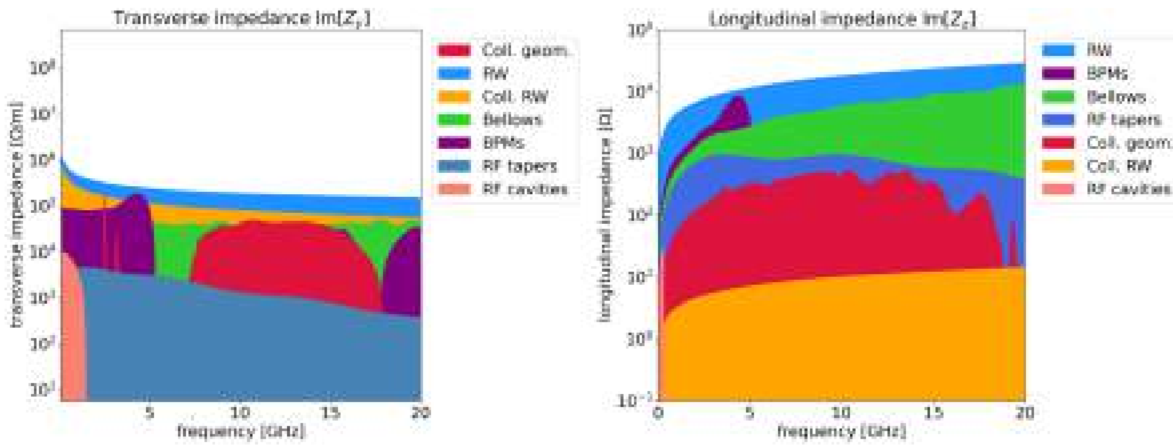


Fig. 1.14 Contribution of each device included in the model. Longitudinal impedance on the right, vertical dipolar impedance on the left

Longitudinal beam dynamics simulations have been performed with the PyHEADTAIL code [58] which was compared with other tracking codes [59, 60], for the FCC-ee case, giving excellent agreement.

Two regimes are being considered for beam dynamics studies: the single-beam mode and the colliding beams mode. Both regimes are important for collider operations. While the single-beam mode is important for the machine commissioning and tuning, the collision mode must be considered for the luminosity production runs. In the first case, the bunch length at the nominal intensity is strongly affected by the potential well distortion, but the energy spread is essentially constant. In the second case, thanks to the beamstrahlung, the potential well distortion due to the wakefield is small and the collision predominantly defines the bunch lengthening and the energy spread growth. In this condition, however, a self-consistent study considering the beam-beam effects is necessary. This aspect is discussed in Sect. 1.4.3.

Transverse effects The main effect of the short-range transverse wakefield on the single bunch dynamics is the excitation of the so-called transverse mode coupling instability (TMCI). Under certain conditions, the frequencies of some coherent transverse oscillation modes of a bunch can shift and couple together. In particular, for FCC-ee, the '0' mode shifts towards the '−1' mode. When they couple together, the instability occurs with a consequent loss of the beam (or a part thereof).

The coherent frequencies of the lowest order coherent oscillation modes can be obtained from the results of Xsuite/PyHEADTAIL with a proper Fourier analysis [61]. Additionally, it has been found that for FCC-ee the TMCI threshold depends on the longitudinal wakefield. In Fig. 1.15, left-hand side, the real part of the tune shift of the first azimuthal transverse oscillation modes normalised by the synchrotron tune Q_{s0} is shown as a function of bunch population. As can be seen, the instability threshold is about 3×10^{11}, which is well above the nominal bunch intensity. This instability is not of the 'mode coupling' type, but it is due to the single '-1' oscillation mode.

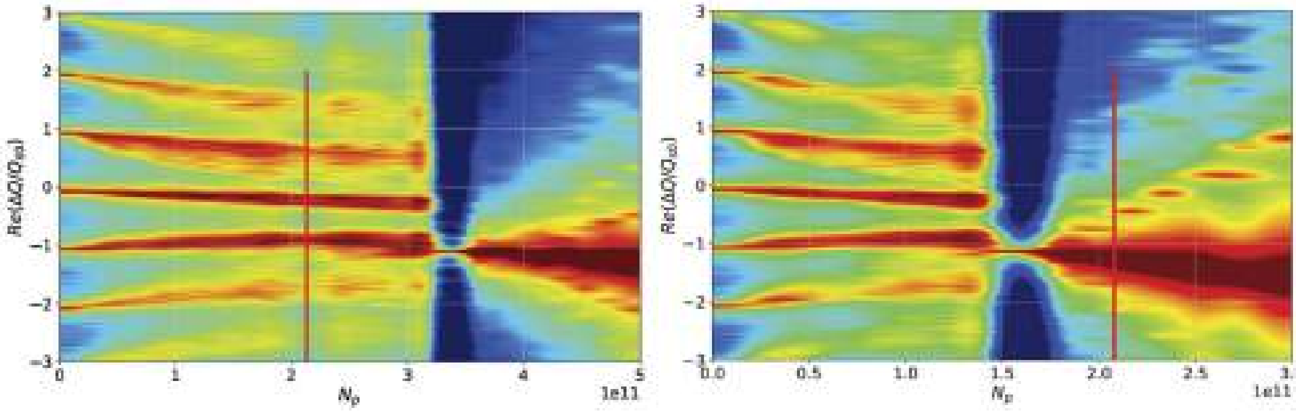


Fig. 1.15 Real part of the tune shift of the first azimuthal transverse coherent oscillation modes normalised by the synchrotron tune Q_{s0} as a function of bunch population with a bunch-by-bunch feedback system and chromaticity = 5. On the right-hand side, the impedance is multiplied by a factor of 2 to explore the margins with the current impedance model

These results were obtained without accounting for the beamstrahlung due to collisions, but a transverse damper for stabilising the coupled bunch instabilities and a value of the chromaticity equal to 5 were introduced.

The geometrical impedance of the collimators is not included, since their design is still in progress. However, to account for all devices not evaluated so far and to check for a possible upper limit on machine stability, simulations were performed under the same conditions as for the left-hand side of Fig. 1.15, but assuming an overall two times larger impedance. The results are shown in the picture on the right.

In addition to the single bunch dynamics studies, a coupled bunch instability can be excited, driven essentially by the real part of the resistive wall impedance at low frequency. Its study can be performed by considering the motion of the entire beam (not of the single bunch) as a sum of coherently coupled bunch oscillation modes. Under some conditions, the growth rate of the μ^{th} mode $(\mu = 0, 1, \ldots, N_b - 1)$ is

$$\alpha_{\mu,\perp} = -\frac{cI}{4\pi(E_0/e)Q_\beta} \sum_{q=-\infty}^{\infty} Re\left[Z_\perp\left(\omega_q\right)\right] \tag{1.12}$$

where I is the total beam current, Q_β the betatron tune, σ_τ the rms bunch length in time, and ω_q are frequencies spaced by the revolution period and depending on the coupled bunch mode excited and on chromaticity. When α_μ is positive, the corresponding mode is unstable. This occurs when the transverse impedance is evaluated at negative frequencies. The most unstable mode has a rise time of about 1.3 ms, corresponding to a few turns. This instability depends on the fractional part of the betatron tune and on chromaticity, and it can be mitigated by a bunch-by-bunch feedback system, like that used in other circular accelerators (DAΦNE, SuperKEKB, ...). Such feedback, in combination with the longitudinal wakefield, also has a mitigating effect on the TMCI. Without feedback, the TMCI threshold is expected to be below a bunch population of 1.0×10^{11}.

Finally, it must be noted that the results related to the transverse wakefield are valid in the single-beam regime, without the beamstrahlung effect. For self-consistent results in a collision, the beam-beam effects must also be included.

1.4.3 Interplay between beam-beam and beam coupling impedance effects

The x-z instability Among the new effects caused by beam-beam collisions, the large Piwinski angle causes the coherent horizontal-longitudinal (x-z) beam-beam instability to become a critical limiting phenomenon for the collider design performance [3]. Unlike impedance-induced collective instabilities, the x-z instability is driven by the beam–beam force itself. This new coherent instability also differs from the classic incoherent synchro-betatron resonances excited by the beam–beam interaction. The instability manifests itself as a horizontal beam position variation along the bunch length, similar to a head-tail instability. It limits the range of horizontal tunes where the design luminosity can be achieved.

The interplay between the beam–beam interaction, beamstrahlung and the longitudinal and transverse beam coupling impedance may affect both the x-z instability and the beam parameters in the stable betatron tune areas. It has been observed in numerical simulations that the stable areas get narrower and the stable regions on the betatron tune diagram are shifted because of the impedance-related synchrotron tune reduction. On the other

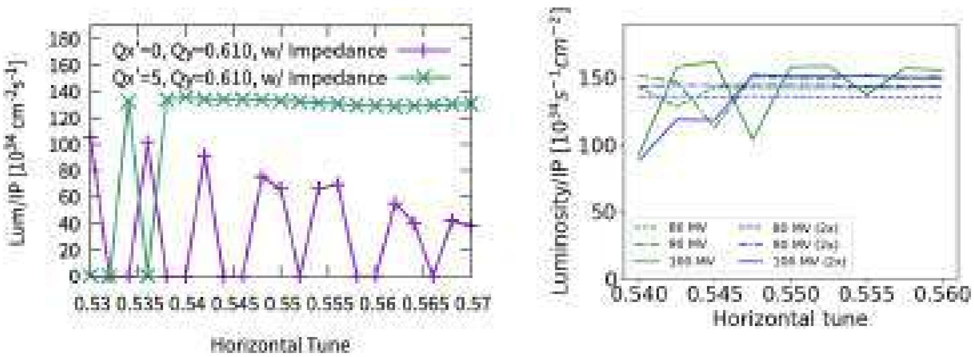


Fig. 1.16 Luminosity dependence on the horizontal tune due to the x-z instability. The left plot corresponds to the nominal configuration at the Z energy without active damper simulated by IBB [63] taking into account the effect of the strong-strong beam-beam interaction as well as transverse and longitudinal wakefields [64]. The right plot corresponds to the same configuration but with a chromaticity of 6 units, including a transverse damper featuring a damping time of 10 turns, and is obtained with XSUITE [65]. The results are shown for different RF voltages. Blue curves, marked (2x) feature an impedance twice as strong as the existing impedance model

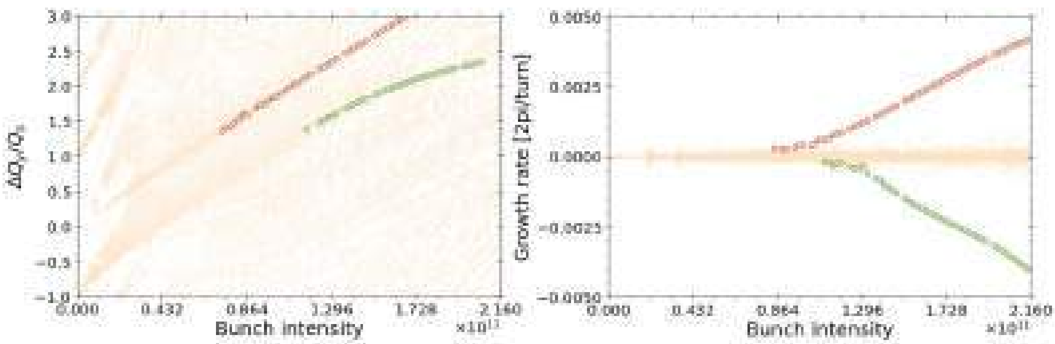


Fig. 1.17 Tune (left) and growth rate (right) for all coherent modes obtained with the circulant matrix model for the nominal configuration with varying bunch intensity without active damper or chromaticity. The impact of the longitudinal impedance is also neglected. The most unstable low-order mode of oscillation resulting from the interplay of the head-tail mode −1 with the beam-beam π-mode is highlighted in light blue

hand, the horizontal beam blow-up becomes somewhat weaker due to the synchrotron frequency spread and bunch lengthening induced by the longitudinal impedance [62].

Figure 1.16 shows the results of strong-strong beam-beam simulations, featuring the effect of both the longitudinal and transverse impedance for different horizontal tunes. The luminosity loss at each synchrotron sidebands of the horizontal half integer is clearly visible in the configuration without chromaticity. A chromaticity of 5 units is sufficient to stabilise the instability over a wide range of horizontal tune. Here, it is important to consider the impact of transient beam loading, which is stronger with the new reversed polarity operation of the double cell RF cavities at the Z energy. Different bunches will experience difference RF voltages ranging from 79 to 93 MV (Chap. 3.4). The stability has to be ensured for all bunches with a given horizontal tune. A slightly higher chromaticity (6 units) is required to stabilise the x-z instability with higher voltages (Fig. 1.16, right). When considering the existing impedance model, the horizontal tune range is constrained above ∼0.55 by bunches featuring high RF voltage. However, when considering a stronger impedance, the constraint on the horizontal tune is relaxed, thanks to the bunch lengthening by the impedance. This indicates that bunch lengthening is an effective method for mitigating this instability. An alternative mitigation consists in reducing the horizontal β^*.

The mode coupling instability of colliding beams With a vertical beam-beam tune shift larger than the synchrotron tune, it is expected that the mode coupling instability of colliding beams [66] may occur at the FCC-ee. This was confirmed with two semi-analytical models as well as with tracking simulations [67, 68]. The mechanism is illustrated in Fig. 1.17. The lower synchrotron sideband (head-tail mode −1) couples with the beam-beam π-mode leading to a strong instability. This instability can be partially mitigated by active feedback, yet a sizeable vertical chromaticity is required, as shown in Fig. 1.18. Based on these tracking simulations, it appears that a rather low vertical chromaticity (2 units) is sufficient to maintain the beam stability considering the present impedance

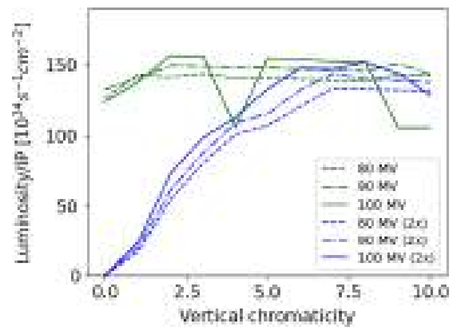


Fig. 1.18 Luminosity dependence on the vertical chromaticity, used to mitigate the mode coupling instability of colliding beams for different RF voltages. The blue curves marked (2x) feature an impedance twice as strong as the existing impedance model

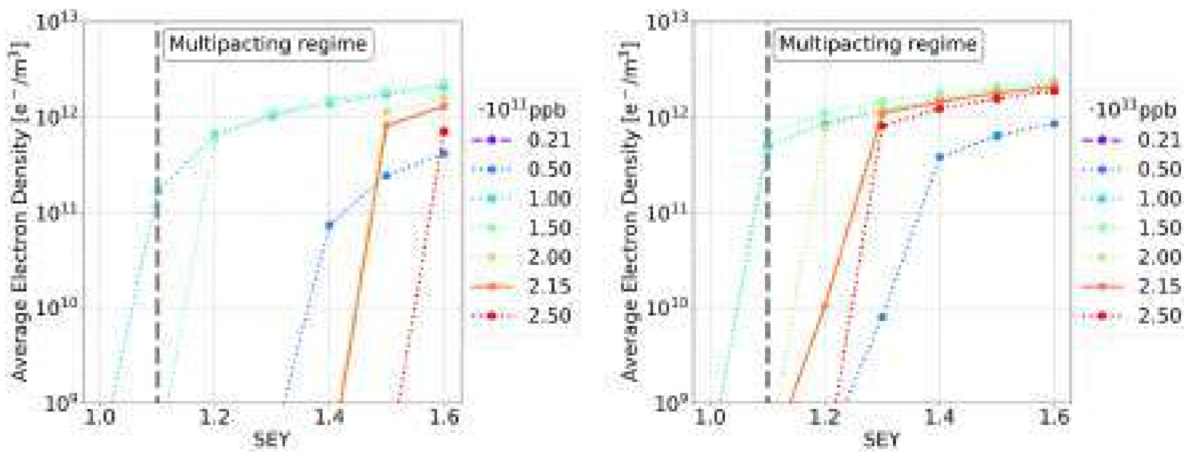


Fig. 1.19 Average electron density in the vacuum chamber versus SEY for different bunch intensities (the nominal value is shown as a solid line) in dipole (left) and quadrupole (right) magnets. The SEY multipacting threshold, considering all bunch intensities during the charge accumulation phase, is shown by the vertical dashed grey line

model. Higher chromaticities are required if an impedance larger by a factor of two is considered. It is clear that this instability constrains the vertical impedance budget.

1.4.4 Electron cloud

As observed in several accelerators [69–72], electron clouds may cause several unwanted effects, in particular beam instabilities, emittance growth, tune shifts, additional heat load on the vacuum chambers and vacuum degradation. Since electron cloud formation depends strongly on the bunch spacing, it is a concern primarily at the Z operating point, where the high beam current requires a large number of closely spaced bunches.

Electron clouds can be created by secondary electron emission through a beam-induced multipacting process, through an accumulation of photoelectrons, or a combination thereof. For their mitigation, it is important to identify the required constraints on the corresponding material properties to avoid electron cloud formation. This has been achieved by simulating the process of electron cloud formation in the beam chamber, using the PyECLOUD code [73].

Secondary electron emission Electron cloud formation strongly depends on the secondary electron yield (SEY) of the beam chamber surface, defined as the ratio between the emitted and the impinging electron currents. The tendency for electron cloud build-up for different values of the SEY has been determined in drift spaces, as well as in the presence of the main arc dipolar, quadrupolar and sextupolar fields [74].

The build-up is found to depend strongly on the bunch intensity in addition to the SEY and the bunch spacing. The bunch intensity dependence is non-monotonic, so that electron cloud formation occurs more easily with bunch intensities that are lower than the nominal intensity. In particular, the most critical intensities fall within the range of 1.0 to 1.5×10^{11} e^+ per bunch, as shown in Fig. 1.19. Since the machine relies on a top-up injection scheme, with individual injections of one-tenth of the nominal bunch population, the most critical intensities will be encountered when filling the machine. The multipacting thresholds, i.e., the highest maximum SEY guaranteed to suppress build-up, with nominal intensity as well as any intensity between 0.2×10^{11} e^+ per bunch and the nominal value of 2.14×10^{11} e^+ per bunch are summarised in Table 1.11. These results are obtained using the

Table 1.11 SEY multipacting thresholds for the main arc elements

Element	Field	Bunch population	Thresholds
Drift	-	nominal	1.4
		below nominal	1.2
Dipole	15.2 mT	nominal	1.4
		below nominal	1.0
Quadrupole	1.45 T/m	nominal	1.1
		below nominal	1.0
Sextupole	72.5 T/m^2	nominal	1.1
		below nominal	1.0

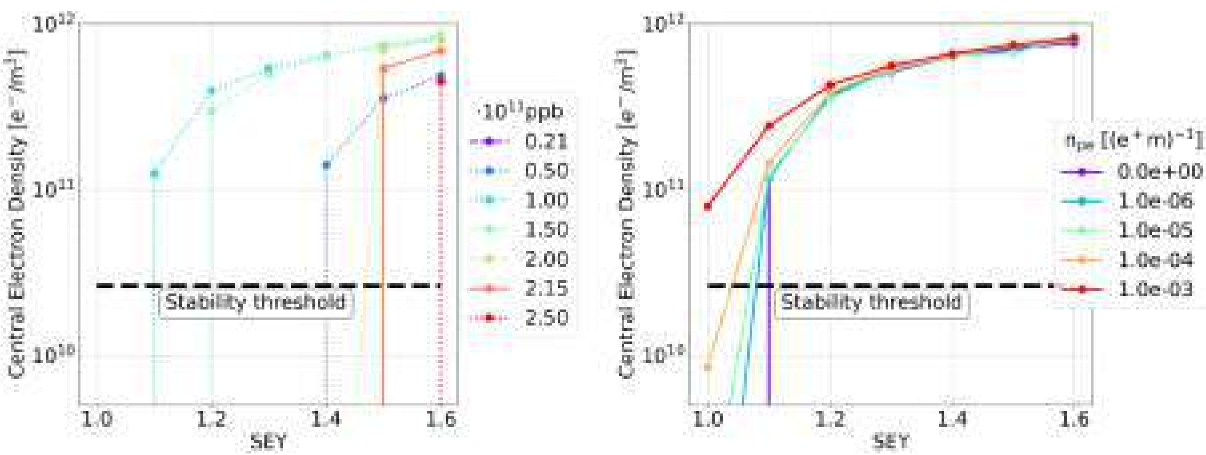


Fig. 1.20 Central electron density versus SEY in the arc dipoles for different bunch intensities (left) and for different photoelectron numbers n_{pe} (right), with the most critical bunch intensity of 1×10^{11} e^+. The theoretical stability threshold (Eq. (1.15)) is indicated by the horizontal dashed black line

so-called ECLOUD secondary emission model [75], parametrising measurements of LHC Cu co-laminated beam screen samples [76–78]. Simulations using the alternative Furman-Pivi model [79] reveal even tighter material constraints [80]. The SEY requirements, especially for intensities below the nominal value, are not guaranteed to be achieved with the planned copper surface with a thin NEG coating [81, 82]. Several mitigation measures have been considered to alleviate these constraints, as discussed below.

Photoelectron emission The previous results do not take into account the photoelectrons. These are primary electrons produced through the photoemission from the chamber walls due to the synchrotron radiation emitted by the circulating beam. Photoelectrons enhance the electron cloud build-up process and, in large quantities, can induce electron cloud effects even in the absence of beam-induced multipacting. The quantity of photoelectrons emitted is determined by the photoelectron yield (PY) of the beam chamber, defined as the ratio between the emitted photoelectrons and the number of impinging photons, along with the quantity of photons scattered into the main beam chamber.

Results from electron cloud build-up simulations (see Fig. 1.20) indicate that an acceptable number of photoelectrons is around $n_{\mathrm{pe}} = 1.0 \times 10^{-4}$ $(\mathrm{e}^+\mathrm{m})^{-1}$. The PY and the number of photoelectrons generated inside the central chamber are related through the following equation:

$$\mathrm{PY} = \frac{I n_{\mathrm{pe}}}{\phi L_{\mathrm{pipe}} e}\,, \tag{1.13}$$

where I is the beam current, ϕ is the photon flux and L_{pipe} is the perimeter of the vacuum chamber. Alternatively,

$$n_{\mathrm{pe}} = \frac{5\pi\alpha\gamma\, R\, PY}{\sqrt{3}\, L_{\mathrm{arc}}} \approx 0.08\, R\, PY\ \ [e^+\mathrm{m}]^{-1} \tag{1.14}$$

with α_e the fine-structure constant, $L_{arc} \approx 77$ km the total length of the FCC-ee arcs, γ the Lorentz factor ($\gamma \approx 90{,}000$ for Z running) and R the fraction of primary photons absorbed (possibly after multiple reflections) on the main circular part of the vacuum chamber. Preliminary ray-tracing simulations indicate that the photon flux on the central part of the chamber is in the order of $\phi = 10^{13}$ - 10^{14} photons/(cm^2·s), except immediately around the photon absorbers where an even higher flux is expected [83]. Combining this information with the results from electron cloud build-up simulations using Eq. (1.13), a limit on PY in the range 3% - 3‰ is obtained. Photoelectron yields of order 2% have been measured for NEG coated chambers [84]. For FCC-ee, many primary and reflected photons are absorbed at the photon stops or inside the winglets of the vacuum chamber, where they do not contribute to electron-cloud buildup. A new design of the photon absorbers is predicted to reduce further the photon flux inside the main circular part of the vacuum chamber [85]; see Sect. 3.2.7.

Electron cloud effects Electron cloud effects can be fully avoided only by ensuring the suppression of primary and secondary electron emission according to the constraints above. In case the properties of the vacuum chamber cannot meet these constraints, the effects of the electron cloud on the beam and the machine environment must be assessed.

The electron cloud can trigger beam instabilities as the beams pass through the dense cloud [86]. The electron cloud density corresponding to the single-bunch instability threshold can be estimated as [87–89]

$$\rho_{\text{thr}} = \frac{2\gamma Q_s \omega_e \sigma_z / c}{\sqrt{3} K Q r_e \beta_y L} \tag{1.15}$$

where

$$\omega_e = \left(\frac{N_b r_e c^2}{\sqrt{2\pi} \sigma_z \sigma_y (\sigma_x + \sigma_y)} \right)^{1/2} \tag{1.16}$$

is the electron angular oscillation frequency, $K = \omega_e \sigma_z / c$ characterises how many electrons contribute to the instability, $Q = \min(K, 7)$ is the quality factor of the effective wake field and L is the length of the particle accelerator, or the considered element. The stability threshold has also been evaluated through simulations, using the PyECLOUD-PyHEADTAIL suite [90], for drift spaces and dipole fields. The results between the theoretical estimate and the simulation studies are consistent to the level of the order of magnitude. This stability threshold must be compared with the electron cloud density close to the vacuum chamber centre before a bunch passage, as shown for the dipole magnets in Fig. 1.20. The build-up studies show that the electron density exceeds the stability threshold whenever the SEY is above the multipacting threshold in all the elements considered, except the sextupole magnets. In other words, if the material constraints are not met, beam instabilities are expected to occur. In addition, other effects caused by the interaction of the beam with a dense electron cloud, such as emittance growth, tune shift and tune spread, can also be expected.

The electron cloud impinging on the chamber surface can also cause environmental effects, such as outgassing and heat load. Build-up simulations estimate the total additional heat load in the arcs due to electron cloud to be in the order of a percentage of the synchrotron radiation power (50 MW per beam) when multipacting occurs.

Further mitigation measures If the beam chamber material cannot be made to satisfy the multipacting thresholds, further mitigation measures are needed. Since the electron cloud build-up depends strongly on the bunch spacing, various modifications to the beam train pattern can raise the multipacting thresholds and ease the material constraints.

One approach to obtain larger SEY multipacting thresholds is choosing filling schemes with larger bunch spacing. A bunch spacing of 50 ns results in SEY multipacting thresholds that are larger than or equal to 1.3 for all the arc elements considered, see Fig. 1.21. However, increasing the bunch spacing would require increasing the bunch intensity to maintain a constant beam current. Larger bunch intensities, in turn, could lead to problems due to other collective effects, such as exceeding the beam-beam tune shift limit and instabilities driven by the beam-coupling impedance [91].

Because the strictest constraints on the SEY arise during the charge accumulation phase, a filling scheme with non-uniform bunch intensities during this stage only, as discussed in Chap. 2, is sufficient to significantly relax the constraints. This approach leads to SEY multipacting thresholds over the full charge accumulation phase that are equal or close to those for the nominal bunch intensity, as seen in Fig. 1.21, since the effective spacing between bunches of intermediate intensity is significantly increased. As with the nominal bunch intensity, the lowest SEY multipacting threshold is found in the quadrupoles at 1.1. A potential concern with this approach is having bunches of significantly different intensities in the collider at the same time, which may make it difficult to find a working point that ensures stability for all bunches due to the x-z instability discussed in Sect. 1.4.3.

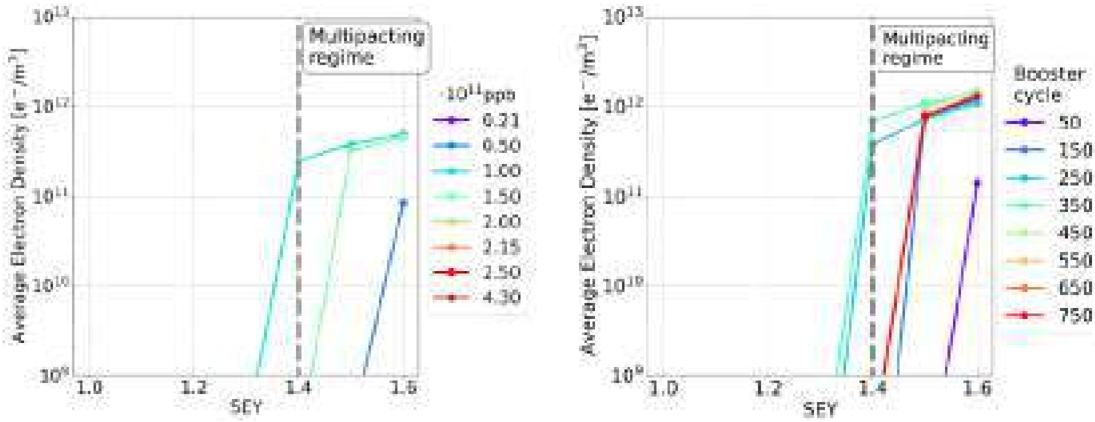


Fig. 1.21 Average electron density versus SEY in the arc dipole magnets at different stages of the charge accumulation phase with 50 ns uniform bunch spacing (left) and a filling scheme with non-uniform bunch intensity during charge accumulation (right). The SEY multipacting threshold, considering all the bunch intensities during the charge accumulation phase, is shown by the vertical dashed grey line

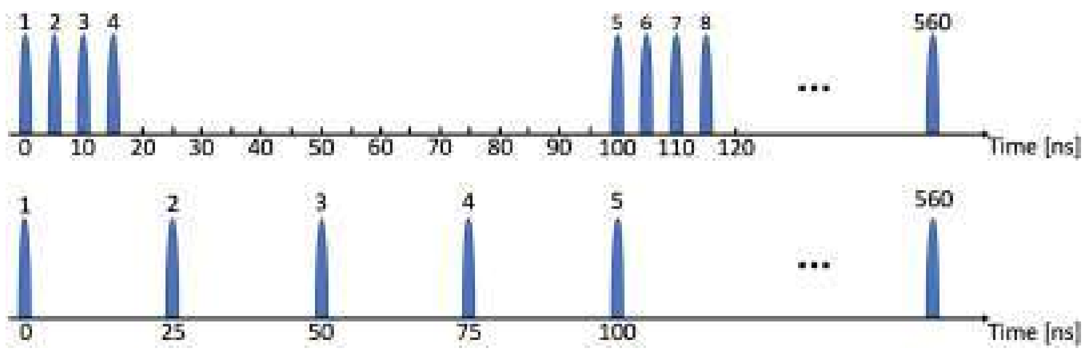


Fig. 1.22 Schematics of a non-uniform filling pattern (4e+16e) with a 5 ns bunch spacing and an internal structure consisting of 4 consecutive bunches followed by 16 empty bunch slots (top) and the nominal filling scheme with 25 ns uniform bunch spacing (bottom)

Another possibility is to use filling schemes with permanently non-uniform bunch spacing, as already successfully used for electron cloud mitigation in the LHC [92] and at the former PEP-II B factory [93]. Such filling schemes have an internal structure, with a few closely spaced bunches followed by a larger gap, which repeats itself over the duration of the train. A simulation study has been done to identify effective structures, keeping the duration and total number of bunches in the train equal to the filling pattern with uniform bunch spacing. The study shows that the largest electron cloud suppression can be achieved by reducing the bunch spacing of the closely spaced bunches as much as possible in order to maximise the length of the following gap. For example, the filling pattern shown in Fig. 1.22, using an internal structure with 5 ns bunch spacing, consisting of 4 consecutive bunches followed by 16 empty 5 ns bunch slots repeated over the full bunch train, gives good electron cloud suppression with SEY multipacting thresholds that are larger than or equal to 1.2, see Fig. 1.23. Such bunch train patterns could even allow decreasing the nominal bunch population, with a corresponding increase in the total number of bunches, while keeping the surface requirements achievable. This approach could also have the benefit of reducing the severity of other collective effects, such as beam-coupling impedance and beam-beam effects.

1.4.5 Space charge

Given the large size of the FCC-ee ring and the small emittance, the space-charge tune shift is noticeable for the Z running. The vertical space-charge tune shift is [94]

$$\Delta Q_{\mathrm{SC},y} \approx \frac{N_b r_e C}{(2\pi)^{3/2}\gamma^3\sigma_z}\left\langle \frac{\beta_y}{\sigma_y\sigma_x}\right\rangle \approx \frac{N_b r_e C}{(2\pi)^{3/2}\gamma^3\sigma_z\varepsilon_x\kappa^{1/2}\left(1+\kappa^{1/2}\right)}, \tag{1.17}$$

where $\kappa = \varepsilon_y/\varepsilon_x$. Table 1.12 shows that the space charge tune shift approaches 0.01.

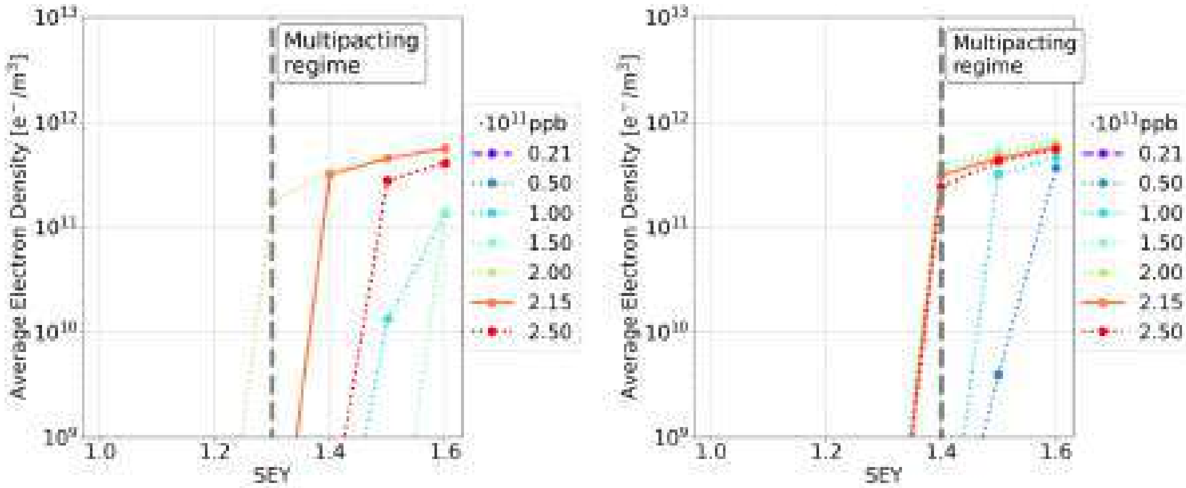


Fig. 1.23 Average electron density versus SEY at different stages of the charge accumulation phase, with a non-uniform filling pattern (4b+16e) in the arc dipoles (left) and quadrupoles (right). The SEY multipacting threshold, considering all the bunch intensities during the charge accumulation phase, is shown by the vertical dashed grey line

Table 1.12 Estimated SC tune shifts in PETRA IV, SOLEIL II, and the FCC-ee collider rings on the Z pole

	PETRA IV	SOLEIL II	FCC-ee collider
Beam energy [GeV]	6.0	2.75	45.6
Circumference [km]	2.305	0.354	90.7
Max. bunch charge [nC]	8	7.4	35
RMS bunch length rms [mm]	20	15	15.2
RMS vert. emittance ε_x [pm]	20	83	710
RMS vert. emittance ε_y [pm]	2	8	2.1
Emittance ratio κ	0.1	0.1	0.1003
$\Delta Q_{\mathrm{SC},y}$	0.057	0.036	0.008

1.4.6 Intrabeam scattering

Intrabeam scattering (IBS) is a possible issue for the Z running, since, here, the beam energy is the lowest and the radiation damping the weakest. The largest effect is in the horizontal plane. For the nominal beam parameters the horizontal amplitude growth time due to IBS, $\tau_{\mathrm{IBS},x}$, amounts to 142,000 turns, compared with a horizontal radiation damping time, $\tau_{\mathrm{SR},x}$ of about 2400 turns. Consequently, at the Z, IBS increases the rms horizontal equilibrium emittance by $\tau_{\mathrm{SR},x}/\tau_{\mathrm{IBS},x} \approx 1.5\%$. IBS will also generate a horizontal non-Gaussian beam halo. The IBS effect is negligible in the other two planes or at other beam energies.

1.4.7 Vacuum and ion effects

The vacuum chambers of the two collider rings feature winglets with regular photon stops to intercept and efficiently absorb synchrotron radiation. The chamber itself has a continuous coating of ultra-thin NEG material in order to ensure an adequate vacuum pressure without long conditioning.

Baseline parameters for the collider rings relevant for vacuum and ion effects in the arcs are compiled in Table 1.13. As discussed in Sect. 2.3.7, at the FCC-ee in Z running mode, the beam consists of 40 trains, each containing 280 bunches spaced by $t_{\mathrm{sep}} = 25$ ns. After 1 hour of operation at nominal beam current, the average vacuum pressure in the collider arcs is expected to be below 10^{-7} mbar (see Fig. 3.8).

A representative residual gas component for the NEG-coated vacuum system of the FCC-ee is H_2. However, here we pessimistically consider CO, which has a shorter radiation length than H_2. In a Gaussian approximation

Table 1.13 Collider ring parameters for Z running (45.6 GeV)

Parameter	Symbol	Value	Unit
Bunch population	N_b	2.18	10^{11}
Bunch spacing	t_{sep}	25	ns
No. bunches/train	n_b	280	—
Beam energy	E_b	45.6	GeV
Hor. emittance	ε_x	0.70	nm
Vert. emittance	ε_y	1.05	pm
RMS rel. momentum spread with BS		0.121	%
Av. hor. β function	$\langle\beta_x\rangle$	∼100	m
Av. hor. dispersion function	$\langle D_x\rangle$	∼0.45	m
Av. vert. β function	$\langle\beta_y\rangle$	∼100	m
Av. hor. beam size	$\langle\sigma_x\rangle$	∼600	µm
Av. vert. beam size	$\langle\sigma_y\rangle$	∼10	µm
Transv. ampl. damping time	$\tau_{x,y}$	0.7	s
Average vacuum pressure	$< P >$	$< 10^{-9}$	mbar
Emittance damping rate	$-d\varepsilon_x/dt$	2.5	nm/s
IBS emittance growth rate	$d\varepsilon_x/dt$	0.1	nm/s

[95], the emittance growth due to multiple gas scattering is

$$\left\langle \frac{d\varepsilon_{x,y}}{dt} \right\rangle \approx \frac{1}{2} \langle\beta_{x,y}\rangle \left(\frac{14.1\text{MeV}/c}{p}\right)^2 \frac{m_{\text{CO}} p_{\text{CO}} c}{k_b T X_{0,\text{CO}}} \,. \tag{1.18}$$

Assuming $m_{\text{CO}} = 14$ g/mol, $T = 300$ K, $X_{0,\text{CO}} \approx 40$ g cm^{-2} (similar for N_2 and CO_2) gives

$$\langle d\varepsilon_{x,y}/dt\rangle \approx 2 \times 10^{-5}\ (\text{m/s})\ p_{\text{CO}}\ [\text{Pa}] \,. \tag{1.19}$$

At a pressure of 10^{-7} mbar, or 10^{-5} Pa, as reached after 1 hour of nominal operation, this emittance growth of ~ 2 nm/s, due to multiple gas scattering, is a few percent of the horizontal emittance damping or quantum excitation. However, in the vertical plane the growth is significant, and leads to a new rms equilibrium emittance of

$$\epsilon_{y,\text{eq}} \approx \left\langle \frac{d\varepsilon_{x,y}}{dt} \right\rangle \frac{\tau_y}{2} \,. \tag{1.20}$$

Consequently, to achieve the target equilibrium emittance of 1 pm, the average vacuum pressure must not exceed 10^{-7} Pa or 10^{-9} mbar.

Another limit on the vacuum pressure is set by the beam lifetime due to bremsstrahlung [96]:

$$\frac{1}{\tau_{\text{brems}}} = \sigma_{\text{brems}}\, c\, n \,, \tag{1.21}$$

where the integrated Bethe-Heitler cross section for particle loss is [97]

$$\sigma_{\text{brems}} \approx \frac{4}{3} \frac{\rho}{n X_0} \left(\ln \frac{1}{\epsilon_m} - \frac{5}{8} \right) , \tag{1.22}$$

with $n = p/(k_b T)$ the molecular density, ρ the mass density, so that $\rho/n = 28$ g$/N_A$ for CO (with N_A Avogadro's constant), and ϵ_m the fractional momentum acceptance, e.g. about 1% at the Z. For CO we obtain $\sigma_{\text{brems}} \approx 6$ barn; for H_2 the cross section is $\sigma_{\text{brems}} \approx 0.3$ barn. At a residual gas pressure of 10^{-9} mbar (10^{-7} Pa), the beam lifetime would be 60 hours in case of CO and 1300 hours for H_2.

The ionisation cross section of carbon monoxide (CO) molecules impacted by high-energy charged particles is $\sigma_{\text{iion}} \approx 2$ Mbarn [98], which translates to an ion generation rate of $\lambda'_{\text{ion}} \approx 6$ m^{-1} per electron at 1 Torr and 300 K.

For hydrogen molecules (H_2) the ionisation cross section is about 0.4 Mbarn [98], so that in this case $\lambda'_{\text{ion}} \approx 1\ \text{m}^{-1}$ per electron at 1 Torr and 300 K.

Ions are trapped between bunches if their atomic (or molecular) mass A (in units of proton mass) exceeds a critical mass A_c defined as [99]

$$A_c \equiv \frac{N_b r_p c\, \Delta t_{\text{sep}}}{2\sigma_y(\sigma_x + \sigma_y)}\,. \tag{1.23}$$

For the FCC-ee parameters of Table 1.13, $A_c \approx 200$, which is significantly larger than the mass of any typical molecule of the residual gas. The Carli-Bartosik filling scheme described in Sect. 2.3.7 will also help prevent the trapping of ions between bunches when filling from zero after a beam abort.

1.5 Collimation

The FCC-ee has a target highest stored beam energy of 17.5 MJ for the most critical Z mode, and 0.3 MJ for the $\mathrm{t\bar{t}}$ mode, leading to a risk of experiment backgrounds, superconducting magnet quenches, equipment damage, radiation damage, and material activation, as a result of unavoidable beam losses. A robust collimation system is therefore needed in FCC-ee, not only for controlling the backgrounds of the physics experiments as in previous e^+e^- colliders, but also to protect the machine. As a comparison, in SuperKEKB [100, 101], with a design stored beam energy of only 0.18 MJ, collimator damage and quenching of superconducting magnets have occurred as a result of sudden, unexpected beam losses, as well as high backgrounds during injections [102, 103].

Both beam losses and synchrotron radiation (SR) can cause detector backgrounds, with the latter expected to be the dominating source of machine-induced background. A distinction is hence made between the beam halo collimation system, designed to protect the machine against beam losses, and the SR collimation system, designed to protect the detectors against SR photons. The SR system consists of dedicated collimators and masks upstream of the interaction points (IPs), studied for the CDR [13] and further optimised for the present collider layout, as discussed in Sect. 1.6.

The halo collimation must be designed to protect the aperture bottlenecks from regular and anomalous beam losses and safely dissipate the loss power away from the superconducting final focus quadrupoles and other sensitive equipment. The beam halo collimation system must also protect the SR collimators. Excessive beam losses on these SR collimators might induce detector backgrounds or even damage them, as they are made of Inermet180 (a tungsten heavy alloy with high-Z chosen to optimise absorption) and hence less robust to beam losses than the beam-halo collimators (see below).

The beam halo collimation system was not studied for the CDR, and the following describes the first baseline design. It includes two-stage betatron and off-momentum collimation systems with specialised optics in PF [104, 105]. The betatron collimation system is located upstream of the auxiliary (non-collision) beam crossing in the middle of PF and consists of 1 primary collimator (TCP) to intercept the primary beam halo and 2 secondary collimators (TCS) to intercept particles out-scattered by the TCP, in each of the transverse planes, while the off-momentum collimation system is located downstream of the crossing and consists of 1 TCP and 2 TCSs in the horizontal plane. Secondary particle shower absorbers are placed in between the TCP and the TCS, as will be described more in detail in Sect. 1.5.3. The studies shown in the following are carried out for the Z mode, as this is the most critical for collimation. It should be noted that in this optics version, a vertical emittance blow-up resulting from the combination of the beam-beam interactions and the super-periodicity breaking due to the specialised collimation optics in PF has been discovered [106], as well as a reduction of the momentum acceptance. Work is ongoing to update the optics and hence also the layout, using a common LSS optics as discussed in Sect. 1.2. It is expected that a solution can be found, but it will imply some modifications to the presented layout.

The settings for the betatron TCPs, shown in Table 1.14, are selected to protect the aperture bottlenecks in the final focus doublets. Including alignment and beam tolerances [107] they are estimated to be 14.6 σ in the horizontal plane (σ is the rms betatron beam size) and 84.2 σ in the vertical plane due to the asymmetric emittances ($\epsilon_x = 0.71$ nm, $\epsilon_y = 1.9$ pm). The minimum gap of the TCP is also constrained by requirements of the top-up injection scheme [108], as well as by impedance and beam lifetime considerations. Therefore, the betatron TCP cuts were chosen as 11 σ in the horizontal plane and 65 σ in the vertical plane, protecting the aperture bottleneck while ensuring a half-gap of at least 2 mm for impedance reasons. The physical opening is most challenging for the vertical TCP due to the optics and the flat beams. The horizontal TCP has an opening of 6.7 mm. The off-momentum TCP is set to a momentum cut $\delta_c = 1.3\%$, slightly outside of the RF bucket and momentum acceptance of about 1% (target value obtained without collimation optics). The betatron secondary collimators are set to provide a minimum retraction of 1σ or 0.6 mm in the horizontal and of 10σ or 0.3 mm in the vertical plane from the corresponding TCP setting as preliminary values to ensure the collimation hierarchy is maintained even in the case of orbit drifts, β-beating or other dynamic effects [109, 110]. The hierarchy margins are tight with the presently assumed settings, especially in the vertical plane. However, the vertical TCP is currently

Table 1.14 Summary table of collimator parameters and settings for the FCC-ee Z operation mode. The momentum cut δ_{cut} is not reported for collimators in nearly dispersion-free regions. All collimators are assumed to have two movable jaws and built-in BPMs

Type	Count	Plane	Material	Length [m]	Gap [σ]	Gap [mm]	δ_{cut} [%]	Angular adjustment
β TCP	1	H	C-based	0.25	11.0	6.7	8.9	yes
β TCS	2	H	Mo-based	0.3	12.0	5.0, 7.0	6.0, 22.8	yes
β TCP	1	V	C-based	0.25	65.0	2.4	–	yes
β TCS	2	V	Mo-based	0.3	75.0	2.5, 2.9	–	yes
δ TCP	1	H	C-based	0.25	18.5	4.2	1.3	yes
δ TCS	2	H	Mo-based	0.3	21.5	4.6, 16.7	2.1, 1.6	yes
TCSA	1	H	Mo-based	0.3	15	8.2	–	yes
TCSA	1	V	Mo-based	0.3	91	3.2	–	yes
TCT	4	V	C-based	0.25	80.0	3.4	–	yes
TCT	4	H	C-based	0.25	13.0	6.1	–	yes
SR BWL	4	H	W-based	0.1	14.0	16.9	–	no
SR QC3	4	H	W-based	0.1	14.0	17.1	–	no
SR QC0	4	V	W-based	0.1	84.2	8.2	–	no
SR QC0	4	H	W-based	0.1	14.0	17.4	–	no
SR QC2	4	V	W-based	0.1	84.2	8.0	–	no
SR QC2	4	H	W-based	0.1	14.0	17.0	–	no

placed relatively far from the vertical DA of about 30 σ. Tightening their gaps is an option that is being considered, and that will relax the hierarchy margin constraints, although it is not certain that this still gives an acceptable impedance. The phase advance μ between the TCP and TCS is set by the optimal phase advance condition [111],

$$\mu = \arctan\left(\frac{\sqrt{n_{\mathrm{TCS}}^2 - n_{\mathrm{TCP}}^2}}{n_{\mathrm{TCP}}}\right), \tag{1.24}$$

where n_{TCP} and n_{TCS} are the gaps in units of σ for the TCP and TCS. Two tertiary collimators (TCT), one for each transverse plane, are placed upstream of each IP to provide local protection of the SR collimators and the aperture bottlenecks. The settings of the TCTs have been selected to be 13σ in the horizontal plane and 80 σ in the vertical plane. The SR collimators have mechanical gaps in the range of 8–17 mm, corresponding to a minimum aperture of 14 σ in the horizontal and 84.2σ in the vertical plane, above the TCT apertures.

1.5.1 Collimator design parameters

The beam halo collimators must be robust enough to handle the loss of a significant fraction of the beam energy. Carbon-based materials like CFC, graphite, or molybdenum carbide-graphite (MoGr) [112] are hence considered for the TCPs and TCTs due to their potential exposure to direct large beam impacts. MoGr has about a factor 10 times better conductivity than graphite, while graphite is more robust to beam impacts. Higher-density, higher-Z materials, such as Mo or TZM (Ti-Mo-Zr), are considered for the TCSs, which intercept out-scattered particles from the TCPs. The design hence consists of 25 cm long carbon-based TCPs and 30 cm long Mo TCS. The lengths were selected based on the first studies, aiming to achieve a good balance between impedance and collimation efficiency [113–115] (impedance calculations are discussed in Sect. 1.4.1). In the tracking studies presented below, MoGr is assumed as TCP and TCT material, Mo as TCS material and Inermet180 as SR collimator material.

As for the mechanical design, described in detail in Sect. 3.6, it is assumed that the collimators have two movable jaws as in the LHC [116], with built-in BPMs and separate motors for the upstream and downstream edges to allow control of the jaw tilt angle. An LHC-like minimum step of 5 µm at each motor is tentatively assumed, although it will be refined in future studies. SR collimators are also movable but currently have no requirement for tilt angle adjustment, while the SR masks are fixed. The design of these devices is part of the MDI studies discussed in Sect. 1.6.

The collimator parameters and settings for all collimators, also including the SR collimators, are shown in Table 1.14. These parameters should be considered preliminary and might evolve in the future when detailed constraints from robustness and impedance are quantified.

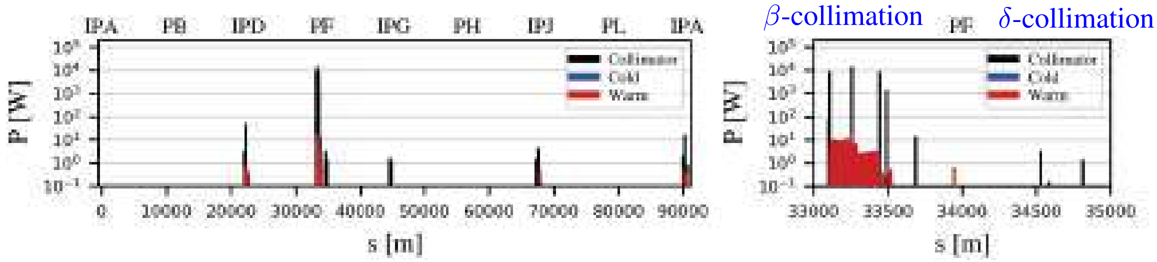


Fig. 1.24 Power load distribution loss map for generic beam halo losses of the FCC-ee positron beam, shown for horizontal betatron losses. The power loads are evaluated assuming a lifetime drop to 5 min. The beam circulates from left to right. On the right, a magnification of the collimation insertion PF is presented

1.5.2 Collimation performance studies

To assess the cleaning performance of the collimation system, several beam loss scenarios have been simulated, and further studies will be conducted in the future to ensure the machine is never at risk. For a comprehensive quantitative assessment of the collimation performance, tolerances to beam losses for different impacted elements are also required, which are currently under study.

The collimation performance is evaluated using the Xsuite-BDSIM coupling simulation framework [117–122], integrating particle tracking in the magnetic lattice with particle-matter interactions in the collimators. The scenarios studied so far include betatron and off-momentum generic beam halo losses, losses from beam-residual-gas interactions, spent beam losses, and losses caused by fast instabilities for the most critical Z operation mode. The simulation outputs for these scenarios, presented below, provide the loss distribution along the longitudinal coordinate s. Given the current state of knowledge, the performance is fully adequate in all scenarios studied, with the possible exception of the fast instability. In this case, interlocks or redundant damper design should be considered, as explained below. Further details on the machine-protection aspects are found in Sect. 2.6. A first iteration of studies has been done on the spent beam losses. However, further iterations need to be coupled to the collimation optics due to the issues discovered with vertical emittance blow-up and reduced MA.

Generic beam halo losses The scenario considered is that of a generic loss, impacting on the collimation system. The initial mechanism causing the loss is not simulated—as in LHC studies [123], instead, the beam distribution is sampled directly at the impacted TCP. The maximum impact parameter assumed is 1 µm, which may be further refined in the future. This allows to model the effect of collimator edge scattering and provides a sufficiently pessimistic estimate of the collimation performance [105]. 5×10^6 primary particles are tracked for 500 turns with SR, RF cavities and tapering of the magnets included. The loss maps in Fig. 1.24 show the power load distribution from generic horizontal betatron losses around the collider ring, normalised to a beam lifetime drop to 5 min, corresponding to 58.3 kW of loss power. This is assumed as a design specification that the system should be able to handle.

Figure 1.24 demonstrates an excellent cleaning performance, with the vast majority of losses (>99.5%) confined within the collimation insertion PF. The losses leaking out are safely intercepted by the TCTs upstream of the IPs. The collimation performance can be further enhanced by angularly aligning the collimator jaws to the beam divergence at the collimator locations [114, 115]. The more significant the beam divergence, the higher is the performance gain obtained.

Beam-gas losses The scenario considered is that of beam losses caused by bremsstrahlung interactions with the residual gas in the vacuum chamber. The assumed gas composition (85% H_2, 10% CO and 5% CO_2) and pressure distribution along the ring come from dedicated vacuum studies, see Sect. 3.2. To simulate the interaction with the residual gas, 10,000 beam-gas scattering centres are included in the tracking [124] and 10×10^6 primary particles are tracked for 17×10^6 equivalent turns with SR, RF cavities and magnet tapering enabled.

The loss map in Fig. 1.25 shows the power load distribution from beam-gas losses, normalised to a beam-gas lifetime of 5 h that results from the expected pressure after 1 h of beam conditioning at full nominal current of 1.27 A. This pessimistic scenario represents the start of FCC-ee operation, and the pressure is expected to condition down by a factor of up to 100 over time (Sect. 3.2). Consequently, beam-gas interactions are unlikely to significantly affect the lifetime of the FCC-ee, which is primarily determined by Bhabha scattering at the IPs. Even in this pessimistic scenario, low power loads (<0.1 W) are expected on most components, with the highest loads recorded on the halo collimators (10-100 W) and SR collimators (1 W). Such power load levels are not a concern.

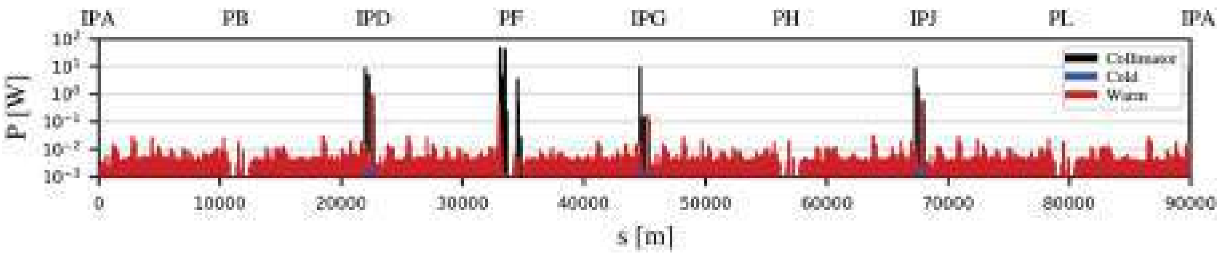


Fig. 1.25 Power load distribution loss map for beam-gas beam losses of the FCC-ee positron beam. The beam circulates from left to right. The power loads are evaluated considering a 5 h lifetime resulting from the expected pressure after 1 h of beam conditioning at full nominal current of 1.27 A

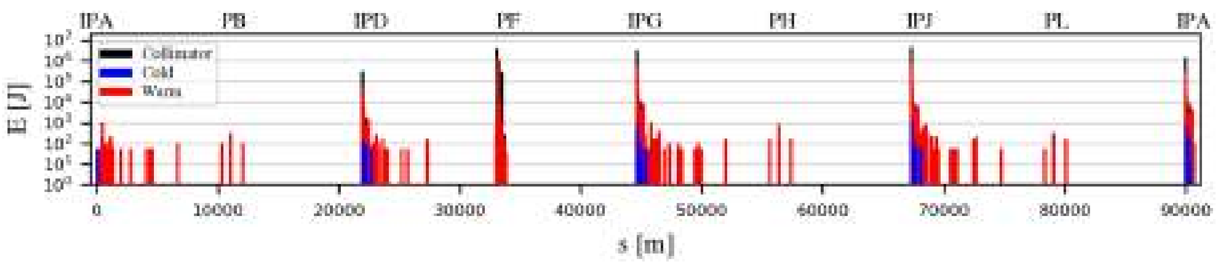


Fig. 1.26 Integrated loss map over all turns for a fast instability in the horizontal plane with a rise time of 3 turns

Fast instability The fast instability scenario assumes the failure of the feedback system designed to mitigate the coupled bunch instability described in Sect. 1.4.2. This instability is not modelled using the beam interactions with the impedance but through eight synchronised dipole kickers instead, one per arc, to reproduce a smooth exponential growth of the betatron oscillation amplitude, either in the vertical or horizontal plane. The kicker strengths are defined as $k = (A_0/\sigma_{x,y})\cos(2\pi Q_{x,y} t)\exp(t/\tau)$, where A_0 denotes an arbitrary amplitude, $\sigma_{x,y}$ the local beam size, $Q_{x,y}$ the betatron tunes, and τ the instability rise time. Two scenarios are studied: a rise time of either three turns (representing the worst case) or six turns. The dependence on the phase advance is also analysed. In each case, 5×10^5, 45.6 GeV primary electrons are simulated with SR and magnet tapering enabled. Several phase advances between the initial kick and the TCP have also been studied (0°, 30°, 60°, 90°).

The simulated beam oscillates coherently until the collimator apertures are reached, after which it is entirely lost within a few turns. At the Z mode, this results in the release of 17.5 MJ on collimators over a few turns. Due to the short rise time, losses of the order of MJ can be expected in the collimators as shown in Fig. 1.26. It is under study whether the collimators can sustain this impact, but the FCC-ee should be designed in such a way that the instability does not occur in this way, for example by interlocking the damper or the orbit, or through a redundant damper system that would increase the time constants in case of failure.

1.5.3 Studies of energy deposition and shower absorbers

In addition to the studies of the global cleaning performance, FLUKA [125–127] radiation transport simulations for the PF insertion were carried out in order to quantify the beam-induced power deposition in the machine and the environment. A specific geometry model of the betatron collimation system, including collimators, beam pipes, magnets and the machine tunnel, was implemented. The collimator jaws and tanks were represented by simplified models, since no technical design existed at this early stage. The absorber blocks of the primary and secondary collimators were assumed to be made of graphite and TZM, respectively, with a similar cross section to the LHC collimators. The blocks were embedded in a metallic frame made of TZM. A generic beam loss scenario was simulated assuming that beam particles impact on the front face of the primary collimators (vertical and horizontal), at a distance of 1 µm from the collimator edge. The simulations were carried out for operation at the Z pole, since the stored beam energy and hence the expected power loss in the betatron collimation system is much higher than for the other beam modes. The interaction of the 45.6 GeV electrons and positrons in the blocks results in the production of electromagnetic showers, which are not contained in the primary collimator jaws because of the significant shower length and the small impact parameter; the simulations show that primary collimators absorb less than 0.5% of the impacting energy, while most of the energy is carried away by secondary photons, electrons and positrons. Most of these shower particles are lost on the downstream vacuum chambers in PF, or they are intercepted by the secondary collimators. The simulations show that the first secondary collimator

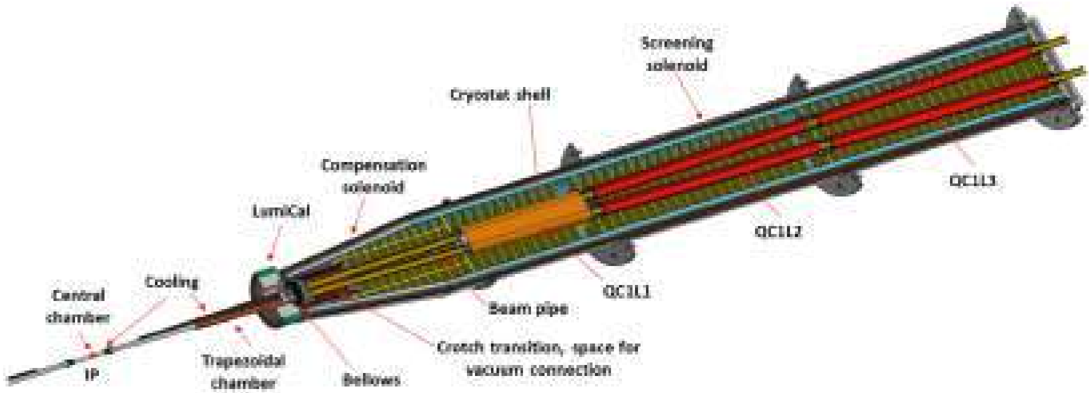


Fig. 1.27 Section view of the accelerator components from the IP to the end of the first final focus quadrupole (QC1), at about 5.6 m

absorbs about 40% of the power, while almost half of the power is deposited in the chamber walls or leaks into the tunnel environment.

Considering the significant particle leakage from the collimators, it is necessary to install additional shower absorbers in PF, which reduce the distributed production of radionuclides in the surroundings and mitigate radiation effects in other equipment. In addition, the shower absorbers dissipate the heat created in a more controlled way. The effects of placing two shower absorbers (one vertical and one horizontal) between the primary and secondary collimators have been investigated. Their position was optimised in such a way as to minimise the energy escaping to the vacuum chambers and the environment. Using the same design as the TCS but with a wider gap (15σ and 91σ in the x- and y-plane, respectively), the shower absorbers proved to be an effective strategy for mitigating the energy leakage; just two shower absorbers can reduce the power deposition in the vacuum chambers and tunnel to 15%. The optimal position and number of shower absorbers in PF are expected to evolve in the future, depending on the final collimation layout and distances between the collimators. In addition, shower absorbers or masks may also be needed for the momentum collimation system and possibly near the tertiary collimators in the experiment insertions.

1.6 Machine-detector interface (MDI)

The MDI of the FCC-ee has a compact and complex design [128–131] that fulfils constraints given both by the machine and the detector requirements.

A common IR layout is requested for all FCC-ee energies and is shown in Fig. 1.27. The flexibility of the IR optics is obtained by splitting the final focus quadrupoles (FFQs) QC1 and QC2 into three and two segments, respectively, and by modulating their sign and strength according to the beam energy.

Tens of nanometres in the vertical beam size and a few micrometres horizontally require small β-functions at the IP, as reported in Table 1.2. The distance of the face of QC1 from the IP (ℓ^*) is 2.2 m, well inside the detector volume. The crab-waist collision scheme requires a small horizontal beam size and a relatively large crossing angle at the IP, set to 30 mrad, which results in the beams entering/exiting with separate beam pipes at about 1.32 m from the IP. In addition to the optical constraints on the interaction region (IR) layout, physics reconstruction benefits from a stay-clear cone of 100 mrad from the interaction point (IP) along the z-axis.[3]

Two schemes are considered to compensate for the coupling induced by the detector solenoidal magnetic field and the crossing angle. The baseline one, called *local scheme*, uses a couple of strong compensating solenoids with opposite sign with respect to the one of the detector and placed either side of the IP, within $\pm\ell^*$ (shown in Fig. 1.27); this scheme requires a maximum detector field of 2 T, and 5 T for the compensating one, in order to limit the vertical emittance growth to about 30%. An alternative scheme, named *non-local*, envisages an equal and opposite strength magnetic field to that of the detector, positioned at either side of the IP several metres outside the detector, possibly tolerating higher detector magnetic fields to about 2.5 T, inducing, however, a high spin-depolarisation effect whose mitigation is currently under study. In the local scheme the field integral

[3]The detector's coordinate system is defined with its origin at the nominal collision point. The z-axis is aligned along the bisector of the incoming and outgoing beam directions, with its positive direction corresponding to that of the outgoing positrons. The y-axis points vertically upward, while the x-axis extends radially outward from the centre of the FCC. The azimuthal angle φ is measured from the x-axis in the x-y plane, with the radial coordinate in this plane denoted as r. The polar angle ϑ is measured from the z-axis.

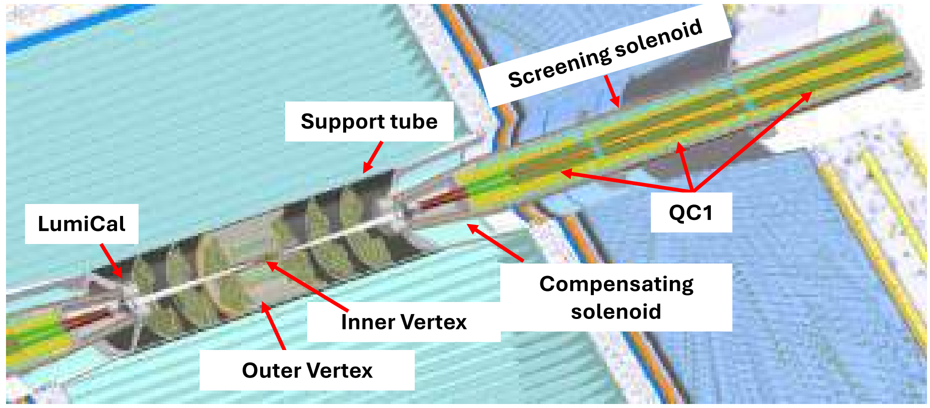


Fig. 1.28 Layout of the interaction region. The support tube allows the integration of the luminosity calorimeter (LumiCal) and the vertex detector. The three segments of the final focus quadrupoles (QC1) are shown with the screening and compensating solenoids

$\int \vec{B}ds$ is cancelled before the FFQs, while in the non-local one the compensating solenoids need additional very weak local dipole correctors and skew quadrupoles around the FFQs, to correct orbit and dispersion. In both schemes, a screening solenoid is requested, around the QC1 portion inside the detector, to cancel the effects of the detector magnetic field on both beams. In the non-local scheme, the emission of synchrotron radiation due to the compensating solenoid is much reduced with respect to the local scheme. These studies will be completed in the next design phase.

Two calorimeters, known as LumiCal, are positioned in front of the compensating solenoids, as illustrated in Fig. 1.28. They are designed to measure the integrated luminosity with an accuracy of 10^{-4}.

Achieving this level of precision requires the relative positioning of the two calorimeters to be known within ±110 µm, necessitating long-term mechanical stability. Additionally, to avoid compromising the luminosity measurement, the material budget within their angular acceptance range (50 to 110 mrad) must be minimised. To further reduce uncertainties in energy reconstruction, the LumiCal must be assembled and installed as a single, mechanically rigid unit.

The vertex detector, also shown in Fig. 1.28, is placed as close as possible to the interaction region (IR) beampipe, which has an internal radius of 1 cm. It covers an angular range of approximately $|\cos\theta| < 0.99$. The above topics are discussed in more detail in Volume 1 of this report.

The sections below describe the main features of the MDI. A more detailed discussion can be found in Ref. [132].

1.6.1 Interaction region layout

The central beam pipe is 18 cm long with 10 mm inner radius, followed by a pair of ellipto-conical beam pipes 1064 mm long on either side, as shown in Fig. 1.29. All of these are made in AlBeMet162, an alloy of 62% of beryllium and 38% aluminium, chosen for its high modulus and low-density characteristics. The mechanical model of the IR vacuum chamber is designed to provide low impedance, low material budget, and mechanical resistance while guaranteeing thermal stability by removing heat load with a suitable cooling system. The impedance was minimised by carefully designing the transverse section of the beam pipe, with a smooth transition from a circular to an elliptical transverse shape, as discussed in Ref. [133]. An internal coating layer of 5 µm gold, inside the central beam pipe, ensures a good thermal and electrical conductivity to minimise the beam heat load, with a maximum value of nearly 60 W expected at the Z pole [133], and shields the vertex detector from residual high-energy synchrotron radiation photons. The central vacuum chamber envisages a double-layer structure made of two concentric cylinders, each with a thickness of 0.35 mm and assembled with a 1 mm gap for the liquid paraffin cooling system, thus bringing its effective diameter to 23.4 mm.

The ellipto-conical vacuum chamber extends between 90 mm and 1154.5 mm from the IP, and its thickness is tapered from the central value until it reaches 2 mm. Water flowing into the AlbeMet cooling channels on top of the ellipto-conical beam pipe refrigerates it, extracting an expected heat load of about 130 W at the Z pole; an asymmetric design is needed to comply with the angular acceptance of the luminosity calorimeter, which is centred around the outgoing beam pipe axis.

The beam pipes will be supported by an external lightweight carbon-fibre structure (support tube) by means of two bellows [129], inspired by the DAΦNE and ESRF designs [134]. The support tube consists of an empty cylindrical multilayered wall rigid structure, that eases the integration of the MDI components, including the vertex and the LumiCal detector, providing a cantilevered support for the central beam pipe, as shown in Fig. 1.28.

A thermo-structural analysis has been performed to calculate the temperature distribution, stress, strain and displacement of the beam pipes. The temperature distribution for the two chambers is shown in Fig. 1.30 for operation at the Z pole which has the highest thermal load. The maximum temperature of the central chamber

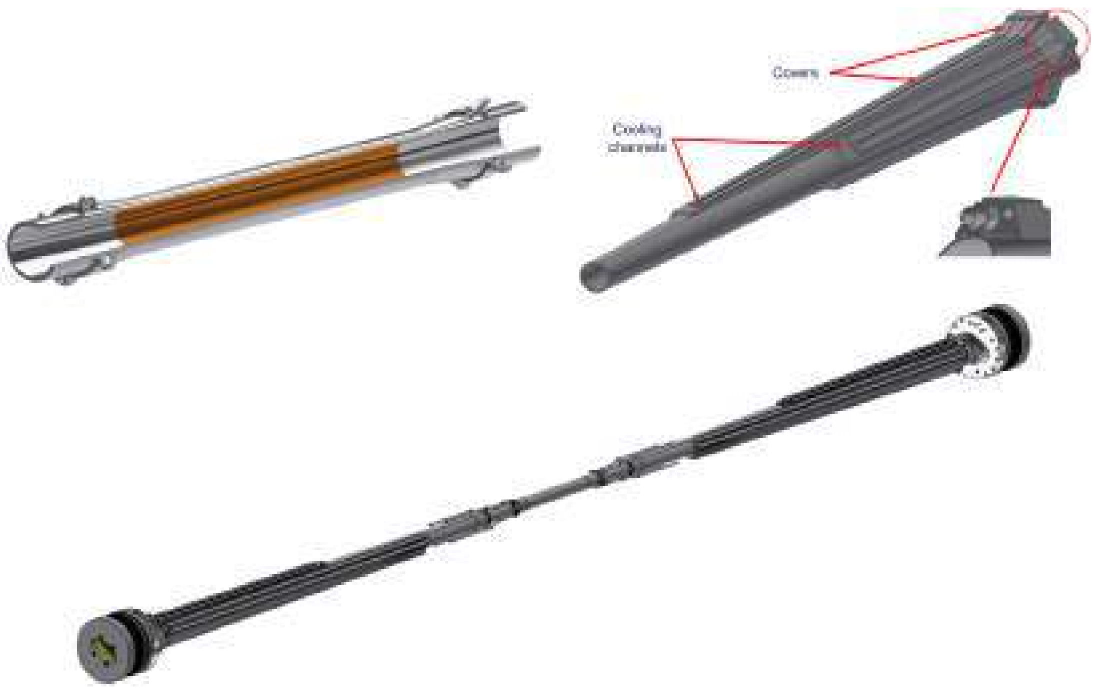
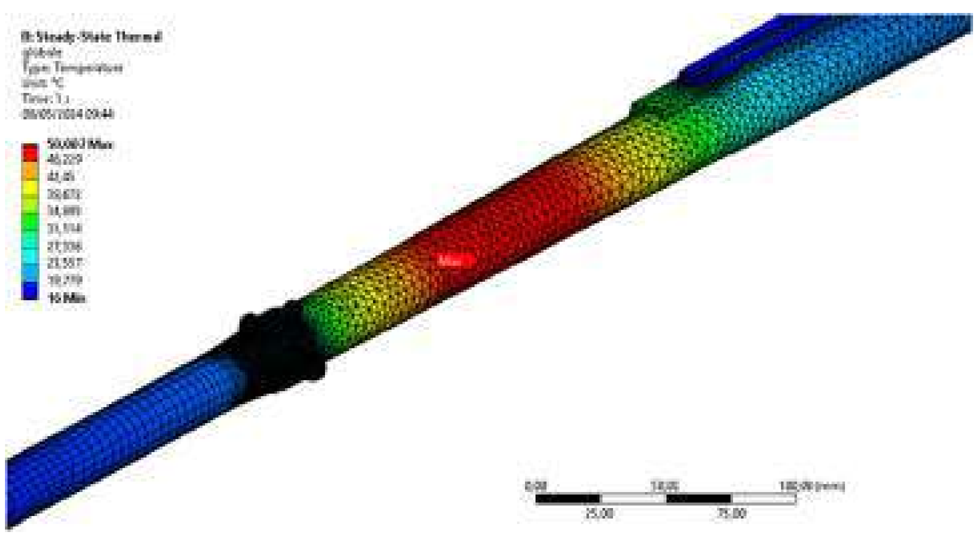


Fig. 1.29 Top Left: Central chamber including cooling inlets and outlets for the paraffin cooling circuit housed in a double layer and its internal gold coating layer; Top Right: ellipto-conical vacuum chamber with asymmetric cooling channels; Bottom: assembly of the IR chambers

Fig. 1.30 ANSYS simulation of the temperature distribution along the ellipto-conical chamber for a deposited power of 54 W over the central chamber and 130 W over the conical chamber



reaches 29 °C, cooled with paraffin entering at 18 °C, and reaches 50 °C in the conical chamber, which is cooled with water entering at 16 °C. The maximum stress has been calculated considering the constraint from the configuration of a cantilevered support, which results in a maximum displacement of 0.5 mm, and a maximum stress ten times lower than the AlBeMet162 yield strength (193 MPa).

The integration of the vertex detector has been studied for the IDEA detector concept. The detector is placed on top of the vacuum chamber: two thin peek-based rings, anchored on either side at about 170 mm from the IP on the ellipto-conical chamber, hold a carbon fibre structure supporting three layers of silicon vertex detectors located at about 13.7, 23.7, and 35 mm radii, as shown in Fig. 1.31. Additional cylindrical layers and disks of silicon detectors complement the vertex detector in the reconstruction of charged particles. For a more comprehensive description, see Ref. [131].

A comprehensive calculation of beam induced HOM power deposition on the IR chambers including the effects on the bellows, and BPMs has to be finalised.

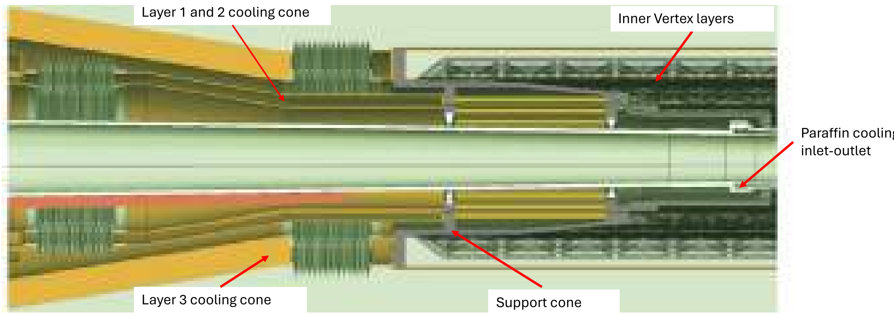


Fig. 1.31 Longitudinal section of the beam pipe and the inner vertex. The dark grey object is the conical support of the vertex detector, which is supported by the conical beam pipe. At the right edge of the support cone, the inlet/outlet paraffin cooling manifolds are visible

A remote vacuum connection device, located inside the niche of the front side of the QC1 cryostat (see Sect. 1.6.2), needs to be studied to provide a vacuum to the IR chambers once assembled inside the detector. The tight space and accessibility in that area pose considerable challenges, and a solution is being studied.

1.6.2 IR magnet system

The IR magnet system consists of the superconducting (SC) FFQs, the solenoids, and the correctors, all housed in a cryostat. The optimal solution is to house QC1 and QC2 in separate cryostats, since the QC1 is entirely inside the detector, thus allowing it to be accessed separately from QC2, which is outside. A critical issue concerns the limited space available inside the QC1 cryostat, in which the two beam pipes come very close to each other due to the crossing angle. At one end, the challenge is to allow sufficient thermal shield between the warm beam pipes and the cold quadrupole coils. At the other end, the challenge is to allow sufficient space for the winding of the corrector coils, especially around the QC1 segment closest to the IP. As shown in Fig. 1.27, the shape of the QC1 cryostat closest to the IP features a niche to house warm elements, such as bellows, a remote vacuum connection, and a beam position monitor (BPM). Other BPMs should be placed at the entrances of QC1 and QC2 for each beam. Widening the angular size of the cryostat, as seen from the IP, currently set to 100 mrad, could alleviate the problems mentioned above, but the impact on the detector calorimeter acceptance placed behind it needs to be evaluated.

The FFQs are based on the canted cosine theta design (CCT), with Nb-Ti conductors. Three different options to operate the FFQ cryostat at different temperatures are envisaged: pressurised He II at 1.9-2.1 K, supercritical He at 4.5 K, or He gas forced flow at 10-20 K. The first option allows a superfluid regime, minimising any possible induced vibrations. The third one minimises the power budget, while the second is intermediate. Yet another solution under study considers using high-temperature superconducting (HTS) magnets, which would allow even further power reduction.

The anti-solenoid and screening solenoid needed to compensate for the coupling induced by the detector field and the crossing angle, bring additional constraints to the IR magnet system. As said at the beginning of this chapter, two coupling compensation schemes are under study.

1.6.3 Alignment, detector integration and maintenance

An alignment strategy and monitoring system is under study, and envisages three main components [135]. The first one monitors the shape deformation of the screening solenoid's support [136], and uses in-line multiplexed and distributed frequency scanning interferometry (IMD-FSI) [137] to monitor sections of optical fibres firmly installed on the inner surface of the screening solenoid support. The second system utilises a mirror, installed at the end of each fibre, to redirect the laser beam towards the centre of the assembly, targeting the FFQs, the BPMs, LumiCal. This is very similar to the FSI heads installed on the low-β quadrupoles in the HL-LHC MDI, as described in [138]. These distance measurements will monitor the position of the inner components relative to the cryostat. Finally, to ensure the alignment of both sides of the MDI, a long-range alignment system will be installed, also based on FSI but using a different optical setup to enable longer-distance measurements. A set-up at CERN is currently studying the experimental validation of the alignment system of the FFQs with the FSI system, using a 1:2 mock-up of the beam pipes and cryostat.

The accessibility in the FCC-ee MDI region may be limited by accelerator components, such as the FFQ cryostats and the booster ring (Sect. 4.1). Three opening scenarios for the detectors installed in either the large or small experiment caverns are described in Sect. 5.3 of Volume 1.

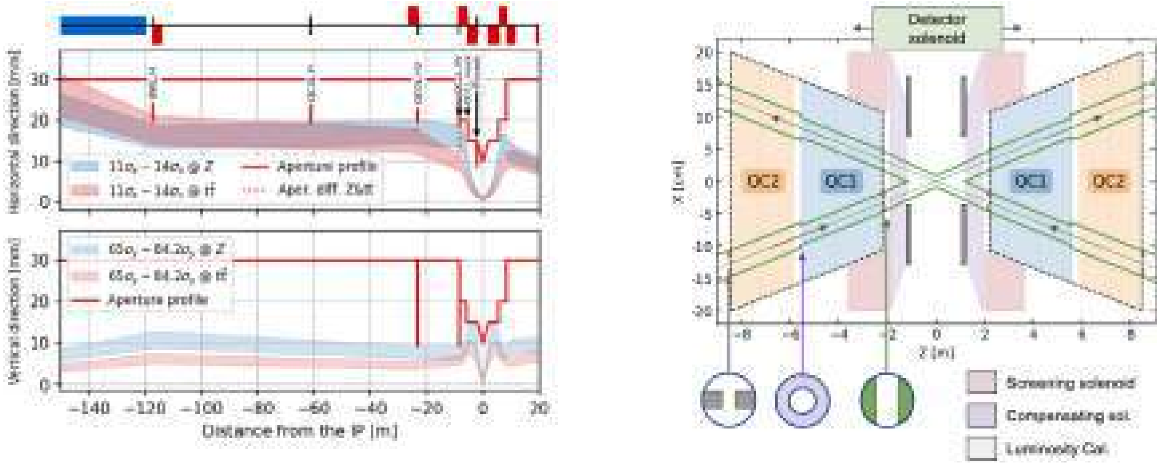


Fig. 1.32 SR collimators and masks upstream the IR (left); SR masks shapes and locations at the FFQs (right)

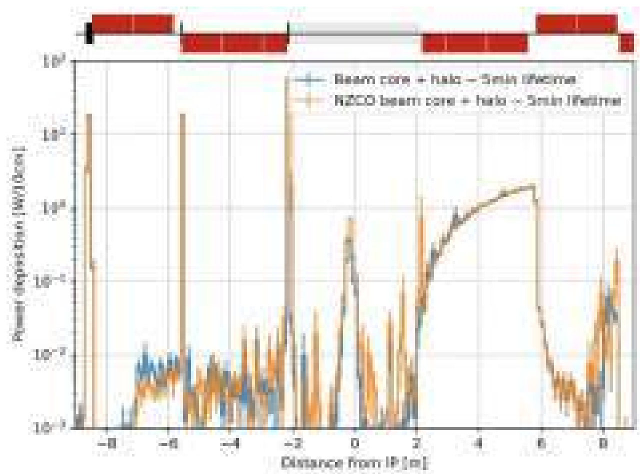


Fig. 1.33 SR power deposition in realistic conditions. The blue line represents the beam core with a halo corresponding to 5 minutes lifetime, the yellow line represents a beam core with a non zero closed orbit (NZCO) and halo

1.6.4 Beam induced backgrounds

Backgrounds in the IR arise either from processes where particles from one beam lose energy or deviate from their trajectory, or interact with those of the opposite beam at the IP. Collimators and absorbers, as described in Sect. 1.5, remove the bulk of the particles (electrons/positrons and photons) which eventually would hit the detectors, but some effects may remain due to the scattering of the particles of these devices.

The effect of synchrotron radiation (SR) in the MDI region has been simulated with the latest version of BDSIM [139, 140], utilising the Geant4 toolkit, which includes the X-ray reflection. The bulk of the SR is almost collinear with the beam, and thanks to the final focus optics design, does not enter the detector, however a fraction of it can still reach it as a result of magnet misalignments, imperfections, and beam tails [141]. SR masks are designed to stop such radiation close to the detector, located before and after the FFQs, as shown in the right plot of Fig. 1.32. The mask apertures are 15 mm for the circular ones between QC1 and QC2, and 7 mm horizontal aperture for the mask after QC1, closest to the IP. In realistic conditions, some scattering at their edges can still enter the detector region. Studies are ongoing to evaluate the effects in the various sub-detectors, and eventually optimise the masks and tertiary collimators; as an example Fig. 1.33 shows the power deposited in the IR, assuming 5 minutes beam lifetime, non-zero closed orbits with a transverse deviation of 100 µm, transverse divergence of 6 µrad, and beam tails.

Electrons and positrons may lose energy or deviate from their central trajectory, thus populating the tails of phase space, and are commonly referred to as halo beam losses [142]. These particles are mostly intercepted by the collimators. This effect has been simulated with Xsuite-BDSIM simulation tool [118]. Some of these particles may scatter off the edges of the collimators and reach the interaction region. The vast majority of the beam halo losses are intercepted by the tertiary collimators (TCTs) which have been added upstream of the SR collimators, and minimal losses ($\mathcal{O}$(10mW) beyond the last SR collimators before the IPs are observed in all cases, as shown

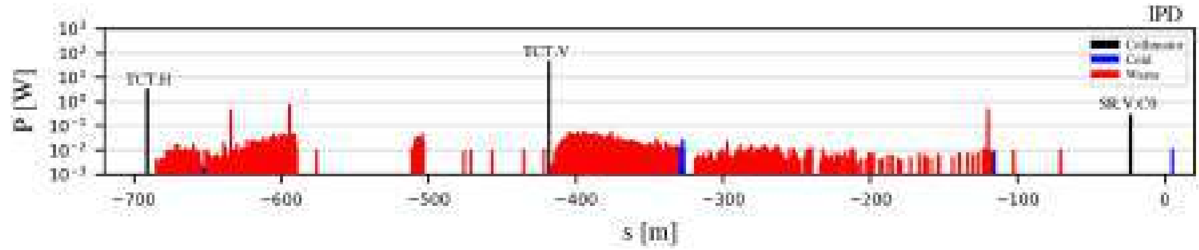


Fig. 1.34 Power load distribution loss map for generic beam halo losses of the FCC-ee positron beam, illustrating horizontal betatron losses in the region spanning 700 m upstream of IPD. Power loads are evaluated assuming a beam lifetime drop to 5 min. The beam circulates from left to right

in Fig. 1.34. In this way, the background contribution from beam halo particles that leak from the beam halo collimation system (located in PF) is not expected to be an issue. Nevertheless, the background contribution from particle showers arising from the interaction of beam halo particles with the SR collimators might not be negligible and should be studied in the future.

Background and energy deposition due to beam-gas interactions, incoherent pair production, and radiative Bhabha scattering are discussed in Sect. 5.4 of Volume 1.

The bulk of the radiation emitted in the IR is collinear with the incoming and outgoing beams, and is dumped at the end of a 500 m long tunnel. This radiation is composed of two main contributions, beamstrahlung and synchrotron radiation [143]. In addition, radiative Bhabha events produced at the IP generate off-energy electrons that are lost in the magnetic elements within 150 m of the IP. All these sources have been studied at the Z pole and above the $\mathrm{t\bar{t}}$ threshold. Radiative Bhabha is the main source of radiation in the first 200 m at the Z, while beamstrahlung dominates at around 500 m at the dump. Due to the harder spectrum of synchrotron radiation at $\mathrm{t\bar{t}}$ energies, which has a critical energy of the order of 1 MeV, this source overwhelms the others. For more technical discussions, see Sect. 1.9. Studies are ongoing to evaluate the possibility of using the spatial profile of the beamstrahlung radiation for beam-beam fine-tuning, as proposed for other colliders.

The effects of the thermal photons and injection backgrounds will be studied in the next phase of the project.

1.6.5 Experimental implementation of the interaction region

The finalisation of the system engineering of the IR is of paramount importance for both the machine and the detector layouts.

The construction of a full-scale mock-up of the IR beam pipes, including the results of the study of the integration with the vertex and LumiCal detectors and using the concept of the support tube, is ongoing at INFN-Frascati in collaboration with INFN-Pisa and CERN.

The first prototype of the central beam pipe was manufactured in aluminium and equipped with flanges to validate the cooling performance. The assembly of its components (see Fig. 1.29) has been performed using laser beam-welding in the ENEA-Casaccia laboratory. The test system comprises a cooling circuit with an operating range between 0.08 and 0.033 kg/s of liquid paraffin, temperature sensors, precision pressure gauges, and flow-meters. An ohmic internal heater provides the heat load expected from the wakefields, up to a total power of nearly 100 W allowing a factor of two safety margin. The setup is shown in Fig. 1.35. Initial measurements performed using water as a coolant confirm the expected behaviour, showing that for a nominal power of 54 W, flowing water at 0.017 kg/s with an inlet temperature of 18 °C and 19 °C at the exit, the beam pipe external surface temperature remains at 19 °C, with a pressure drop of 0.13 kPa. Raising the power to 100 W and reducing the flow to 0.08 kg/s the beam pipe temperature increases to 24 °C, still within the margins of the system.

The elliptic-conical beam pipe prototypes are being fabricated in aluminium and will eventually be welded to the central beam pipe, also made in aluminium. The cooling manifolds of the elliptic-conical beam pipes will be soldered using an electro-beam welding technique, and their performance will be validated using a similar system to that for the central beam pipe.

The bellows prototype will be fabricated in aluminium, and will allow the study of the assembly procedure, the welding of an elliptical geometry, and the effectiveness of the thermal/electrical contact.

At the same time, a mock-up of the inner vertex detector, along with the air-cooling cones, is being fabricated using carbon fibre. This aims to validate both the mechanical assembly procedure and the cooling performance in a dedicated experimental setup. The outer tracker and disks will be constructed from aluminium and integrated into the support tube, which will also house a LumiCal mock-up made from 3D-printed material.

The full-scale IR mock-up will ultimately be used to study the integration sequence of various components, helping to identify potential critical issues. Additionally, it may serve as a platform for investigating the alignment system.

Fig. 1.35 Measurement setup for central beam pipe cooling system

1.7 Energy calibration and polarisation

A principal task of FCC-ee is to probe for physics beyond the Standard Model by making ultra-precise measurements of a wide range of electroweak observables, whose overall consistency can then be assessed. Knowledge of the collision energy $\sqrt{s}$ is a key input to many of these measurements, and this is obtained through measurements of the mean beam energy E_b. Corrections must then be applied to the naive relation $\sqrt{s} = 2E_b$ to obtain the centre-of-mass energy at each interaction point.

In electron or positron storage rings, transverse polarisation naturally builds up through the Sokolov-Ternov effect. The spin tune, defined as the ratio of the spin precession frequency to the revolution frequency, is proportional to the average beam energy E_b. The spin tune can be directly measured by the procedure of resonant depolarisation (RDP), in which the frequency of a depolariser kicker magnet is varied until the polarisation is found to vanish, when the depolariser frequency corresponds to the spin precession frequency.

This technique has been exploited at many facilities, such as VEPP-2M [144], VEPP-4M [145], CESR [146], DORIS [147], and, most notably, at LEP in scans of the Z resonance [148]. Alternatively, in a free spin precession (FSP) measurement, the depolariser may be used to rotate the spin vector into the horizontal plane, and the precession frequency can then be measured directly.

These polarisation-based precision measurements, however, will only be possible for Z-pole operation and at energies up to and including the W^+W^- threshold. At higher energies, the polarisation level will be too small for RDP and FSP measurements to be practical, and, here, the energy scale will have to be determined from physics processes at the experiments, such as $e^+e^- \to f\bar{f}\gamma$ production, as it was done by the LEP experiments, e.g. Ref. [149].

For the ZW and $t\bar{t}$ modes of operation, these energy-calibration data from the detectors could be complemented by dipole-magnet spectrometer techniques, as carried out at LEP [150] or based on the distribution of laser-Compton back-scattered electrons, utilising the polarimeter set up [151] (Sect. 1.7.5). Yet another possibility will be to regularly inject pilot bunches pre-polarised in the injector complex, and to measure their FSP after injection. Simulations predict that, up to the ZH energy, a polarisation level of $\sim 10\%$ can be preserved during the FCC-ee booster energy ramp [152].

When calculating $\sqrt{s}$ it is necessary to have good knowledge of the crossing angle of the two beams, to account for local energy variations from synchrotron radiation, the RF system and impedance, and to consider the effects of opposite sign vertical dispersion at the interaction points.

The knowledge of E_b at LEP was dominated by the sampling rate of RDP measurements, which were performed outside physics operation with a periodicity of around a week. The energy was found to vary significantly between measurements due to several effects, for example, earth tides [148]. In order to enable the much greater degree of systematic control that the vastly larger sample sizes at FCC-ee warrants, the operational strategy will be very different to LEP. Measurements of E_b will be performed several times an hour on non-colliding pilot bunches. Around 160 pilot bunches per beam will be injected at the start of the fill, and wiggler magnets will be activated to speed up the polarisation time. One to two hours will be required for the polarisation to build, after which the wigglers will be turned off and physics (colliding) bunches will be injected. The RF frequency will be continually adjusted to keep the beams centred in the quadrupoles, thus suppressing tide-driven energy changes, which would otherwise be $\mathcal{O}(100\text{ MeV})$. A model will be developed to track variations in residual energy between measurements.

In Ref. [153], it was demonstrated that the systematic uncertainty from the knowledge of the collision energy on the key electroweak observables can be greatly reduced compared to what was possible at LEP. More recent studies have confirmed this conclusion and showed that further improvements are possible. For example, energy-related uncertainties of around 100 keV and 12 keV are envisaged for the Z mass and width, respectively, to be compared to the equivalent numbers of 1.7 MeV and 1.2 MeV at LEP [148]. These estimates should, however, be regarded as provisional, and efforts are underway to further reduce them. The uncertainty expected on the W mass from the knowledge of $\sqrt{s}$ is around 160 keV, which is sufficient for the statistical precision. Steps towards improvements and greater robustness in the energy calibration were explored at a workshop at CERN in autumn 2022 [154].

The following provides a brief status report of the key components required for the $\sqrt{s}$ calibration. The discussion is focused on the accelerator, but remarks are also included on important inputs that will come from the experiments, in particular, the measurement of the spread in the centre-of-mass energy $\delta_{\sqrt{s}}$, which must also be known to a high degree of precision. More details are given in Volume 1 of this Report. A fuller discussion on all these topics may be found in Ref. [155].

1.7.1 Beam polarisation and optimisation

The polarisation of electron and positron beams naturally builds up over time. The maximum theoretical polarisation is 92.4% and it is oriented antiparallel and parallel to the magnetic field, for electrons and positrons, respectively. In an error-free flat machine, i.e. in the absence of vertical bending magnets or solenoids, this means that the polarisation is fully vertical [156], and, hence, $\vec{n_0} \parallel \hat{y}$. The design-orbit spin tune is equal to $\nu_0 = a\gamma_{\text{rel}}$, where a is the gyro-magnetic anomaly and γ_{rel} the relativistic Lorentz-factor. The spin precesses around $\vec{n_0}$. Due to strong synchrotron radiation, the local beam energy varies significantly along the circumference. ν_0 corresponds, therefore, to the average beam energy over one revolution with an error below 0.3 keV.

In practice, the level of polarisation is lowered by several mechanisms, including magnetic and alignment errors, which can lead to resonance excitation between the spin-orbit and the betatron- and synchrotron motion. Since depolarising effects are stronger for larger vertical, closed orbits, well-optimised orbit correction and optics tuning techniques are required to achieve sufficient polarisation. In addition to optics and emittance tuning techniques (see Sect. 1.3), dedicated spin-matching bumps have been studied, and these show an improvement in polarisation [157]. Furthermore, errors not only reduce the achievable polarisation, but can also lead to a shift between $a\gamma$ and the measured spin tune ν_0. To study the Z-line shape, measurements at beam energies in the range of 43.85 to 47.37 GeV are foreseen. In recent studies, no systematic offset between $a\gamma$ and ν_0 is found between the studied beam energies around the Z-pole. Additionally, simulation studies which assume up to 100 µm arc and 25 µm IR rms misalignments (plus 5% randomly missing BPMs, 1% BPM random scaling errors, and 1 µm random BPM resolution error) [158, 159], respectively, yield an absolute offset between $a\gamma$ and ν_0 well below 100 keV for the vast majority of seeds [158]. These studies only included orbit corrections. Additional optics tuning techniques are likely to further reduce the remaining offset.

The alternative IR layout with a non-local solenoid compensation scheme leads to interleaved spin deflections around the longitudinal and the horizontal axis, resulting in a deviation of $\vec{n_0}$ estimated to roughly 10 µrad. Nevertheless, this deflection reduces the asymptotic polarisation, simulated in SAD, to about 1%. Current studies aim at increasing the level of polarisation by introducing vertical pi-bumps, as was performed in LEP [160]. Although these bumps could increase the vertical emittance, this effect is presumed to be minor since they only need to correct $\vec{n_0}$ of 10 µrad, and thus, the required bump strength is expected to be rather small.

1.7.2 Wigglers

At 45.6 GeV, the natural polarisation time is 250 h. Thus, achieving a polarisation level in an error-free machine of 5-10% requires 15 to 30 hours, which is an unacceptably long period without calibration at the start of the fill. Reducing the polarisation rise time to about 12 h is feasible using wigglers, which also increase the rms energy spread to 64 MeV. In the currently planned operational scenario, low-intensity ($\approx 10^{10}$ particles) pilot bunches are injected at the start-of-fill and polarised using asymmetric polarisation wigglers [161, 162], similar to those at LEP [163]. When roughly 10% polarisation is achieved, after approximately 100 minutes at the Z-mode, the wigglers are switched off, and all the nominal-intensity colliding bunches are then injected and brought into collision. Around 160 pilot bunches are injected at the start of each fill, with an estimated lifetime of roughly 20 h. This corresponds

Table 1.15 Specification for the polarisation wigglers

Number of units per beam	24
Central field B_+ [T]	0.7
Central pole length L_+ [mm]	430
Asymmetry ration $r = B_+/B_- = L_-/L_+$	6
Critical energy of SR photons E_c [keV]	968

to roughly one pilot bunch being available for an RDP scan every 7.5 min. By the time the last pilot bunch has been depolarised for the first time, the pilot bunches that were depolarised first will have naturally reacquired sufficient polarisation to be measured again.

The wiggler design for FCC-ee follows the three-pole design of the LEP damping wigglers. Wigglers will be grouped in packages of three units, and two packages will be installed in consecutive 16 m long drift spaces. Their current placement in the FCC lattice is in the straight section downstream of each IP. The required number of polarisation wigglers and their specifications are given in Table 1.15.

1.7.3 Pre-polarised pilot bunches

In the current baseline approximately 100 min are required to polarise the pilot bunches in the main rings before commencing with injecting nominal physics bunches after every beam dump. Availability studies presented in Sect. 2.1.2 suggest that injecting pre-polarised pilot bunches could significantly enhance the time available for physics, especially when considering failure scenarios. Furthermore, this scheme would ease constraints on the maximum achievable polarisation and, hence, would limit the necessity of additional spin bumps, which could introduce additional vertical emittance. Nevertheless, injecting pre-polarised pilot bunches into the main rings demands a careful evaluation of the injector design, which must be suitable for generating polarised electrons and positrons and allow sufficient polarisation transport through the full injector chain and energy ramp. These studies have begun and will continue in the next phase of the project.

1.7.4 Depolariser

The pilot bunches are depolarised with an electromagnetic kicker using transverse fields (RF-kicker), with a TEM-wave travelling towards the beams and a varying excitation frequency. Once the driving frequency is equal to the spin-tune, the polarisation vector is rotated away from the vertical direction, leading to depolarisation or spin flip. The proposed tune-changing rate corresponds to 1 keV/s.

Radiative diffusion gives the spin resonance a natural width of about 200 keV at the Z-pole and 1.4 MeV at the W-pair-threshold. These values are significantly larger than the desired precision. Recent studies suggest that by alternating the scanning direction an uncertainty of a few keV at the Z-pole is achievable. Furthermore, RDP has recently been successfully simulated for the W-energy for the first time. RDP only yields a sufficiently large change in polarisation if the spin-modulation index $B = \nu_0 \sigma_E / Q_s < 1.5$, with the energy spread σ_E and the synchrotron tune Q_s, which ensures a low number of synchrotron-tune sidebands inside the distribution of the spin tune [164, 165].

To achieve a sufficient spin rotation, a vertical kick of 10 µrad is required. A single kick would lead to a propagating orbit through the machine, and thus this bump must be closed. In order to achieve a spin rotation, dipoles must be located within the closed orbit bump. It is found that the regular arc optics would allow sufficient rotation over four FODO cells [166]. Since one closed orbit bump of 10 µrad would lead to a vertical peak orbit above 1 mm, it is proposed to distribute it over four closed-orbit bumps per beam, each providing 2.5 µrad. At least two kickers per orbit bump are required, constraining the phase advance to 180°. A weaker third kicker would ease this constraint. Hence, a total of 16 to 24 kickers are required. The third correction kicker could be designed as a slightly shorter strip-line with less RF power installed, as it only has to provide corrections to the bump.

Each kicker providing 2.5 µrad features a strip-line design of 1 m length with four electrodes, operating around 40 MHz. Keeping the nominal vacuum chamber diameter of 70 mm requires an RF power per kicker port (electrode) of 35 kW, and it is therefore suggested to reduce the vacuum chamber at the kicker to 26 mm with electrodes at a distance of 9 mm from the beam. This reduces the RF power per kicker port to 2.26 kW (9.04 kW per kicker). Studies are underway to ensure that the overall impedance remains at an acceptable level [167]. The following Table 1.16 shows the configuration in point PA, where one-quarter of the necessary depolariser kickers are proposed to be installed. Similar configurations are proposed in the other three experiment points. All or part of the depolariser kickers can also be used as kickers for transverse feedback systems for instability mitigation.

The technique of FSP is being investigated as a complementary approach to RDP. Here, the vertically orientated spin is flipped into the horizontal plane, and the coherent (free-spin) precession is then observed. The spin tune is

Table 1.16 Possible configuration of depolariser kickers in point PA generating a local 2.5 µrad bump, assuming that the depolariser kicker system will be distributed over all four experiment points in a similar way to provide the total effect required for RDP. A shorter kicker is used for bump correction between the two main depolariser kickers

Location	Beam	Function	Kicker length	Power per kicker
Point PA left	electron	open bump	1.0 m	9.04 kW
Point PA left	electron	correction	0.75 m	4.5 kW
Point PA left	electron	close bump	1.0 m	9.04 kW
Point PA right	positron	open bump	1.0 m	9.04 kW
Point PA right	positron	correction	0.75 m	4.5 kW
Point PA right	positron	close bump	1.0 m	9.04 kW

Fig. 1.36 Schematic drawing of the FCC-ee polarimeter. More details can be found in Ref. [169]

then retrieved by a Fourier transform, which also yields the full spin spectrum of the spin motion. This technique would require a kicker pulse about ten times stronger than that planned for the RDP measurement [168].

Since residual longitudinal polarisation in colliding bunches would modify the cross-section and forward-backward asymmetries, it must be controlled to a level below 10^{-5}. Hence, it is envisaged to regularly depolarise colliding bunches, requiring a selective RF-kicker.

1.7.5 Inverse Compton scattering polarimeter

Measurements of the polarisation of the FCC-ee beams will be performed through the process of inverse Compton scattering. The physics goals of FCC-ee set various requirements that the polarimeter system must fulfil.

- The requirement to calibrate and study the electron and positron beams separately means that each ring requires at least one polarimeter. In order to provide redundancy and meet the target availability for the polarimeter measurements, which is set at 95%, it is foreseen to have two instruments in each ring.
- The polarimeters will be deployed on the pilot bunches for both RDP and FSP measurements. During Z-pole operation they will also perform measurements on physics bunches in order to ensure that any longitudinal polarisation is kept sufficiently low.
- The statistical precision on the measurements of the transverse polarisation of the pilot bunches should be around 1% per second. A single bunch will be probed in each measurement.
- Many more (~ 100) physics bunches will be probed in a single measurement period, the laser temporal pattern being only indicative here and will be further optimised in the future. The physics-bunch studies place the most stringent demands on the systematic control of the absolute polarisation measurement: it is desirable to measure a polarisation level consistent with zero to a precision of $\sim 10^{-4}$.
- FSP and longitudinal-polarisation studies require that the complete spin vector be characterised. This can be achieved through measuring the spatial distribution of the scattered electrons (positrons), as well as the backscattered photons [169].
- Knowledge of the relative positions of the scattered electrons (positrons), back-scattered photons and electrons (positrons) allows real-time measurement of the beam energy, which can attain a statistical precision of 10^{-3} per second [169]. This capability will be valuable for many physics studies and will be optimised in the ongoing design of the polarimeter system.

A schematic drawing of the FCC-ee polarimeter is shown in Fig. 1.36.

The most suitable location for the polarimeter using the most recent machine optics design is in the straight section 830 m upstream of the experiment IPs. The dispersion suppression dipole can then also be used as the system spectrometer magnet. This location is followed by 100 m of field-free propagation, allowing sufficient separation of the Compton products from the main beam. The room that houses the laser would be installed in a shielded region as close as possible to the laser interaction point (< 50 m). To meet the targeted availability for the energy-calibration measurements in the next phase of the project, it will be necessary to thoroughly investigate and

Table 1.17 Preliminary laser parameters for pilot and colliding bunches. Note that single-bunch charges are different for pilot and colliding bunches

Technology	Q-switch	Modelock Yb	Modelock Yb
Bunch type	Pilot	Pilot	Colliding
Repetition frequency	3 kHz	3 kHz	3 kHz
Number of targeted bunches	1	1	10
Pulse energy	3 mJ	3 mJ	50 µJ
Average power	9 W	9 W	1.5 W
Pulse duration	3 ns	30 ps	30 ps
Beam width ($\sigma_{x/y,l}$)	1 mm	1 mm	1 mm
Crossing angle	2 mrad	8 deg	8 deg
Scatters per bunch crossing	260	290	94
Scatters per second	8 10^5/s	9 10^5/s	28 10^5/s

validate the reliability of a system based on fully remote laser control. Studies of the homogeneity requirements on the dispersion suppression magnet are also planned.

The laser will operate at a green wavelength of around 515 nm, a choice which provides the optimum compromise between the field-free distance required and the reliability and versatility of operation. Both Q-switched Nd:YAG and Yb mode-lock technologies are under consideration. Currently, the latter is favoured, as it appears to be best adapted to providing suitable pulses to both the pilot and physics bunches. Table 1.17 shows the key parameters for such a choice. The crossing angle is implemented in both the horizontal and vertical planes, with the vertical crossing angle necessary to remove the scattered photons from the plane of the synchrotron radiation.

The polarimeter will contain two detector systems. The first will record the transverse ellipse of the Compton scattered electrons over a surface of about 5×300 mm^2 (for Z-pole operation). The second will record the peak-shaped distribution from the Compton gammas on a detector of about 10×10 mm^2 transverse area. The baseline design for the detectors is pixelated sensors of 18-50 µm pitch in the transverse direction.

Monte Carlo simulation models are under development to evaluate and optimise the expected polarimeter capabilities. These models include a description of the laser/beam interaction chamber, the separation chamber of almost 100 m, and the detector systems foreseen to record the Compton products. A preliminary study has been performed using the Toy Monte Carlo model described in Ref. [170]. Further investigations and optimisation of the system are now being pursued based on a complementary model developed using BDSIM [120], a Geant4-based package that includes a description of particle-matter interactions.

1.7.6 IP-specific corrections to the collision energy

The resonant-depolarisation measurements determine the mean beam energy around the ring. A variety of mechanisms either induce local variations in the beam energy or lead to other corrections that need to be applied when calculating $\sqrt{s}$, the collision energy.

The beams experience continuous energy losses around the lattice from synchrotron radiation (SR) and resistive-wall impedance, which are compensated by the RF-cavities. It has been demonstrated in Ref. [153] that to minimise the $\sqrt{s}$ shifts at the IPs, both beams must have all RF-cavities located in one straight section, identical for the electron and positron beam. This is planned for both Z pole and W^+W^- operation. While SR radiation losses are identical for pilot and colliding bunches, being, for example, 39 MeV at 45.6 GeV, impedance losses increase with increasing bunch intensity. Recent studies estimate a loss per revolution of about 0.8 MeV and 1.6 MeV at the Z pole, respectively, for 3×10^{10} and 2.6×10^{10} particles per bunch [171]. Furthermore, beamstrahlung energy losses, which range from 0.31 MeV per IP at $\sqrt{s} = 91.2$ GeV up to 14 MeV for $\sqrt{s} = 365$ GeV, must be monitored, for example by using a beamstrahlung monitor. Beamstrahlung losses increase with the beam energy and the bunch population, and lead to bunch lengthening, together with an increased energy spread. This beam-beam interaction accelerates the particles before the collision, decelerates them afterwards, and also modifies the crossing angle, but in a manner that leads to no net change in the collision energy.

The collision energy is also modified by opposite-sign vertical dispersion (OSVD) and collision offsets at the IP. At each IP, the shift in collision energy is [153]

$$\Delta\sqrt{s} = -2u_0 \frac{\sigma_E (D_{u,B1} - D_{u,B2})}{E_0(\sigma_{B1}^2 + \sigma_{B2}^2)} , \tag{1.25}$$

where $D_{u,B1,B2}$ is the dispersion at the IP for each beam, σ_E is the beam-energy spread, which is assumed to be identical between electrons and positrons, $\sigma_{B1,B2}$ are the beam sizes, E_0 is the nominal beam energy and

u_0 is the offset. Assuming 1 µm of spurious OSVD at the IP, as may occur according to optics tuning studies, the $\sqrt{s}$ is shifted by roughly 100 keV per nm of offset. The vertical offset can be determined and controlled via luminosity scans, where the beam positions at the IPs are scanned against each other until the optimum luminosity is achieved. At LEP such scans yielded a precision better than 0.1 µm at the Z-pole. However, at the FCC-ee an improvement by a factor 100 will be necessary. Complementarily to observing the luminosity increase with vertical beam positions, beam-beam deflection scans are envisaged; these rely on observing the change of crossing-angle from beam-beam with varying vertical beam position. In principle, the dispersion of the colliding bunches at the IP can be obtained by changing the momentum by applying a small RF-frequency shift and measuring the resulting orbit shift in the BPMs closest to the collision point. However, the maximum allowed RF-trim which does not alter the optics, as well as the interplay of orbit shifts due to beam-beam and dispersion, especially at these BPMs, remains to be studied.

An alternative approach to determining the dispersion at the interaction point (IP) involves using a transverse kicker to modify the path length of the pilot bunches and measuring the resulting change in orbit. This measurement enables the inference of the dispersion for the colliding bunches, assuming they share the same OSVD as the pilot bunches. Since this method does not require altering the RF frequency, it prevents the potential induction of the flip-flop effect in the colliding bunches.

A crucial final input for the $\sqrt{s}$ calculation is the precise determination of the crossing angle at each interaction point (IP), which is provided by the experiments themselves.

1.7.7 Input from the experiments

Measurements conducted using collision data from the experiments provide essential input for determining key parameters related to the energy calibration.

The principal data set for these studies are $e^+e^- \to \mu^+\mu^-(\gamma)$ events. Reconstruction of the decay topology allows the crossing angle to be determined, as well as providing insight as to how the crossing angle varies with bunch intensity. In addition, it is possible to determine the longitudinal boost and $\delta_{\sqrt{s}}$, the spread in collision energy. Good knowledge of $\delta_{\sqrt{s}}$ is vital for many key objectives of the FCC-ee programme, such as the measurement of Γ_Z. Current studies indicate that all these quantities can be determined from collision data with the required precision. Finally, reconstruction of $e^+e^- \to f\bar{f}(\gamma)$ events and other processes provides a relative measurement of $\sqrt{s}$ that can be of great interest at high energies where RDP is not feasible. More details are given in Volume 1 of this report.

1.8 Injection and extraction

The technical straight section in point B (PB) of the FCC is dedicated to the beam transfer from the booster to the collider and the dump systems. In total, eight systems are installed in this area, and this section focuses on the collider system and the top-up injection and dump concepts.

1.8.1 Top-up injection

The integrated and peak luminosity targets of the collider necessitate a continuous injection scheme from a full-energy booster, as the beam lifetime during collisions is well below 1 h. Due to the high bunch charge in the collider and the limitations of the injector complex, a swap-out scheme is not feasible; thus, a top-up injection scheme is required.

Among the four operation modes, the Z mode is particularly challenging, with approximately 18 MJ of stored beam energy per collider ring at an energy of 45.6 GeV. As such, the Z mode is the current focus of the injection scheme design. In this mode, at each injection occurring every 3 s, up to 10% of the collider's maximum bunch intensity and up to 1120 bunches are injected, totalling up to 1% of the collider nominal intensity.

This intensity is deemed reasonably safe for transfer from the booster to the collider, provided that a series of collimators is installed in the booster extraction region and along the transfer line to the collider to intercept any mis-kicked bunches.

Several potential schemes for implementing top-up injection at FCC-ee have been investigated [108]. Longitudinal injection schemes, which require an individual kick for each injected bunch trailing circulating bunches, have been ruled out due to the complexity of the necessary kicker system. For the conventional off-axis injection scheme, modelling of the synchrotron radiation (SR) cone produced by the beamlet, along with its impact on the SR mask and the aperture limitations around the experimental insertion, indicated an unacceptable level of interference [172].

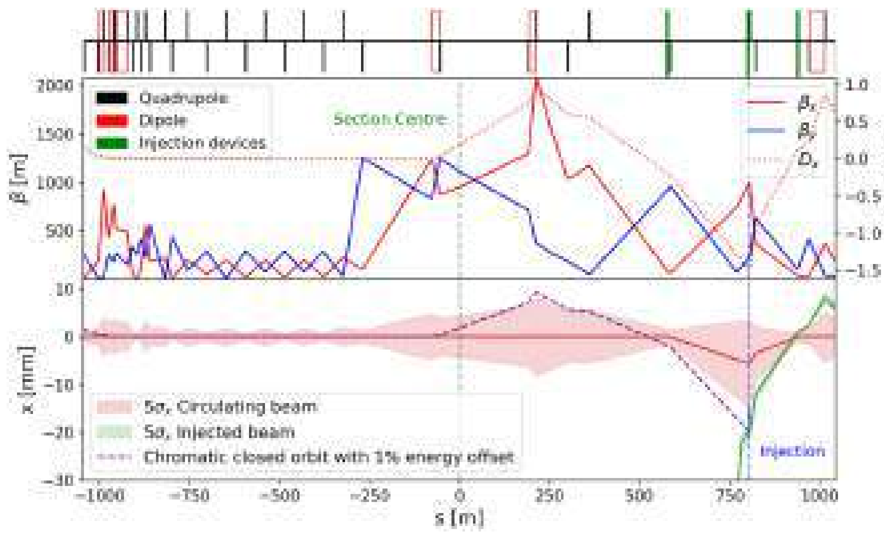


Fig. 1.37 The collider optics in the PB straight section with the longitudinal position relative to the IP

On axis injection For on-axis injection, the beam is placed onto the chromatic closed orbit, where the energy offset together with the ring's optics dispersion provides the horizontal separation between the injected and circulating beams. The beamlet undergoes synchrotron oscillations, and around IPs it overlaps with the circulating beam due to the zero dispersion, thus preventing any increase in the SR cones or of the experiment background.

The beamlet benefits from faster damping compared to off-axis injection since synchrotron oscillations damp twice as fast as betatron oscillations. Another advantage of on-axis injection was observed at the LEP collider, where this scheme provided higher efficiency and lower sensitivity to errors at the injection point [173]. Therefore, the conventional on-axis injection has been selected for the present baseline concept.

The distance between injected and circulating beams establishes the requirements on the energy offset and dispersion at the injection septum:

$$|D_x\Delta| = 5\sigma_{cir} + S + 5\sigma_{inj} \tag{1.26}$$

where D_x is the dispersion at the injection point, Δ is the relative energy offset of the injected beam, S is the blade thickness of the septum, σ_{cir} and σ_{inj} are the beam sizes of the circulating and injected beams at the injection point.

As shown Eq. (1.26), the required energy offset increases with the septum blade thickness. Hence, an initial concept aimed at using an electrostatic septum to minimise its thickness but there are significant uncertainties on the reliability of such a system in the presence of synchrotron radiation. Therefore, the present concept focuses on thin magnetic septa with $S = 2.8\ mm$.

During injection, the circulating beam closed orbit is placed at $5\sigma_{cir}$ from the septum blade (see Eq. (1.26)). This condition must be fulfilled for the shortest possible duration because the septum, or a protection absorber placed immediately upstream, becomes the primary aperture of the ring. Therefore, the baseline concept features a fast bump to bring the circulating beam close to the injection septum for one single turn. Two sets of fast bumper magnets placed at a relative phase advance of π are used to produce the orbit bump with a height of $10\sigma_{inj} + S$ at the injection point. The nominal position of the circulating beam is $15\sigma_{cir}$ from the edge of the injection septum. The failure of one of the bumpers would cause an open oscillation of all circulating bunches, potentially resulting in significant losses at downstream machine aperture bottlenecks (i.e., ideally at the collimators). The number of bumpers has to be defined in order to keep the oscillation amplitude small enough to avoid major damage to the machine in case of failure. Moreover, an absorber must be installed upstream of the septum blade to shield it from accidental and continuous losses. The absorber and the septum should never be the primary aperture bottleneck; this role should always remain with the collimators. The amplitude of the bump might need to be reviewed if this condition is not fulfilled.

The collider ring baseline optics for technical straight sections have been optimised to include the on-axis injection requirements. This optimised collider optics in the PB straight section is shown in Fig. 1.37 with the injection region on the right side of the IP and the crossing dipoles in the centre. The injection point is located at $s = 800\ m$ where it achieves a dispersion of $D_x = -1.5$ m and $\beta_x = 1000$ m. This allows on-axis injection with an energy offset of $\sim 1\%$, providing sufficient space for the magnetic septum blade of approximately 3 mm.

The hardware requirements for the baseline injection scheme are summarised in Table 1.18.

While the zero-dispersion condition was introduced to simplify the solution of Eq. (1.26) and to reduce the size of the injected beam at the injection septum, it also causes a mismatch between injected and circulating beams.

Table 1.18 Collider injection hardware requirements

System	Value	Unit
Beam energy	45.6–182.5	GeV
Thick septum apparent thickness	10	mm
Thick septum deflection	0.1	mrad
Thin septum apparent thickness	2.8	mm
Thin septum deflection	100	µrad
Fast bump kicker angles	40 and 60	µrad
Fast bump kicker max. rise/fall time	600	ns
Fast bump kicker flattop	304	µs
Fast bump kicker maximum ripple	1.5	%

The energy offset constrains the distance of the injected beam from the septum. In the Z and WW modes, in particular, the lattice momentum acceptance limits the energy offset of the injected beam to approximately 1%. On the other hand, the dispersion mismatch causes betatron oscillations in the injected particles away from the chromatic closed orbit. This effect remains moderate, as the momentum spread of the injected beam δ_{inj} is small. Additional studies will be needed to quantify this effect and investigate different matchings for each operation mode.

A complete line design will need to be developed for the transfer from the booster to the collider. Presently, this line is approximately 500 m long from the booster extraction at the centre of the straight section to the collider injection point (see Fig. 1.37). Since the booster ring is positioned 1030 mm above the collider plane, special care must be taken to maintain the small vertical emittance and ensure precise matching of the vertical optics to the collider ring. In the horizontal plane, just upstream of the thin collider injection septum, a thicker magnetic septum is being considered for the beam trajectory, with specifications detailed in Table 1.18.

Both booster and collider beam parameters depend on the operation mode (see Tables 1.2 and 4.1). In the present concept, the lattice configuration of the injection straight section, as well as the injection devices' specifications, remain the same for all operation modes. With fixed optics and septum thickness, the energy offset is optimised for each energy mode to accommodate varying beam characteristics and the ring's momentum acceptance. The baseline injection settings for the four operation modes are shown in Fig. 1.38.

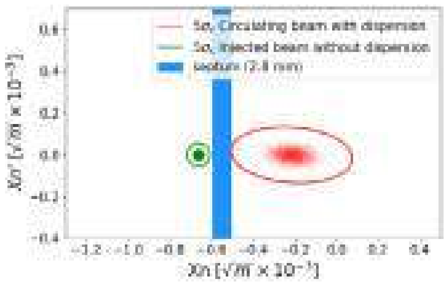
In order to maintain a clearance of 5 σ for both the injected and circulating beam a larger energy offset is required for modes with higher beam emittance (see Eq. (1.26)), and the energy offset in H and $\mathrm{t\bar{t}}$ mode is increased to 1.4% and 1.6%, respectively. This remains compatible with the large momentum acceptance in Higgs and $\mathrm{t\bar{t}}$ modes, which are ±1.6% and −2.8/+2.5%, respectively [31]. For Z mode, the RF acceptance is 1.06% and the momentum acceptance is approximately 1%, so the baseline injected beam energy offset is set to 0.95% to ensure the entire injected beam fits within the ring acceptance.

The collider's and booster's equilibrium emittances in the WW mode are significantly larger, but the energy acceptance of the ring is still limited to 1%. This prevents increasing the energy offset for the higher energy modes, making the on-axis scheme unable to provide sufficient clearance for the 2.8 mm septum blade. The present concept introduces a small betatron offset to the scheme and moves towards a hybrid injection for the WW mode. The purple dashed line in Fig. 1.38b represents the chromatic orbit for the energy offset considered, and the injected beam is offset by 1 mm further away from the septum, which corresponds to 0.5 σ_{cir}.

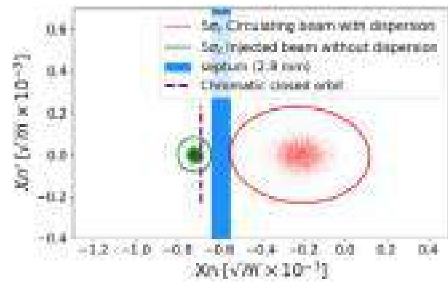
The hybrid injection scheme increases the separation between the injected and circulating beams without increasing the energy offset, thereby making it partially on-axis and partially off-axis. While the off-axis injection is not possible for the FCC collider, a small betatron oscillation is not incompatible with the SR absorption around the experiment IPs [172]. Other effects discussed earlier, such as experiment background sensitivity and errors, may still play a significant role and will need to be quantified.

Presently, the injection efficiency is modelled with particle tracking of the injected beam in the collider ring lattice. The tracking consists of a Gaussian 6D distribution of 2500 injected particles, which are tracked for 3000 turns using the Xsuite code [174]. The synchrotron radiation model used accounts for quantum excitation to accurately predict the behaviour of particles injected near the edge of stability. Additional studies including strong-strong beam-beam effects are discussed Sect. 2.3.9. Further comprehensive studies will need to include beam-beam interaction, collective effects and lattice errors.

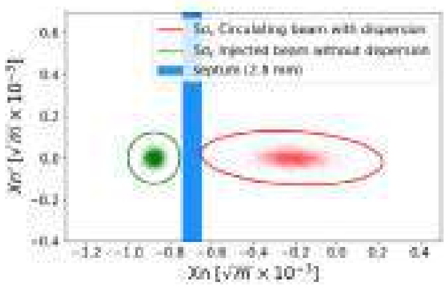
The evolution of the simulated injection efficiency for on-axis and hybrid injection schemes is shown in Fig. 1.39. The energy offset of the baseline on-axis injection is 0.95%, with an injection efficiency of 99%. This confirms that the baseline injection scheme is achievable with the present lattice, and the injected beam is within the acceptance of the ring.



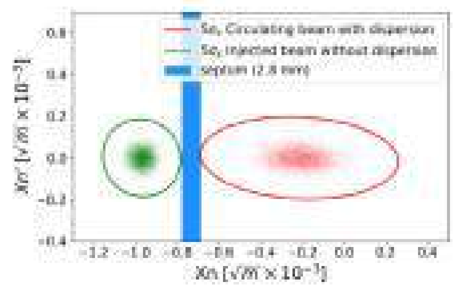
(a) Z mode, $\Delta = 0.95\,\%$.



(b) WW mode, $\Delta = 1\,\%$.



(c) H mode, $\Delta = 1.4\,\%$.



(d) $t\bar{t}$ mode, $\Delta = 1.6\,\%$.

Fig. 1.38 Normalised horizontal phase space at the collider injection point for each operation mode. Beam distributions and associated 5 σ envelopes around the injection septum are shown for each mode

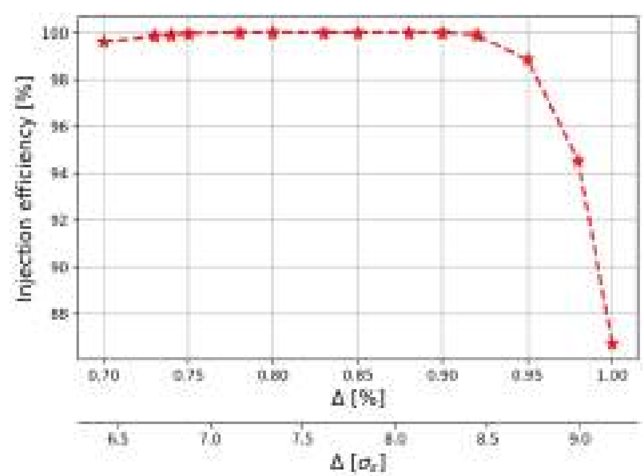


Fig. 1.39 Injection efficiency versus injected beam energy offset for the Z mode

At other injection offsets, only the energy of the injected beam is adjusted, but the optics is not optimised, and the physical beam position is unchanged. Below the baseline on-axis scheme energy offset, the injection efficiency remains high, which indicates that the DA and MA are sufficient to capture an injected beam with some betatron offset. At an energy offset below about, 0.7% the injection efficiency decreases, which shows that a maximum betatron offset is reached and part of the injected beam is outside the lattice DA. Due to the energy acceptance of the lattice, of ±1%, the injection efficiency drops quickly for energy offset above the baseline scheme.

Collider dump The stored beam energy can reach 18 MJ per beam during Z mode operation, which is the highest stored energy among the lepton machines worldwide. Due to synchrotron radiation damping, the beam sizes in FCC-ee will be significantly smaller than in typical hadron machines, resulting in a much higher energy density. The vertical beam size, in particular, is in the order of tens of micrometres, corresponding to energy densities

Table 1.19 Summary of the collider dump scheme hardware requirements

	Kicker	Septum
Beam energy (GeV)	45.6–182.5	
Deflection angle per system (mrad)	0.3	5
Maximum repetition frequency (Hz)	0.3	0.3
Kicker pulse flatness (%)	±20	N/A
Rise/fall time (µs)	0.6	N/A
flattop time (µs)	304	N/A
Blade thickness (mm)	N/A	25
Aperture (H × V mm)	N/A	30 × 10
Longitudinal available space (m)	20	20

around 5 GJ/mm^2, which cannot be absorbed safely [175]. The design and operation of the beam abort system must accommodate this destructive potential, requiring multiple safety measures to prevent damage to accelerator components in the event of hardware failure. Protection elements strategically positioned at a precise phase advance from the extraction kickers must be installed to intercept any mis-kicked beam in case of an unintended kicker firing that is not synchronised with the abort gap. Additionally, the voltage of the kickers, as well as the current of the septa and ring dipoles, must be continuously monitored to ensure they remain within strict limits relative to the reference value for a given energy.

A retriggering system, which fires all the remaining kickers in case of the spurious firing of one kicker, has to be envisaged, and the reaction time must be defined based on the consequences of such an event. Redundancy in the powering scheme, controls, and interlock logic must be implemented to ensure that the required level of reliability and system availability is achieved.

The number of magnets has to be defined with the aim of reducing the maximum operational voltage and thus minimising the risk of spurious firing and the sensitivity to failures. Out-of-vacuum designs should be preferred to eliminate the risk of flashovers. The position of the beam at extraction has to be constantly monitored, and the beam dumped before orbit drifts translate into losses at extraction above the level that can be considered safe (to be defined). Similar measures to the present LHC beam dump system will need to be considered, and adapted to the specificities of the FCC but presently no major fundamental obstacles have been identified.

The collider dump design is implemented at the entrance of the PB straight section and extracted outwards, with the dump placed on the other side of the IP. The beam dump is located 5 m away from the ring to allow sufficient space for shielding and to limit radiation to the ring equipment [176]. The present geometry uses a small deflection angle to achieve the required separation and a long transport line of 700 m from the ring extraction point to the beam absorber.

In order to reduce the energy density on the dump, the present design aims for a large beta function and dispersion in both horizontal and vertical planes to maximise the beam size. Despite the significant length of the line, the natural divergence of the beam at the extraction point is insufficient to produce a beam spot that is large enough on the dump. Therefore, a set of four dedicated quadrupole magnets is installed in the transfer line to further increase the beam divergence. In the horizontal plane, the dump kicker and septa provide the deflection to reach the dump, but also a significant dispersion that is further amplified by the dump line quadrupoles to reach 20 m at the dump. Along with the beta function of 121 km and the beam parameters in the collision, the present design achieves a horizontal beam size on the dump of 10 mm for the Z mode [177].

For the vertical plane, a 1 mrad vertical dipole is placed at the start of the dump line to create a vertical dispersion that is further amplified by the dump line quadrupoles to reach 23 m at the dump. Between the betatron and dispersive contribution, this scheme also provides a large beam size in the vertical plane of 10 mm for the Z mode using the beam characteristics expected in a collision. The vertical deflection also places the dumped beam at the height of the booster.

The extraction design follows a traditional fast extraction scheme in the horizontal plane. The circulating beam is extracted in one turn so that the kicker flattop must be 304 µs and its rise time should be smaller than the filling scheme abort gap of 0.6 µs. The dump design hardware requirements are summarised in Table 1.19.

1.9 Radiation environment

The emission of synchrotron radiation and the generation of secondary particles by other processes (beam-beam effects etc.) creates an intense radiation environment, which can have a significant impact on machine components and other equipment in the tunnel. A thorough study of the expected radiation load and its associated effects is essential for designing the FCC-ee machine. Radiation can lead to substantial heat deposition and, consequently, to thermal stress on the accelerator components. The power deposited, in particular from synchrotron radiation, needs to be extracted in a controlled way otherwise equipment can be damaged. Excessive heat deposition in the tunnel environment would also pose a significant challenge to the ventilation system. Another important aspect is the lifetime of equipment, which can be affected by cumulative radiation damage. One of the main concerns for FCC-ee is the total ionising dose in cables, cable connectors, optical fibres, insulation materials, seals, etc. As already observed in LEP, the ionising dose can severely compromise the organic insulation of magnet coils and cables and can rapidly degrade the functionality of optical fibres [178]; even covers of electrical junction boxes and hoses of fire extinguishers were found to be damaged [178], which demonstrates the challenge expected for FCC-ee. Other long-term radiation effects include radiation-induced corrosion, which occurs due to the dissociation of molecules in the tunnel atmosphere. Another concern for FCC-ee is stochastic and cumulative effects in electronics, which can impede the machine performance (e.g., premature beam aborts due to single event effects) and can limit the lifetime of equipment electronics.

In order to mitigate radiation effects and manage their release, it is essential to sufficiently shield the power FCC-ee machine equipment and infrastructure from the radiation load. This requires dedicated synchrotron radiation absorbers (see Sect. 3.2), as well as additional shielding on the magnets and in the tunnel. Due to the sheer size of the FCC-ee machine, implementing continuous shielding of the vacuum chamber, as was done in LEP, may be challenging. In order to develop an adequate shielding configuration, it is necessary to create a detailed inventory of radiation-sensitive components (e.g., cables, electronics, insulation) for all accelerator systems like magnets, power converters, beam instrumentation, and the beam interlock system. Different components can exhibit different levels of sensitivity to radiation, which needs to be accounted for in the shielding design. For example, organic insulation of busbars can typically sustain several tens of MGy, whereas general-purpose cables can only be used up to a few 100 kGy. Electronics systems based on commercial-off-the-shelf components can typically not withstand levels exceeding 1 kGy, even when designed to be radiation tolerant through commercial component selection and architectural mitigation solutions; for doses above 1 kGy it is necessary to rely on dedicated radiation-hard component designs that require investment in time and resources. Similar considerations apply to optical fibre cables. Finding a trade-off between shielding solutions and a radiation-hard component design is an important objective for the FCC-ee design phase to avoid radiation-induced equipment failures or degradation of the collider performance.

This section provides a first overview of the expected power deposition and the radiation environment in the arcs and experiment insertion regions, based on FLUKA Monte Carlo simulations [125–127]. A preliminary shielding design for the arc dipoles is presented, together with a possible electronics bunker near the arc quadrupoles. The present shielding and bunker design is only a first concept, with the purpose to quantify the achievable reduction of the radiation levels. A further evolution of the shielding and bunker design is expected in the engineering design phase (see also Sect. 3.3). No studies have been carried out so far for the technical insertion regions; the radiation levels will depend on different beam loss mechanisms (e.g., beam losses during top-up injection or beam collimation), which have to be assessed in detail. It is expected that some shielding installations will also be needed in these insertion regions.

1.9.1 Radiation levels in the arcs and first shielding design

The main source of radiation in the FCC-ee arcs is the synchrotron radiation produced in the bending dipoles of the collider ring. Synchrotron radiation is emitted tangentially from the stored beams and the resulting energy loss increases steeply with the beam energy ($\propto E^4/(m^4\rho)$). The bending radius ρ of the FCC-ee arc dipoles is about 10 km, which is about three times larger than for LEP. Considering the important impact of synchrotron radiation, the synchrotron power emitted in FCC-ee is limited by design to 100 MW (50 MW/beam) for all operation modes (see Table 1.2). The resulting radiation levels in the tunnel are nevertheless more pronounced at higher beam energies since the emitted photons become more penetrating. A key figure is the critical energy, $E_c \propto E^3/\rho$, which divides the photon spectrum into two parts of equal power emission. For a bending radius of 10 km, the critical energy is 0.02 MeV at the Z-pole (45.6 GeV), but it increases to 0.1 MeV in WW operation (80 GeV), to 0.4 MeV in ZH operation (120 GeV), and further to 1.3 MeV in $\mathrm{t\bar{t}}$ operation (182.5 GeV). The resulting radiation environment in the tunnel is composed of secondary photons and electrons. In addition, photo-neutron production becomes possible when the photon energies exceed the (γ,n)-threshold, which is around 10 MeV for copper. Neutron production by synchrotron photons is mostly relevant for $\mathrm{t\bar{t}}$ operation, where the high-energy tail of the synchrotron spectrum extends beyond the giant dipole resonance of the photo-nuclear cross section.

The vacuum system of the collider incorporates localised photon absorbers made of a copper alloy (CuCrZr), which intercept the synchrotron radiation fan (see Sect. 3.2). The absorbers have a length of about 35 cm; they are placed every four to five metres in the winglets of the dipole chambers and shadow, as well as the short straight sections. At higher energies, the radiation leakage from these absorbers becomes significant, which requires the integration of additional shielding elements in the dipoles. A first conceptual design of the collider shielding

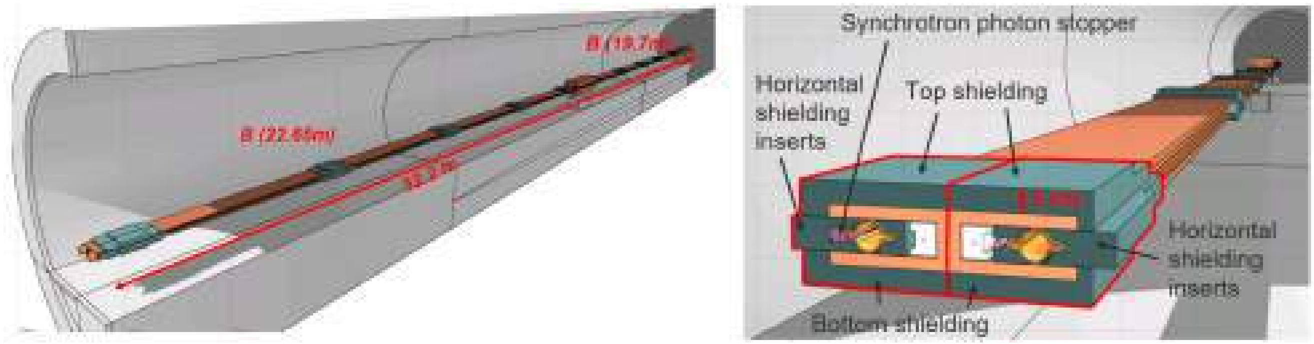


Fig. 1.40 Preliminary conceptual radiation shielding design for the collider dipoles in the FCC-ee arcs. The left figure shows a model of a representative FODO cell for ZH and $t\bar{t}$ operation, whereas the right figure presents a more detailed view of the shielding elements on the dipoles. The shielding encloses tightly the synchrotron radiation absorbers. The shielding is assumed to be made of antimonial lead and weighs about 400 kg per synchrotron radiation absorber

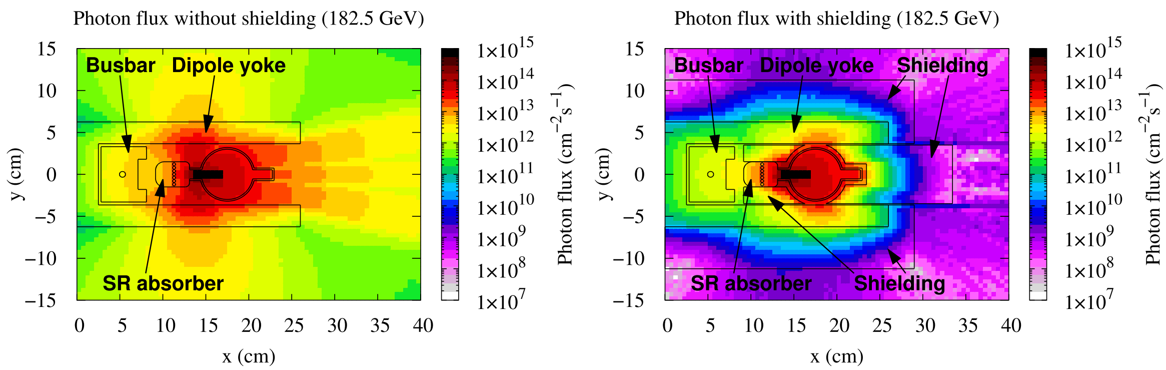


Fig. 1.41 Synchrotron radiation-induced photon flux around the dipole yoke in $t\bar{t}$ operation. The two plots compare the photon leakage without radiation shielding (left) and with the conceptual shielding illustrated in Fig. 1.40 (right). The flux was calculated with the FLUKA code, assuming a photon transport cut of 10 keV. In this picture the x-axis exceptionally points towards the centre of the collider ring, which is opposite to the convention adopted elsewhere in this document

configuration is shown in Fig. 1.40. The presently considered baseline material is antimonial lead with a density of about 10.88 g/cm^3. The shielding tightly encloses the radiation absorbers and consists of horizontal inserts, as well as shielding plates above and below the dipole yoke. The integration of the shielding is a complex task and requires design iterations with the vacuum system and magnets. A description of technical aspects of the material design, including material selection and engineering considerations, is presented in Sect. 3.3.

A first optimisation of the shielding topology has been carried out, to maximise the power absorption and to reduce the total ionising dose in the tunnel sufficiently. Given the complexity of the shielding integration and assembly, it is preferable to install the shielding before the start of FCC-ee operation. In this case, the shielding design must account for all beam modes, including $t\bar{t}$. A suitable figure of merit for optimising the shielding geometry is the flux of secondary photons escaping vertically and horizontally from the dipoles. The attenuation length for 1 MeV photons in lead is about 1.3 cm, but it decreases to less than 1 mm for photon energies below 100 keV. With several centimetres of antimonial lead, the photon flux in the tunnel can be reduced by multiple orders of magnitude, even at the highest beam energy (182.5 GeV). Figure 1.41 shows the simulated secondary photon flux around the dipole yoke for $t\bar{t}$ operation. The left plot is without shielding, whereas the right plot demonstrates the reduction achievable in the photon leakage with the preliminary shielding design shown in Fig. 1.40. The shielding must be sufficiently long (130 cm in the present design) to reduce the backscattering of photons into the tunnel. The resulting shielding weight is about 400 kg per synchrotron radiation absorber.

Table 1.20 summarises the resulting power deposition in the machine and the tunnel for all beam modes, assuming the same shielding design for all beam energies. For comparison, the table also shows the power deposition without shielding. The shielding has only a limited function at the Z mode since most of the synchrotron radiation power (>98%) is dissipated by the synchrotron radiation absorbers themselves. With increasing energy, the power absorption by the absorbers decreases to about 83% in WW operation and to less than 70% in ZH and $t\bar{t}$ operation. In these cases, the surrounding shielding is very efficient in reducing the power leakage to the dipoles and the

Table 1.20 Relative power deposition by synchrotron radiation in the machine and the tunnel. The results were obtained with FLUKA simulations for a representative arc cell, assuming 10 photon stoppers between successive quadrupole magnets, or roughly one photon stop every 5 metre for each beam. The table compares two configurations for each beam mode, with and without radiation shielding around the synchrotron radiation absorbers. The power deposition in the environment includes the power dissipated in the air, the tunnel walls and the surrounding earth or rock

	Z		WW		ZH		$t\bar{t}$	
	w/o	with	w/o	with	w/o	with	w/o	with
SR absorbers	98.1%	98.1%	82.8%	82.8%	69.9%	69.7%	68.3%	68.1%
Radiation shielding	-		-		-	19.1%	-	20.4%
Vacuum chambers	1.8%		8.2%		9.0%	8.9%	8.1%	8.0%
Dipoles	0.1%		7.8%		16.7%	2.3%	17.4%	3.5%
Quadrupoles	<0.001%		<0.01%		<0.02%	<0.01%	<0.1%	<0.02%
Sextupoles	<0.001%		<0.01%		<0.02%	<0.01%	<0.1%	<0.02%
Environment	0.01%		1.2%		4.3%	<0.01%	6.1%	<0.03%

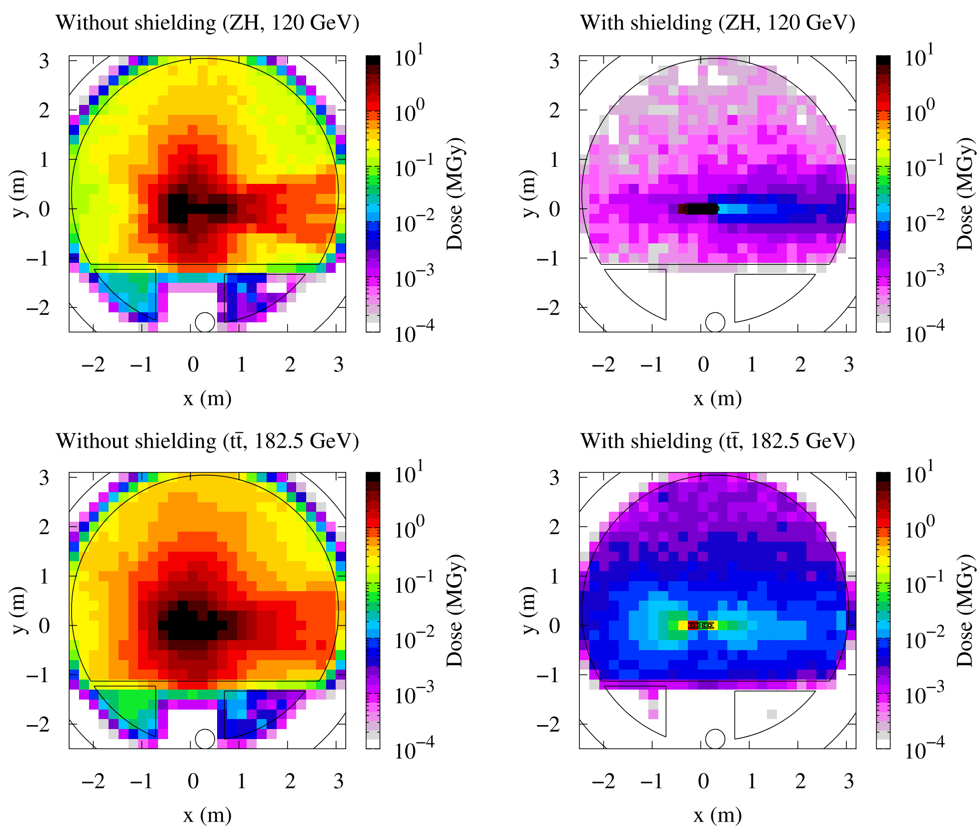


Fig. 1.42 Annual dose in the arc tunnel due to synchrotron radiation emission by the stored beams in the collider (top: ZH, bottom: $t\bar{t}$). The left figures are without radiation shielding, whereas the right figures were derived with the conceptual shielding illustrated in Fig. 1.40. The dose maps correspond to the position of a synchrotron radiation absorber, where the dose reaches its maximum value. The maps were calculated with FLUKA, assuming 185 days of operation with 75% operational efficiency. The collider is located in the origin. The x-axis points towards the centre of the collider ring

environment by absorbing between 10% (WW) and 20% (ZH and $t\bar{t}$) of the power. Since only the dipole busbars are actively cooled but not the yoke, a fraction of the heat deposited in the dipoles would also be dissipated in the air. Equipped with a dedicated cooling circuit, the shielding substantially reduces the heat to be evacuated by the ventilation system.

Figure 1.42 presents the corresponding annual dose in the arc tunnel. The plots illustrate the effect of the shielding for ZH and $t\bar{t}$ operation, which yield the highest contribution to the annual dose. The shielding reduces the dose levels in tunnel by more than two orders of magnitude. At the location of the upper cable trays on the walls (>2 m above floor level), the dose is <1 kGy/year for the ZH operation and <10 kGy/year for $t\bar{t}$ operation, down from several hundreds of kGy/year without shielding. With the present shielding design, it seems feasible that most cables in the cable trays receive <100 kGy/year in the full FCC-ee era, including $t\bar{t}$. This is compatible with the criteria for general-purpose cables presently adopted for HL-LHC and other projects at CERN. The radiation

Table 1.21 Radiation levels inside and outside a possible electronics bunker near lattice quadrupoles in the arcs. The first two quantities describe cumulative effects, whereas the last two quantities are relevant for single-event effects. The values correspond to one year of $t\bar{t}$ operation (185 days with 75% operational efficiency). The last column shows the radiation level specifications for the HL-LHC arcs (one year) [179]

	FCC-ee $t\bar{t}$ (outside bunker)	FCC-ee $t\bar{t}$ (inside bunker)	HL-LHC arcs (below magnets)
Total ionising dose	few kGy	<10 Gy	1.4 Gy
Si 1 MeV neutron-equiv. fluence	6×10^{11} cm^{-2}	$\sim 1 \times 10^{10}$ cm^{-2}	1.6×10^{10} cm^{-2}
High-energy hadron-equiv. fluence	8×10^{8} cm^{-2}	$\sim 1 \times 10^{7}$ cm^{-2}	2.4×10^{9} cm^{-2}
Thermal neutron-equiv. fluence	5×10^{11} cm^{-2}	few 1×10^{9} cm^{-2}	1.2×10^{10} cm^{-2}

level specifications and required safety factors for FCC-ee cables and other equipment need to be scrutinised during the technical design phase and will depend on the chosen technologies. The results nevertheless demonstrate that radiation shielding can significantly reduce the need for expensive radiation-hard equipment in the tunnel. Near the machine, radiation-hard cables and cable connectors qualified for MGy dose levels can likely not be avoided. Depending on the evolution of equipment technology in the next years, the radiation resistance criteria are still expected to evolve. The shielding requirements need to be adapted accordingly.

Even with the dipole shielding, the annual dose in tunnel remains significant for electronics, i.e., the levels are too high for a radiation-tolerant system design based on commercial-off-the-shelf components. In addition, the expected neutron flux in $t\bar{t}$ operation increases the likelihood of single event effects and enhances the expected displacement damage. A conceptual design of a possible electronics bunker has been devised (see Sect. 3.3), in order to reduce the radiation levels for electronics. In this very first design, the bunker is assumed to be made of 10–20 cm-thick concrete walls, which are lined with borated polyethylene sheets. The latter is needed for moderating and capturing neutrons. The bunkers are assumed to be located below or near the arc quadrupoles. Table 1.21 compares the radiation levels inside and outside the bunker for one year of $t\bar{t}$ operation. The results demonstrate that similar levels as in the HL-LHC arcs can be achieved (see last column), with the exception of the total ionising dose which remains somewhat higher. With the bunker, using custom radiation tolerant electronics systems based on commercial-off-the-shelf semiconductor devices could be feasible for FCC-ee.

1.9.2 Radiation levels in the experiment insertion regions

The primary radiation sources in the tunnel of FCC-ee experimental insertions are beamstrahlung radiation, radiative Bhabha and synchrotron radiation, and their impact has been studied with FLUKA simulations. Other sources of radiation, such as beam-gas interactions or others, may cause additional radiation showers, but they are not considered in the present study. Concerning beamstrahlung, a dedicated absorber is needed to safely dispose of the photons because of the high power carried by the outgoing photon beam (several hundreds of kW at Z pole). The absorber will be placed about 500 m downstream of the IP and needs to be shielded to limit the radiation leakage to the tunnel. A second source of radiation is the off-momentum electrons from radiative Bhabha interactions; a fraction of these electrons is lost on the vacuum chamber when entering the first dipoles of the outgoing beam. Additionally, the stored beams emit a non-negligible amount of synchrotron radiation in the bending dipoles downstream of the IP, with more than 160 kW of power produced over the first 500 m. On the other hand, the synchrotron radiation power emitted by the incoming beams is only 1 kW, yielding a much smaller contribution to the radiation levels in the tunnel.

The secondary radiation fields by these three radiation sources have been simulated using FLUKA. The studies included similar CuCrZr synchrotron radiation absorbers as in the arcs but no additional shielding around the absorbers. The annual ionising dose from the IP ($z = 0$) up to $\sim$520 m downstream is displayed in Fig. 1.43, comparing Z and $t\bar{t}$ operation. The dose maps show that the radiation environments for the two operation modes are very different since different source terms dominate. At the Z pole, losses from radiative Bhabha give high dose levels up to 200 m downstream of the IP; another hot spot occurs around 500 m due to leakage of radiation from the beamstrahlung absorber. The conceptual shielding for the absorber assumed in these preliminary simulations (20 cm of concrete) yields dose levels of several hundreds of kGy/y in the vicinity of the absorber and several tens of kGy/y at the beamline of the outgoing beam. Further optimisation of the shielding will be performed based on radiation protection studies. It is expected that with thicker shielding, the dose can be reduced by orders of magnitude. The synchrotron radiation emitted in the dipoles is less relevant for the radiation levels at the Z pole due to its soft spectrum; with critical energies ranging from 2 keV to 23 keV, 95% of its power is absorbed in the synchrotron radiation absorbers.

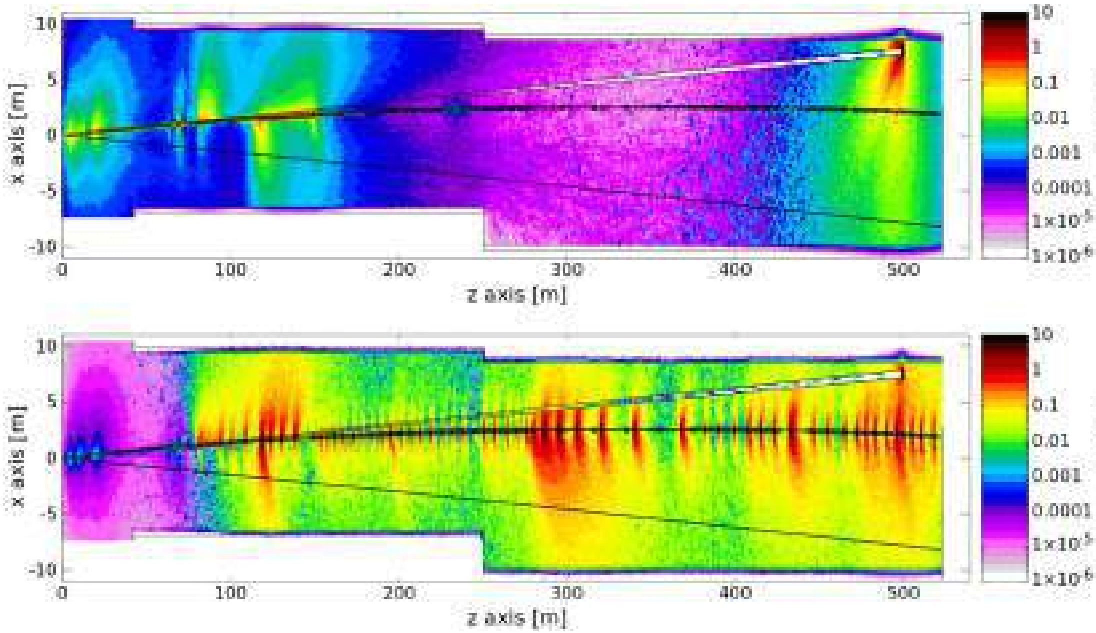


Fig. 1.43 Top view of the annual ionising dose at the beamline level (average for y in $[-20, 20]$ cm) caused by beamstrahlung radiation, radiative Bhabha electrons and synchrotron radiation from the outgoing beam. The top figure corresponds to Z mode operation, whereas the bottom figure is for $t\bar{t}$. The maps were simulated with FLUKA

The situation is the opposite at $t\bar{t}$, where the dose from synchrotron radiation is dominant while the contributions from beamstrahlung and radiative Bhabha are smaller than for Z pole operation. The harder synchrotron spectra feature critical energies of the order of 1 MeV, reducing the power fraction absorbed by the photon stoppers down to 68% (similar to the arcs). Dose hot spots of the order of 0.1–1 MGy/y are observed around each synchrotron radiation absorber. This underlines that, like in the arcs, synchrotron radiation absorbers alone are not enough to suppress the radiation leakage into the tunnel; it is expected that additional shielding similar to the arc shielding is needed to reduce the dose. In the close proximity of the IP the dose levels are determined by radiative Bhabha, but they are two orders of magnitude lower than at Z pole because of the lower intensity.

For both operational modes, other sources of radiation (e.g., beam-gas interactions) are expected to give a negligible contribution to the radiation hotspots displayed in Fig. 1.43, but dedicated studies would be needed to assess a possible impact in the portions of the tunnel where the sources studied so far are yielding lower radiation levels.

1.10 Ongoing studies

This section will summarise five of the ongoing studies for the FCC-ee optics design. These include the local chromatic correction (LCC) optics which has the potential to improve the dynamic aperture and reduce the optics sensitivity to errors; a combined function optics design which improves the dipole packing fraction and reduces the amount of synchrotron radiation; a non-local detector solenoid compensation scheme which reduces the vertical emittance growth; a monochromatic optics configuration which would reduce the energy width of the collisions and could enable direct measurement of the Higgs width through s-channel production; polarised e^+e^- sources which could eliminate the downtime needed to polarise the pilot bunches and improve the integrated luminosity.

1.10.1 LCC optics

Local Chromatic Correction (LCC) optics have been proposed for the FCC-ee collider and are detailed in [32]. The structure of the accelerator is the same as the baseline optics, including four final focus systems (FF) and four long straight sections (LSS) separated by eight arcs.

The LCC optics are designed to obtain *anharmonic* and *achromatic* beam dynamics for each of these components independently. The layout of the optics in the arcs, FF and LSS are shown in Figs. 1.44, 1.45 and 1.46 respectively.

The arcs optics are based on novel hybrid focusing de-focussing optics (HFD). Five standard FODO cells are matched as a single one (10 quadrupoles and 10 dipoles) in order to obtain the desired first and second

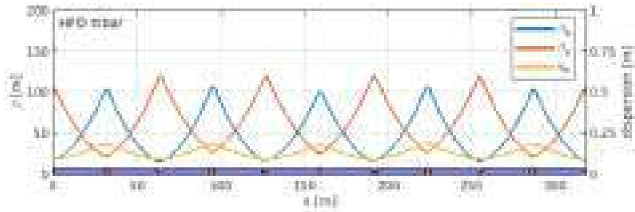


Fig. 1.44 LCC HFD arc cell optics at $\mathrm{t\bar{t}}$. The same layout is used at Z

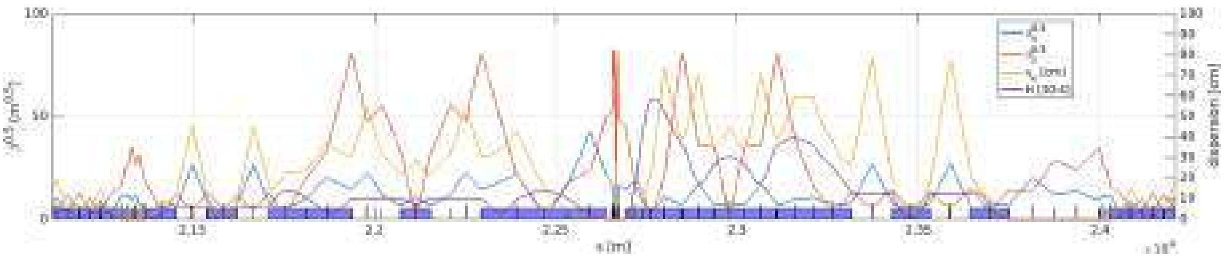


Fig. 1.45 LCC FF optics at $\mathrm{t\bar{t}}$. The same layout is used at Z

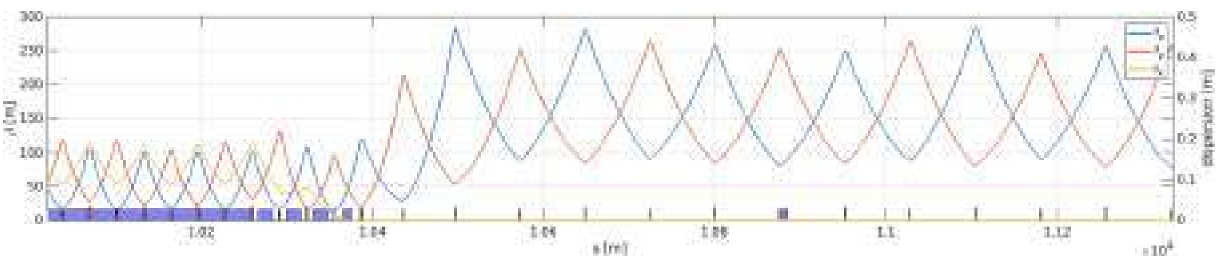


Fig. 1.46 LCC LSS optics at $\mathrm{t\bar{t}}$. The same layout is used at Z

order amplitude and momentum detuning coefficients by setting optics values at specific locations. Only two sextupoles families are needed. The HFD optics are extremely versatile and allow for large dynamic aperture and momentum acceptance. The same magnetic layout is used to operate at $(\mu_h, \mu_v) = (100, 74)$ deg for $\mathrm{t\bar{t}}$ and $(\mu_h, \mu_v) = (50, 44)$ deg for Z.

The four LSS and the FF systems are designed following the *transparency conditions* detailed in [180]. These conditions mean that the beam dynamics on- and off-energy, and with or without sextupoles, are periodic and matched to the arcs. The lattice beam dynamics properties are then as close as possible to a fully periodic lattice (arcs only).

The FF optics meet all the baseline specifications in terms of crossing angle, synchrotron radiation handling and other geometrical constraints. Following the LCC principles, the chromaticity generated by the low-β interaction points is fully corrected within the FF. Sextupoles at locations in phase with the IP are used to cancel first and second-order amplitude detuning coefficients. Decapoles placed in these exact locations minimise the detrimental effect of synchrotron radiation in the high gradient final doublet quadrupoles.

The same magnet specifications used for the baseline optics may be used. No reverse bends are needed for the LCC optics. No superconducting magnets are required except for the final doublets. The number of magnets, length and integrated strengths for the LCC optics are remarkably lower compared to the baseline optics.

The HFD cell dipoles are about 29 m long. QD and QF quadrupoles are 1.8 m and 2.4 m long respectively. 2240 quadrupoles per ring are needed for the arcs. SD and SF sextupoles are 50 cm and 35 cm long respectively, making use of the sextupole design already available for the baseline optics. Dipoles all have the same length, so the $\mathrm{e^+e^-}$ arcs can be shifted longitudinally to align opposite polarity quadrupoles for the two rings. Twin quadrupoles and an additional short QF (60 cm long) can be used to replace the QF/QDs of the two arcs. If high-temperature superconducting magnets are used, quadrupoles do not need to be paired, and the sextupole coils can be wrapped around the quadrupole ones, thus improving the dipole filling ratio and reducing the horizontal natural equilibrium emittance. Trim coils are foreseen on the sextupoles for orbit (horizontal and vertical correctors) and optics correction (normal and skew quadrupole). No additional correctors are needed.

The LCC lattice optics at Z and $\mathrm{t\bar{t}}$ energies have been analysed in terms of sensitivity to alignment errors in the arcs and in the final focus. As detailed in [32] the LCC lattice is for most parameters more tolerant or equivalent to the baseline optics and to other similar lattice designs such as CEPC [181].

Table 1.22 Full ring general parameters, for the two energies considered

	Z	$t\bar{t}$
C [km]	90.659	90.659
Energy [GeV]	45.6	182.5
Num. IP per ring	4	4
Crossing angle [mrad]	30	30
β-tron tunes	(198.26,174.38)	(350.224,266.36)
Chromaticity	(0.20,0.21)	(0.23,1.66)
ϵ_h [pm rad]	684.72	2100.9
J	(1,1,2)	(1,1,2)
α_c	2.894e-05	0.946e-05
U_0 [MeV/turn]	34.3	8808.2
σ_E	3.715e-4	14.9e-4
β_h^* [mm]	0.7	1.6
β_v^* [mm]	100	1000
bunch length [mm]	3.4	2.7
RF Voltage [GV]	0.17	10.4
RF frequency [MHz]	400	400
Long. damp. time [ms]	401.6	6.3
Synchrotron tune	0.045	0.074

The sensitivity to errors in the FF is dominant, and future studies on correction schemes and tuning techniques will be conducted to fully evaluate the tolerated alignment errors.

Some relevant parameters for the Z and $t\bar{t}$ lattice options are reported in Table 1.22.

All non-linear magnets have been optimised using multi-objective minimisation tools in order to maximise the final lattice performance. The transverse dynamic aperture computed in the centre of the straight sections is well above 15σ in the horizontal plane and 70σ in the vertical plane for Z and $t\bar{t}$ energies. The 6D tracking for 2350 turns at Z and 40 turns at $t\bar{t}$ includes quantum diffusion, synchrotron radiation, tapering, and crab sextupoles at the optimal value for maximum luminosity. For the same tracking conditions, the momentum acceptance is close to 2% for Z and 4% for $t\bar{t}$.

The LCC optics are ready to be used for FCC-ee. Further work will be needed for the specification of optics at other energies. This work will benefit from the precise and deterministic strategies defined during the LCC optics design, as well as the matching and optimisation scripts available.

1.10.2 Optics with nested magnets

An alternative design considers nesting dipoles with the arc FODO quadrupoles and sextupoles to increase the dipole fill factor and reduce the overall synchrotron radiation [182]. This could be achieved by using dedicated superconducting arc magnets that nest dipoles with quadrupoles and sextupoles that are designed in close collaboration with the optics development [183]. These nested magnets would replace the regular quadrupoles and sextupoles in the GHC lattice, while otherwise keeping the average cell length and phase advance unchanged. The magnet design allows for individually tuning the overlapping fields, so that it can be directly used for energy tapering, along with orbit and optics corrections.

The overlapping dipole and quadrupole fields directly impact the damping partitions, leading to significant changes in the horizontal equilibrium emittance and, under certain conditions, unstable beam sizes, for example, when the dipole fields in the nested magnets match the arc dipole strength. The stability and the equilibrium emittance can be adjusted by carefully adjusting the dipole field nested with the focusing arc quadrupoles and compensating for this by redistributing the integrated strength among the arc dipoles and the dipoles overlapping with the defocusing quadrupoles. This was done to optimise the equilibrium emittance of the nested $t\bar{t}$ lattice design to be 1.39 nm, roughly equal to that of the baseline GHC design. This was achieved by having a dipole field in the focusing quadrupoles about 46% lower than in the rest of the arc. The design lends itself to easily further optimising the horizontal equilibrium emittance by tuning the dipole strength in the focusing quadrupoles [182].

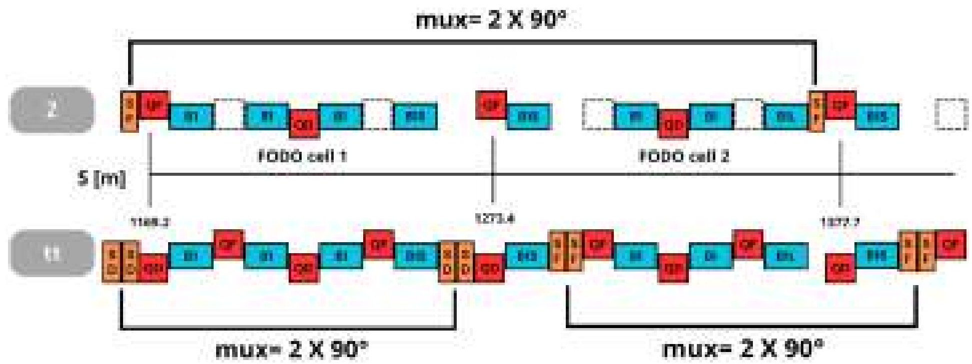


Fig. 1.47 Illustration of arc cell layouts for GHC lattices in Z and $t\bar{t}$ operation

The phase advance of the FODO cell can be preserved by performing a small adjustment on the quadrupole strengths, leading to a change in the β-function of about 1% compared to that of the baseline GHC design. This small change in the optics can be easily absorbed by a slight re-matching of the first few magnets in the straight sections to allow a largely unchanged design of the experiment and RF insertions. The overall decrease in dipole field, due to the redistribution to the nested magnets, results in a significant reduction of the synchrotron radiation by 16.5% from about 10.0 GeV/turn to 8.4 GeV/turn at the $t\bar{t}$ energy.

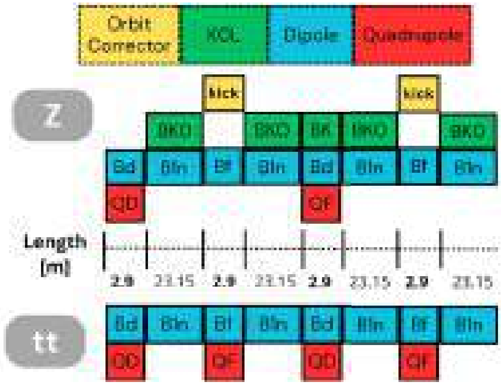
When basing the design entirely on the GHC design, a complication arises due to the unequal dipole field distribution when taking into account the second beam. The baseline design assumes a twin aperture design sharing the same yoke for the magnets of both beams, with a focusing quadrupole in one beam paired with a defocusing quadrupole in the other beam and vice-versa. The unequal dipole fields and bending angle between focusing and defocusing quadrupole would result in the design trajectories of the two beams diverging in the arcs. In the case of the z-lattice, this would result in a maximum deviation of about 1.5 mm, which would most likely be tolerable. However, an alternative arrangement with matching polarities between the beams is also feasible and could be implemented with very few changes to the design.

A second complication is due to the changing arc cell length difference between the Z and $t\bar{t}$ operation. As is illustrated by Fig. 1.47, the shortening of the FODO cell by factor two between Z and $t\bar{t}$ operation results in the change in the polarity of the focusing arc quadrupoles. This, along with the nested dipole field that depends on the polarity of the quadrupole for stability reasons, results in a change in geometry between Z and $t\bar{t}$ operation. This effect can be compensated by a physical geometry that deviates from the magnetic geometry when operating at Z energy. This can be modelled by assigning a different magnetic k_0 than the geometric bending angle. The effect can be largely mitigated by utilising the dipoles in the gaps initially reserved for focusing quadrupoles, as orbit kickers in $t\bar{t}$ operation. Such an approach would result in a maximum orbit deviation of approximately 2 mm while also reducing the horizontal equilibrium emittance.

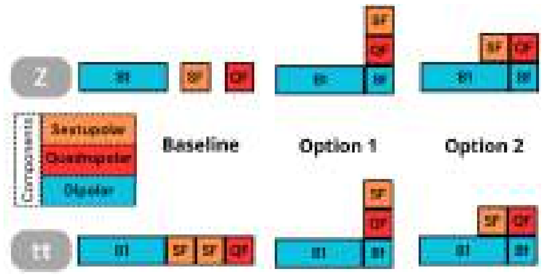
An alternative, though more labour-intensive, solution would be to realign the magnets when transitioning between the two operational modes, which might preclude the use of dual-aperture magnets. While the first approach is more practical and cost-effective, realigning the magnets would be less challenging from a beam dynamics perspective, as it eliminates the need to manage sextupole feed-down effects. Both solutions should be explored to determine the optimal strategy.

For the sextupole placement, two options are considered, as shown in Fig. 1.48b. The first option envisions nesting the sextupoles together with the quadrupole and dipole coils, whilst the second option would nest the sextupoles with only dipoles and in series with the nested quadrupoles. Both options result in a similar dynamic aperture to the GHC lattice by linearly scaling the sextupole strength to recover the correct chromaticity. However, the momentum acceptance requires further sextupole optimisation [184]. Apart from requiring fewer superconducting magnets, a key advantage of Option 1 is that it could facilitate the alignment of the quadrupole and sextupole coils with each other, potentially reducing sources of coupling.

Overall, the nested magnet design based on the GHC offers a performance comparable to that of the GHC and is fully compatible with the insertion regions. A summary of the design parameters of the GHC and the nested magnet arc cell design is shown in Table 1.23. This was achieved by having a non-uniform dipole field in the arc cells, which brings additional challenges that have been identified and solved. Compared to the nominal GHC design, this solution offers reduced power loss due to ohmic heating by having superconducting magnets in place of the quadrupoles and reduced synchrotron radiation, leading to an estimated decrease in power consumption of up to 20%, even when taking into account the cooling for the cryogenic systems. Moreover, this solution reduces the number of dipole families required, and the individual circuits that are necessary by default could be utilised to taper the lattice efficiently using only the superconducting magnets. Similar methods should apply to the LCC design; however, the more compact quadrupoles would diminish the advantage of reduced synchrotron radiation.



(a) Magnetic nested circuits proposed for Z and $\mathrm{t\bar{t}}$ operation in nested magnet configuration.



(b) Two options for nested sextupoles.

Fig. 1.48 Options for nested circuits

Table 1.23 Overview of the different design parameters for the Z and $\mathrm{t\bar{t}}$ lattices with nested magnets, including optical and synchrotron radiation properties

	Z GHC	Z NMs Realigned	Z NMs K0	$\mathrm{t\bar{t}}$ GHC	$\mathrm{t\bar{t}}$ NMs
$D_{x_{\max}}$ [m]	0.634	0.638	0.722	0.559	0.559
I_2 [10^{-4}]	6.417	5.372	5.367	6.40	5.35
I_5 [10^{-10}]	1.484	1.027	1.101	0.194	0.138
U_0 [MeV/turn]	39.06	32.70	32.69	9994.85	8353.07
ϵ_x [nm]	0.705	0.605	0.500	1.478	1.388
Damping times [s]	0.709 0.709 0.354	0.880 0.848 0.416	0.675 0.847 0.486	0.0110 0.0110 0.0055	0.0146 0.0132 0.0063
J_x	1.000	0.963	1.255	0.999	0.903
J_y	1.000	1.000	1.001	1.000	1.000
J_z	1.999	2.036	1.745	2.000	2.096

1.10.3 Non-local detector solenoid compensation

For cancelling the effect of the detector solenoid field, as an alternative to the baseline scheme, which concentrates the compensation solenoid within $\pm\ell^*$ around the IP (local scheme), the compensation solenoid can also be placed behind the final quadrupole unit (non-local scheme). Both local and non-local schemes can compensate for the x-y coupling and the vertical dispersions without degrading the performance (including the beam-beam effects). In the non-local scheme, the required compensation solenoid field is weaker. While the non-local scheme, thereby, provides a better residual vertical emittance, it also seems to induce stronger spin depolarisation. Studies are needed to determine whether, for the non-local scheme, introducing targeted spin-orbit bumps can recover the desired level of equilibrium polarisation.

It is noted that the former LEP collider, without a large crossing angle, used a non-local scheme consisting of four pairs of anti-symmetrically powered tilted quadrupoles over one side of each insertion to compensate the betatron coupling induced by the detector solenoid [185, 186].

1.10.4 Monochromatic operation mode

One of the most fundamental outstanding measurements, since the Higgs boson discovery [187, 188], is determining its Yukawa couplings [13, 189]. Measuring the coupling of first-generation fermions presents significant experimental challenges due to their low masses and, consequently, small Yukawa couplings to the Higgs field. The measurement of this coupling is virtually impossible at hadron colliders because the $\mathrm{H} \to \mathrm{e^+e^-}$ decay has a tiny branching ratio, completely swamped by the Drell-Yan dielectron continuum with many orders of magnitude larger cross section. The FCC-ee, with unrivalled integrated luminosities of 10 $\mathrm{ab^{-1}}$ per year at 125 GeV could enable observing

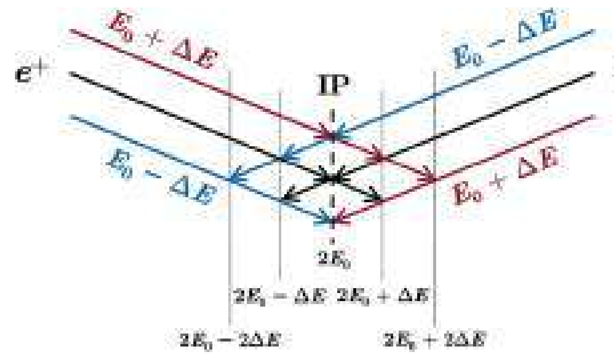


Fig. 1.49 Schematic of crossing-angle collision with monochromatisation based on nonzero horizontal IP dispersion, showing trajectories at the nominal energy E_0 and with an energy offset of $\pm\Delta E$

the resonant s-channel production of the scalar Higgs boson, namely the reaction $e^+e^- \rightarrow H$ on the Higgs pole [190, 191]. This possibility motivated physics [192] and accelerator studies [193–201] towards implementing this new operation mode.

Such a measurement is more easily feasible if the centre-of-mass (CM) energy spread of e^+e^- collisions, which is approximately 50 MeV due to energy spread from synchrotron radiation (SR) alone, and further enhanced by beamstrahlung, in a conventional collision scheme, can be reduced to a level comparable to the natural width of the Standard Model Higgs boson $\Gamma_H = 4.1$ MeV. To reduce the collision-energy spread and enhance the CM energy resolution in colliding-beam experiments, the concept of *monochromatisation* has long been proposed [202]. The basic idea consists of creating opposite correlations between spatial position and energy deviation within the colliding beams, which can be accomplished in beam-optics terms by introducing a non-zero dispersion function with opposite signs for the two beams at the interaction point (IP), as sketched in Fig. 1.49 for a crossing-angle configuration.

Taking as a starting point the GHC optics [203–206], for the $t\bar{t}$ mode, different monochromatisation schemes implying non-zero horizontal or vertical or both types of dispersion function at the IP ($D^*_{x,y}$) have been studied. All newly proposed IR optics have been designed to remain compatible with a standard operation mode without dispersion at the IP and also with the present tunnel configuration.

Given the presence of horizontal bending magnets in the vertical local chromaticity correction of the FCC-ee GHC Interaction Region (IR), the most natural way to implement monochromatisation in this FCC-ee lattice type is reconfiguring these IR dipoles so as to generate a non-zero D^*_x while maintaining the same crossing angle θ_c. Indeed, a wide σ^*_x helps mitigate the impact of the beamstrahlung (BS) on the energy spread σ_δ, while preserving a small σ^*_y is crucial for attaining high $\mathcal{L}$. Taking into account the baseline parameters for the FCC-ee GHC lattice with horizontal betatron sizes ($\sigma^*_{x,\beta} = \sqrt{\varepsilon_x \beta^*_x}$) at the IP of the order of 10 µm and a $\sigma_{\delta,SR}$ of $\sim 0.05\%$ at s-channel Higgs production energy (∼125 GeV), a D^*_x of around 10 cm is required to achieve a monochromatisation factor (λ) of ∼5-8.

Because $\sigma^*_{y,\beta}$ (∼ nm) $\ll \sigma^*_x$ (∼µm) for getting high luminosities, about 100 times smaller D^*_y (∼ mm) is needed to get a similar λ. A nonzero D^*_y of this magnitude could be generated by simply using skew quadrupole correctors around the IP [207–209]. These quadrupoles could be located close to the sextupole pairs in the IR.

As an illustration, a monochromatisation IR optics with combined 0.105 m of horizontal and 1 mm vertical IP dispersion) based on the FCC-ee GHC $t\bar{t}$ optics as starting point has been developed using MAD-X [210]. It is shown in Fig. 1.50. Different monochromatised beam-optics designs, including ones based on the lower-energy Z lattice, are detailed in Ref. [211].

After global implementation, the results of the analytical global performance evaluation for the monochromatisation IR optics based on the 'FCC-ee GHC $t\bar{t}$' are summarised in Table 1.24, for the crossing-angle configuration. Parameters due only to synchrotron radiation are marked with 'SR', while those including the impact of beamstrahlung are marked with 'BS'. For comparison, the first column, labelled Standard ZES, presents an energy-scaled (ES) optics configuration. Its performance parameters were calculated after increasing the FCC-ee V22 $t\bar{t}$ optics from 45.6 GeV to 62.5 GeV, followed by completing all corrections and synchrotron radiation power loss compensation. The optics labelled MonochroM ZH4IP integrate the IP horizontal dispersion generation monochromatisation optics at all four IPs, while MonochroM ZH2IP does so at only two of the four IPs. The designation MonochroM ZHS refers to the re-matched standard optics design that is orbit-compatible with the MonochroM ZH4IP optics. The number of bunches per beam n_b is constrained by the maximum beam-beam tune shift, taken to be 0.14, and by a minimum bunch spacing of 25 ns at FCC-ee. To select an appropriate n_b, studies optimising the luminosity per IP $\mathcal{L}$ and the CM energy spread σ_W of the MonochroM ZH4IP optics, as a function of n_b were conducted, including the beamstrahlung impact under the crossing-angle collision configuration.

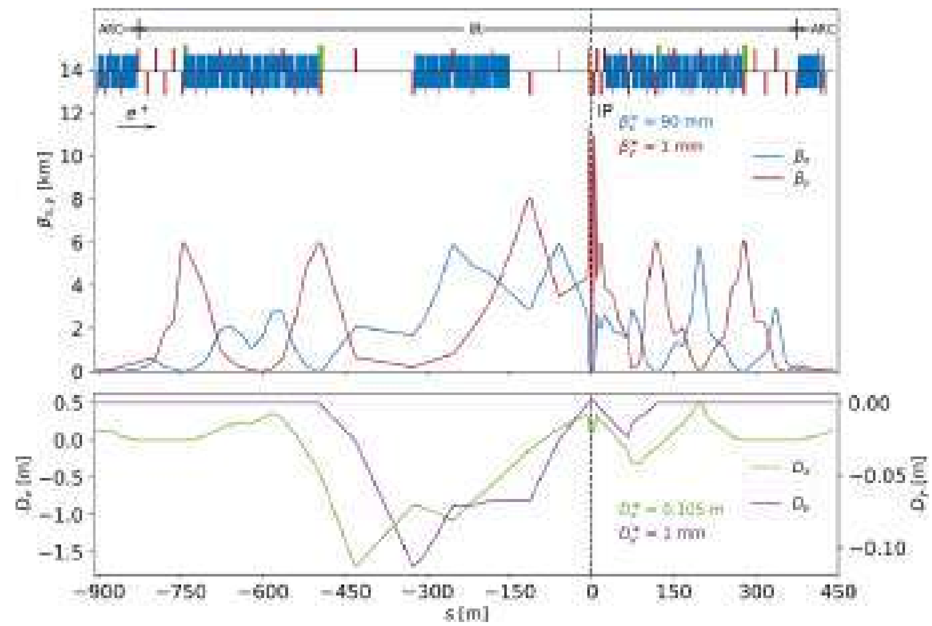


Fig. 1.50 Monochromatisation IR lattices and optics with combined 0.105 m horizontal and 1 mm vertical IP dispersion, based on the FCC-ee GHC $t\bar{t}$ optics, developed using MAD-X. The beam direction is from left to right, and the dashed line $s = 0$ marks the location of IP. In the lattice, dipoles, quadrupoles and sextupoles are shown in blue, red, and green, respectively, while focusing and defocusing elements are positioned above and below the orbit. In the optics, horizontal and vertical betatron functions are displayed in blue and red, respectively, while horizontal and vertical dispersion functions are shown in green and purple, respectively

To accurately assess the performance of the FCC-ee monochromatisation IR optics, which features non-zero dispersion at the IP, the σ_W and luminosity per IP $\mathcal{L}$ were calculated for the different configurations using the simulation tool Guinea-Pig [212] and taking into account the impact of beamstrahlung. In these calculations, the particle distribution at the IP was modelled as an ideal Gaussian distribution, characterised by the global optical parameters of each optics configuration.

It is noted that while the physics performance of a nonzero-D_y^* scheme is less favourable, it would be easier to implement without altering the IR orbit, rendering it an attractive option for existing low-energy e^+e^- colliders. Without the ϵ_y blow-up due to BS, this scheme could potentially achieve better performance in such settings.

Looking ahead, the optical parameters for the monochromatisation mode will be further optimised for enhanced performance. Second, the dynamic aperture optimisation for these new types of monochromatisation optics will be carried out step-by-step by adjusting arc sextupole families according to particle tracking results. This will allow beam-beam simulations with non-zero IP dispersion in the code Xsuite, incorporating the hourglass and BS effects rather than relying solely on analytical evaluations. Implementations of monochromatisation in more symmetric IRs, such as those in the FCC-ee LCC optics, will also be explored. Finally, studies are underway to validate the monochromatisation concept experimentally in existing low-energy circular e^+e^- colliders, such as BEPC II, DAΦNE, and SuperKEKB [100, 213, 214]. These efforts will be essential for achieving the full potential of monochromatisation in future collider projects.

1.10.5 Alternate polarisation studies

As discussed in Sects. 1.7.3 and 2.1.2, injecting pre-polarised pilot bunches could significantly enhance the available time for physics, especially in case of frequent beam aborts, and in addition, ease constraints on the maximum achievable polarisation. The injector would then need to generate polarised pilot bunches of electrons and positrons, with sufficient transport of polarisation through the full injector chain and booster energy ramp. Polarised electron guns providing the required bunch intensity exist, e.g., the dc polarised electron gun developed for the Electron Ion Collider [215]. For the positrons, a small polarising ring located in or inside the damping ring [216] could pre-polarise and store a set of pilot bunches until they are needed for energy calibration in the collider.

Table 1.24 Global performance parameters of monochromatisation IR optics with nonzero horizontal IP dispersion based on the 'FCC-ee GHC $t\bar{t}$' optics under the crossing-angle configuration

Parameter	[Unit]	Standard ZES	MonochroM ZH4IP	MonochroM ZH2IP	MonochroM ZHS
# of IPs $n_{\rm IP}$		4			
Full crossing angle θ_c	[mrad]	30			
SR power / beam $P_{\rm SR}$	[MW]	50	50	49	50
Beam Energy E_0	[GeV]	62.5			
Energy loss / turn U_0	[GeV]	0.138	0.143	0.141	0.143
Beam Current I	[mA]	360	350	350	350
Bunches / beam n_b		12,000			
Bunch population N_b	$[10^{11}]$	0.57	0.55	0.55	0.55
Hor. emittance (SR/BS) ε_x	[nm]	0.17 / 0.17	1.48 / 7.27	0.84 / 4.23	0.35 / 0.35
Vert. emittance (SR/BS) ε_y	[pm]	0.35 / 0.35	2.96 / 2.96	1.68 / 1.68	0.71 / 0.71
Momentum compaction factor $\alpha_{\rm C}$	$[10^{-6}]$	7.31	6.92	7.12	7.06
$\beta^*_{x/y}$	[mm]	1000 / 1.6	90 / 1	90 / 1	1000 / 1.6
$D^*_{x/y}$	[m]	0 / 0	0.105 / 0	0.105 / 0	0 / 0
Rel. energy spread (SR/BS) σ_δ	[%]	0.054 / 0.076	0.055 / 0.057	0.054 / 0.057	0.055 / 0.068
Bunch length (SR/BS) σ_z	[mm]	3.86 / 5.49	4.05 / 4.20	3.95 / 4.12	4.09 / 5.07
RF voltage 400/800 MHz $V_{\rm RF}$	[GV]	0.170 / 0			
RF frequency (400 MHz) $f_{\rm RF}$	[MHz]	399.994581			
Synchrotron tune Q_s		0.015	0.014	0.014	0.014
Long. damping time $\tau_E/T_{\rm rev}$	[turns]	454	436	445	436
Horiz. beam-beam (SR/BS) ξ_x		0.059 / 0.030	0.0025 / 0.0022	0.0027 / 0.0024	0.049 / 0.033
Vert. beam-beam (SR/BS) ξ_y		0.24 / 0.17	0.044 / 0.041	0.060 / 0.056	0.15 / 0.12
CM energy spread (SR/BS) σ_W	[MeV]	47.45 / 67.58	13.41 / 25.75	10.25 / 20.95	48.80 / 60.47
Luminosity / IP (SR/BS) $\mathcal{L}$	$[10^{34}\ {\rm cm}^{-2}\ {\rm s}^{-1}]$	72.8 / 51.9	20.9 / 19.5	28.3 / 26.6	44.6 / 36.6

Chapter 2

FCC-ee collider operation concept

2.1 Operation requirements

2.1.1 Physics requirements

Table 2.1 shows the target integrated luminosities with four interaction points, allocated running times, and the total number of events, for the four baseline centre-of-mass energy stages at the Z pole, the WW production threshold, the ZH production cross-section maximum, and the top-pair production, in this chronological order.

The nominal integrated luminosity is computed by assuming 185 days of physics run time per year, a hardware availability of at least 80%, and a corresponding 'physics efficiency' E of 75% (also see Sect. 2.1.2). In addition, for determining the total integrated luminosity and the number of events expected to be produced (in the last two rows of the table), the luminosity is assumed to be half the design value during the first two years at the Z pole and for the first year at the $t\bar{t}$ threshold. At the Z pole, the integrated luminosity is distributed as follows: 40 ab^{-1} at 87.9 GeV, 125 ab^{-1} at 91.2 GeV, and 40 ab^{-1} at 94.3 GeV. The number of Z decays results from this setup. At the WW threshold, the run time is evenly distributed between 157.5 GeV and 162.5 GeV. The number of WW events include all $\sqrt{s}$ values from 157.5 GeV up.

Figure 2.1 displays the corresponding baseline sequence of events [217]. However, other mode sequences would be possible (see Sect. 2.2.1) and might be preferred. For example, scheduling a Z pole run after the ZH run or the WW threshold run can be considered, ideally with an initial Z pole run during the early phase of FCC-ee operation. Indeed, while the Z pole run offers an exceptionally rich set of physics opportunities, it is also the

Table 2.1 The baseline FCC-ee operation model with four interaction points, showing the centre-of-mass energies, design instantaneous luminosities for each IP, integrated luminosity per year summed over 4 IPs [217]. The integrated luminosity values correspond to 185 days of physics per year and 75% operational efficiency (i.e., 1.2×10^7 seconds per year) [4], in the Z, WW, ZH, $t\bar{t}$ baseline sequence. The last two rows indicate the total integrated luminosity and the total number of events expected to be produced in the four detectors. An additional 3% margin is included for Z running. The number of WW events includes all $\sqrt{s}$ values from 157.5 GeV up

Working point	Z pole	WW thresh.	ZH	$t\bar{t}$	
$\sqrt{s}$ (GeV)	88, 91, 94	157, 163	240	340–350	365
Lumi/IP (10^{34} cm^{-2} s^{-1})	140	20	7.5	1.8	1.4
Lumi/year (ab^{-1})	68	9.6	3.6	0.83	0.67
Run time (year)	4	2	3	1	4
Integrated Lumi (ab^{-1})	205	19.2	10.8	0.42	2.70
Number of events	6×10^{12} Z	2.4×10^8 WW	2.2×10^6 HZ + 65k WW $\rightarrow$ H	2×10^6 $t\bar{t}$ +370k HZ +92k WW $\rightarrow$ H	

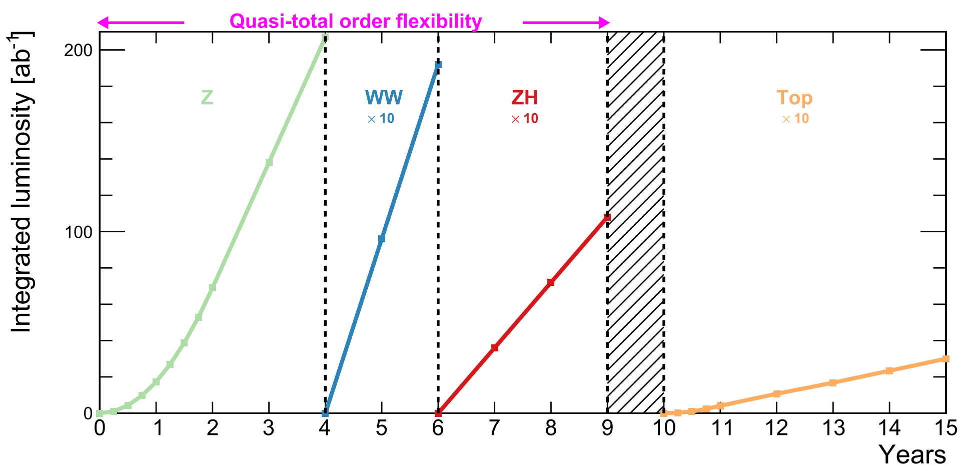


Fig. 2.1 Operation sequence for FCC-ee with four interaction points, showing the integrated luminosity at the Z pole (pink), the WW threshold (blue), the Higgs factory (red), and the top-pair threshold (green) as a function of time. In this baseline model, the sequence of events goes with increasing centre-of-mass energy, but there is quasi-total flexibility in the sequence all the way to 240 GeV. The integrated luminosity delivered during the first two years at the Z pole and the first year at the $t\bar{t}$ threshold is half the annual design value. The hatched area indicates the shutdown time needed to prepare the collider for the higher energy runs at the top-pair production threshold and above

most ambitious and demanding part of the programme from all perspectives, including accelerator performance, energy calibration, detector systematic biases, and theoretical calculations. It will be extremely challenging to achieve all the goals of the Z pole run during the first four years of the collider operation. The new versatile RF system designed accordingly, enables a quasi-total flexibility to choose the running sequence. For example, it would allow short initial Z pole and WW threshold runs, to commission the collider and the detectors, to establish the resonant depolarisation procedures, etc. The ZH run could then proceed, before going back to the Z pole and the WW threshold, both now at full luminosity, with fully functional resonant depolarisation, and a complete understanding of the collider.

2.1.2 Target availability and efficiency

Annual integrated luminosity estimates for FCC-ee at each mode of operation are derived from three or four parameters:

- Nominal Instantaneous Luminosity L: The first two years of Z and the first year of $t\bar{t}$ are assumed to achieve, on average, 50% and 65% of this value, respectively, to account for machine commissioning and beam tuning. These

reductions reflect LEP/LEP-2 experience. Nominal luminosity is then assumed from the third year onward in Z pole operation and from the second year onward at the $t\bar{t}$ threshold.
- Annual Scheduled Physics Time T: It is assumed that 185 days per year are scheduled for physics. This is obtained by subtracting from one year (365 days): 17 weeks of extended shutdowns (120 days), 30 days of annual commissioning, 20 days for machine development and 10 days for technical stops.
- Availability A: Represents the percentage of scheduled physics time when the collider and injectors are able to deliver beam, as opposed to a hardware failure leading to downtime and need to repair. An overall machine availability of 80% is assumed.
- Efficiency E: The efficiency factor E is an empirical factor, whose value can be extrapolated from other similar machines, or by simulations with average failure rate and average downtime. Thanks to the top-up mode of operation, it is expected that E will be, within five percent, equal to the availability A of the collider complex. The target availability is at least 80% and, thereby, a corresponding efficiency $E > 75\%$ is expected [4]. In the case of FCC-ee, no time is lost for acceleration and the efficiency only reflects the relative downtime due to technical problems and associated re-filling and recovery time. Therefore, the efficiency will be roughly equal to the hardware availability, taken to be at least 80%, minus 5% reduction for beam recovery after a failure. The assumed efficiency value of 75% with respect to the daily peak luminosity is lower than achieved with top-up injection at KEKB and PEP-II [4]. However, at FCC-ee the need for pilot bunches to be pre-polarised in the collider after each beam abort may pose a challenge for reaching the target collider efficiency in the Z and W modes of operation, which could be largely mitigated by generating polarised pilot bunches already in the injector (Fig. 2.24).

From the above factors, the annual achieved integrated luminosity at each interaction point (IP) is calculated, assuming top-up operation during stable beams, as

$$L_{\mathrm{int}} = E\,T\,L\,. \tag{2.1}$$

Using the above parameters, the integrated luminosity target in each energy mode is reached or exceeded. A detailed study to explore the implied challenges is summarised in Sect. 2.4, which also presents example simulations for the collider-ring systems. Similar studies for the booster, injector complex and technical infrastructure are presented in Sects. 5.3, 7.9 and 8.10, respectively.

2.2 Changing operation modes

2.2.1 Switching between Z, WW, and ZH modes

The ability to easily switch between Z, WW and ZH modes of operation depends upon the following conditions and requirements.

The 400 MHz cavities and cryomodules must all be installed in their final location from the start of operation; this represents 33 cryomodules on either side of point PH. This approach poses constraints for the early procurement and installation of all cryomodules, but it has the great merit of avoiding a staged installation of the cryogenics systems and later interventions in the tunnel for installing additional cryomodules.

At the Z and WW operating points, the incoming beam from the arc is arriving from the outer aperture and first passes through the 33 cryomodules on the incoming side of the insertion; it is then deviated towards a bypass line that goes around the other 33 cryomodules on the outgoing side of the insertion, before being brought back towards the inside aperture of the outgoing arc. Hence, the two counter-rotating beams are crossing at the middle of the RF insertion.

With the scheme of reverse phase operation for the 400 MHz RF, the switch between the Z and WW modes of operation involves only a reconfiguration of the RF system without any hardware intervention; the beamlines and beam paths stay the same.

The crossing of the beams in the middle of the insertion is done over a long length to avoid string dipole bends that could generate synchrotron radiation towards the cavities. The adverse effect of this shallow horizontal crossing is that the electron and positron beams share a common vacuum chamber over a certain length, which, in turn, generates long-range beam-beam interactions that would be very detrimental at the Z and WW modes of operation. For this reason, the horizontal crossing is supplemented by a vertical bump in opposite directions for both beams, allowing them to be located in separate vacuum chambers over the horizontal crossing and thereby avoiding all long-range beam-beam interactions.

The separation scheme and recombination at the Z and WW operating points involve only magnetic dipoles (see Fig. 2.2, top picture), the only point of attention being that the dipoles should not generate synchrotron radiation towards the RF cavities and ancillary equipment and that any synchrotron radiation generated should be minimal, both in terms of power radiated and critical energy of the photons.

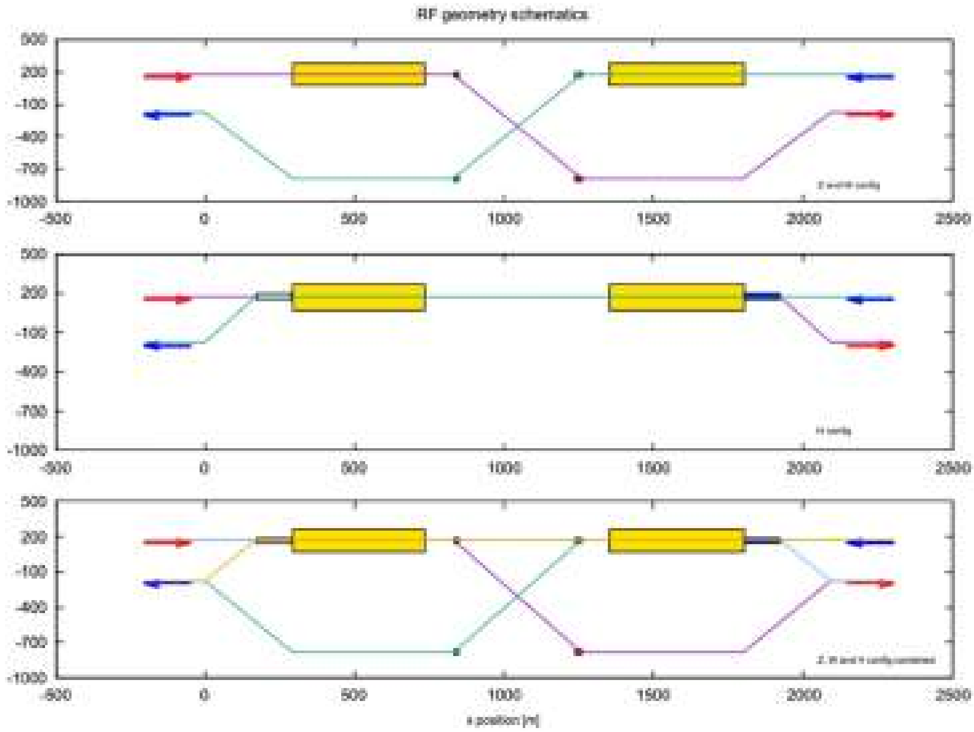


Fig. 2.2 Schematics of the beam path configurations in the RF section at FCC Point PH for the Z and WW operating points (top), the ZH operating point (centre) and the proposed combined layout for Z, WW and ZH operating points with seamless transition (bottom). The yellow rectangles represent the set of cryomodules on each side of the insertion. The smaller rectangles on the outside of cryomodules on the ZH and the combined schematics represent the combined electrostatic and magnetic separators

The switch to the ZH operating point requires that both beams go through the entire set of two times 33 cryomodules (Fig. 2.2, centre picture). The incoming beam from the arc coming from the outer aperture first goes through the 33 cryomodules on the incoming side of the insertion. The deviation dipoles towards the bypass line are now switched off, and the beam goes straight in a different beampipe towards the other side of the insertion, where it goes through the other 33 cryomodules on the outgoing side of the insertion. At the exit of the second set of cryomodules, the beam is deviated towards the inside aperture of the outgoing arc.

Because of the symmetry between the two beams, it is obvious that they share the same beam path across the whole insertion in opposite directions. The first consequence is that the timing of the bunches in the beams must ensure that no collision occurs in the RF insertion. This can be done by having only two trains of bunches for each beam, colliding in experimental insertions only.

The second consequence is that the deviation of the beam on the outgoing side of the insertion must be completely transparent for the incoming beam coming straight from the outer arc into the cryomodules. With opposite particle charges and opposite directions of the two beams, this cannot be achieved with simple magnetic elements. A single element can combine electrostatic and magnetic forces that add up for one charge and direction and cancel exactly for the opposite charge and opposite direction. The incoming beam from the outer aperture of the arc is not deviated and the outgoing beam is deviated to the inner aperture of the arc.

Finally, the ability to switch between Z, WW, and ZH operating points implies that both layouts coexist in a single insertion, as is sketched in Fig. 2.2 (bottom picture). Equal path lengths for each layout are required to maintain the same distance between interaction points. Further, the phase advances for each layout also need to be equal, unless the phase advances in the other technical insertions at points PB, PF, and PL can be re-tuned.

2.2.2 Optimizing RF performance for $t\bar{t}$ collisions

To complete the 2.1 GV delivered by the 400 MHz RF systems used at the ZH operating mode, additional cavities and RF sources are added during the year of shutdown to reach a total RF voltage of 11.3 GV required at the $t\bar{t}$ mode.

For the collider, an additional 102 cryomodules and 204 microwave vacuum tube amplifiers at 800 MHz are installed in point PH. Each cryomodule hosting four 6-cell elliptical cavities will run at their maximum performances of 22.5 MV in order to produce 9.18 GV RF voltage. Each RF source will power two cavities at a level of 200 kW RF power each.

For the booster RF system in point PL, the same RF frequency of 800 MHz is used for all operational modes from Z to $t\bar{t}$. The 28 cryomodules used at the Z-W-H modes will be completed by 84 additional cryomodules of the same type to reach a total RF voltage of 10.18 GV. The 112 cryomodules corresponding to 448 cavities will

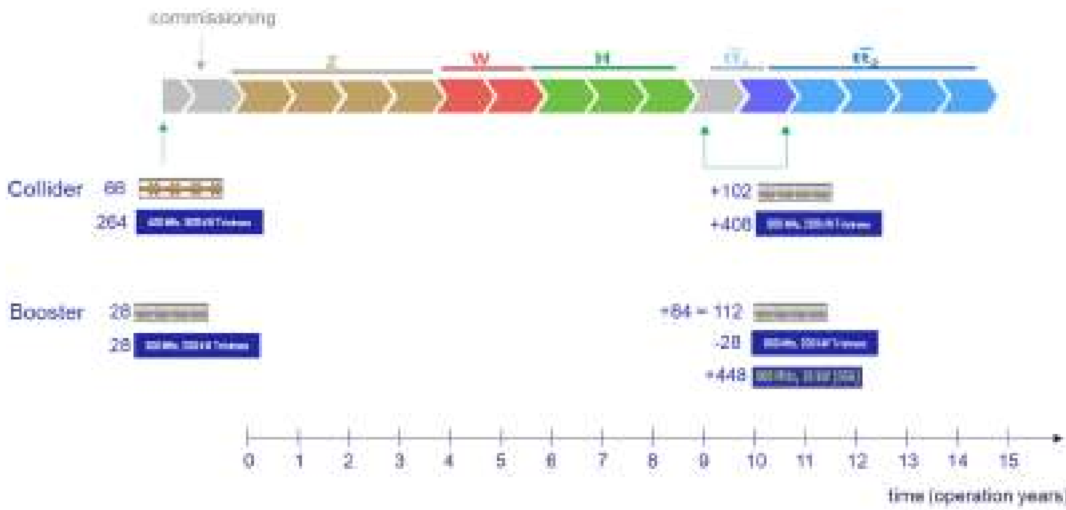


Fig. 2.3 RF system installation sequence for collider and high energy booster

be powered individually by 10 kW solid state RF amplifiers after removing the 28 RF sources used at the previous modes.

Figure 2.3 shows the installation sequence of the RF cryomodules and high-power sources for the collider and booster.

It is important to note that once the full SRF system for $t\bar{t}$ is installed, it will be impossible to run at the Z, W and H energy with the nominal beam current.

2.3 Operation and performance

2.3.1 Energy calibration

A principal goal of the FCC-ee is the ultra-precise measurement of electroweak (Z and W) observables, for which an accurately determined collision energy is key. This involves beam energy calibration every 10-15 minutes using non-colliding polarised pilot bunches, which circulate simultaneously with the main colliding bunches. The energy of these pilot bunches is measured by resonant depolarisation (RDP), where the frequency of a kicker magnet is adjusted until the pilot bunch's polarisation vanishes.

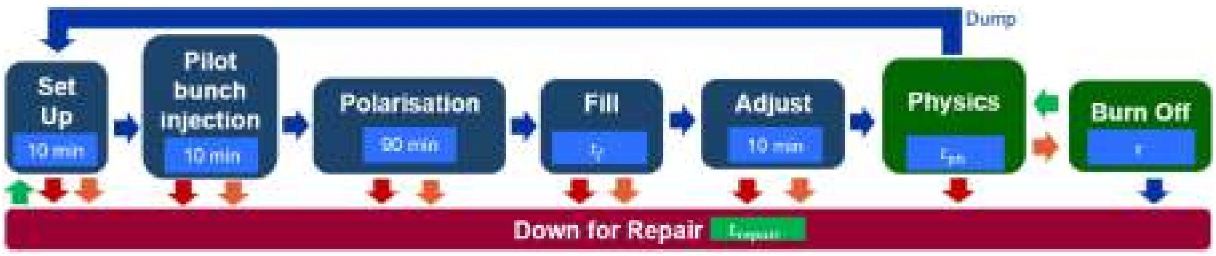
Pilot bunches are polarised in the main ring at the start of every fill using wiggler magnets, a process that takes roughly 90 minutes. The wigglers are then turned off before the injection of the main colliding bunches. During physics operation, the pilot bunches have a combined Touschek and gas scattering lifetime of less than 20 h [162]. Due to the long natural polarisation time (150 h in Z mode), it is presently unclear whether these pilot bunches will naturally achieve sufficient polarisation for RDP before expiring. The baseline simulation pessimistically expects that after 20 h the beam must be dumped to refill again.

In ZH and $t\bar{t}$ modes, the energy spread makes RDP impossible but the required accuracy of the beam energy is also significantly less demanding. Energy measurement is instead achieved by observing collisions at the interaction point (IP). This removes the need for polarisation at the start of every fill. Further, with a top-up injection, physics can continue uninterrupted until a beam dump occurs due to a machine fault or schedule end. In these modes, pilot bunches are used only to verify optics before the injection of bunches with nominal intensities.

2.3.2 Operation cycle

Energy calibration imposes distinct operation cycles for the electroweak (Z, WW) and high energy (ZH, $t\bar{t}$) modes, shown in Fig. 2.4. Phases in this cycle are as follows:

1. *Set Up:* Main magnets are cycled, RF system is set and other equipment is prepared for injection.
2. *Pilot Bunch Injection:* Pilot bunches are injected and equipment/optics are adjusted.
3. *Polarisation:* Z and WW modes only. Wigglers are turned on to begin polarising the pilot bunches, a process taking approximately 90 minutes.
4. *Fill:* Wigglers are turned off and the main colliding bunches are injected. Fill time t_f in each energy mode is shown in Table 2.2. These times are indicative, and must be studied in detail according to constraints in the injector complex.



(a) Z and WW modes.

(b) ZH and $t\bar{t}$ modes

Fig. 2.4 Baseline operation cycles in the FCC-ee

Table 2.2 Operation cycle times

	Z	WW	ZH	$t\bar{t}$
Fill time*, t_f / minutes	7.7	2.5	1.52	1.45
Burn off lifetime, τ / minutes	15	12	12	11
Max. physics duration, t_{ph} / hours	20	20	∞	∞

* To be updated according to filling bunch intensity.

5. *Adjust:* Time to bring the beams into collision and make final adjustments to equipment before the detectors can begin to observe useful collisions.
6. *Physics:* Collisions begin at nominal luminosity. With top-up injection, flat luminosity can be maintained. In Z and W modes, an upper limit on the duration of physics $t_{ph} = 20$ h is applied, corresponding to the Touschek and gas scattering lifetime of the pilot bunches.
7. *Burn Off:* If the injector complex fails, the beam can be preserved in the main colliding rings with decaying luminosity corresponding to lifetime τ (see Table 2.2). If the injector complex cannot be restored, after the time τ the beam is taken to be dumped.
8. *Down for Repair:* On equipment failure, the accelerator is stopped for repair.

2.3.3 Luminosity

Luminosity is produced only in Physics or Burn Off phases in the operation cycle. By tracking the time t spent in these operation phases, achieved integrated luminosity is calculated.

$$L_{int} = \begin{cases} N_{\mathrm{IP}} L t, & t \in \text{physics} \\ N_{\mathrm{IP}} L \tau (1 - e^{-\frac{t}{\tau}}), & t \in \text{burn off} \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \tag{2.2}$$

where $N_{\mathrm{IP}} = 4$ is the number of interaction points and L is the nominal instantaneous luminosity as per Table 2. In the first two years of Z operation, and first year at $t\bar{t}$, reduced luminosity is expected at 50% and 65%, respectively to account for machine commissioning and beam tuning.

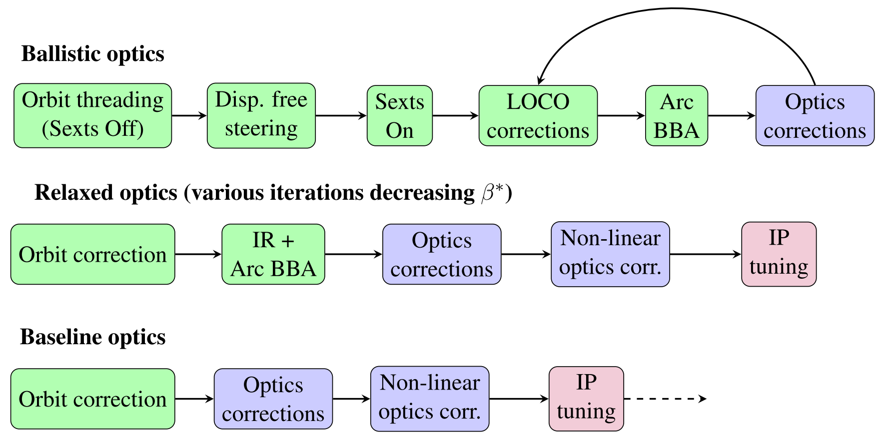


Fig. 2.5 Steps during the FCC-ee optics commissioning starting from the ballistic optics, followed by a sequence of relaxed optics [45] and, finally, the nominal collision optics

Table 2.3 Median RMS values of several optics parameters right after the first beam threading with and without being followed by dispersion free steering (DFS) using the orbit correctors for the ballistic optics

Parameter	Without DFS (rms)	With DFS (rms)
ver. orbit (µm)	222	255
ΔD_x (mm)	446	70
ΔD_y (mm)	416	39
ε_v (pm)	659	4

2.3.4 Optics commissioning strategy

The optics commissioning strategy [21, 28, 50, 218] takes into account arc misalignment and strength errors. The various available optics and the associated tolerances are described in Sect. 1.3. IR optics imperfections and non-linear errors are being assessed separately, and both require further development.

Commissioning sequence Figure 2.5 presents the general sequence of beam optics commissioning steps for the FCC-ee. Initial beam steering around the ring requires the sextupole magnets to be switched off. In this condition, storing the beam with a reasonable lifetime is not possible for the nominal optics, due to a big reduction in dynamic aperture without the sextupoles [42, 43]. Therefore, a commissioning optics was developed, in which both the quadrupole and sextupole magnets near the IP are switched off [44]. This optics features a lower natural chromaticity and lower peak beta functions across the IR. It also implies no synchrotron radiation from the final doublet (FD). Since this optics allows establishing a straight reference trajectory across the IP in the absence of focusing elements, it is called “ballistic” optics.

Right after threading the beam for the first time in the FCC-ee with the ballistic optics, and sextupoles switched off, large dispersion errors and too large a vertical emittance is observed (Table 2.3). At this point, refined optics measurements are not possible, but dispersion free steering (DFS), or simply dispersion correction using orbit correctors, is very effective at mitigating these imperfections and allowing the commissioning to continue. The resulting DA for the ballistic optics is shown in Fig. 2.6.

Turning to the nominal optics, Table 2.4 summarises the closed orbit deviations, beta beating, and spurious dispersion errors before and after the linear optics correction. The simulated dynamic aperture and momentum acceptance are presented in Sect. 1.3.3.

Beam based alignment In the commissioning sequence Beam Based Alignment (BBA) can be performed after sextupoles have been switched on.

Due to the sheer size of the FCC performing BBA to individual magnets would be a very time-consuming procedure and, hence, various promising parallel approaches are explored, aiming to achieve approximately 10 to 20 µm effective alignment after BBA.

Using Parallel Quadrupole Modulation System (PQMS), a technique which has already successfully been tested at SPEAR, is applied to the FCC-ee. Modulating 10 quadrupoles in parallel with a $\Delta K/K$ of 2%, distributed equally over one arc, and using a calibrated lattice with 1 µm BPM resolution, an accuracy below 20 um for vertical and horizontal arc quadrupole BBA is achieved [219].

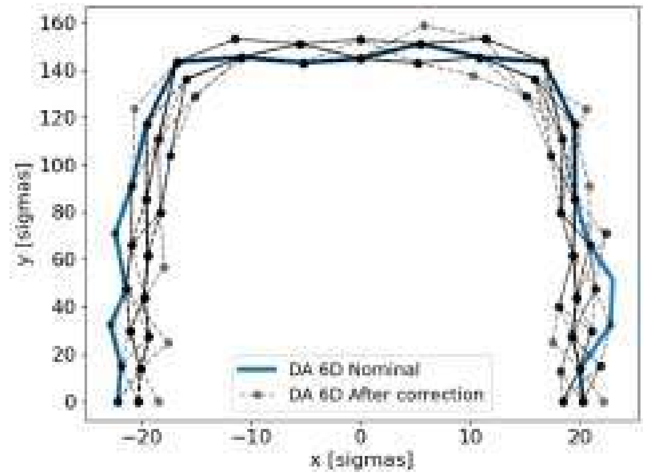


Fig. 2.6 DA after optics correction with the ballistic optics and having included IR alignment errors of 50 µm in addition to the arc errors in Sect. 1.3.1

Table 2.4 Median RMS values of several optics parameters before (after sextupole ramping) and after linear optics correction (nominal lattice). $\Delta\psi$ stands for phase advance deviations between nearby BPMs

Parameter	Before correction (rms)	After correction (rms)
hor. orbit (µm)	120.25	120.46
ver. orbit (µm)	217.53	217.56
$\Delta\beta_x/\beta_x$ (%)	7.41	0.29
$\Delta\beta_y/\beta_y$ (%)	15.79	2.81
ΔD_x (mm)	57.79	0.28
ΔD_y (mm)	62.24	2.80
ε_h (nm)	0.72	0.71
ε_v (pm)	26.01	0.57
hor. $\Delta\psi$ [2π]	1.13×10^{-2}	2.91×10^{-4}
ver. $\Delta\psi$ [2π]	1.93×10^{-2}	2.29×10^{-3}
Re F1001	4.93×10^{-2}	1.66×10^{-4}
Im F1001	4.43×10^{-2}	5.18×10^{-5}
Re F1010	3.72×10^{-2}	1.35×10^{-4}
Im F1010	3.68×10^{-2}	1.31×10^{-4}

A different BBA technique is also studied for a relaxed β^*-optics with β^* of 7 mm based on modulating 8 arc quadrupoles in parallel with a $\Delta K/K$ of 1%, again with a BPM resolution of 1 µm, inducing orbit shifts with vertical orbit correctors nested to the quadrupoles. This yields a BBA rms accuracy achieving the target value. Other BBA studies assuming individual horizontal and vertical orbit correctors, located next to, respectively, focusing and defocusing quadruples, are also performed for the same optics modulating 20 quadrupoles in parallel. All studied seeds achieve an accuracy below 20 µm [220]. In addition, parameter scans confirm this performance even when processing a larger number of magnets in parallel.

In addition to the quadrupoles, beam-based alignment (BBA) can also be performed for the sextupoles. In simulation studies, the centre of the sextupole magnets is estimated using a response matrix method. Modulating six arc sextupoles in parallel yields a precision on the order of 20 to 50 µm [221]. Each arc sextupole shares a common girder with the adjacent quadrupole magnet, so that BBA for both may possibly yield redundant information.

IP tuning Simulations are also performed, including IR alignment errors for the FCC-ee GHC lattice using `pyAT`. In this IR study, the arc alignment tolerances are taken to be 100 µm and 100 µrad, which is slightly better than the numbers presented in Sect. 1.3.1. Final-focus doublet (FD) quadrupoles must meet strict alignment tolerances. The simulations in this section consider transverse shifts and rotation errors to 10 µm and 10 µrad, respectively. IR sextupoles, including crab-sextupoles required to correct the vertical chromaticity at the IP (SY^*), exhibit intermediate sensitivity. Their errors are set to 30 µm and 30 µrad. The few strong non-linear magnets, combined with the alignment errors, make proper tuning difficult for most seeds, resulting in a 75% success rate out of 100 seeds. The median vertical emittance for the successful seeds is 1.8 pm.

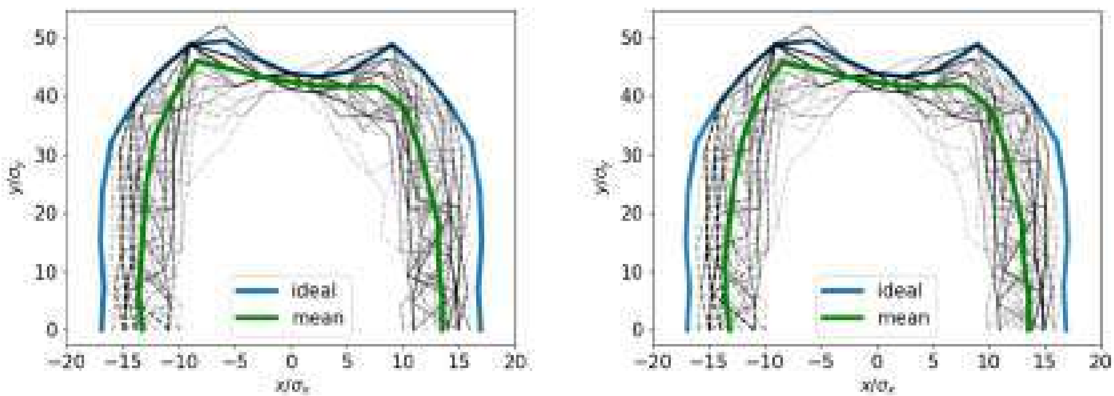


Fig. 2.7 Dynamic aperture after 512 turns for 75% of successful seeds with (right) and without (left) IP tuning knobs

The tuning and correction of optics in the IP region of FCC-ee are essential for reaching the desired luminosity levels. Dedicated IP tuning knobs such as $\beta^*_{x,y}$, $W^*_{x,y}$ and D^*_y are employed to correct lattice errors across multiple IPs, ensuring the restoration of the intended optics design and facilitating DA analysis on the fully corrected lattice. The tuning knobs have no effect on the dynamic aperture as shown in Fig. 2.7. The resulting dynamic aperture (DA) is comparable to that obtained in the previous study, which considered only arc errors (see Sect. 1.3). Relaxing alignment tolerances leads to a reduction in the DA and a decrease in the number of successful seeds in the simulations. To enhance both DA and momentum acceptance (MA), additional correction algorithms beyond linear corrections will be required.

2.3.5 Luminosity optimisation and interaction-point tuning

FCC-ee luminosity optimisation relies on measuring realistic signals from Bhabha scattering, beamstrahlung and vertex detector hits. Initial assessments of these signals examine the variations in luminosity, beamstrahlung power, and vertex detector hits in response to waist shifts, vertical dispersion and transverse coupling at the collision point. Waist shifts ($y^* \to y^* + ly'^*$, with l referring to the waist-shift) and vertical-dispersion ($y^* \to y^* + D\delta_i$, where D is the dispersion and δ_i is the relative energy deviation) are IP sport size aberrations, and should be corrected over the time of few minutes.

Figures 2.8 and 2.9 show the scans of the mentioned signals varying with waist-shifts produced in GUINEA-PIG for the Z and $t\bar{t}$ working points. At the $t\bar{t}$ working point, the luminosity drops to about 85% for the maximum waist shift of ± 1 mm and to 40% for a vertical dispersion of ± 0.1 mm. At the Z working point luminosity is slightly more sensitive to waist shifts and vertical dispersion. These studies do not take into account the degradation of the emittances due to the beam-beam interactions in the presence of the IP aberrations, which could be the dominant effect, as few micrometres of D_y can increase the vertical beam size by 5% [46].

The beamstrahlung power emissions increase with the residual waist shift and vertical dispersion. The impact on total power due to both aberrations is within a similar range. However, residual dispersion in the $e^-(e^+)$ beam has a stronger effect, increasing the beamstrahlung from the $e^-(e^+)$ beam while decreasing emissions from the $e^+(e^-)$ beam, compared to waist shifts.

Furthermore, these studies aim to extract IP-aberration-related signals and integrate them into a machine-learning-based approach for luminosity tuning and optimisation. A Gaussian process-based model could be trained to predict the residual waist-shift, dispersion and coupling at the IP, based on the simulated or observed luminosity, beamstrahlung power and hits of secondaries in the vertex detector.

2.3.6 Operational feedbacks

Global orbit feedback The beam orbit around the ring must be stabilised by a global orbit feedback system, based on averaged beam-position monitor (BPM) readings and orbit corrector magnets. The orbit feedback systems at the LHC and at the Swiss Light Source (SLC) serve as examples.

The LHC global orbit and energy feedback is of similar size and complexity as the future orbit feedback for FCC-ee. The LHC system bandwidth of only about 1 Hz is limited by the maximum excitation change permitted in the superconducting orbit-corrector magnets [222]. The rms orbit stability in the LHC arcs during long physics fills is of order 10 µm [223].

At the Swiss Light Source (SLS), a global fast orbit feedback (FOFB) system based on the digital beam position monitor (DBPM) system has been in use during user operation since 2003. The singular value decomposition

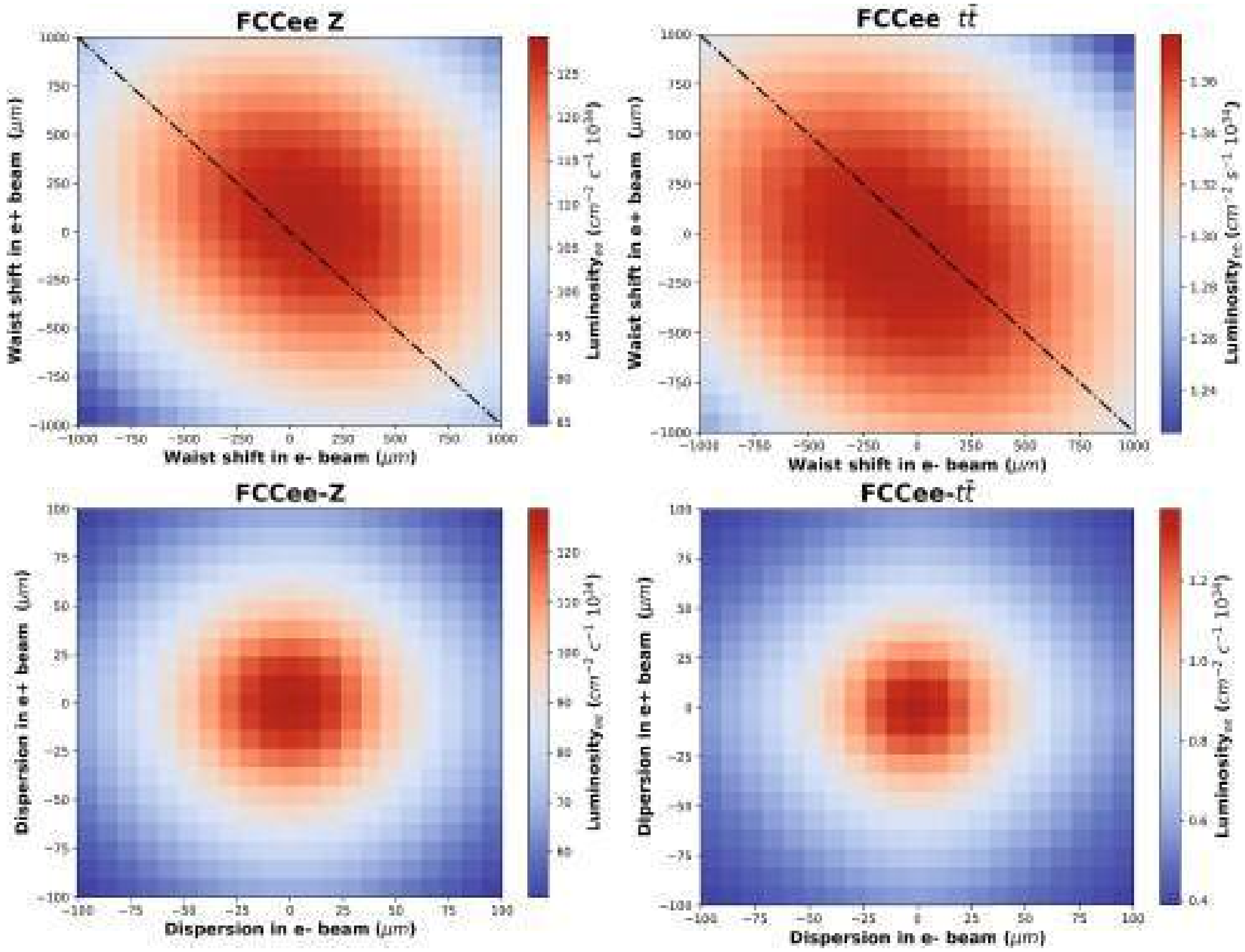


Fig. 2.8 The variation of luminosity with a residual waist shift (top) and residual dispersion (bottom) in the electron (horizontal axis) and positron beams (vertical axis) for the Z pole (left) and $t\bar{t}$ running, from simulations with the code GUINEA-PIG

(SVD)-based correction scheme operates at a sampling rate of 4 kHz, utilizing position data from all 72 DBPM stations and applying corrections through 72 horizontal and 72 vertical corrector magnets [224].

This fast orbit feedback effectively mitigates orbit distortions, which are primarily induced by ground and girder vibrations, as well as a 3 Hz crosstalk from booster cycles. Additionally, it enables rapid and independent gap adjustments for the insertion devices, ensuring complete transparency for SLS users. With top-up as the standard operation mode, the system has achieved global beam stability at the µm level over timescales ranging from milliseconds to days.

For the FCC-ee, it is assumed that an orbit feedback efficiently suppresses all beam oscillations below a critical frequency of about 1 Hz [225]. This assumption appears fairly conservative, if compared with the orbit feedback performance at modern light sources like the SLS.

Interaction point feedback Interaction point (IP) feedback systems are crucial for maintaining luminosity in the presence of machine perturbations, such as magnet vibrations, ground motion, and fluctuations or drifts in magnetic field strengths. At each IP, beam position monitors detect offsets between the two colliding beams, and corrections are computed and applied by correctors in the interaction region. These corrections create a closed orbit bump, forming a dedicated local correction system.

For small IP offsets, the deflection is well described by the linear centre-of-mass beam-beam kick formula

$$\langle \Delta x'^* \rangle = \pm \frac{2\pi}{\beta_x^*} \xi_x \, \langle \Delta x^* \rangle \qquad \text{and} \qquad \langle \Delta y'^* \rangle = \pm \frac{2\pi}{\beta_y^*} \xi_y \, \langle \Delta y^* \rangle \tag{2.3}$$

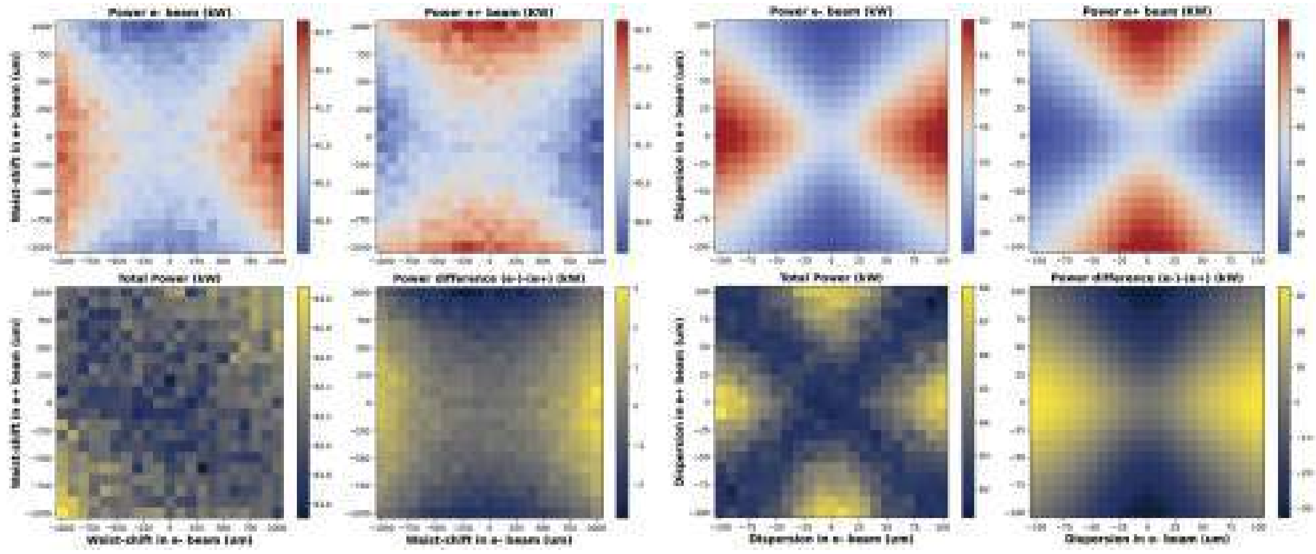


Fig. 2.9 The variation of beamstrahlung power with a residual waist shift (left) and residual dispersion (right) in the electron (horizontal axis) and positron beams (vertical axis) for $t\bar{t}$ running, from simulations with the code GUINEA-PIG

where $\xi_{x,y}$ is the beam parameter in the horizontal or vertical plane, respectively, Δx^* (or Δy^*) denotes the horizontal (vertical) offset from the centre of the opposing beam, and the angular brackets $< \cdots >$ represent an average over the bunch distribution. The nano-beam scheme and large horizontal crossing angle of FCC-ee results in sensitivity to errors far greater in the vertical than in the horizontal plane, due to the much larger vertical beam-beam parameter (see Table 1.2). The deflections can be measured by comparing orbits for colliding and non-colliding (pilot) bunches, taking into account any possible systematic errors due to different bunch intensity and bunch length.

Performance requirements Beam-beam collisions with IP offsets result in reduced luminosity and lifetime. Previous studies have determined the resulting IP offset limit as $0.05\sigma_y$ [226]. Even tighter limits may be imposed by energy calibration and polarisation requirements (Sect. 1.7). The alignment of the IP to the detector is limited by the resolution of the luminosity calorimeter. Frequency response requirements are dependent on the performance of the global orbit feedback.

Observables IP offset can be indirectly measured from a variety of signals:

From the interaction region beam position monitors and a knowledge of the transfer matrices to and from the IP, the IP offset can be calculated. The proposed IR BPMs are elliptical button BPMs situated on the common elliptical IR beampipe, described further in Sect. 3.9.1.

Luminosity is detected at the luminosity calorimeter and additional fast luminosity monitors 3.9.5. As a scalar signal, only the magnitude of the offset is identified.

Beamstrahlung radiation power and centroid position both depend upon IP offset, in a scalar and vector way, respectively. Monitoring beamstrahlung is challenging due to the high radiation power. The proposed beamstrahlung monitors discussed in 3.9.5.

Initial studies are set out in [227] and Fig. 2.10 shows results at the Z working point for the GHC lattice.

Beam-beam deflection feedback Due to the high vertical beam-beam parameter, vertical IP offsets result in strong beam deflections, changing the outgoing angle. This change to the outgoing angle results in detectable differences at the BPMs. Such a beam-beam deflection feedback system is most promising to address offsets in the vertical plane and has been successfully operated at SuperKEKB [228], KEKB [229], and other machines.

Dither feedback The low horizontal beam-beam parameter implies that beam-beam inducted deflections will not be detectable at the IR BPMs. An alternative approach is 'dithering': driving one beam at a known frequency and minimising the IP offset by finding the phase of optimal luminosity. This approach relies solely on maximisation, and therefore, the absolute offset values are never required to be calculated. This type of dither feedback has been successfully operated at SuperKEKB (and others) [230].

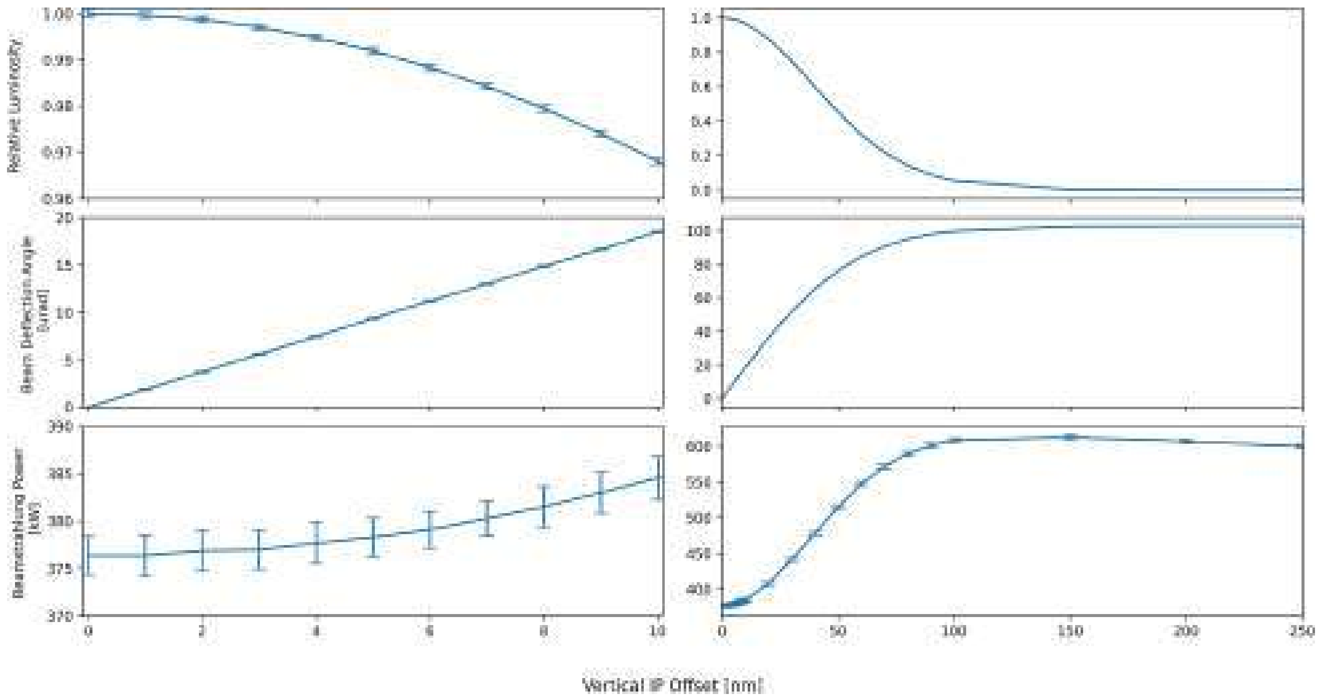


Fig. 2.10 The variation of relative luminosity, outgoing deflection angle and beamstrahlung radiation power with offset in the vertical plane. Simulations were performed with the Particle in cell solver GUINEA-PIG. Results for the Z working point of the 'GHC 24.3' lattice. The impact of the detector solenoid and its compensation is not currently taken into account

2.3.7 Filling patterns

The number of bunch slots in FCC-ee for 25 ns bunch spacing is $h_{25\text{ns}} = 12{,}120 = 2^3 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdot 101$. In these sections, so-called filling patterns are described, indicating which slots are filled with bunches. As the required number of bunches depends on the operational mode, a filling pattern for each of the energies has been devised. Note that the harmonic number corresponding to the RF frequency is higher such that, many more filling patterns and shorter minimum spacing of, e.g., 5 ns (slightly reducing electron cloud threshold) are in principle possible. Such schemes are not proposed.

The main requirements and assumptions to design filling patterns are:

- The periodicity of the filling pattern for high-intensity bunches must contain a factor of two (filling the machine in half) to ensure that all physics bunches collide in all four IPs with bunches from the counter-rotating beam.
- Presence of gaps for the injection kicker rise and fall times and beam dump kicker rise time. This requirement is satisfied with a regular pattern consisting of bunch trains and gaps between them. The minimum length of the gaps has been reduced to 600 ns in order to mitigate beam loading transients being a potential limitation for the Z mode.
- Batches coming from the injectors and injected into the Booster contain four bunches spaced by 25 ns for the Z and WW mode and two bunches with the same spacing for the higher energies. For the Z mode, operation of the injectors with the maximum number of four bunches with the maximum repetition rate of 100/s is mandatory.
- Filling patterns for the H and $t\bar{t}$ modes must contain appropriate long gaps such that no encounters between counter-rotating bunches occur in the common RF section.
- The filling patterns for operation at Z and WW energies must contain positions for low intensity bunches required for energy calibration. They are placed inside the gaps between trains of high intensity bunches. The minimum spacing between a polarised low intensity bunch and other bunches is 100 ns, as required, for the rise and fall time of the fast deflector used to excite a depolarising resonance for energy calibration. Calibration bunches of the two counter-rotating beams must not collide.

Filling pattern for Z mode For Z mode operation, each of the two counter-rotating beams must contain $N_B = 11{,}200 = 2^6 \cdot 5^2 \cdot 7$ colliding high-intensity bunches. The number of bunch trains must be a product of common prime factors of N_B and the number of bunch slots $h_{25\text{ns}}$. Factor four of the former is taken to allow the booster to be filled with injector trains consisting of four bunches. The number of trains chosen is $N_T = 2^3 \cdot 5 = 40$, each

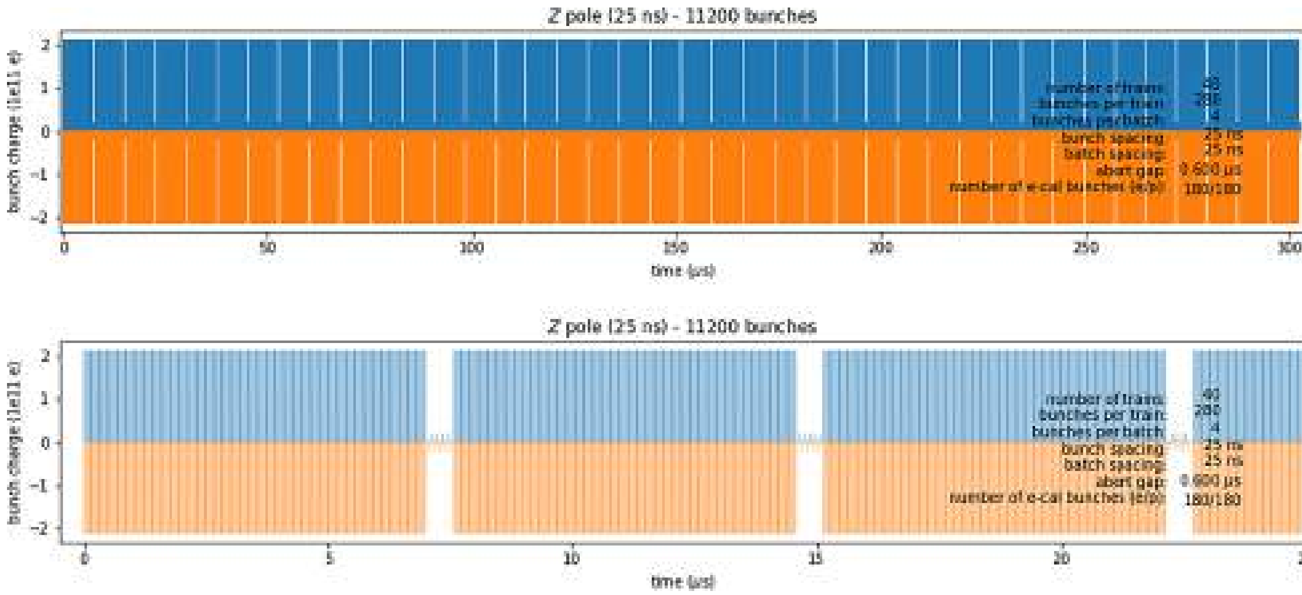


Fig. 2.11 Filling pattern for Z-mode (top) and a zoom into the first few trains (bottom), for the e^+ beam shown in blue and the e^- beam in orange

Fig. 2.12 Gap between high-intensity physics bunch trains filled with low-intensity energy calibration bunches for the Z-mode

containing $2^3 \cdot 5 \cdot 7 = 280$ high intensity bunches, as sketched in Fig. 2.11. There are no gaps between trains from the injectors in order to maximise the total number of injected bunches. There are $h_{25\text{ns}}/N_T - 280 = 23$ empty positions between trains corresponding to the minimum spacing of $24 \cdot 25$ ns $= 600$ ns between trains required for kicker gaps.

A scheme to fill the gaps between high-intensity physics bunches with low-intensity energy calibration bunches is sketched in Fig. 2.12 and refers to one of the four IPs. A maximum of five bunches (in the example for the e^+ beam) and four bunches (in the example for the e^- beam) can be placed for the two beams such that the requirements are fulfilled. In case all gaps can be filled with calibration bunches and exchanging positions of e^+ and e^- bunches for half of the gaps, 180 calibration bunches can be injected per beam. Note that strict gap-to-gap alternation of calibration bunch patterns leads to fillings avoiding collisions between calibration bunches in all four IPs. In case one gap has to be kept free of low-intensity calibration bunches for the rise and fall times of injection and beam dump kickers, 175 calibration bunches of one type and 174 of the other types can be injected. However, the additional beam loading transients may necessitate keeping additional gaps without beam (e.g. four equidistant gaps).

Filling pattern for WW mode The filling pattern described and sketched in Fig. 2.13 is one out of many possible ones. The number of bunch trains is a product of common prime factors of the N_B and the number of bunch slots $h_{25\text{ns}}$.

Choosing 8 trains with 232 high-intensity bunches each, with 16 empty positions between injector batches with a train, leaves 371 empty positions between trains as sketched in Fig. 2.13.

A scheme to fill the gaps containing 371 available positions between high intensity physics bunches with low intensity energy calibration bunches is presented in Fig. 2.14, referring to one of the IPs. A maximum of 92 bunches (in the example for the e^+ beam) and 91 bunches (in the example for the e^- beam) can be placed for the two counter-rotating beams. Filling two opposite gaps between trains allows placing of 182 and 184 bunches for the two beams. If needed, additional gaps can be filled.

Filling pattern for ZH mode For ZH mode, an additional requirement with respect to the lower energy modes to be taken into account is that the RF section is common to the two counter-rotating beams and that bunch

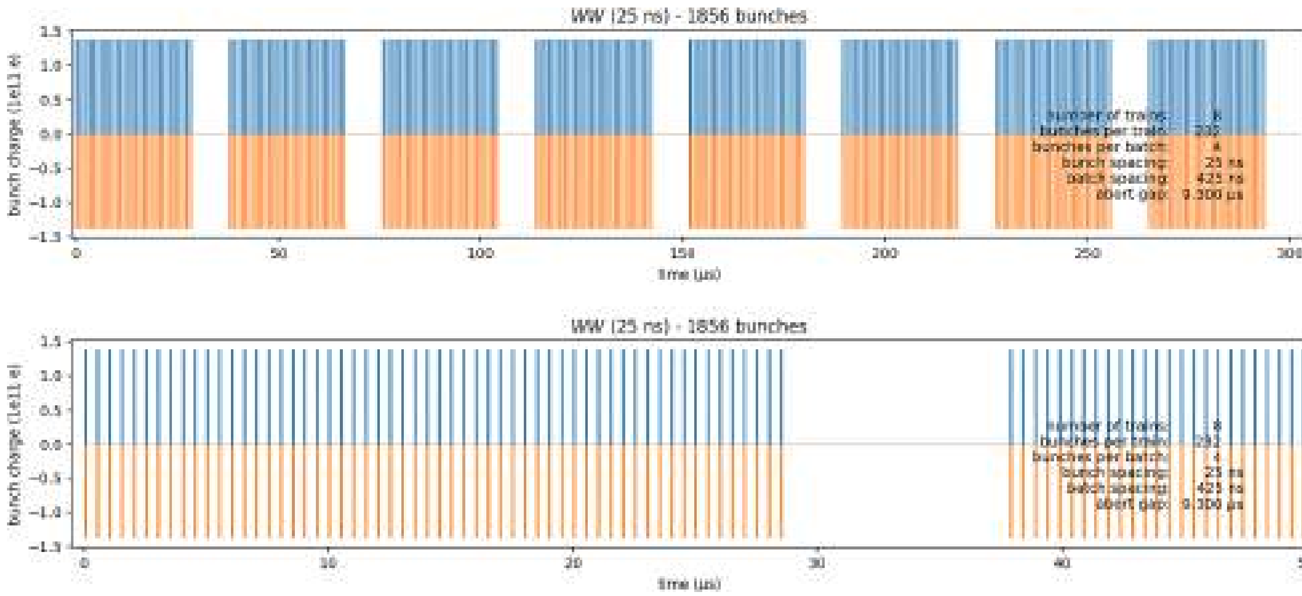


Fig. 2.13 Filling pattern for W-mode (top) and a zoom into the first few trains (bottom), for the e^+ beam shown in blue and the e^- beam in orange

Fig. 2.14 Gap between intensity physics bunch trains filled with low intensity energy calibration bunches for Z-mode

crossings in this section must be avoided. The number of bunches per beam in the collider $N_B = 300 = 2^2 \cdot 3 \cdot 5^2$ is low and allows many different filling schemes. For the one proposed here, the number of bunches per injector cycle is reduced to two, and the injector repetition rate is reduced to 50 Hz. Filling the collider with two identical bunch trains opposite to each other ensures that all bunches collide at all four IPs. If the gaps between trains are sufficiently long, no bunch crossings take place in the RF section. The number of bunches per train is 150 and corresponds to 75 bunch pairs from the injector complex. Along a bunch train, injector bunch pairs are separated by 19 empty positions. This leaves long gaps with 3764 empty positions between trains and corresponding to a distance of $3765 \cdot 25$ ns $= 91.125$ µs between trains. The resulting filling pattern is sketched in Fig. 2.15.

Filling pattern for $t\bar{t}$ *mode* Since the definition of the $t\bar{t}$ mode filling pattern described here, optimisations led to slight change of the number of bunches from 64 to 60 given in Table 2. The filling pattern will be adjusted accordingly in a future iteration. Many possible filling pattern exist for the $t\bar{t}$ mode with a low number of bunches $N_B = 64 = 2^8$. The pattern proposed and sketched in Fig. 2.16 requires bunch pairs from the injectors assumed to be accumulated in the Booster with a repetition rate of 50 Hz. Two identical trains, consisting each of 32 bunches or 16 injector bunch pairs are foreseen per beam to ensure that no bunch crossings occur in the common RF section. Assuming 151 empty positions between bunch pairs from the injector in the same train gives the pattern shown in Fig. 2.16. The gaps between the trains comprise 3763 empty positions and have a length of $(3763 + 1) \cdot 25$ ns $=$ 94.1 µs.

2.3.8 Bootstrapping injection scheme

This section describes the procedures to ramp up the intensity of colliding high intensity bunches from an empty machine to a steady state situation with periodic top-up injections in order to keep the intensities stable. For the two lower energy modes Z and WW, it is assumed that the low intensity bunches are already injected and have

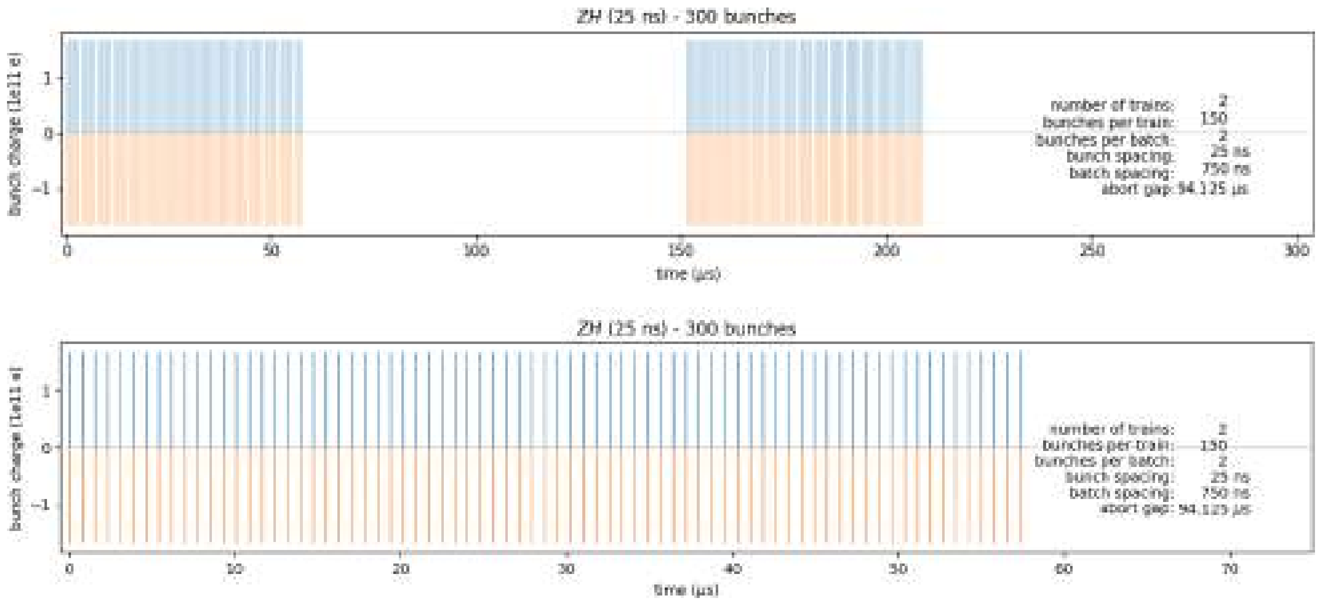


Fig. 2.15 Filling pattern for ZH mode (top) and a close-up view of the first train (bottom), with the e^+ beam shown in blue and the e^- beam in orange

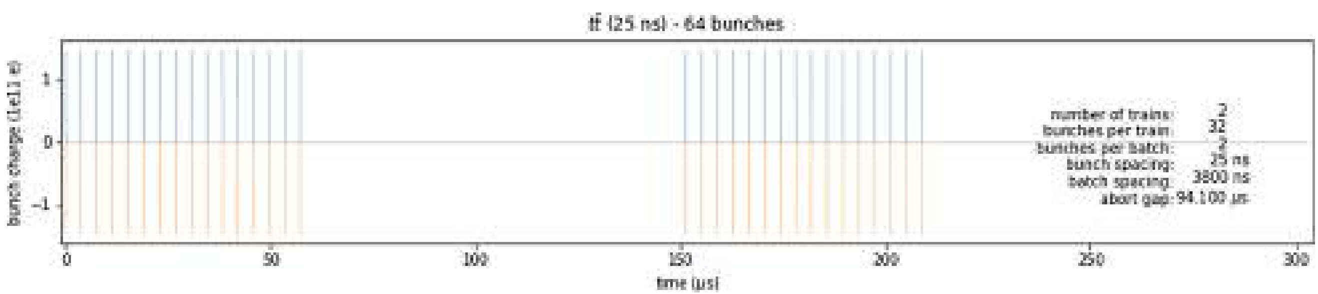


Fig. 2.16 Filling pattern for the $t\bar{t}$ mode

been circulated over a sufficiently long period to generate polarisation levels suitable for energy calibration. The asymmetric wigglers used to speed up the polarisation build-up for low intensity calibration bunches are switched off before starting the intensity build-up of bunches.

Constraints to be fulfilled by the intensity ramp-up procedure are

- The intensity of bunches from the counter-rotating beams interacting via beam-beam encounters has to be ramped up together. Large intensity imbalances between bunches interacting via the beam-beam effect result in the flip-flop phenomenon with imbalances of other parameters: small emittances and bunch length for the higher intensity bunches lead to large emittances and bunch length of the lower intensity bunch. The resulting lower life-time of the lower intensity bunch further enhances the intensity imbalance.
- Limitations of the intensity of injected bunches: to avoid excessive requirements to the injector complex, the maximum intensity increase of bunches circulating in the collider is limited to $\Delta n_{i,max} = 2.14 \cdot 10^{10}$ per injection per bunch, which is one tenth of the nominal bunch intensity in the collider ring for the Z mode (all other modes have lower bunch intensities). Maximum bunch intensities in the booster must be somewhat higher to account for losses in the booster and at collider injection.
- Limitation of the total beam intensity circulating in the booster and being transferred to the collider to mitigate machine protection issues and effects related to the total intensity in the booster.
- For operation at the lower energy modes and, in particular, for the Z mode, electron cloud build-up has to be limited. Electron cloud build-up is more severe at intermediate intensities than at low and close to nominal intensities. Thus, situations with many or even all bunches at intermediate intensity during the ramp-up procedure must be avoided. A few bunches, say 10% of the total for Z operation, with intermediate intensity and not concentrated at a particular position of the ring is expected to mitigate electron cloud build-up.

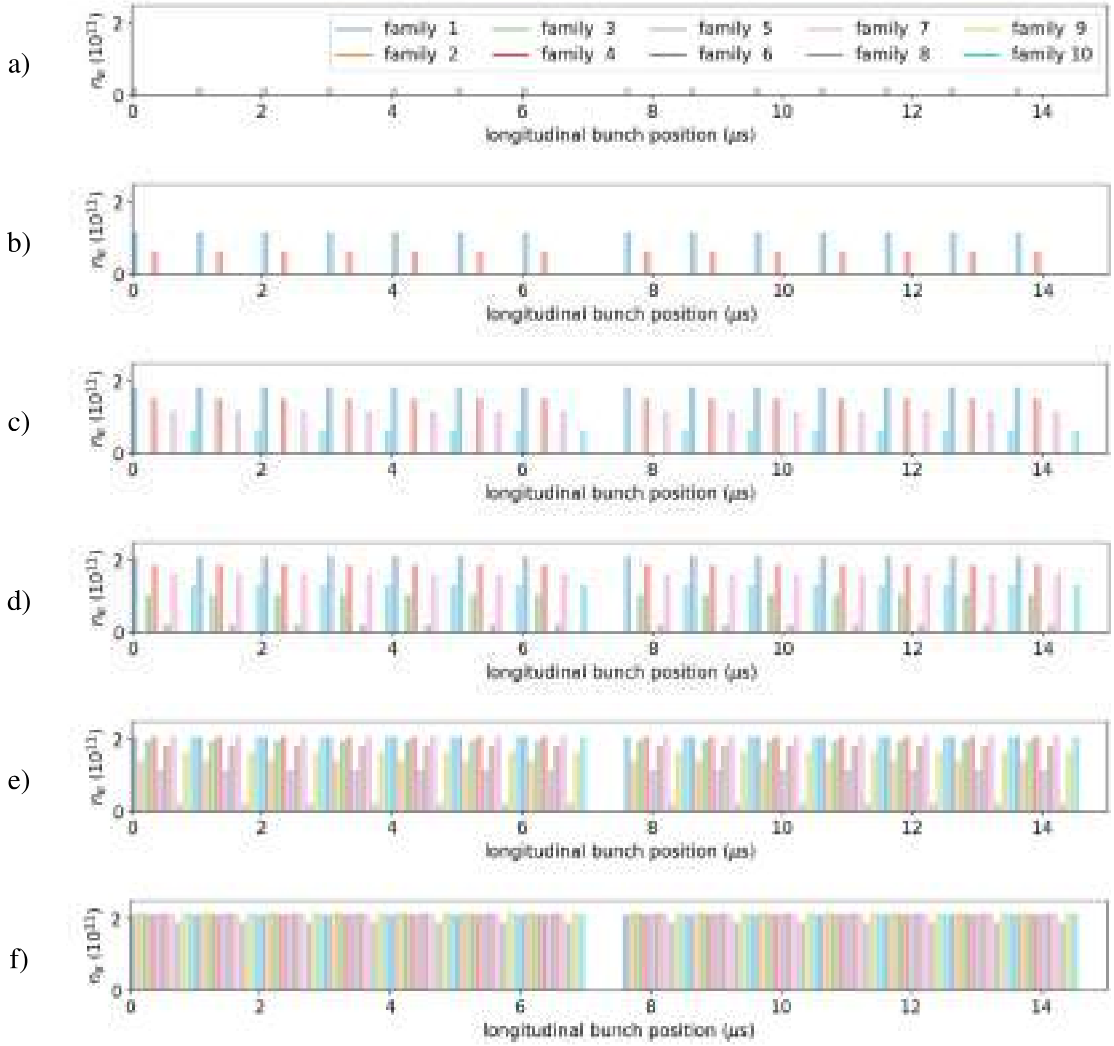


Fig. 2.17 Bunch intensity patterns in one ring at various stages during the intensity ramp procedure for Z mode operation. Patterns for only two out 40 identical trains are shown

Intensity ramp up for the Z mode The total number of colliding bunches is divided into a sufficient number of groups, say 10 for the proposal described below.

The intensity of the 10 groups is not ramped up simultaneously to avoid having multiple bunches with intermediate intensities in the collider ring during the ramp-up process. The proposed procedure is one of several possible schemes and is best illustrated using Fig. 2.17, which displays the bunch pattern for two out of 40 identical trains, and Fig. 2.18, which depicts the evolution of beam intensities for each family along with the luminosity.

The topmost image in Fig. 2.17 shows the intensity of circulating bunches in the collider ring after the first injection, corresponding to the filling pattern of the booster for all high-intensity physics bunches. The evolution of bunch intensities is plotted in the upper image of Fig. 2.18. At the start of the process, the intensity of bunch family 1 is ramped up for both beams. Once its intensity exceeds a predefined threshold, the ramp-up for family 4 begins. Figure 2.17b illustrates the state after six injections for family 1 and three injections for family 4.

Each time all circulating bunches surpass the threshold intensity, the ramp-up of an additional family begins. The booster cycles are then distributed between injections for families with intensities above the threshold and injections for the most recently added family with intensity still below the threshold. As a result, the ramp-up duration is longer for families added later in the process. Once the transition to regular top-up injection occurs, the intensity of the injected bunches is reduced and adjusted such that the collider target bunch intensity is met after beam transfer.

A drawback of the described scheme is that, at the same time, low and high intensity bunches circulate while undergoing beam-beam interactions. Due to the potential well distortion, the low (high) intensity bunches have a higher (lower) synchrotron tune. This makes the choice of a suitable working point (mainly horizontal tune) more

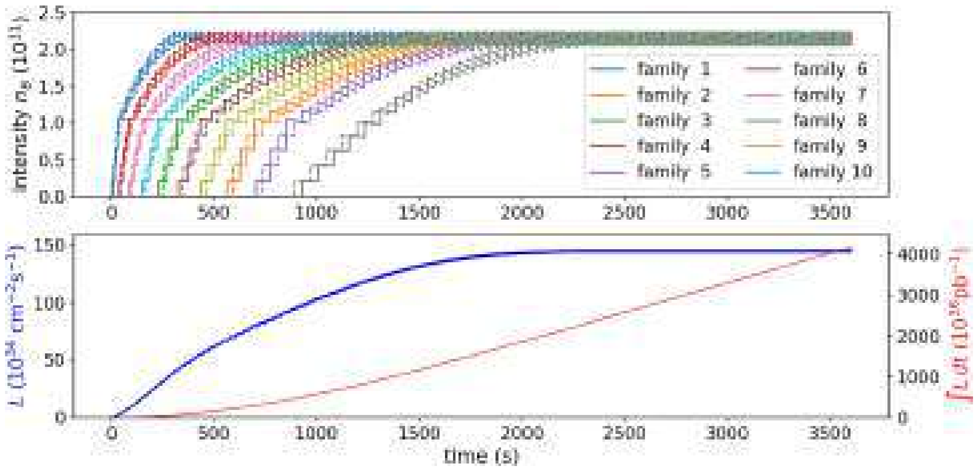


Fig. 2.18 Bunch intensity evolution for the various families (upper plot) and evolution of the luminosity for Z mode operation. Bunch intensities are plotted using solid and dashed lines for the two counter-rotating beams

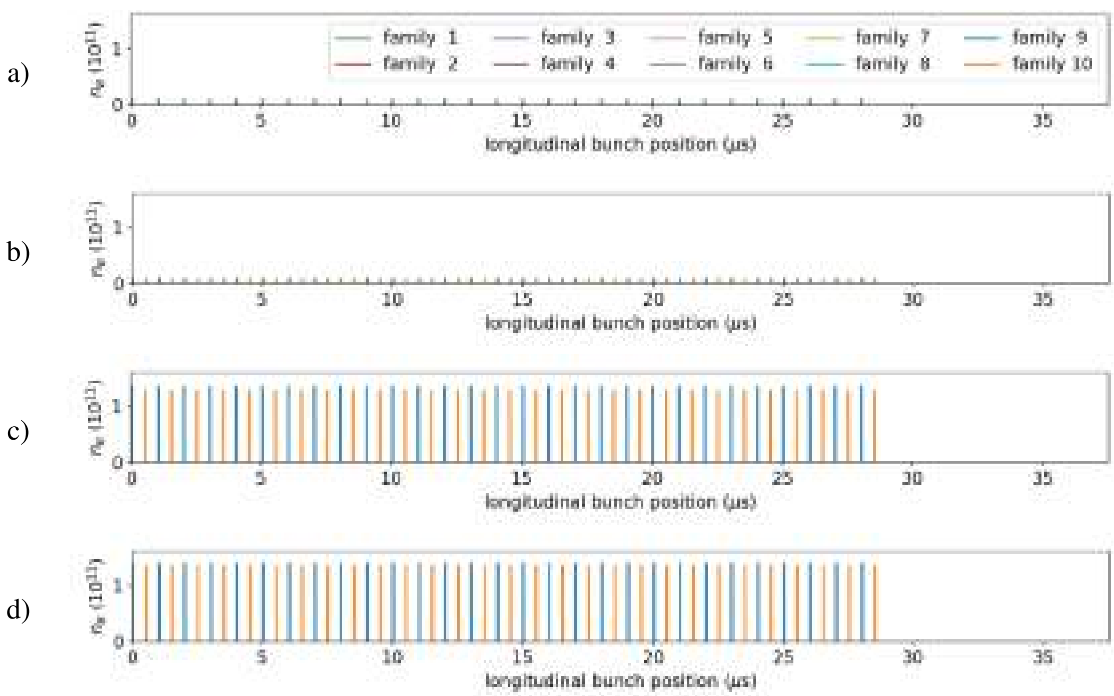


Fig. 2.19 Bunch intensity patterns in one ring at various stages during the intensity ramp procedure for WW mode operation. Patterns for only two out 8 identical trains are shown

difficult, with the phenomena described in Sect. 1.4.3 [62]. Studies are ongoing to devise solutions; the first results using a small positive chromaticity are promising.

Intensity ramp up for the W mode No issues are expected related to the electron cloud in the collider for WW operation due to the larger gaps with the trains of the proposed filling pattern. In order to limit the maximum total intensity in the booster, separation of the collider bunches into two families is proposed for both intensity ramp-up and top-up injections. The principle is documented in Fig. 2.19 showing bunch patterns for one out of the eight (identical) trains in one of the collider rings and Fig. 2.20 showing the evolution of the beam intensities for the two families and the luminosity. Figure 2.19a shows the bunch pattern in the collider after one transfer and for one out of 8 identical trains. Every second injector batch of the complete filling pattern shown in Fig. 2.13 is filled. The next booster cycle injects into the positions belonging to the family two of the same ring leading to the pattern shown in Fig. 2.19b. The next two booster cycles inject into the counter-rotating beam. The same sequence is repeated periodically for intensity ramp-up and top-up injection.

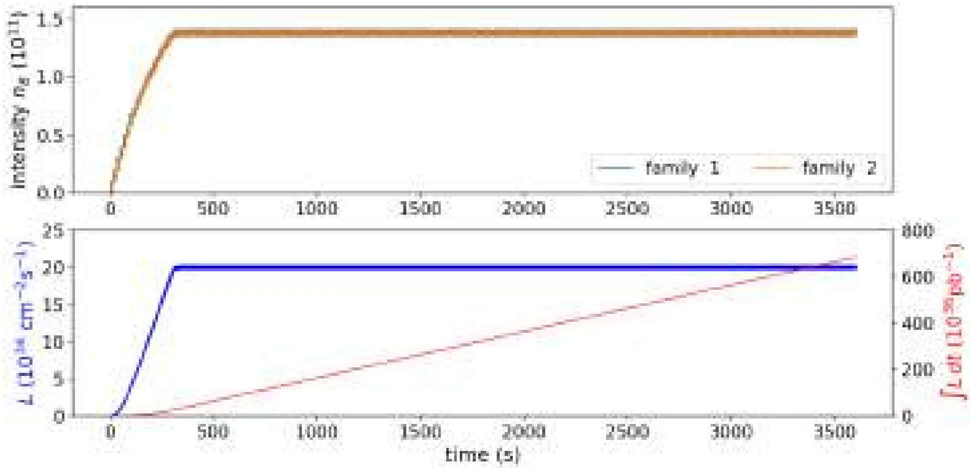


Fig. 2.20 Bunch intensity evolution for the various families (upper plot) and evolution of the luminosity. Bunch intensities are plotted using solid and dashed lines for the two counter-rotating beams

Intensity ramp up for the ZH and $t\bar{t}$ *modes* Due to the low number of bunches in the collider, no limitations related to electron cloud build-up or total intensity circulating in the booster exist for FCC-ee operation at the higher energies. Thus, the intensity of all collider bunches is ramped up simultaneously. The resulting filling procedure is obvious and leads to a booster filling pattern identical to that in the collider.

2.3.9 Top-up injection

The top-up injection scheme (described in Sect. 1.8.1) was simulated with a perfect lattice, without consideration of collective effects or machine imperfections. In practice, however, lower-than-expected injection efficiencies and significant penalties on injection performance at higher circulating currents have been major challenges at other lepton colliders [231, 232].

While the baseline injection scheme has a unique setting for on-axis injection, it is possible to use a hybrid injection scheme in the range of injected beam energy offset between 0.7% and 0.95% (Fig. 1.39). In later revisions of the collider lattice, different injected beam energy offsets may become feasible with the on-axis injection scheme by modifying the optics. In contrast, due to the septum thickness, the hybrid injection scheme must maintain a constant physical separation between the injected and circulating beams at the injection point. Since the optics remains unchanged, this constraint results in a geometric condition in the DA-MA plane, represented by red dots in Fig. 2.21b. Injection is physically possible but constrained by the dynamic aperture (DA) and momentum acceptance (MA) in the region above and to the right of this line. Conversely, injection is geometrically impossible in the region below and to the left of this line.

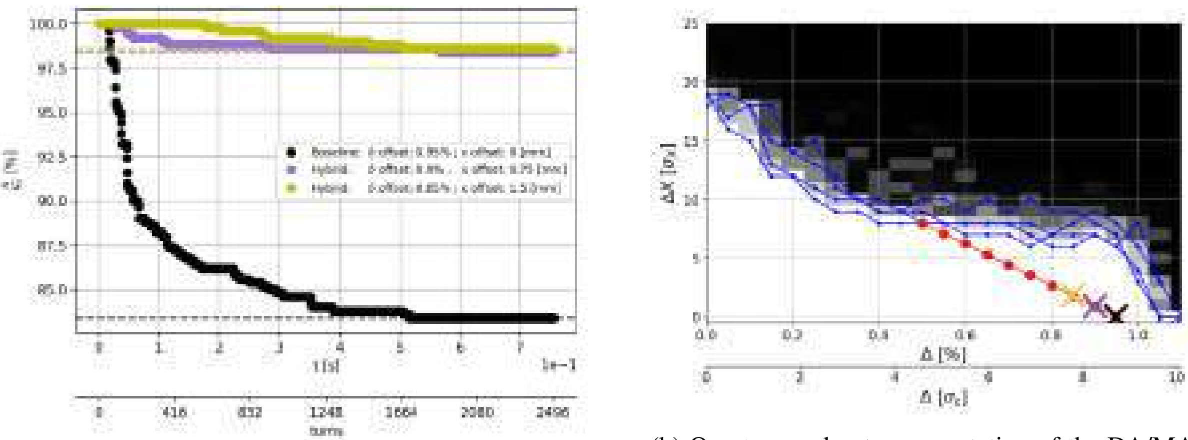
The injection efficiency for different hybrid schemes, different betatron offsets, is simulated and the most promising results, showing improved efficiency over the baseline (on-axis injection), are plotted in Fig. 2.21a. In these simulations, the weak-strong model of the beam-beam interactions is used. Figure 2.21b shows that a range of injection settings are possible between the geometrical constraints represented as the red dots and the DA and MA limits of the lattice shown as the blue lines [233].

At SuperKEKB, the injection efficiency reaches approximately 80% with the aid of bunch-by-bunch (BbB) feedback. Without BbB feedback, the efficiency drops to around 50%. The primary causes of this degradation are the larger-than-design emittance of the injected beam and the use of off-axis injection. In contrast, FCC-ee's baseline design features on-axis injection and large curvature radii in the beam transport from the booster to the collider ring, making the degradation of injection efficiency observed at SuperKEKB unlikely. SuperKEKB has also experienced beam chamber deformation due to heat, which may contribute to a degradation in injection efficiency. Therefore, effective temperature management is crucial.

This validates the feasibility of the present injection concept, but in the absence of comprehensive tracking that includes both errors and collective effects, it is not possible to be sure at this stage that high injection efficiency can be reached and maintained up to nominal intensity. Therefore, the present feasibility study establishes an injection efficiency goal of 80% based on the status of the concept and experience from other facilities [231, 232]. This injection efficiency target is used in the feasibility study for the sizing of the injector chain (Table 7.1).

2.3.10 Injection requirements

The top-up injection scheme strongly relies on the injected beam being considerably smaller horizontally than the circulating one (Fig. 1.38). By contrast, in the vertical plane, the injected beam could be several times larger than



(a) Evolution of the injected beam intensity for three different injection betatron offset with beam-beam.

(b) Quarter quadrant representation of the DA/MA without beam-beam with crosses denoting the three injection settings simulated with beam-beam.

Fig. 2.21 Collider injection efficiency at various betatron offsets and their corresponding location in the DA/MA for the Z mode

the stored beam. The horizontal beam parameters provided by the booster (see Table 4.1) must be maintained up to the nominal intensity, but also along all the bunches of the injected trains, and stably over time. The beam transfer systems for both the booster extraction and collider injection have to ensure a high level of stability and reproducibility to prevent any beam jitter that would increase emittances and reduce the injection efficiency.

2.3.11 Refilling and pre-polarising pilot bunches after a beam abort

At the ZH and $t\bar{t}$ energies, the FCC-ee can be filled with the booststrapping injection scheme detailed in Sect. 2.3.8. At the Z and WW energies, prior to this, first pre-polarised must be produced, which are required for precise energy calibration from the start of each fill.

At 45.6 GeV the natural polarisation time is 250 h. Thus, achieving a polarisation level in an error-free machine of 5-10% requires 15 to 30 hours, which is an unacceptably long period without calibration at the start of fill. Reducing the polarisation rise time to about 12 h is feasible using special polarisation wigglers [161], which also increase the energy spread to 64 MeV. In the currently planned operational scenario, low-intensity ($\approx 10^{10}$ particles) pilot bunches are injected at the start-of-fill and polarised using wigglers. When roughly 5-10% polarisation is achieved, after 45 to 90 minutes, these wigglers are switched off, and all the nominal-intensity colliding bunches are then injected, according to the bootstrapping scheme, and brought into collision. Around 250 pilot bunches per beam are required in total, a number that follows from the assumption that five energy calibration measurements with two pilot bunches are performed every hour. By the time the last pilot bunch has been depolarised for the first time, the pilot bunches that were depolarised first will have naturally reacquired sufficient polarisation to be measured again.

At 80 GeV, the polarisation time is approximately 15 hours, and polarisation wigglers are not required [161]. In this case, the pilot bunches take about 1.5 hours to reach 5% polarisation. Significantly fewer pilot bunches - of the order of 25 - are needed compared to operation at the Z pole, as they re-polarise ten times faster.

2.4 Availability

Availability is defined as the percentage of scheduled physics time during which the machine successfully delivers beam, as opposed to being in downtime or undergoing repairs. The availability of FCC-ee is closely tied to its operational efficiency (Sect. 2.1.2) and the achieved integrated luminosity. Additionally, it is influenced by various performance factors, including operational costs, safety considerations, and system design constraints.

An enhanced Monte Carlo simulation framework is used to model availability by deconstructing the accelerator's main constituent systems. The simulation model is detailed in Sects. 2.3.1-2.4.2, with the results presented in Sect. 2.4.3.

2.4.1 Contributing systems

In collaboration with relevant system experts, each main constituent system in FCC-ee was approximated for availability. If fault data from a comparable representative system could be found, this was scaled to an equivalent

Table 2.5 Approach time (the drive time from PA) and cool down time (see Sect. 9.4.2) relevant to human repair faults at each access point

	PA	PB	PD	PF	PG	PH	PJ	PL	arc
Approach Time (h)	0.00	0.75	0.55	0.8	0.63	0.600	0.416	0.283	
Cool Down Time (h)	1.54	1.70	1.54	24*	1.54	0.717†	1.540	0.717†	1.7

*Collimation straight section without bypass tunnel.

†Klystron gallery only. A longer cool down time is required to access the beam tunnel.

system in FCC-ee using a generalised framework. For some systems, no such fault data could be identified and a placeholder was used. The methodology in each case is as follows.

Systems with representative fault data A generalised framework was designed for consistent and comparable representation of systems in the FCC-ee. Specific details relating to relevant peculiarities were then applied.

Generalised framework for system availability estimation

1. A similar or comparable state-of-the-art representative system is identified that exists currently in a working accelerator.
2. Where possible, representative system is deconstructed into subcomponents and fault mechanisms to achieve better granularity of reliability estimation.
3. Fault mechanisms are categorised by:
   - Repair type:
     - Remote Repairs: can be completed from the control room, e.g., by re-setting or by-passing the failed component.
     - Human Repairs: require on-site intervention by personnel. In addition to the time it takes to complete the repair, the approach time to get a person to the site of the fault must be considered. This is taken as the time to get from PA to the relevant access point by car, summarised in Table 2.5.
   - Equipment location:
     - Surface: Equipment located on the surface can be accessed for repair immediately when the technician arrives.
     - Tunnel: Equipment located inside the accelerator tunnel cannot be accessed until a suitable cool-down time has passed at the relevant access point, corresponding to the time required to fully ventilate the tunnel. This is summarised Table 2.5 (Sect. 9.4.2).
4. Fault data is extracted from the representative system to gain Mean Time Between Failures (MTBF) and Mean Time to Repair (MTTR) information for the system and, where possible, subsystems for finer granularity.
5. MTBF and MTTR are scaled from the representative system to the study system in the FCC-ee:
   - MTBF scales inversely proportionate to the relative number of components. The more components in the FCC-ee system relative to the representative system, the lower the MTBF. If the number of components in FCC-ee is not yet precisely known, an approximation is made, assuming a design specification similar to that of the representative system.
   - MTTR for remote repair faults is left unchanged. An approach time and/or cool downtime is added to human repair times corresponding to the equipment location, Table 2.5.
6. If applicable, a formulation for redundancy in the FCC-ee is defined.

System specifics for availability approximation Specifics used to approximate availability for each constituent system are also considered, in addition to the above generalised framework. Only faults leading to downtime in the representative system are included, thereby assuming a similar degree of redundancy for each basic component family as currently exists in the working accelerator. Details of subsystems, scaling numbers, and any additionally implemented system-level redundancy are provided in Table 2.6. Fault data was taken from CERN's Accelerator Fault Tracking (AFT) database [234] and is specific to LHC physics operation 2015-2024, unless otherwise stated.

If no representative fault data could be found, but the system is still deemed a high risk for machine availability, it was given an availability placeholder pending a more rigorous reliability assessment. This applied to two systems, the beamstrahlung dump absorbers, and the polarimeter.

The remaining accelerator systems specific to the booster, injector complex and technical infrastructure are covered in Sects. 5.3, 7.9 and 8.10, respectively.

Table 2.6 Parameters used to simulate availability of systems and subsystems in the FCC-ee Collider

System	Subsystem	Representative System		FCCee	Redundancy*	Location	Unit MTBF	Group MTBF
		Machine	#	#	# (%)	AP	days	days
Accelerator Controls	Software	LHC	1	1	0 (0)	all		7.1
	Hardware		607	2400	0 (0)	all	15,840	6.6
Access System	Access Points	LHC	8	8	0 (0)	all	178	22.4
Beam Instrumentation	BPM	LHC	1000	5906	0 (0)	all	20,671	3.5
	BLM		3600	1205	0 (0)	all	36,632	30.4
	Other		1	1	0 (0)	all		24.5
Beam Losses	UFOs	LHC	54	182	0 (0)	all		1.2
	Beam Instability		1	1	0 (0)	all		2.1
Beamstrahlung Dump		SPS TIDVG	1	8	0 (0)	PA, PD, PG, PJ	68	8.5
Collimation	Moveable Collimator	LHC	108	32	0 (0)	PF	1549	48.4
Elevators & Handling Equip.	Elevator Shafts per AP	LHC	1	2	1 (50)	all	74	332.8
Experiments	IPs	LHC	4	4	0 (0)	PA, PD, PG, PJ	17	4.3
Extraction & Beam Dump	Dump Block	LHC	2	2	0 (0)	PB	224	112
	Controls		2	2	0 (0)	PB	36	18.2
	Hardware		2	2	0 (0)	PB	65	32.7
	Other		2	2	0 (0)	PB	71	35.6
Injection Systems	MKI	LHC	2	2	0 (0)	PB	20	10.1
	TDI		2	2	0 (0)	PB	71	35.6
Machine Protection	FMCM	LHC	1	10	0 (0)	all		39.2
	BIS		1	2	0 (0)	all		32.7
	SMP		1	1	0 (0)	all		87.1
	PIC		1	0.2	0 (0)	all		261.4
	WIC		1	6	0 (0)	all		21.8
Magnets	Normal-conducting	CERN	3532	12,500	0 (0)	all	71×10^6	5681
Operation		LHC	1	1	0 (0)	all		5.8
Polarimeter		N/A	-	1	0 (0)	PA, PG		3.2
Power Converters	Dipole	LHC	194	16	LHC	all	3672	229.5
	Quadrupole		194	32	LHC	all	3672	114.8
	Sextupole		194	1152	LHC	all	3672	3.2
	Dipole Tapering		1032	710	LHC	all	15,485	21.8
	Quadrupole Tapering		1032	709	LHC	all	15,485	21.8
	Horizontal Corrector		1032	2824	LHC	all	15,485	5.5
	Vertical Corrector		1032	2824	LHC	all	15,485	5.5
	Skew Quadrupole		1032	2824	LHC	all	15,485	5.5

Table 2.6 (*Continued*)

System	Subsystem	Representative System		FCCee	Redundancy*	Location	Unit MTBF	Group MTBF
		Machine	#	#	# (%)	AP	days	days
Radio Frequency	Cavity Circuit Z	LHC	16	132†	1 (0.75)	PH	61	0.9
	Cavity Circuit W		16	132†	6 (4.5)	PH	61	169.1
	Cavity Circuit ZH		16	264‡	26 (10)	PH	61	314.6
	Cavity Circuit $t\bar{t}$		16	752‡	75 (10)	PH	61	465.2
Smoke Detection	Smoke Alarms	SPS	7	91	0 (0)	all		4.3
Transverse Damper		LHC	2	2	0 (0)	PH	65.4	32.7
Vacuum	Pumps	LHC	891	3344	0 (0)	all	349,448	104.5
	Gauges		1052	1808	0 (0)	all	274,997	152.1
	Valves		323	452	0 (0)	all	84,434	186.8
	Controllers		789	1584	0 (0)	all	55,915	35.3

*System-level redundancy in addition to that already implemented in the component family of the representative system.

†Per beam.

‡Shared by both beams.

2.4.2 Repair schedule

When redundant and non-redundant systems are combined, the schedule with which repairs are implemented has significant impact on availability. A schedule similar to the LHC was simulated: Following a dump, operators attempt for one hour to restore operation remotely from the control room. If operation cannot be restored during this time, only then people are called to begin human repairs. Once humans are in the tunnel they will finish all repairs, including all redundant components.

2.4.3 Availability simulations

FCC-ee availability is simulated using AvailSim4 [235], a discrete-event Monte Carlo tool developed in-house at CERN for analysing availability and reliability in complex systems. Each energy mode was simulated for its full operation term (four years in Z, two years in WW, etc.), with performance averaged over 100 iterations.

The breakdown for unavailability and lost luminosity in each system under certain assumptions and based on data from LHC systems is shown in Fig. 2.22. The booster, injector complex and technical infrastructure are included for illustration; but treated in detail in Sects. 5.3, 7.9 and 8.10, respectively. For the collider, the main contributors to lost luminosity are the RF, power converters, beam losses and the alarm system.

The RF system experiences the highest unavailability in Z mode due to the strict limit of single-cavity redundancy assumed. In WW mode, the ability to sustain beam operation despite the loss of up to six cavities eliminates the collider's unavailability contribution from the RF system. The booster significantly contributes to unavailability in both energy modes, as it lacks any redundancy. In ZH and $t\bar{t}$ modes, a 10% redundancy ensures zero downtime from the RF system, providing sufficient reserve to accommodate failed cavities until they can be repaired in the shadow of downtime scheduled for other systems.

Power converters show high contributions in all energy modes. This is predominantly due to the low MTBF seen from sextupole and corrector converters and the high number of different magnet circuits used in the assumed optics configuration.

Beam losses have lower contribution to unavailability as the recovery time to restore operation is short. But their contribution to lost luminosity is high as they cause frequent dumps, each of which incurs a turnaround penalty related to the time required to restore stable beams. Turnaround penalty is two hours in Z, W modes, and 30 minutes in ZH, $t\bar{t}$.

The alarm system features relatively high due to the scaling factor from SPS (7 km) to the FCC-ee tunnel (91 km). The combination of numerous alarms and mandatory on-site safety evaluations in the event of fire detection results in significant downtime.

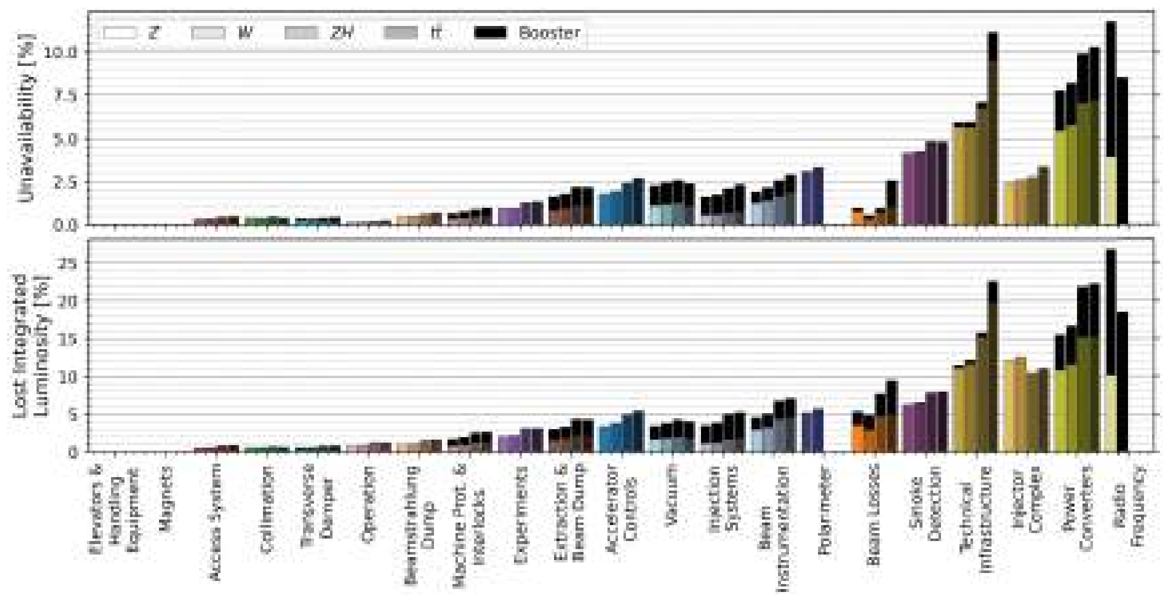


Fig. 2.22 Unavailability and lost luminosity contribution from each main constituent system in the FCC-ee. Systems are ordered according to Z mode lost luminosity contribution. contribution

2.4.4 R&D opportunities

Significant improvement in reliability is required in order to meet luminosity targets, especially in the lower energy modes. Several R&D opportunities have been identified:

Radiofrequency Increasing redundancy in the RF system for the Z, W modes presents challenges due to high beam loading effects but should be further investigated given the potential performance gains. Additionally, RF redundancy in the booster system should be explored further, as it remains a significant contributor to unavailability in both energy modes.

It is important to note that zero RF downtime is currently assumed in the simulation due to the idealised assumption of perfect redundancy between cavity circuits. In reality, common-mode failures would still occur, requiring reconditioning or replacement, which cannot always be immediately compensated by a redundant cavity. Further modelling is necessary to better understand these fault types. In the coming years, close collaboration with the RF design team will be essential to deconstruct the RF circuit into subsystems, identify problematic fault types, and analyse high-failure component families.

Analysis of the auxiliary systems around the superconducting cavities would unearth further reliability opportunities. For example, the klystron gallery is accessible to personnel while the main colliding rings are in operation. If more high-failing auxiliary systems can be located there and designed to be redundant, modular and hot-swappable, significant gains could be achieved.

Power converters The current optics configuration powers sextupoles in groups of four. One failed converter would therefore lead to four magnets failing simultaneously. Collaboration with the optics working group is required to consider how to preserve the beam in the event that combinations of converters and magnets fail. A system-level redundancy approach could significantly improve reliability in this case.

It is important to note that the current simulation assumes the same level of redundancy in power converters as is presently implemented in the LHC. Therefore, for an effective solution, the FCC-ee sextupole and corrector converters must be designed to be more robust than those used in the LHC. A detailed study on power converter reliability will be essential in the coming years.

Reducing the number of corrector families, especially for the sextupole magnets, can drastically reduce the number of power converters required and, in turn, reduce their overall fault rate.

Operation cycle Opportunities also exist within the operation cycle:

1. **Indefinite physics:** If the lifetime of pilot bunches in the main ring can be made longer than the natural polarisation time, pilot bunches could be topped up immediately after being used for measurement and allowed

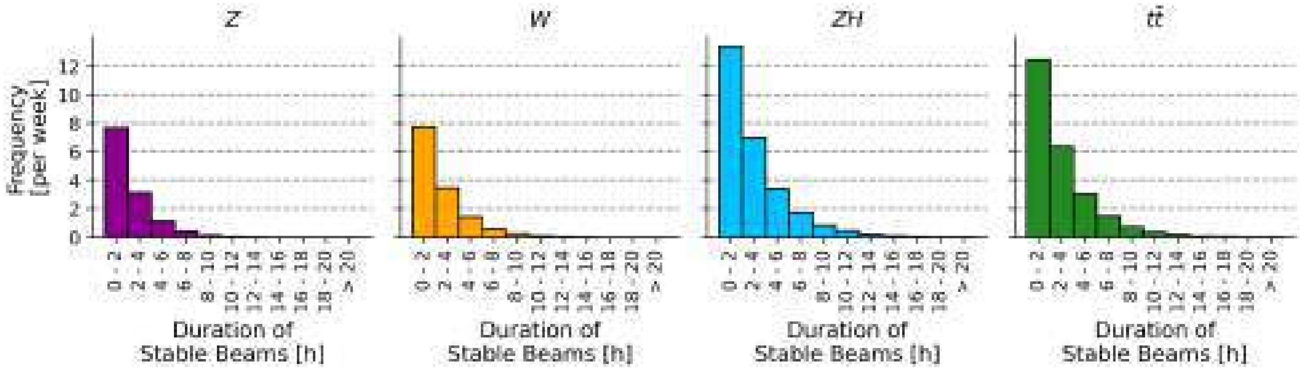


Fig. 2.23 Distributions for duration of stable beams in each energy mode

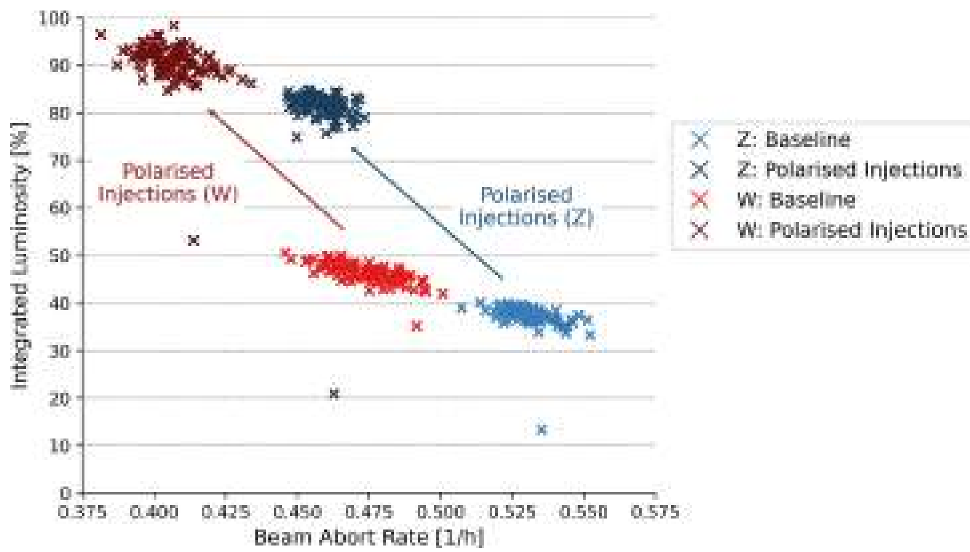


Fig. 2.24 Effect of polarised injections on achieved integrated luminosity and fault rate, under certain assumptions

to naturally re-polarise. This avoids the need to dump after 20 h in order to re-fill with polarised pilot bunches. Physics can then continue uninterrupted in Z, W modes, until equipment failure dumps the beam.

The utility of this proposal is best illustrated by the distribution of stable beams durations at each energy mode, shown in Fig. 2.23. This shows that, under the assumptions made here, stable beams can rarely be sustained longer than 20 h without beam abort due to system failure.

2. **Polarised bunch injection:** If pilot bunches can be polarised prior to injection, and their polarisation preserved through the injector complex and booster, the 90-minute polarisation phase could be eliminated from the Z, W operation cycle entirely. This would effectively result in the same operation cycle as the higher energy modes ZH, $t\bar{t}$ while maintaining the capability for precise energy calibration.

   The potential of this scheme is illustrated in Fig. 2.24. In both Z, WW modes, this approach more than doubles the achieved integrated luminosity. This is because, by removing the 90-minute polarisation phase at the start of each fill, an equivalent duration of stable beams is effectively gained. This presents a potentially game-changing R&D opportunity to support physics objectives in this challenging reliability environment.

2.5 Operational model

CERN has a long-standing tradition of designing, building, and operating accelerators, with well-defined groups structured according to a clear division of responsibilities and tasks. The expectations regarding interfaces between equipment, controls, and human operators - whether in control rooms or via remote access - have been long-established and are now considered immutable, ensuring maximum efficiency within the current CERN accelerator complex, which relies on a high degree of specialisation across various groups.

However, with the unprecedented scale of the FCC accelerator, new constraints such as energy provision from intermittent sources, and the assumption that CERN's human resources during the FCC era will remain at levels similar to today, necessitate a new approach to designing, building, and operating particle accelerators at CERN.

The necessary equipment paradigm can be summarised as:

- Full digitalisation: Equipment needs to be fully digital and remotely controllable as well as analysable with common interfaces and protocols.
- Automation towards fully autonomous systems: All equipment needs to be designed with automation in mind (across systems and within systems) to e.g., auto-configure, auto-stabilise, auto-analyse, auto-recover, etc. An example would be designing cars without steering wheels and asking which control algorithms, additional instrumentation and software layers would have to be in place to safely and efficiently drive and maintain the car while maximising the mobility of the car user. The next design iteration will then address the new possibilities with the re-imagined system (with the car analogy this could be things like "Are close-by car parks still a necessity?", "Are personal cars still required or can they all be shared?"). A key additional aspect in this discussion are digital twins for training and constraining control algorithms and differentiable simulations.
- Full virtualisation: Space telescopes have the additional constraint that one cannot simply go there to fix them if things break. With the size of the FCC and the number of components, maintainability is similarly constrained as for space telescopes. Humans should not be considered for on-site repair at all, or at least not during the run. This can be addressed through built-in margin, a low failure rate, modularity, redundancy (including the possibility of degraded mode or auto-reconfiguration), robotics, and other emerging technologies.

The next generation accelerator control system will have to foresee easy plug&play solutions and frameworks to implement the above and provide integration of artificial intelligence (AI). This concept is often referred to as *AI-ready* accelerators or control systems. Examples of the required capabilities include frameworks for sharing and storing ML/AI models (including continual learning functionalities), integrated digital twins, platforms for IoT, optimisation frameworks, time-aligned data across the accelerator, PYTHON (or equivalent) code infrastructure, and easily configurable virtual device services for continuous analysis and anomaly detection.

Clearly, the three elements of the proposed equipment paradigm outlined above are interlinked and mutually dependent. Many of today's systems in the LHC and other CERN accelerators already implement item 1 and, in some cases, partial implementations of items 2 and 3. For the FCC, however, the complete paradigm must become the standard for equipment integration, meaning it must be imposed at the design stage. This approach will significantly reduce the resources required for commissioning, operation, and maintenance, though it may increase construction costs due to factors such as redundancy, additional connectivity, and additional sensors.

While space telescopes have no choice but to adhere to such stringent design principles, for the earth-based FCC, trade-offs may be considered. These will depend on whether the increased construction costs are deemed unacceptable and/or whether the potential increase in operations and maintenance costs, along with documentation, training, long-term sustainability, and impact on availability, remains within acceptable limits. Forecast availability of the main constituent systems in the baseline FCC-ee design is provided in Sect. 2.4, based on similar equipment operating today.

The new equipment paradigm should allow:

- Preparing the FCC-ee injector complex and collider with a single person on shift; and
- keeping the global maintenance and exploitation effort level (in total FTE) for equipment teams for FCC-ee and injector complex at or below today's level (for LHC and the existing injector complex).

Even today, the most sophisticated and relatively recent particle accelerator at CERN, the LHC, is operated with a single person on shift. This supports the vision of automating the FCC to such an extent that the entire electron complex could be run single-handedly. In the current setup, this would correspond to 7–9 full-time shift personnel. However, further automation and the integration of AI assistants in the control room should enable an even more advanced approach, raising the question of whether full-time shift personnel will still be necessary in the 2040s.

Already today, LHC experiments operate with part-time, non-expert shifters drawn from a large pool of short-term shift workers. A similar approach could be explored for the FCC. Nevertheless, approximately five daytime experts dedicated to particle accelerator operation will still be required, ensuring sufficient expertise to support the rest of the accelerator complex as well.

2.5.1 Reducing the operation effort for equipment teams

Operating the FCC electron complex will require relatively few resources. The baseline availability model for FCC-ee, discussed in Sect. 2.4, provides an estimate of the number of on-site repairs needed per week, assuming the FCC-ee is built and operated following the same paradigm as the LHC today. Table 2.7 indicates that this number ranges between 12 and 20 interventions per week.

Equipment groups will greatly benefit from automating fault detection, analysis, repair and recovery. The goal should be to automate equipment to the extent that all 'typical' faults for equipment groups during the run do not require human intervention and hence will not require standby services. Only equipment which is

Table 2.7 Estimated number of on-site interventions for the FCC-ee complex, if it were built and operated as a large-scale LHC [236]

Mode	Number of weekly on-site interventions
Z	14.8
WW	15.0
ZH	15.5
$t\bar{t}$	20.3

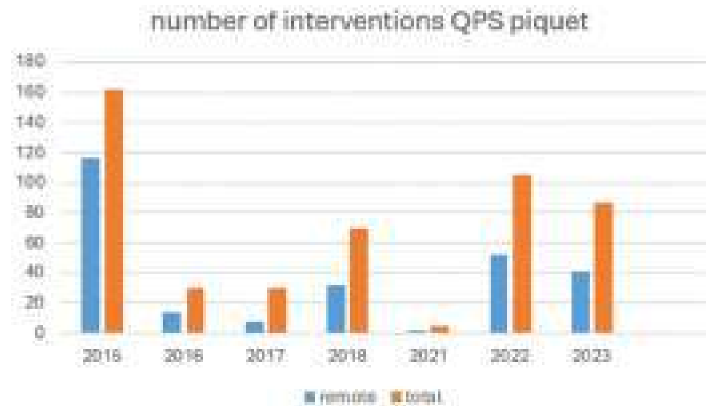


Fig. 2.25 Graph showing the number of remote and total standby interventions on the LHC QPS systems. Data extracted from the QPS standby logbook

designed, built and tested to this extent can be considered suitable for operation. This requires acceptance testing in realistic mock-ups, well-planned and sufficiently long first commissioning phases and the requirement to be fully automated from the start of physics production. A comprehensive analysis of what availability is needed per system to reach the physics goals and how this can be reached in a robust and affordable manner is a key prerequisite for equipment design. The right compromise between adequate operational margins through machine parameter choice and passive mitigation of e.g., radiation, automating fault detection and repair, and reliable design through redundancy, component margins, etc. has to be established on a system by system basis.

The target of a constant workforce will require a significant reduction in the maintenance effort per piece of equipment compared to today. The suggested target number of at least a 50% reduction in maintenance effort comes from the analysis of the evolution of fault numbers for some key accelerator systems and from the assumption that remote interventions could be fully automated already today, given recent advances in technology. For example, for the SY-ABT kicker systems, currently more than 50% of their interventions can be done remotely. Similarly, for the LHC QPS system, the ratio of remote interventions remained roughly 50% in recent years, Fig. 2.25.

Setting-up/commissioning procedures (accTesting [237], re-conditioning procedures etc.) that need to be done regularly (even if only annually) should also all be automated. This has the additional benefit of increasing the flexibility for planning (as it allows for parallelisation without concern for sharing experts) and operational schedules.

The operation costs of the FCC-ee were assessed to amount to about 600 MCHF per annum. The approach consisted in assigning the nature of equipment with back-tested operation and maintenance percentages and related costs resulting in a bulk number of 200 MCHF, including a typical spending ratio of staff per materials budget giving about 300 MCHF. As a result, the operation cost estimate for the FCC-ee consists of about 200 MCHF materials, 300 MCHF personnel and 100 MCHF on average for the electricity costs, an average total of 600 MCHF per annum.

2.6 Machine protection

2.6.1 Machine protection requirements

The machine protection aspects of FCC-ee are challenging in several ways.

The transverse beam sizes are small because of the small equilibrium emittance in a ring that is so large. The typical vertical beam size can be smaller than 10 µm. The horizontal beam size varies between 260 µm and 400 µm (assuming $\beta_{x,y}$ = 100 m). Because of the small emittances, the energy density of FCC-ee beams at the Z mode reaches up to 17% of the value for the HL-LHC beams (7 TeV), although the stored energy of the FCC-ee beams at Z is only 2.5% of the HL-LHC's.

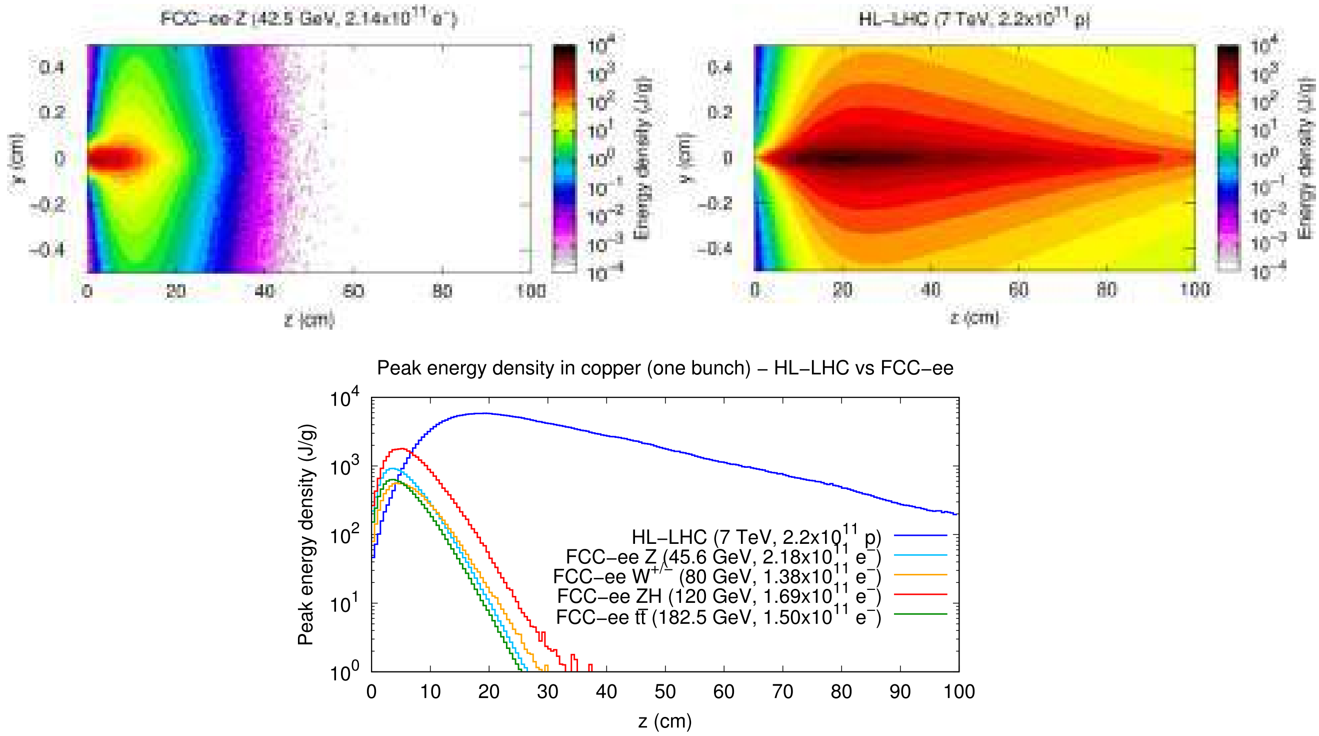


Fig. 2.26 Energy deposited in copper by a single FCC-ee (Z) electron bunch (top left) and HL-LHC proton bunch (top right). The maps show the energy density in the horizontal plane. The bottom figure compares the corresponding peak energy density profiles, for all FCC-ee beam modes, assuming a β-function of 100 m in both planes. The melting point of copper is reached if the energy density exceeds about 0.45 kJ/g

The risk of damage strongly depends on the actual loss scenario, where the shower development for a beam hitting any material needs to be taken into account. Compared to the HL-LHC proton beams, the energy is deposited over a much shorter distance, as illustrated in Fig. 2.26. The maximum energy deposition density induced by a single FCC-ee bunch in copper is about 4 to 10 times lower than for a HL-LHC bunch, but it is still sufficient to reach the melting point. This highlights the need for a sophisticated machine protection architecture that relies on a combination of active and passive protection systems. Machine protection aspects also have to be considered when designing accelerator hardware, in order to reduce the likelihood of beam losses and to mitigate the severity of any beam loss events.

The beams are stabilised by various means. Among them, the transverse feedback is particularly critical as in the case of its failure, multi-bunch instabilities leading to significant beam losses can develop within a few turns only. The bunch lengthening generated by beamstrahlung is also key for maintaining beam stability and could be lost if the beams are not kept in collision. Due to the large circumference, with a single-beam dump system, the signal transmission time of the beam abort request is significant.

The synchrotron radiation itself will be challenging as 100 MW of synchrotron radiation power will need to be absorbed and efficiently dissipated. At the higher beam energy modes, the effect of radiation on electronics will need to be taken into account in the design of the many electronic systems or of appropriate shielding.

Machine protection system inputs The machine protection system interfaces with many hardware systems. Failure of these systems risks affecting the beams in such a way that damage can occur. There are also processes which can lead to damage of the machine without being related to a specific hardware item. Such processes are also listed below. The machine can generally be protected against these events by surveying the beam properties via beam diagnostics. Therefore, the beam diagnostics is part of the machine protection system and is listed in the next section.

- **Beam instabilities** are induced by the impedance seen by the beam. Both the transverse coupled bunch instability (TCBI) and collective effects in the transverse plane (TMCI) have been assessed. The most dangerous mode has a rise time of about 1.3 ms and a bunch-by-bunch feedback system is used to suppress the TCBI. The estimated required damping time of 1 ms corresponds to about three turns, which will be a challenge for the feedback system. The rise times for the TMCI are about 8 ms (i.e. without beamstrahlung). At the Z pole, such short bunch length could be reached within about ten thousand turns if the collisions between the beams are lost. This needs to be taken into account for example when dumping the two high intensity beams.

More detailed simulations of the instabilities and the interplay with the feedback systems are outstanding. The values quoted here correspond to the Z-mode which is most critical since the beam currents here are the highest

- **The Transverse feedback system** is vital for stabilising the high intensity beams. In case of failure of the transverse feedback system the beam will need to be aborted within about 3 turns, which is challenging. Considering the criticality of the system, a redundant and distributed system would be preferred. However, multiple feedback systems risk to counteract each other, leading to an unstable situation.

  The same transverse feedback system is also foreseen to be used for depolarisation of the beam. The co-habitation of systems for excitation and feedback needs further study. Strong transverse momentum kicks of 10 µrad at 45 GeV are required for depolarisation and for this reason are critical for safe operation of the machine, especially in case of failures like non-synchronised excitations.

  Protection against damper failures will require monitoring both the damper hardware and the beam itself. This will be achieved using beam loss monitors and beam position monitors, strategically placed at the appropriate phase advance relative to the kicker elements.
- **The RF system**

  The collider hardware is dominated by the RF system. To avoid hardware modification between the Z, WW and ZH modes, it is foreseen to run in Reverse Phase Operation. First simulation results show no risk of too high induced voltages in case of a cavity trip, which means that operation can continue with a small number of cavities that have tripped.

  If a cavity voltage or power is missing, the beam will need to be dumped. The time constant to be taken into account here is about 1/4 of a synchrotron motion, which is about 10 turns. The RF interlock — most likely based on phase detection — is backed up by the Beam Loss Monitors.

  The RF system must be able to control the RF parameters during the duration of the abort gap. Preliminary studies indicate that a 600 ns abort gap duration is feasible.
- **The injection and extraction systems**

  Injection and extraction of high intensity beams are machine-protection critical as the failures of the hardware involved is by definition extremely fast, and there is no time for the machine protection system to react to these failures. The injection and extraction systems are described in detail in Sect. 1.8.

  For injection in the collider, two kicker magnets create a closed bump to bring the stored beam trajectory close to the injection septum. The bump is created by two kicker magnets, 180° phase advance apart and originally planned to be constant over a single turn and having a rise and fall time of 1100 ns. In case of a kicker failure, all circulating bunches can be affected, leading to unacceptable losses. From a machine protection point of view, a system with rise and fall times over several turns is preferred, as it will allow the machine protection system to react in case of failures. The option that the injection bump is present over many turns will need to be counterbalanced against arguments related to machine and dynamic aperture and also the beam impedance.

  The extraction to the dump must be highly reliable, as it must function without failure in the event of any issue arising in the machine. Fast extraction kickers are planned, with a rise time of 0.6 µs. The rise time of the kicker magnets must be precisely synchronised with the passage of the particle-free beam abort gap. The reaction time between a beam abort request and the full extraction of the beam is critical due to the rapid nature of potential failure scenarios. Therefore, it is anticipated that multiple beam abort gaps will be necessary.

  The impact of failures in many injection and extraction-related systems can be mitigated by segmenting them, for example, by dividing the injection kicker systems into multiple smaller, independent units. Additionally, the likelihood of failure can be minimised through redundancy and highly reliable designs.

  To provide an additional layer of protection, multiple absorbers or passive diluters will be required as a final safety measure to shield septa and other machine components from fast failures of the injection and extraction pulsed magnets. These elements will need to be studied in further detail. A preliminary list of typical fast system failures has been compiled, along with possible protection measures. However, a more comprehensive study is still required, incorporating the detailed design of the hardware systems involved.
- **Collider electromagnetic separators**

  Electromagnetic separators are required upstream and downstream of the RF section to separate the beam in $t\bar{t}$ mode, as both beams will pass through the centre of the same cavities. Possible failures include spontaneous discharges of the electrodes, a mismatch between the magnetic and electric field in the longitudinal plane and synchrotron light shining on the HV electrodes, inducing discharges and resulting in very fast and large kicks to the beams. These failures can possibly be detected by using very fast interlocked beam position monitors and dedicated masks for the synchrotron light.
- **Powering failures**

  First analysis of a powering failure of one of the main dipole chains, shows that the beam can reach the horizontal limiting aperture in only a few turns. This will be very challenging for the machine protection system, even if the failure can be rapidly detected by the use of a fast magnet current change monitor (FMCM), described below.

- **Beam-dust interaction**
  Beam loss events due to the interaction of dust grains with high-energy particle beams have been observed in hadron and lepton accelerators over many decades. In the LHC, beam-dust interactions have an important detrimental impact on machine availability. They caused more than 70 premature beam dumps and more than ten quenches of superconducting magnets during Run 2 and 3. At the electron-positron collider SuperKEKB, a significant amount of beam aborts related to beam-dust interactions were observed and reproduced using a mechanical knocker. In recent years, very fast beam losses occurred at SuperKEKB, causing damage to machine components. Presently, the root cause of this phenomenon remains unknown. However, beam-dust interactions have been hypothesised as a possible explanation. While the dynamics of the dust movement has been studied in detail for the LHC, these models have to be extended to lepton colliders to evaluate the effect of beam-dust interactions on the protection, availability, and performance reach of FCC-ee.
- **Superconducting magnets**
  A quench protection system will be required for the superconducting final focus magnets. A detailed description of this system is provided in Sect. 3.11.
  The impact of beam-related failures on the superconducting magnet structures has not yet been studied. However, such failures are not expected to be critical due to the relatively long time constants of superconducting circuits and the limited number of superconducting magnets.
  The effects of the quench protection system on the beam, including potential erratic firing of quench heaters or CLIQ systems, must be modelled in detail.

Machine protection system elements The machine elements listed below are part of the machine protection system and prevent the machine to be damaged by the beams.

- **Machine interlock systems** The dedicated hardware related to machine protection is described in Sect. 8.2. As in the current large CERN accelerators, the core of the machine protection system relies on the Beam Interlock System (BIS). This system connects user inputs that detect failures or beam losses in the machine to the beam extraction systems. The Beam Interlock System (BIS) must be highly reliable and, for that reason, is fully redundant. Due to the large machine circumference, a significant delay occurs between detecting a beam abort request and triggering the beam extraction.
  The cooling of the synchrotron radiation absorbers will need to be interlocked. This interlocking can be based on thermal switching and measurements of cooling water flow. Given the high segmentation of the synchrotron radiation absorbers, a cost-effective method for identifying locations with excessive temperature or reduced cooling flow must be developed, as running individual cables to numerous controllers would be too expensive.
  The main dipole circuits, along with other primary magnet circuits, will be water-cooled. While the impact of a loss of water cooling requires further analysis, initial assessments suggest that it is not highly critical. Water cooling is primarily chosen due to its significantly higher energy efficiency compared to air cooling. If the thermal time constants in the absence of cooling are of the order of days, it may be possible to operate without an interlock on magnet cooling, instead relying solely on tunnel temperature monitoring. In such a scenario, temperature measurements would need to be highly granular to accurately locate potential cooling issues.
  The need of a fast magnet current change monitor (FMCM) can be determined through an analysis of powering failures across different systems. Strong, individual magnets with short time constants may require FMCM protection. Preliminary analyses indicate that failures in the main magnet circuits pose significant challenges, even when rapidly detected by an FMCM.
- **The beam extraction system** must operate with extreme reliability to ensure the beam can be aborted whenever required by the machine interlock system. Any degradation in the beam-dumping system, such as a reduction in redundancy or safety margins, must be detected early enough to allow safe beam disposal without losses. For this reason, the beam extraction system also functions as a machine protection system user.
  The number and length of abort gaps are critical system parameters that influence the RF system and the reaction time to a beam dump request. Since beam stability is maintained through collisions, the dumping of both beams must be synchronised. The specifics of this synchronisation require further study.
- **The collimation system** is described in detail in Sect. 1.5. In addition to cleaning the beam, it plays a crucial role in the machine protection system by safeguarding the machine aperture against irregular and accidental beam losses. The collimators must act as the aperture bottleneck, intercepting all primary losses. Depending on the analysis of failure scenarios, a distributed collimation system may need to be considered. This approach would represent a new regime compared to previous lepton colliders.
  Particular attention is required to prevent beam-induced damage to the collimators. Fast failures have been observed at SuperKEKB, where a beam with 100 times less stored energy caused damage to the collimators within just 2 to 3 turns. For this reason, fast and sensitive beam loss measurements, integrated with the beam interlock system, are essential at the collimator locations.

- **Beam Instrumentation**
  Ideally, any machine failure should be detected at the source, such as a power converter failure or an incorrect collimator position. A global safety net based on beam measurements is highly recommended to enhance reliability and, in the case of beam instabilities, may serve as the only protection. For this reason, highly reliable beam instrumentation systems, integrated with the beam interlock system, are essential for the safe operation of the accelerator.
  Historically, this protection is based on a distributed system of fast beam loss monitors (BLMs), like in the LHC. A scaling of the number of BLMs as presently installed in the LHC with the FCC-ee circumference would lead to a total of 12’000 BLMs. Even larger numbers of BLMs have been proposed in initial studies. The BLM electronic systems will need to be extremely reliable to limit the number of false dumps initiated by the BLM system.
  Due to the extremely small vertical beam size, detecting the onset of instabilities in the vertical plane is unlikely to be feasible using beam loss monitors. Instead, the use of fast, interlocked beam position monitors must be studied in detail.
  A third layer of protection is the beam current change monitor, which aborts the beams upon detecting a reduction in measured beam current. Further investigation is required to determine whether this system is adequate for protecting against certain fast failure modes.

Machine protection system strategy Several FCC-ee failure modes with time scales of only a few turns have been identified. The reaction time of the machine protection system can be slightly shortened by filling patterns with multiple abort gaps. The detection of the onset of failure modes will have to be optimised to detect any malfunctioning of equipment or the onset of instability as early as possible. As the vertical beam size is small, one can most likely not rely on interlocking on beam losses in the vertical plane, since the limiting apertures will be far away from the beam expressed in numbers of sigma. Fast interlocked beam position monitors will most likely need to be distributed along the accelerator.

Protection against fast failures is achieved through redundancy, segmentation and highly reliable designs. Also fixed absorbers are part of the protection against fast failure modes. These absorbers are challenging due to the high beam brightness and shower development. Where no suitable materials can be found, a possible remedy would be the use of disposable absorbers for rare failure cases.

A full and complete analysis of failure modes of all FCC-ee components requires a more advanced hardware design. This will allow a detailed definition of mitigation steps, including the detection systems for the various failures. At this stage in the machine protection study, not a single showstopper has been identified.

Chapter 3

FCC-ee collider technical systems

3.1 Main magnets

3.1.1 Introduction

The proposed collider magnet system meets the requirements of the FCC-ee V24.3 GHC optics. The magnets have been designed to operate below iron saturation at $t\bar{t}$, so that they behave linearly at all intermediate energy levels, Z, WW and ZH.

The regular FODO lattice of the collider ring features 2840 arc half-cells composed of a short straight section (SSS) followed by a series of dipole magnets. Depending on the position along the lattice, the SSS hosts none, one or two sextupole magnets. Where there is either no sextupole or only one sextupole, the total dipole length is adapted to occupy the space, maximising the dipole filling factor in the machine.

The dipole and quadrupole magnets are designed as twin-aperture units, as proposed in the CDR [13].

Compared to using separate magnetic elements, the twin-aperture solution significantly reduces power requirements by half, as the return ampere-turns in the coils supply the second aperture. Since the dipoles and quadrupoles are powered in long series, they include locally powered trim windings that enable independent adjustments of the magnetic field in each aperture. This enables fine-tuning, corrections, and compensation for local beam energy losses resulting from synchrotron radiation (SR).

The requirements for the arc magnets are based on the FODO lattice described in Sect. 1.2 and summarised in Table 3.1. The total number of magnets in the lattice accounts for the arcs and long straight sections (LSS).

Table 3.1 Magnet requirements for the FODO lattice V24.3 GHC

	Dipole	Quadrupole	Sextupole
Total number in lattice...	6128	3324	4672
... of which in the arcs	5680	2836	4672
Bore aperture	74 mm	74 mm	66 mm
Magnetic length	9.7 - 11.2 m	2.9 m	1.3 m
Max strength†, arc ($t\bar{t}$, 182.5 GeV)	61.0 mT	11.9 T m^{-1}	880 T m^{-2}

† Sextupole strength given as B'' ($B'' = 2S$)

3.1.2 Dipoles

The dipole yoke features an I-shape geometry corresponding to two back-to-back C-shape dipoles, with a common powering circuit around the central part. It allows for a compact design that can be built in a cost-efficient manner. The assembly is composed of three parts that can be machined out of solid iron (low-carbon steel) plates. As all three parts have a simple rectangular cross-section, the amount of machining can be minimised by selecting raw material plates in a thickness close to the final dimensions.

Currently, it is planned to split the dipole section of each arc half-cell into two dipole units to minimise the number of interconnections while keeping a feasible and practical unit length for the manufacture and transport of the magnet components and vacuum chambers.

The use of solid iron material is possible since the magnets will be DC-powered during operation. Compared to a laminated assembly, this also helps to maximise the magnet stiffness, limiting its natural sag, in particular for a 12-m-long magnet with low second moment of area.

The dipole is powered by two busbars made of extruded aluminium, one in each aperture. The ground insulation around the busbars has to be radiation-hard due to the energy deposited by the synchrotron radiation. There are several options, such as inorganic coatings (e.g., hard anodisation), using the surrounding air only, or a combination of both. The separation between the busbars and the surrounding components - magnet yoke, vacuum chamber and SR shielding - can be ensured by ceramic spacers placed at regular intervals along the magnet. The layer of air insulation has to be adapted to the peak voltage of the circuit, which in the case of the collider dipoles is very low (only 210 volts), as a consequence of the low current density, the DC powering mode and the low resistance of the single busbars. Therefore, spacers between 3 and 5 mm thick are compatible with relaxed tolerances for manufacturing the busbars at low cost and limiting the number of spacers along the magnets. A similar insulation technology can also be used for the field tapering trim conductors wound around each pole.

The total field harmonics simulated in 2D are below 1×10^{-4} relative field error at the reference radius of 10 mm.

The general parameters of the dipole are summarised in Table 3.2.

The field map in the dipole cross-section at $t\bar{t}$ operation (peak field) is shown in Fig. 3.1.

3.1.3 Quadrupoles

The quadrupole magnet is designed as two joined figure-of-eight units, which allows powering the two apertures with only two simple racetrack coils. This approach minimises the production costs but imposes opposite polarities seen by the e^+ and e^- beams, as they travel through the magnet, a constraint which has been included in the design of the beam line optics from the early stages of the study.

Due to cost reasons and the complex shape of the poles, a laminated construction of the yoke parts is planned. Each of the top and bottom yokes is split into two parts to allow the integration of the racetrack coils. The symmetry of the assembly is controlled by the tight tolerances on the mating faces and a system of V-grooves and pins for precise relative localisation of the assembled parts. Non-magnetic spacers are placed between the half-yoke assemblies to control the top-bottom pole symmetry.

The twin-aperture double figure-of-eight configuration generates coupling between the apertures due to the left-right asymmetry of the magnetic circuits of each aperture. This translates into a shift in the magnetic field at different power levels (i.e., between different operation phases of the machine). The geometry of the magnetic circuit has been designed with straight poles, where the racetrack trim coils for the field tapering circuits have been placed. This allows streamlining of the magnetic flux and minimising the coupling so that the axis shift can be compensated by using adjacent horizontal orbit correction circuits.

The total field harmonics as simulated in 2D are below 2×10^{-4} relative field error at the reference radius of 10 mm when only the main coils are powered. When, in addition, the field tapering trim coils are activated to the

Table 3.2 General parameters of the arc dipole magnets

Parameter	Unit	Value
Strength, B, 45.6–182.5 GeV	mT	15.2 - 61.0
Bore aperture	mm	74
Magnetic length	m	9.7 to 11.2
Outer envelope	mm	520 × 133
Peak current	A	3665
Magnet resistance (at 32 °C op. temp.)	mΩ	0.27
Peak voltage, magnet	V	0.98
Peak voltage, half-octant (incl. busbars)†	V	420
Conductor (Aluminium)	mm^2, mm	65 × 35, ∅7.7
Turns (busbar)	-	1
Turns per coil (trim)	-	7
Current density (busbar), $t\bar{t}$	A/mm^2	1.61
Temperature rise (5 bar)	°C	14.5
Yoke active mass	kg	2621
Busbar active mass	kg	131
Trim coil active mass	kg	6.7
Magnet active mass	kg	2909

† One half-octant corresponds to one series circuit, which includes 355 magnets. The circuit voltage will be balanced around the middle point of the circuit so that the voltage to ground will not exceed half the circuit voltage.

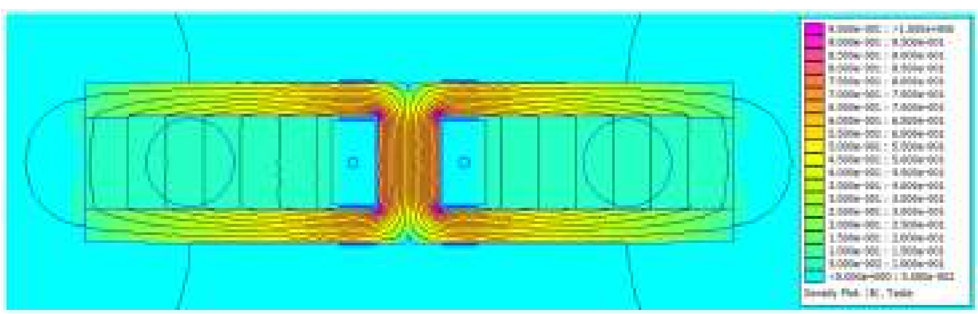


Fig. 3.1 Field map in the dipole cross-section at $t\bar{t}$ operation

peak value of + 3.5 percent of the main field on one aperture and − 3.5 percent of the main field on the other aperture, the b1 relative field harmonic is up to 12×10^{-4}, and the b3 relative field harmonic is up to $1.5 \times 10-4$, due to the cross-talk between apertures and the asymmetry created by the opposite field differences. These errors can be compensated by the adjacent horizontal orbit correctors for the b1, and by the adjacent lattice sextupoles for the b3.

The parameters of the quadrupole magnet are summarised in Table 3.3. The field map in the quadrupole cross-section at $t\bar{t}$ operation (peak field) is given in Fig. 3.2.

3.1.4 Sextupoles

The sextupole magnet is designed with a conventional geometry of 6 symmetrical poles and hosts trim windings, which can be used for horizontal and vertical orbit correction, as well as to generate a skew quadrupole component like is done in synchrotron light sources. Although the sextupole pairs are not magnetically coupled between beam lines, they will be assembled as a single mechanical unit, either by fixing them on a common crib, or by merging the adjacent poles in a single piece lamination. Both solutions will be studied during the pre-TDR phase to determine the most cost-effective. The assembly of sextupole pairs will also minimise the fiducialisation and alignment operations during the construction and installation phases.

The magnet design is relatively compact since the sextupole pairs have to fit the 350 mm intra-beam distance. Consequently, the flux density in iron and current density in the conductors are high. The magnet operates below

Table 3.3 General parameters for the quadrupole

Parameter	Unit	Value
Strength, B'	$\mathrm{T\,m^{-1}}$	11.8
Bore aperture diameter	mm	74
Magnetic length	m	2.9
Overall width × height	mm	590 × 610
Peak current, $t\bar{t}$	A	366
Magnet resistance (at 35 °C op. temp.)	mΩ	51.3
Peak voltage magnet	V	18.8
Peak voltage, half-octant (incl. cables) †	kV	1.91
Conductor (copper)	$\mathrm{mm^2}$, mm	14.4 × 14.4, ⌀7.5
Turns per coil (main)	-	36
Turns per coil (trim)	-	26
Current density, $t\bar{t}$	$\mathrm{A/mm^2}$	2.25
Temperature rise (5 bar)	°C	19.0
Yoke active mass	kg	5789
Main coil active mass	kg	334
Trim coil active mass	kg	9.7
Magnet active mass	kg	6535

† One half-octant corresponds to one series circuit (focusing or defocusing), which includes 89 magnets. The circuit voltage will be balanced around the middle point of the circuit so that the voltage to ground will not exceed half the circuit voltage.

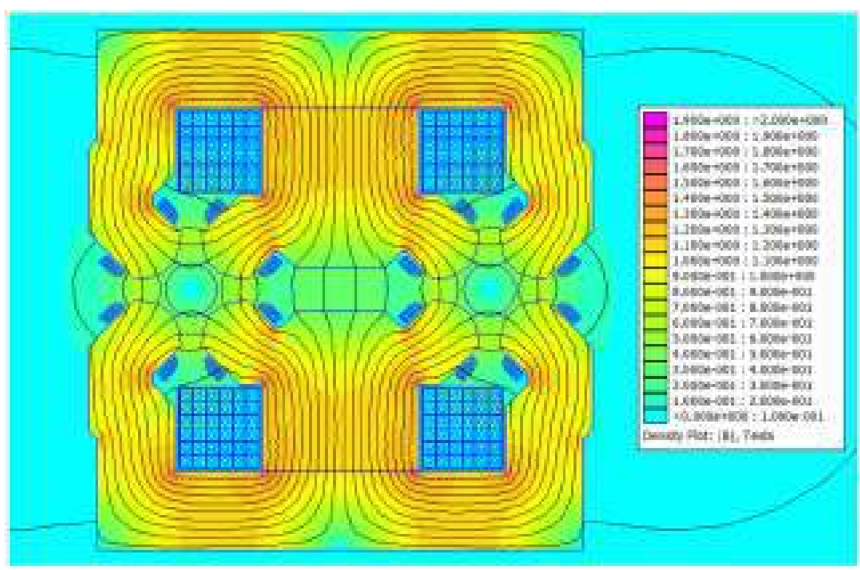


Fig. 3.2 Field map in the quadrupole cross-section at $t\bar{t}$ operation

saturation at peak field, as the flux density does not exceed 1.6 T. This choice allows the trim circuits to be operated in a linear regime at all field levels.

The simulated 2D total field harmonics of the main circuit of the sextupole are below a 1×10^{-4} relative field error at the reference radius of 10 mm when only the main coils are powered.

The field quality of the correction circuits is naturally low, as expected, since the field is generated by the six poles of the sextupole, which are significantly different from the ideal lines of the constant scalar potential of each correction field. Both the b5 field harmonic (relative to B1) of the horizontal orbit correction circuits and the a5 field harmonic (relative to A1) of the vertical orbit correction circuits reach 60×10^{-4}. For the skew quadrupole circuit, the a4 field harmonic (relative to A2) reaches 775×10^{-4}. The effect of these field errors on the beam dynamics is being evaluated to understand if the solution to embed the correction circuits in the sextupole is

Table 3.4 General parameters for the sextupole main circuit

Parameter	Unit	Value
Strength, B''	$\mathrm{T\,m^{-2}}$	880
Bore aperture diameter	mm	66
Length	m	1.3
Overall width x height (one beam)	mm	350 × 350
Peak current, $t\bar{t}$	A	178
Magnet resistance (at 35 °C op. temp.)	mΩ	274
Peak voltage magnet	V	49
Peak voltage, circuit (incl. cables)†	V	284
Conductor dimensions (copper)	$\mathrm{mm^2}$, mm	6.15 × 6.15, ⌀4.0
Turns per coil	-	24
Current density, $t\bar{t}$	$\mathrm{A/mm^2}$	7.0
Temperature rise (6 bar)	°C	20
Yoke active mass	kg	498
Main coil active mass	kg	14.6
Magnet active mass (incl. trim coils)	kg	635

† One circuit corresponds to 8 magnets. The circuit voltage will be balanced around the middle point of the circuit so that the voltage to ground will not exceed half the circuit voltage.

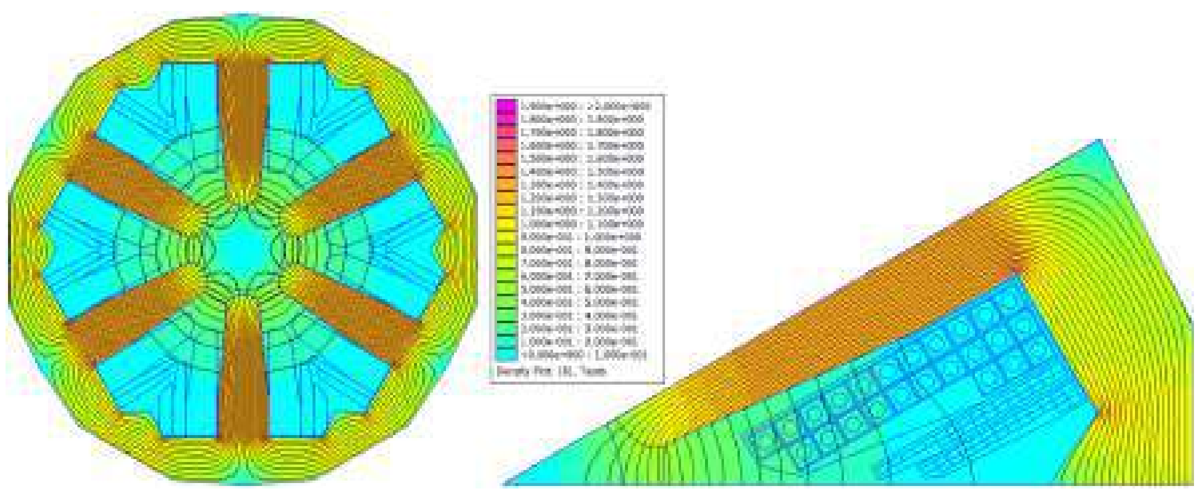


Fig. 3.3 Left: Field map in the sextupole cross-section at $t\bar{t}$ operation (peak field). Right: Detailed view of a half-sextant. The conceptual positioning of the conductor has been generated from parametric modelling for checking integration feasibility. It will be optimised for industrial production during the pre-TDR phase

viable. Otherwise, separate corrector magnets will have to be designed and integrated in the lattice. They would be relatively short since the field strengths of these correctors are relatively small.

The parameters of the sextupole magnet are summarised in Table 3.4. The field map in the sextupole cross-section at $t\bar{t}$ operation (peak field) is given in Fig. 3.3.

The parameters of the sextupole correction circuits are summarised in Table 3.5. The field maps for the sextupole correction circuits at peak correction field are given in Fig. 3.4.

3.1.5 Coils and busbars

The conductor materials, operational current densities, and number of turns of the coils and busbars have been selected based on global optimisation of the lifetime cost of the magnet system, in combination with other systems in the machine, in particular the electrical distribution, power converters, and technical infrastructure. This

Table 3.5 General parameters for the sextupole correction circuits

Parameter	Unit	H orbit	V orbit	Skew quad
Strength, $B.l$	mTm	20	20	–
Strength, $G.l$	mT	–	–	600
Turns per pole	-	54-27	27	43
Peak current	A	8.3	14.3	9.9
Resistance per magnet	Ω	2.15	1.06	0.84
Peak voltage per magnet	V	17.8	15.2	8.4
Conductor dimensions (copper)	mm^2	3.2 x 1.6	3.2 x 1.6	3.2 x 1.6
Copper mass per magnet	kg	25.9	12.9	10.4

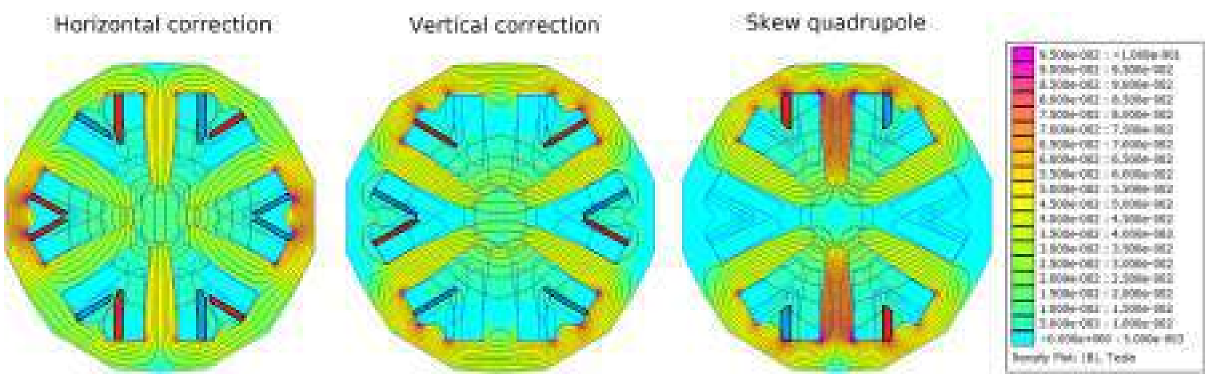


Fig. 3.4 Field maps of the correction circuits at peak correction fields. Left: horizontal orbit correction; middle: vertical orbit correction; right: skew quadrupole correction

optimisation has balanced the capital versus operational costs of the magnet system considering the powering needs and duration of each phase of the machine (from Z to $t\bar{t}$), the integration constraints and dissipated power of the cabling in the tunnel, and the integration of the power converters in the alcoves, as to minimise the total cost of all these systems over the lifetime of the machine. As a result, the quadrupole and sextupole coils use copper conductors since they require a larger current density, whereas the dipole busbars use aluminium. Since aluminium and copper cannot be cooled by water in a common cooling circuit due to galvanic corrosion, it is considered to cool the busbar with a 1 mm thick copper tube embedded in the aluminium bulk. This solution avoids the need for a dedicated demineralised water-cooling network for aluminium. The global optimisation tool will be further developed during the pre-TDR phase also to include the cooling network costs. More details on this global optimisation can be found in Sect. 3.8.1.

3.1.6 Supporting structures

SSS units The magnets in the short straight sections (SSS) - quadrupoles and sextupoles - are supported by a common girder where they are pre-aligned and fixed, to guarantee the stability of their relative positioning and ease the global alignment of the beam line elements in the tunnel. The pre-assembly of the SSS magnets is also necessary to install a common vacuum chamber across them and minimise the number of vacuum interconnections.

There are three versions of the Short Straight Sections (SSS), depending on whether they contain no sextupoles, one sextupole, or two. Two configurations are under consideration for the arc half-cell layout. In the first option, the lengths of the SSS girder and dipoles are adapted to the number of sextupoles in the arc half-cell, resulting in three different variations of dipole and SSS lengths. In the second option, all SSS girders are manufactured at a uniform length, corresponding to the longest version capable of housing two sextupoles. When fewer than two sextupoles are required, a short dipole of equivalent length replaces the missing sextupole.

The second option offers the advantage of standardising SSS and dipole lengths across the arcs, along with their support structures. This approach also provides greater flexibility in redistributing SSSs if optical adjustments are needed during different operational phases of the machine. However, it introduces the drawback of requiring additional interconnections for SSSs that do not contain two sextupoles, compared to the first option, leading to a slight reduction in the dipole filling factor.

Both options are technically feasible and will be evaluated in detail during the pre-TDR phase of the project, taking into account their functionality, machine performance, and associated costs.

Dipole units Similar considerations apply to the dipole assemblies as to the SSS units. They will be pre-assembled at the surface, incorporating their vacuum chambers and synchrotron radiation (SR) shielding blocks, before being transported, installed, and aligned in the tunnel as individual units.

The dipole supporting scheme must ensure both precise alignment functionality and the minimisation of magnet sag due to its weight and the additional mass of shielding blocks surrounding the SR absorbers, which are distributed approximately every five to six metres. This aspect is particularly critical, as the dipole magnets have a flat and elongated aspect ratio, resulting in relatively low mechanical inertia that makes them susceptible to deformation. Consequently, the supporting scheme must be designed to align with the longitudinal distribution of the SR shielding along the dipoles, ensuring structural stability and optimal performance.

More information on the supporting structures can be found in Sect. 3.10.

3.2 Vacuum system and electron cloud mitigation

3.2.1 Introduction

The FCC-ee vacuum system design is rather challenging due to its sheer size and the fact that it must cope with a synchrotron radiation (SR) environment that changes significantly depending on the beam energy.

The Z machine at 45.6 GeV is characterised by an SR spectrum with a critical energy of only 21 keV, while the highest energy $t\bar{t}$ machine at 182.5 GeV has a critical energy of 1.35 MeV. The Z machine has a very large beam current, around 1.4 A, leading to a significant photon-stimulated desorption (PSD) rate. Since nearly all SR photons are absorbed in a very thin layer of the vacuum chamber walls, they contribute locally to the PSD dynamic gas load.

The $t\bar{t}$ SR fan, on the other hand, penetrates deeply into the material of the vacuum chamber where it generates high-energy Compton showers, giant dipole resonance, and particle creation, necessitating a thorough analysis of the related radiation field in the tunnel. Efficient solutions must be implemented to mitigate detrimental effects on accelerator and tunnel components, particularly shielding cables and electronics in the tunnel, which has proven to be a challenging task.

The analysis and modelling carried out so far by the vacuum group have taken into account concerns raised by other groups, such as:

- Machine physics group (e.g., beam-stay clear aperture, impedance contributions of all vacuum components)
- Magnet group (e.g., integration of vacuum chamber cross section and SR shielding within the magnets' geometries)
- FLUKA team (e.g., SR shielding, radiation protection, and related R2E issues)
- Tunnel integration and logistics (e.g., total power dissipation in air and cooling water in the tunnel arcs)
- Cost estimation and machine installation planning

The beam parameters are chosen to maintain an SR power of 50 MW per beam across all beam energies. Consequently, the linear SR power in the arcs is approximately 650 W/m, regardless of beam energy.

This approach would also help contain high-energy Compton-scattered secondaries once the beam energy is increased to 182.5 GeV later in the experimental programme. Additionally, the associated synchrotron radiation (SR) power is concentrated on the absorbers rather than being distributed throughout the entire vacuum chamber, improving thermal management and overall system efficiency.

The design of the FCC-ee machines, including the full-energy booster, have provided valuable insights into the challenges ahead. In particular, the selection of suitable materials for the vacuum chamber and the adoption of a lumped SR absorber design have emerged as effective solutions to several critical issues related to vacuum performance and machine physics.

The following sections outline the proposed design and the analysis conducted thus far.

3.2.2 Pressure requirements

The FCC-ee is a powerful synchrotron radiation (SR) source, at all beam energies. From the point of view of the photon-stimulated desorption (PSD) gas load, the Z machine is the most challenging to deal with, as it has the largest beam current. Basically, any photon in the Z SR spectrum below its critical energy (i.e., 91% of the total SR photon flux) can generate photoelectrons, which are emitted within a very thin layer of the internal surface of the vacuum chamber.

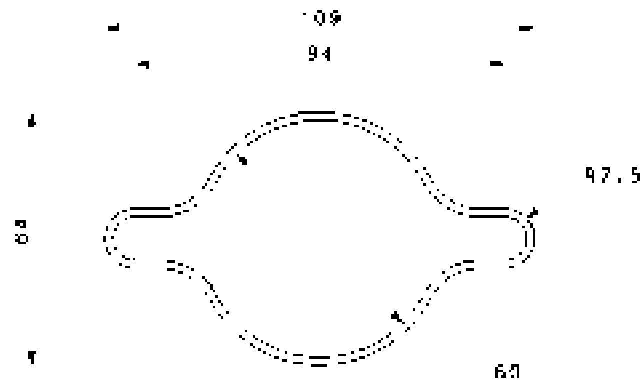


Fig. 3.5 Cross section of the FCC-ee arc vacuum chamber with winglets

It is therefore necessary to maximise the pumping efficiency and minimise the PSD gas load, while finding ways to speed up the vacuum conditioning as much as possible, so that the vacuum quickly becomes good enough to store nominal currents at the Z energy. The photoelectrons are very efficient at desorbing molecules inside the vacuum and contribute to the electron cloud in the positron ring.

The pressure requirements, which stem mainly from beam-gas scattering arguments, mean that the vacuum lifetime, τ_{vac}, should be much longer than the lifetimes of all other effects, such as Bhabha scattering, collisions burn up, beam-thermal photon scattering, etc.

Extensive experience with similar SR-dominated storage rings and colliders, e.g., SuperKEKB and light sources, shows that an average pressure in the low 10^{-9} mbar range, nitrogen-equivalent, should give a τ_{vac} of several tens of hours.

3.2.3 Physical aperture requirements

Based on geometric impedance arguments, a circular cross section of the vacuum chamber was requested at the beginning of the FCC-ee study. The internal diameter compatible with the design of the magnets and other machine components and diagnostics had initially been set at 70 mm. Later in the study, a reduction of the inner diameter (ID) of the magnet yokes became necessary, and the ID of the vacuum chamber was reduced to 60 mm.

The application of non-evaporable getter (NEG) coating makes this ID reduction irrelevant for vacuum since NEG coatings generate a rather uniform distributed pumping, contrary to a lumped pumping design, which would need maximisation of the vacuum chamber conductance. A reduction from 70 to 60 mm would mean a 37% loss of conductance loss (ratio of IDs cubed). All design and modelling are therefore based on a 60 mm ID vacuum chamber.

The vacuum chamber is made of oxygen-free silver-bearing (OFS) copper and can be extruded up to 12 m. The cross section is shown in Fig. 3.5. The chamber has two appendages, called winglets, in the horizontal plane to accommodate short, localised synchrotron radiation absorbers (SRAs) and pumping slots. These do not protrude inside the circular part of the chamber.

3.2.4 Pumping system

NEG-coating will be applied throughout the vacuum chamber. There have been tests at a KEK Photon Factory beamline of the effectiveness of 'thin' NEG-coatings. It was found that the NEG-coating is still capable of being fully activated after 10 cycles of saturation and re-activation [238] for thicknesses down to 200 nm. For comparison, the standard NEG-coating thickness of the long straight sections of the LHC is 2 µm. The reduction to 200 nm is compatible with requirements of the resistive-wall impedance.

One more advantage of the application of NEG-coating is that ∼90% of its PSD outgassing comprises H_2, and the favourable effect on the beam-gas scattering of a dominant H_2 becomes important.

The modelling and analysis carried out throughout the FCC study period have demonstrated that the application of NEG-coating to 100% of the vacuum chamber's internal surface will drastically reduce the need for lumped pumps, therefore minimising the number and length of the expensive control and power cables for such pumps.

However, a few lumped pumps are needed every 30-50 m to pump non-getterable gases (methane and inert gases such as He, Ar and Kr), although CH_4 is effectively pumped by beam ionisation as soon as e^- or e^+ are injected. The lumped pumps, which have been identified as suitable, are integrated NEG-ion pumps. The readout of the 12 l/s ion pump will be used to get an estimate of the pressure at the pump's location by conversion of its ion-pump current. This methodology is both effective and current, enabling the early detection of developing leaks, which are typically identified through changes in pressure, particularly under static vacuum conditions where no

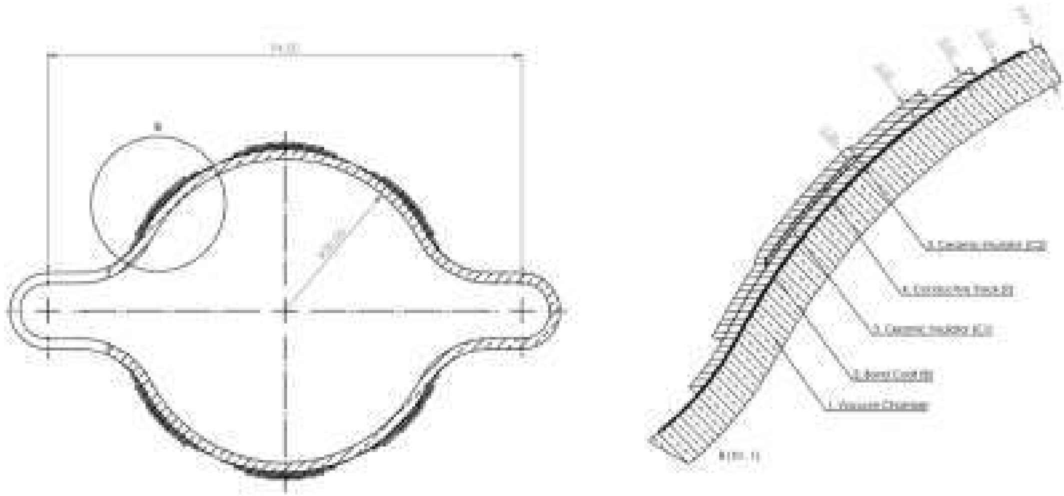


Fig. 3.6 Bake-out system based on cold-sprayed conductive tracks

beam is stored. This is a crucial operational consideration, as locating leaks in a machine as large as the FCC-ee can be challenging and time-consuming, as previously experienced during LEP operation. By facilitating early leak detection, this approach helps to minimise machine downtime and improve overall operational efficiency.

3.2.5 NEG-coating

As mentioned, detailed measurements have proved that a ‘thin’ NEG-coating can be envisaged for the FCC-ee collider rings. A thickness of 200 nm is deemed ideal [239].

The major drawback of the NEG-coating solution is that a reliable, radiation-resistant, in-situ bake-out system is needed. Prototyping of a solution based on a thin titanium track sandwiched between two plasma-sprayed ceramic insulation layers (see Fig. 3.6), gave a rather uniform vacuum chamber temperature profile and reasonable electric power needs. The latter mainly depends on the efficiency of the radiation-resistant thermal insulation layer, which is under study now. Cost-efficient optimisation of this heating system is underway.

The detailed design of horizontal NEG-coating benches has not yet been done. However, experience with a similar coating setup developed for the HL-LHC stand-alone magnets provides confidence that such a system can be implemented. The proposed approach involves a horizontally moving carriage equipped with a permanent magnet magnetron trap, which would travel along the axis of the chambers, up to 12 m in length, depositing NEG coating in localised sections of approximately 20 cm at a time.

Transfer of this CERN-developed technology to industry for mass production of the two 91 km rings will be necessary.

3.2.6 Vacuum profiles

Extensive modelling of the pressure profile along a representative length of the FCC-ee arcs has been carried out. The comparison between a NEG-coating-based solution and one based on lumped pumps shows that the former is much more efficient at reducing the average pressure along the arcs, and it conditions a long beam-gas scattering lifetime faster than the latter. The benefits of using the SRA and the NEG coatings can be seen in Figs. 3.7 and 3.8.

Extensive data from existing light sources, some with 100% NEG-coating (MAX-IV and SIRIUS) and some without NEG-coating, makes it clear that NEG-coating allows an almost immediate availability of long vacuum lifetimes, at least for the Z energy machine, which is the most demanding in vacuum terms.

3.2.7 Synchrotron radiation absorbers (SRA)

The current design of the SRA is displayed in Fig. 3.9. It is a 390 mm long copper component welded into a dedicated aperture in the vacuum chamber. It needs to be actively cooled by specific water-cooling circuits integrated in the absorber.

The channels have a twisted tape design, see Fig. 3.10, that significantly improves cooling capacity by enhancing turbulence mechanisms.

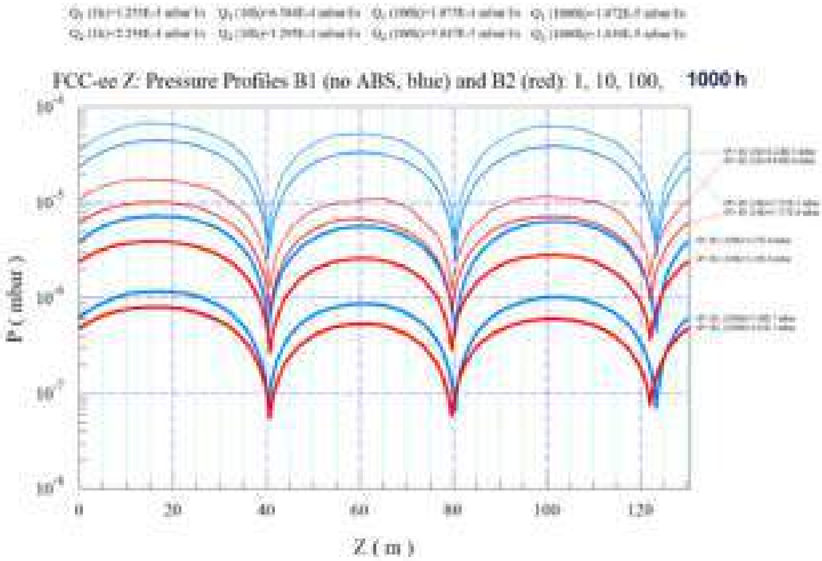


Fig. 3.7 The pressure profiles assuming no NEG-coating are shown for different vacuum conditioning beam doses of 1, 10, 100, and 1000 Ah. One of the two beams has lumped SRAs, the other one does not. It is evident that for each beam dose, the pressure profile for the case with SRAs gives a lower pressure and, therefore, an advantage in terms of vacuum commissioning time

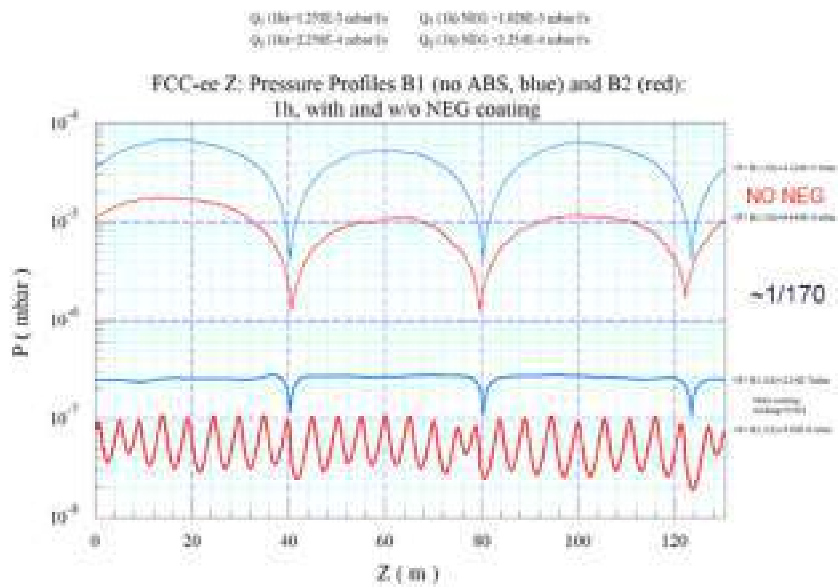


Fig. 3.8 The pressure profiles for the two rings, with and without SRAs, are shown here for the 1 Ah beam conditioning dose, i.e., the initial condition of the rings. In this case, the two sets of curves allow the comparison of adding NEG-coating to the two rings. The corresponding pressure curves drop by approximately two orders of magnitude, greatly shortening the vacuum commissioning time

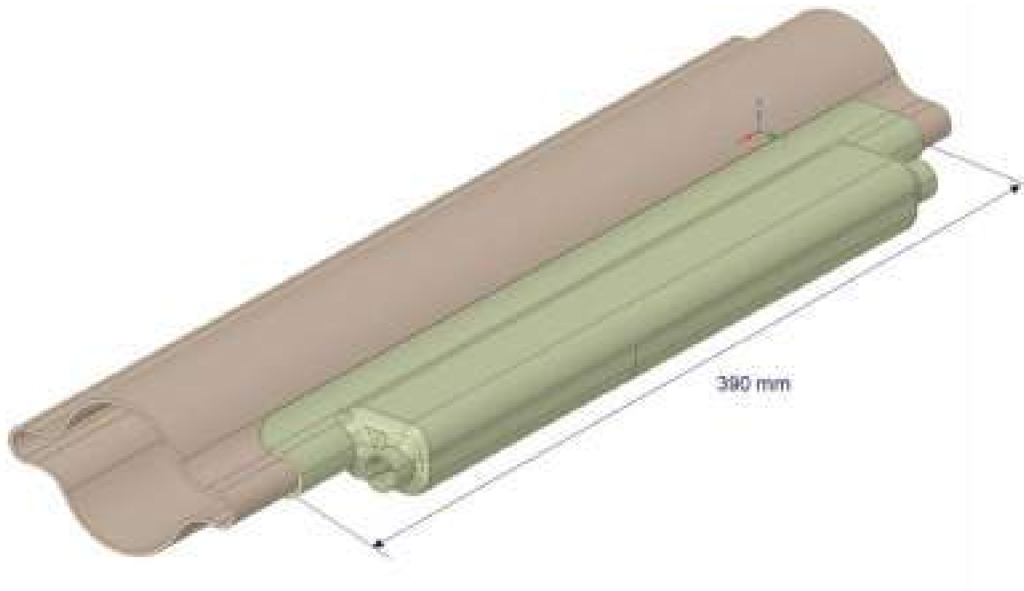
The synchrotron radiation absorbers (SRA) are produced using laser powder bed fusion (LPBF) additive manufacturing technology. This approach offers the advantage of enabling the fabrication of intricate internal structures, such as the complex twisted-tape design, which would be more time-consuming and less refined if manufactured using traditional methods. Copper materials produced through 3D printing are currently being qualified for ultra-high vacuum (UHV) applications. A green laser machine is employed to deposit copper alloy layer by layer, ensuring negligible degradation of its mechanical, thermal, and electrical properties. New machines with lower energy requirements and smaller beam wavelengths are entering the market, promising a more cost-effective and energy-efficient solution.

A promising candidate for the absorber material is the copper alloy CuCrZr, which is undergoing detailed thermal and mechanical testing to assess its performance and suitability for this application.

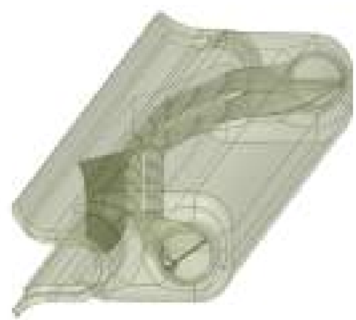
Both analytical and numerical analyses are being conducted to support the design of the synchrotron radiation absorber, particularly in relation to the twisted-tape cooling channels within it. The design is based on implicit formulations by Manglik and Bergles [240], which show strong agreement with experimental observations.

The geometric and fluid dynamics parameters for the internal cooling channels are shown in Table 3.6.

The absorbers intercept a high heat load from SR on their slanted surface. The temperature must be maintained below safety levels to ensure mechanical integrity and prevent water phase transitions. However, this also leads to an increased pressure drop, which requires design optimisation. The heat intercepted by the absorbers is not the same around the collider ring. The current worst-case scenario indicates a total power of 4471 W and a peak



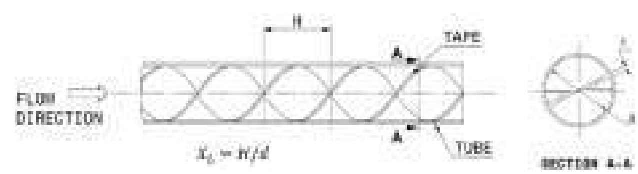
(a)



(b) (c)

Fig. 3.9 (a) Synchrotron radiation absorber integrated in the vacuum chamber, (b) sawtooth profile highlighted, and (c) cooling channels with twisted tape

Fig. 3.10 Twisted-tape design of the absorber channels



power density of 74.6 W/mm^2. SR strikes a (<2 mm wide) strip horizontally across the middle of the absorber surface, see Fig. 3.11. This refers to the 91 GeV centre-of-mass machine. For the $t\bar{t}$ machine configuration, the total power remains unchanged; however, the power density is expected to increase, and the strip width to decrease. Due to the Compton effect, the power density transitions from a surface phenomenon to a volumetric distribution, potentially resulting in an equivalent surface density.

To accurately determine the volumetric power distribution, detailed simulations using FLUKA are required, as Synrad lacks the capability to model volumetric effects.

The synchrotron radiation (SR) power density peak is not constant but decreases with each successive sawtooth, as shown in Fig. 3.12. For the thermo-mechanical analysis, the SR power density corresponding to the highest peak (from the first tooth) is used. This conservative assumption accounts for fewer sawtooth impacts by SR than would occur in reality as the total power remains the same, i.e., 4471 W.

Table 3.6 Table of parameters and data for each absorber channel

Parameter	Data per absorber channel
d	7 mm
H	0.5 mm
v	30 mm
Re	3 m/s
m	2.1×10^4
h	115 g/s
ΔP	0.2 bar

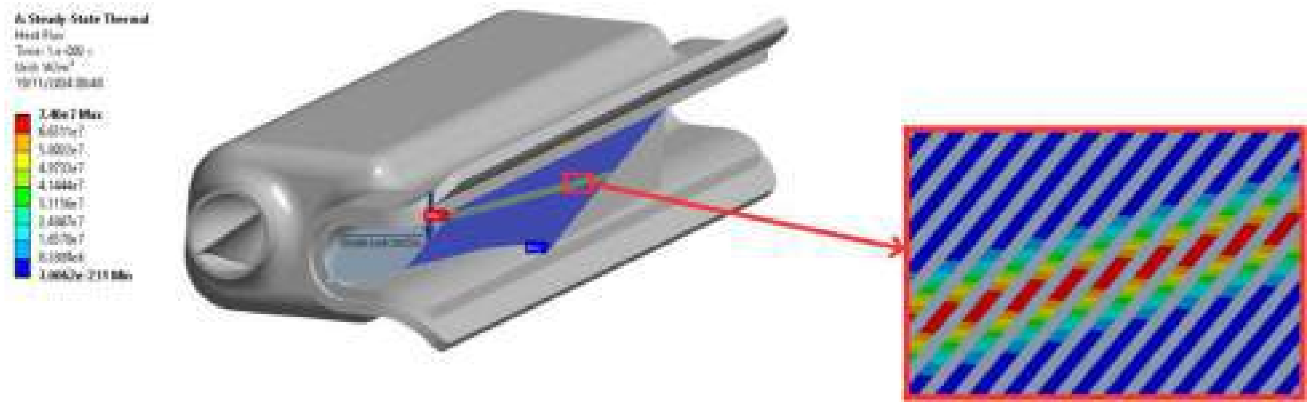
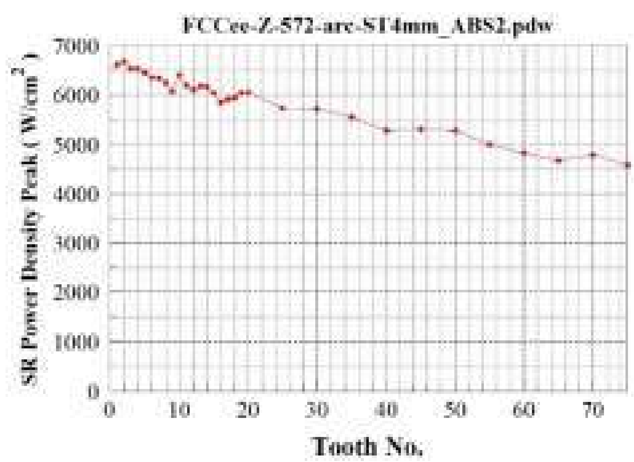


Fig. 3.11 Synchrotron radiation strip in the absorber. The sawtooth structure alternates impacts, with every other side of the tooth being struck, as highlighted in the red box

Fig. 3.12 The SR power density peak along the tooth of the SRA



The temperature distribution of the absorber due to SR power is shown in Fig. 3.13. The maximum temperature is 219 °C.

Sawtooth profile Introducing a sawtooth profile on the face of the SRA modifies the photon reflection and, thereby, potentially reduces the fraction of photons which, after reflections, impinge on the central circular part of the vacuum chamber. Two cases, with and without a sawtooth profile on the SRA faces, have been compared, the images in Fig. 3.14 show the result, side by side, and the selection of facets relevant to the photoelectron emission. The sawtooth case (on the left) decreases the amount of SR photons absorbed by the circular part of the dipole vacuum chamber segment (985 cm long) by 81%.

It can be seen that the sawtooth design removes the two reflected photon spots (in green-blue colour) near the axis of the vacuum chamber, on the lower part of it.

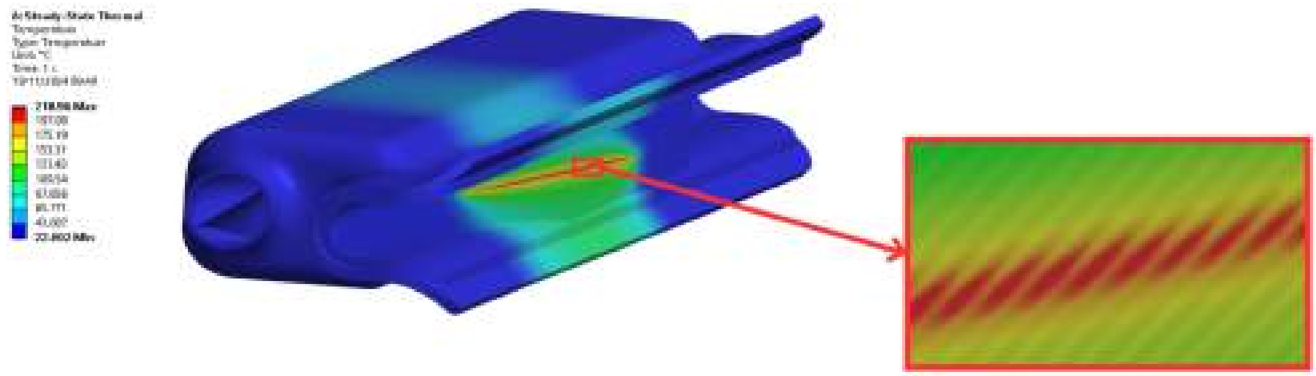
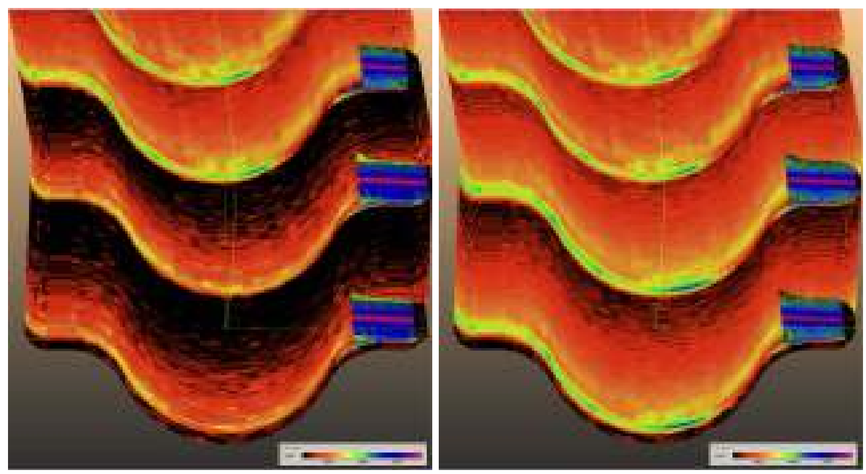


Fig. 3.13 Temperature distribution of the SRA with 2 cooling channels

Fig. 3.14 The effect of sawtooth on synchrotron radiation power density. (a) Case with 2 SRA and sawtooth profiles and (b) Case with 'regular' SRA and one inclined surface



(a) Case with 2 SRA with sawtooth profiles (b) Case with "regular" SRA, one inclined surface

Without sawtooth, the two spots would generate primary photoelectron, which would be trapped along the vertical field lines along the dipole magnet and perturb the stored beam.

The trajectory of the beam is shown by the curved yellow line. Although these simulations had only 2 SRA with sawtooth out of the 26 of the whole arc model (130 m-long), it is concluded that the introduction of the sawtooth profile on the inclined surface of the SRA would be beneficial for a reduction of the primary photoelectrons. More refined simulations will be carried out shortly.

An optimisation for the position of the cooling channels was performed in a 2D approximation with the aim of lowering the temperature of the internal cooling channels. To this end, the SR power distribution in a section perpendicular to the horizontal mid-plane was divided into small regions equal to the width of the sawtooth, as illustrated in Fig. 3.15.

A third cooling channel is beneficial to lower the temperature of the internal channels and, in general, of the whole absorber, as shown in Fig. 3.16. The temperature of the internal surface of the cooling channels, presented in Fig. 3.17, always stays below 70 °C.

The Von Mises stress due to SR heat load is shown in Fig. 3.18. The maximum stress is 285 MPa on the sawtooth receiving the highest SR power density. These values are below the elastic limit of the copper alloy and are deemed safe. However, the material properties of the copper alloy must be measured experimentally to validate the results of the thermal and mechanical simulations.

The cooling layout for the vacuum chamber in the half arc cell is illustrated in Fig. 3.19. A single cooling channel serves the vacuum chamber for the magnets on the girder (quadrupoles and sextupoles), which then splits into two channels for the dipole magnets.

The cooling channel on the opposite side of the absorbers ensures an even temperature distribution around the absorber area, minimising differential deformations. To enhance cooling efficiency and achieve a more uniform outlet temperature and to equilibrate pressure drop, the two cooling circuits cross over between the dipoles before recombining at the water outlet.

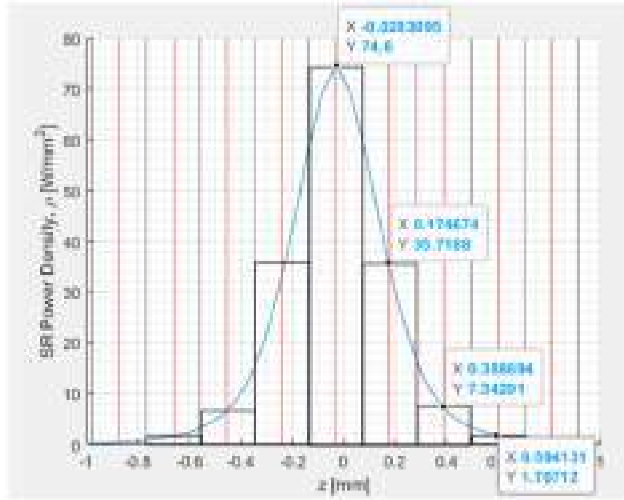


Fig. 3.15 Power density distribution in the absorber, plotted in a section perpendicular to the mid-plane. The distribution is divided into seven regions, each 0.23 mm wide, with constant power density

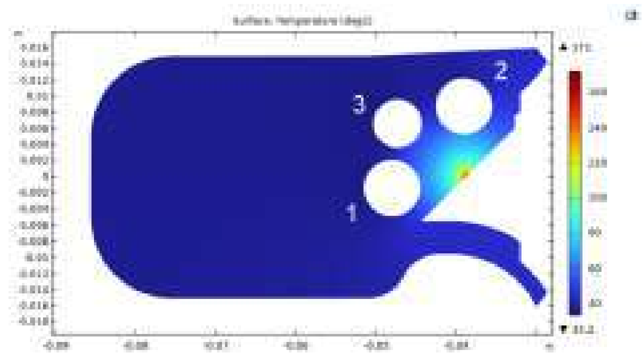


Fig. 3.16 Cross section of the SRA temperature distribution with 3 cooling channels

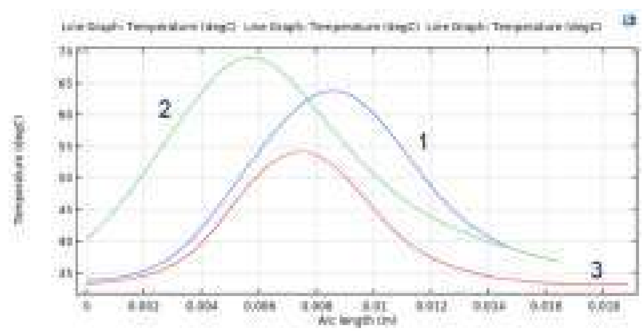


Fig. 3.17 Temperature of the internal surface of the cooling channels of the SRA. These are numbered as in Fig. 3.16

The maximum pressure difference between the inlet and outlet of the cooling line should be around 2-3 bar, and the inlet water temperature is around 27 °C (EN/CV inputs). Considering a conservative case accounting for three absorbers per vacuum chamber (12 m long) and the total resistive losses [241] (150 W/m), total power of about 31 kW is generated per half arc cell, i.e., SRA = (4.5 kW × 6) + impedance losses = (150 W/m×28 m). The flow rate needed for the SRA would be 115 g/s×3 = 345 g/s. Considering the parallel configuration of the two cooling tubes, the combined mass flow rate would be 690 g/s, leading to an average temperature difference of about 11 °C between the inlet and outlet.

The pressure drop along the parallel smooth channel along the 12 m long vacuum chamber is 0.25 bar for an internal diameter of 14 mm, without considering bends. The cooling channel on the absorber side incurs a pressure drop of 0.2 bar per absorber, resulting in a total pressure drop of 0.6 bar for all three absorbers. The theoretical pressure drop in the dipole would then be 0.85 bar. Considering all the fittings and bends, a pressure drop of 1.5/2 bars from the inlet to the outlet of the half arc cell is expected.

Interconnection modules, shown in Fig. 3.20, are implemented to cope with the thermal expansion of the vacuum chambers during bakeout, NEG activation thermal cycles, and beam operation. These modules ensure that any resulting transversal misalignments of magnets and BPMs stay within the mechanical alignment tolerances. To

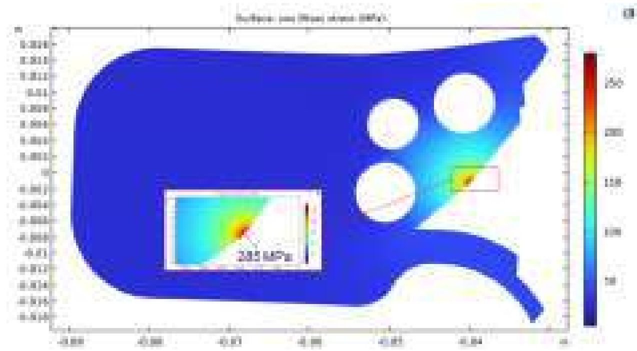


Fig. 3.18 Von Mises stress distribution of the SRA

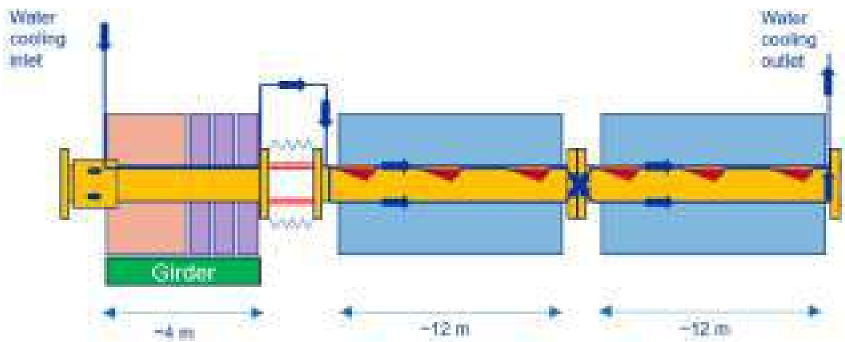


Fig. 3.19 The vacuum chamber cooling layout for the arc half cell

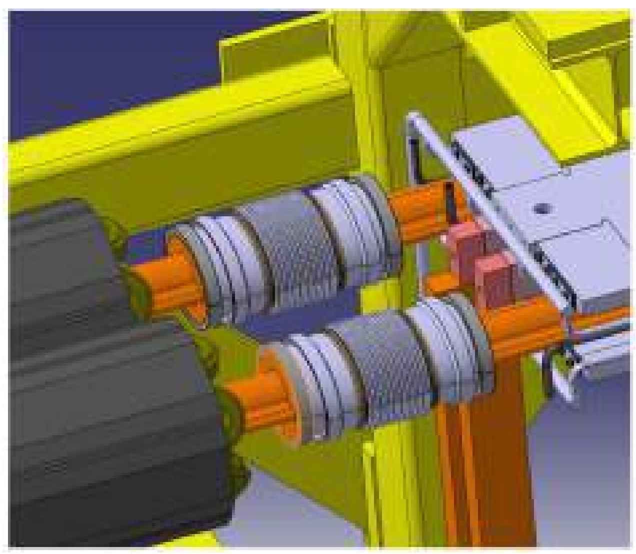


Fig. 3.20 Interconnection modules

reduce the quantity of these critical assemblies, interconnection modules are placed only on either side of the quadrupole-sextupole magnet girder. This configuration minimises the mechanical coupling between the dipole chambers and the quadrupole chamber integrating the BPM. An axial stroke of 65 mm is required, and a 3 mm transverse offset has been chosen as a design requirement.

The interconnection modules are dismountable and are based on an external vacuum enclosure and a smooth internal RF transition to ensure electrical continuity for the image current, avoiding higher order modes. The vacuum enclosure integrates a thin-walled hydroformed bellows expansion joint which has an axial and lateral stiffness of about 10 N/mm. A minimum length of 150 mm is needed for the bellows. Oval flanges are integrated on the module and chamber extremities and the leak tight connections are achieved by shape memory alloy rings and soft gaskets. Significant beam induced heat loads are generated in the module (a few 100 s W) and an appropriate robust RF transition will be designed. Various options are considered for the bellows shielding. The first one is based on a deformable RF bridge. The concept is based on a thin bridge attached to the adjacent chamber extremities, stretched and almost straight in operating conditions. This solution is used in LHC and

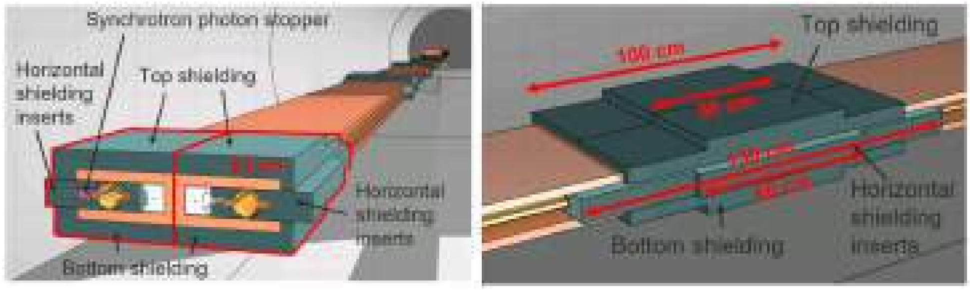


Fig. 3.21 Preliminary conceptual radiation shielding design for the collider dipoles in the FCC-ee arcs. The shielding is assumed to be made of antimonial lead and has a weight of about 400 kg per synchrotron radiation absorber

HL-LHC. The second solution extends the technical solution used at superKEK and is based on a comb design. A third one is being developed at CERN. In this solution, the shielding of the bellows is achieved by robust sliding RF fingers. A set of machined copper parts is used to ensure a smooth transition between the vacuum chamber cross-section and the oval RF shielding.

3.3 Radiation shielding

3.3.1 Dipole shielding

The emission of synchrotron radiation by the stored electron and positron beams in the collider can have a significant impact on machine components and other equipment in the tunnel (see Sect. 1.9). A dedicated shielding must be installed on the dipoles, tightly enclosing the synchrotron radiation absorbers described in Sect. 3.2. A preliminary conceptual shielding design for the collider arcs is shown in Fig. 3.21. An initial optimisation of the shielding geometry has been performed, but further iterations are required in the technical design phase. Several hundred kilograms of shielding material are needed for each synchrotron radiation absorber in order to reduce the ionising dose in the tunnel sufficiently. The design of the shielding and its integration entails many technical challenges, which require detailed engineering studies. This section highlights some main design considerations.

The selection of the shielding material is a trade-off between shielding efficiency, raw material costs, material availability in the industry, engineering aspects (fabrication, machining), and radiological (operational and waste) considerations. High-density materials such as tungsten heavy alloys (17–18.5 g/cm^3) are very efficient in absorbing photons. However, the costs are prohibitive when considering the large number of shielding units required. Lead-based alloys are less dense and, therefore, require a larger shielding volume, but are available at a fraction of the cost. The current baseline material for the dipole shielding is based on a lead-antimony alloy, which is commonly used as a shielding material for photons. The antimony content is needed for structural reasons; it hardens the material, increasing its mechanical stability and machinability. Lead-antimony has good corrosion resistance, which is an important factor in high-radiation environments. While lead alloys with different antimony content are available in the industry, an antimony fraction between 6 and 8% is considered sufficient for dipole shielding. The resulting material density of such a binary alloy (10.88 g/cm^3) is only slightly reduced compared to pure lead (11.35 g/cm^3). The shielding may require a casing or coating to enable safe handling during installation or maintenance work. Although lead antimony seems to be a good candidate material, the final material selection for the shielding will be confirmed in the technical design phase.

The anticipated activation of the shielding material is a key factor in its life cycle and requires a thorough assessment. Radionuclide production within the shielding is primarily driven by neutrons generated from photo-nuclear interactions, particularly in the synchrotron radiation absorbers. Initial studies indicate that neutron production due to synchrotron radiation is expected to be minimal up to ZH operation, as photon energies remain largely below the (γ,n) threshold. However, a significant neutron flux is expected during $\mathrm{t\bar{t}}$ operation, as the synchrotron photon spectrum extends beyond the giant dipole resonance of most materials. A preliminary radiological assessment of antimonial lead as a shielding material suggests that it can be considered non-radioactive after a cool-down period of one to two years following $\mathrm{t\bar{t}}$ operation, with residual activity initially dominated by the antimony content. Further studies are required to evaluate potential contributions from other radiation sources, particularly beam-gas scattering, which can lead to shielding activation at all beam energies due to the emission of Bremsstrahlung photons with significantly higher energies than synchrotron radiation.

The current shielding configuration represents only a preliminary conceptual design and must be refined into a realistic technical solution using state-of-the-art engineering practices. Given that the collider ring requires more than 20,000 shielding units, a careful balance between design optimisation and cost efficiency is essential. Assuming 20 synchrotron radiation absorbers per FODO cell for ZH and $\mathrm{t\bar{t}}$ operation, and an estimated shielding weight of 400 kg per absorber, the total shielding material required for the arcs amounts to approximately, 10,400 tons, with an additional 1000 tons needed for the experiment insertions. The sheer scale of the raw material required

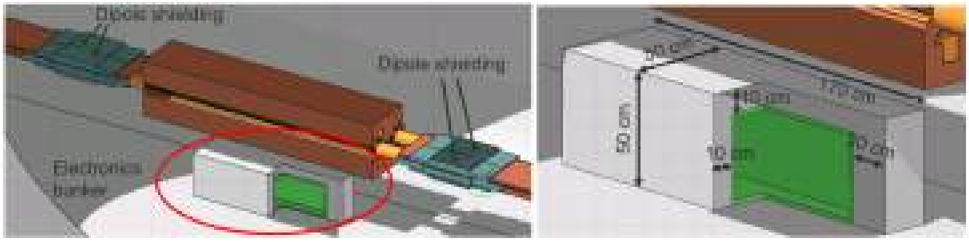


Fig. 3.22 Possible electronics bunker (red circle) near the lattice quadrupoles in the FCC-ee arcs. In this very first design, the bunker is assumed to be made of concrete (grey walls) and borated polyethylene (green sheets on the inside). The dimensions shown have to be revised once the number and size of the electronics racks have been confirmed

introduces a significant risk factor in terms of procurement, necessitating a well-defined strategic sourcing plan. Furthermore, a full life cycle assessment must be conducted to explore potential reuse options for the shielding material following the decommissioning of the FCC-ee. The material could either be reintegrated into the market or repurposed for use in other CERN facilities.

Integrating the shielding is a complex task and requires a coordinated design effort for the systems concerned (shielding, vacuum chambers, synchrotron radiation absorbers, and magnets). Direct contact between shielding and vacuum system components must be avoided, since the shielding would act as a heat sink during the bake-out of the vacuum chambers. This requires a careful assessment of tolerances and alignment requirements, as well as a detailed study of the assembly procedure for all components. Considering the weight of the shielding (about 4 tons per 20 m dipole), the mechanical design of the dipole and its supporting scheme needs to be reassessed in order to cope with the additional load generated by the shielding. Given the complexity of the shielding integration and assembly, a staged shielding approach for different operation modes is not favoured.

Another important aspect of the shielding design is the heat load management and the associated structural stability at higher temperatures. The shielding absorbs about 20% of the synchrotron radiation power during ZH and $t\bar{t}$ operation. (see Table 1.20).

This amounts to 20 MW for the full ring, or 2.5 MW per arc, which has to be dissipated by a dedicated cooling circuit embedded in the horizontal shielding inserts. For a single shielding element, the power load can reach up to several hundreds of Watt and could give rise to higher than tolerable peak temperature (especially due to the low melting point of Pb-alloys). Detailed energy deposition and thermo-mechanical simulations, along with associated system engineering considerations, are essential for the design optimisation of shielding and service system routing, circuit dimensioning, and defining the corresponding infrastructure requirements.

3.3.2 Electronics bunker

A conceptual design for a possible electronics bunker has been devised (see Fig. 3.22), in order to reduce radiation levels for electronics. In this very first design, the bunker is assumed to be made of 10–20 cm-thick concrete walls, which are covered on the inside by borated polyethylene sheets. The latter are needed for moderating and capturing neutrons. The concrete walls can also be replaced by other materials, which can affect the required wall thickness. The actual bunker size will depend on the final space requirements for electronics racks. The outer dimensions shown in Fig. 3.22 need to be adapted once a complete inventory of the required racks has been established. It is presently assumed that one such bunker is needed per arc quadrupole in the collider, which amounts to more than 2800 units. The bunkers might also be needed in the insertion regions.

The technical implementation of such a bunker remains to be studied. In particular, the integration of the bunker inside or near the quadrupole girder has to be assessed. Another important aspect is the accessibility of electronics in the event of an intervention. The racks need to be accessible without the need of heavy lifting equipment in case an electronics card has to be exchanged. Furthermore, a suitable ventilation system has to be designed for the bunkers to extract the heat generated by the systems inside the bunker and to have precise temperature control.

3.4 Radio frequency system layout, configurations and parameters

3.4.1 Introduction

The superconducting radio frequency (SRF) system of FCC-ee [13] accelerates two beams of particles circulating in opposite directions. The system is designed to provide 50 MW of RF power in continuous wave (CW) to each beam in order to compensate synchrotron radiation (SR) losses.

Table 3.7 Main RF-related FCC-ee parameters

Modes	Energy [GeV]	Current [mA]	RF Voltage [GV]
Z	45.6	1292	0.089
WW	80.0	135	1.049
ZH	120.0	26.8	2.098
$t\bar{t}$	182.5	5	11.300

Table 3.8 Evolution of FCC-ee collider RF system layout

Operating point		Z	WW	ZH	$t\bar{t}$
Conceptual design report					
RF frequency	[MHz]	400			400/800
Common RF system for two beams		no			yes
Number of cavities		104		272	272/372
Number of cells per cavity		1	4		4/5
RF power per cavity	[kW]	962		368	149/155
Feasibility study mid-term report					
RF frequency	[MHz]	400			400/800
Common RF system for two beams		no		yes	
Number of cavities		112	264	264	264/488
Number of cells per cavity		1	2		2/5
RF power per cavity	[kW]	901	378	382	78/163
Feasibility study final report					
RF frequency	[MHz]	400			400/800
Common RF system for two beams		no		yes	
Number of cavities		264			264/408
Number of cells per cavity		2			2/6
RF power per cavity	[kW]	380			78/195

Beam currents and required RF voltages for four operating points are summarised in Table 3.7. At the Z operating mode the beam current of 1.3 A is very high and the total RF voltage is only about 100 MV. When switching to the W and Higgs operating points, the beam currents are reduced by one order of magnitude and are 135 mA and 26.7 mA respectively, while the total RF voltage is ten times higher, at 1.05 and 2.1 GV. In the $t\bar{t}$ mode the beam energy is significantly increased (182.5 GeV). The beam current and RF voltage vary again by one order of magnitude and are 5 mA and 11.3 GV making the accelerator a very high gradient machine. The collider RF system requires a transverse feedback system to cure coupled bunch transverse instabilities, as described in Sect. 1.4. Strip line kickers operating at a multiple of the bunch repetition frequency are an obvious choice. For the collider, the function of depolariser and transverse feedback can be combined as outlined in Sect. 1.7.

The SRF system will be located in a single straight section at point PH, while the one for the booster will be grouped in point PL. The requirement to locate all the RF at a single location rather than being more distributed around the ring is driven by the need for extremely precise centre-of-mass energy calibration at the Z. This localisation also has the benefit of consolidating the cryogenics, electrical distribution, and RF maintenance. The following sections describe the main aspects of the RF system and important changes since the CDR and mid-term report.

3.4.2 Baseline FCC-ee collider SRF system layout

Due to the large span in beam current and RF voltage of the four FCC-ee operating modes, it is very challenging to design a unique RF system suitable for all the operating points. Nevertheless, several steps were performed towards a more compact and efficient solution.

The main parameters of the RF system described in CDR [13] are summarised in Table 3.8. For the Z operating point only, 1-cell elliptical cavities at 400 MHz with low shunt impedance were foreseen, with a cavity RF shape

Table 3.9 Main RF parameters of the FCC collider

Parameters	Z	W	ZH	$t\bar{t}$	
Common RF system for two beams	no	no	yes	yes	
RPO	yes	no	no	no	
Total RF voltage [MV]	89	1049	2098	2098	9202
Beam current [mA]	1283	135	53.6	10	
RF frequency [MHz]	400.79			400.79	801.58
Operating temperature [K]	4.5			4.5	2
Number of cells per cavity	2			2	6
Quality factor Q_0	2.7×10^9			2.7×10^9	3×10^{10}
Cavity voltage [MV]	7.95			7.95	22.5
Accelerating gradient E_{acc} [MV/m]	10.6			10.6	20.1
RF power per cavity [kW]	380			78	195
Coupling factor Q_L	9.2×10^5			4.5×10^6	4.1×10^6
Number of cryomodules	66			66	102
Number of cavities	264			264	408

carefully optimised to minimise the higher-order mode (HOM) power. The 4-cell cavities were considered for WW and ZH operating points due to significantly higher RF voltages and lower beam currents. Thanks to the small number of bunches required for the highest energy operating point ($t\bar{t}$), it was assumed that there is a common RF system for both electron and positron beams that reuses all 400 MHz 4-cell cavities complemented by more compact 800 MHz 5-cell cavities [242].

The main RF system changes in the mid-term report concerned WW and ZH operating points. The first considerations of 2-cell cavity scenario were described in Ref. [243] and highlighted a strong HOM damping efficiency compared to the 4-cell designs while still permitting a moderate accelerating gradient. On that basis and due to the increased RF voltage requirements for the WW operating point, 2-cell cavities were chosen, and a common RF system for the ZH operating point was also adopted. This led to an increased number of high-gradient 800 MHz 5-cell cavities for the $t\bar{t}$ operating point.

Two additional modifications led to the present baseline RF system. The 2-cell cavities were also adopted for the Z operating point requiring the reverse phase operation (RPO) mode [244] discussed in the following section. In addition, 6-cell cavities at 800 MHz have been proposed instead of 5-cell cavities at the $t\bar{t}$ operating point, leading to a significant reduction of the total number of cryomodules thus a reduction of the investment costs. The main RF parameters for the collider are summarised in Table 3.9.

3.4.3 Reverse phase operation

The optimal cavity detuning, $\Delta f_{\mathrm{opt}} = f_0 - f_{\mathrm{RF}}$, and optimal quality factor, $Q_{L,\mathrm{opt}}$, are commonly used to minimise RF power requirements in high-current synchrotrons. Assuming 132 2-cell cavities for the Z operating point, the lowest RF voltage per cavity, $V_{\mathrm{cav}} \approx 0.7$ MV results in $\Delta f_{\mathrm{opt}} \approx -70$ kHz and $Q_{L,\mathrm{opt}} \approx 5 \times 10^3$. Both are extremely difficult to achieve because of the enhancement of longitudinal coupled-bunch instabilities due to fundamental mode (FM) modulations of bunch-by-bunch parameters due to transient beam loading, as well as increased critical fields in a fundamental power coupler (FPC). An alternative approach, the reverse phase operation (RPO) mode [244] was studied for the FCC RF system to overcome these challenges partially. The RPO was originally developed and tested in KEKB for various scenarios [244–246] and was adopted as a baseline solution for the electron storage ring of the Electron-Ion Collider (EIC) [247]. It is based on introducing groups of focusing and defocusing cavities. They are de-phased with respect to the reference phase and provide accelerating voltage at the beam phase, adding up to the required total RF voltage as illustrated in Fig. 3.23. In this case, V_{cav} can be chosen to be the same for the WW and ZH operating points, resulting in a common optimal quality factor for three modes given by:

$$Q_{L,\mathrm{opt}} = \frac{V_{\mathrm{cav}}^2 N_{\mathrm{cav}}}{2 P_{\mathrm{SR}} (R/Q)}. \tag{3.1}$$

Here N_{cav} is the total number of cavities, P_{SR} is the synchrotron radiation power, and (R/Q) is the ratio of the shunt impedance to the quality factor of the cavity FM expressed in circuit ohm. Although this simplifies the

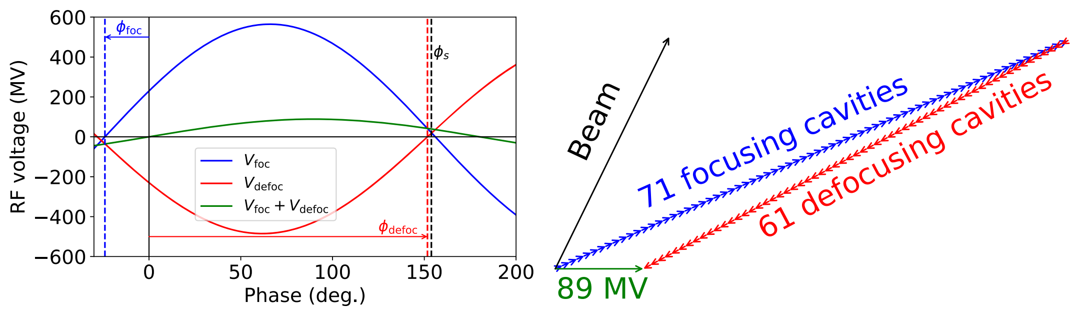


Fig. 3.23 RF waves (left) and phasors (right) for the RPO mode

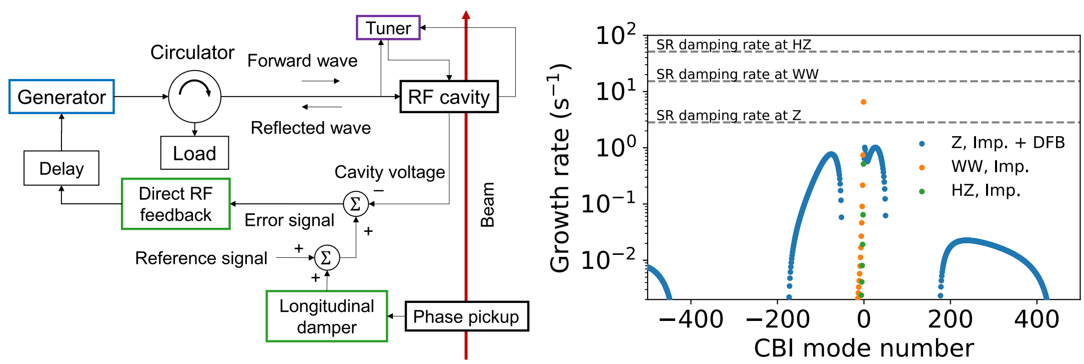


Fig. 3.24 Simplified block diagram of the LLRF system for the FCC-ee 400 MHz RF system (left) and Growth rates of longitudinal coupled bunch instabilities due to fundamental cavity impedance (right)

fundamental power coupler design, the first drawback is that the total RF voltage can only be changed in discrete steps of $N_{\mathrm{foc}} - N_{\mathrm{defoc}}$, (see, e.g., Ref. [248]),

$$V_{\mathrm{RF}} = \frac{U_0}{e}\sqrt{1 + \left(1 - \frac{e^2 N_{\mathrm{cav}}^2 V_{\mathrm{cav}}^2}{U_0^2}\right)\frac{(N_{\mathrm{foc}} - N_{\mathrm{defoc}})^2}{N_{\mathrm{cav}}^2}}, \tag{3.2}$$

where U_0 is the energy loss per turn due to synchrotron radiation. Therefore, the RF voltage has been increased from 79 to 89 MV, which assumes $N_{\mathrm{foc}} = 71$ and $N_{\mathrm{defoc}} = 61$. The RPO mode needs to be used for the Z operating point of the collider and all cycles of the high-energy booster (see Sect. 6.3).

3.4.4 Instabilities due to fundamental mode (FM) and transient beam loading

Cavity detuning leads to impedance asymmetry around the RF frequency, which can drive the coupled bunch instability. Direct RF feedback [249] (Fig. 3.24, left) is assumed to be implemented in the low-level (LL) RF system to reduce the effective impedance 'seen by the beam'. The closed loop impedance is

$$Z_{\mathrm{cl}}(\omega) = \frac{Z(\omega)}{1 + G_{\mathrm{FB}} Z(\omega) e^{-i\tau_{\mathrm{delay}}\omega + i\phi_{\mathrm{adj}}}}, \tag{3.3}$$

where G_{FB} is the feedback gain, τ_{delay} is the overall loop delay assumed to be 700 ns (similar to the LHC RF system [250]), and ϕ_{adj} is the phase adjustment required to correctly set the feedback negative at the detuned cavity resonant frequency. The flat response is achieved for $1/G_{\mathrm{FB}} = 2(R/Q)\omega_{\mathrm{rf}}\tau_{\mathrm{delay}}$. The instability growth rates were computed assuming a uniformly filled ring for the Z, WW, and ZH operating points (Fig. 3.24, right). The synchrotron radiation damping is sufficient to suppress any coupled-bunch modes driven by fundamental cavity impedance for WW and ZH operating points, whereas direct RF feedback is necessary for stability at the Z operation point.

To evaluate the transient beam loading, the small-signal (Pedersen) model [251] was extended to the RPO case. The filling scheme assumed in the mid-term report considered 20 trains of 560-bunches with the 25-ns bunch spacing resulting in about 1.2 µs gaps between bunch trains. In this case, the modulation of the effective RF

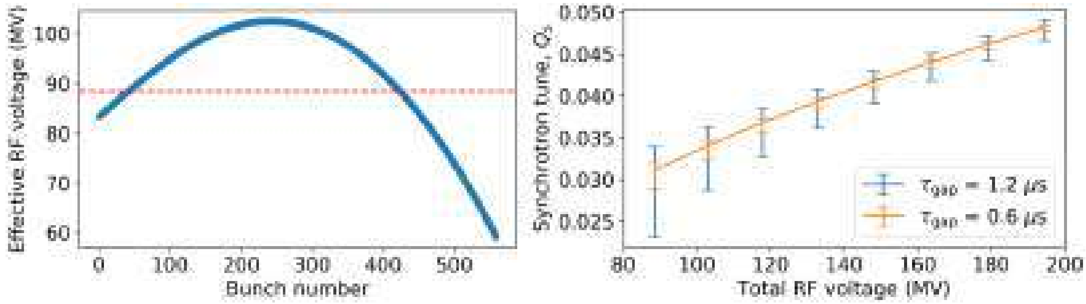


Fig. 3.25 Left: bunch-by-bunch modulation of the effective RF voltage with RPO for 20, 580-bunch trains filling scheme (one train shown) as a function of the bunch number. Right: synchrotron tune spreads as a function of total RF voltage

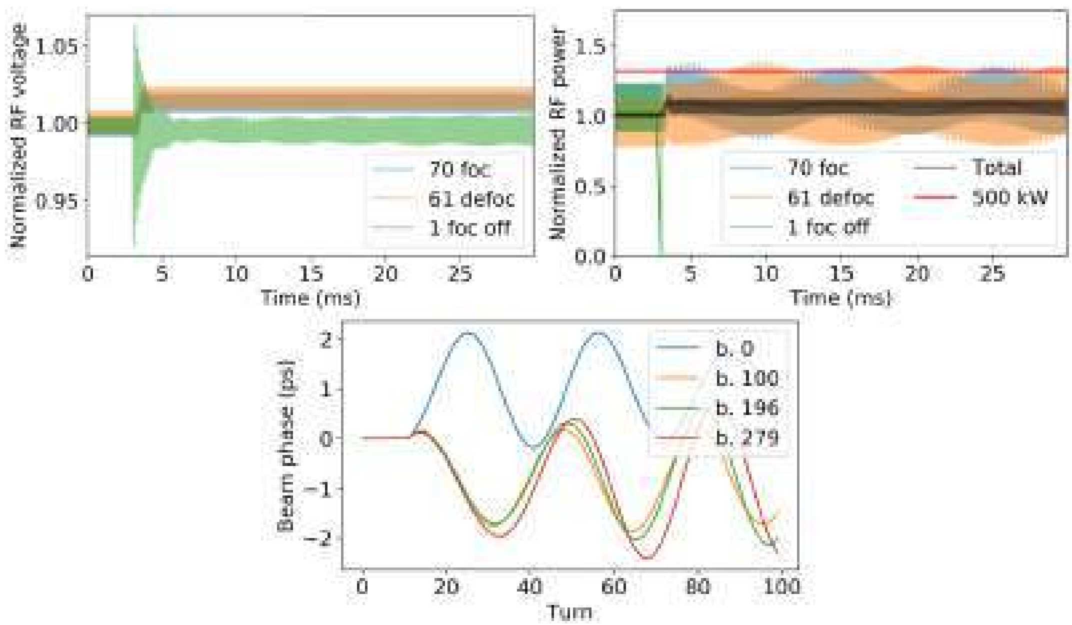


Fig. 3.26 Transients in the event of a single focusing RF cavity trip for Z operating point. Top left: evolution of RF voltages normalised by the nominal value of 7.95 MV as functions of time. Top right: evolution of the RF power normalised by the nominal value of 380 kW for the focusing, defocusing, and tripped RF cavities. Bottom: synchrotron oscillations of different bunches in a train

voltage reaches about 50% for the baseline $V_{\mathrm{RF}} = 89$ MV (Fig. 3.25, left) resulting in the synchrotron tune spread of 30% (Fig. 3.25, right). This spread is not acceptable for transverse beam stability due to limited space in the tune diagram (Sect. 1.4.3), and therefore, two mitigation schemes were proposed: a higher RF voltage or a shorter gap length.

After a modification of the injection and extraction system layouts (Sect. 1.8), a new filling scheme of 40 trains of 280-bunches with 0.6 µs gaps was adopted, and a stable working point was found for all bunches (see Fig. 1.16). The impact of low-intensity pilot bunches was also verified, and a uniform filling of all gaps is recommended to avoid an additional 1% increase in the synchrotron frequency spread.

3.4.5 Analysis of RF system trip

A time-domain model based on [252] was developed to evaluate beam-cavity interaction in the event of an RF system failure. It solves differential equations describing the cavity-generator and LLRF building blocks (Fig. 3.24, left) coupled with the longitudinal equations of motion for centroids of all bunches similar to Ref. [253]. The two highest current FCC operating points were considered.

Z operating point It is assumed that the LLRF system is capable of detecting the event of a single RF cavity (or RF amplifier, LLRF system, etc.) trip within one turn (Fig. 3.26, top left, green trace). It then adapts the reference

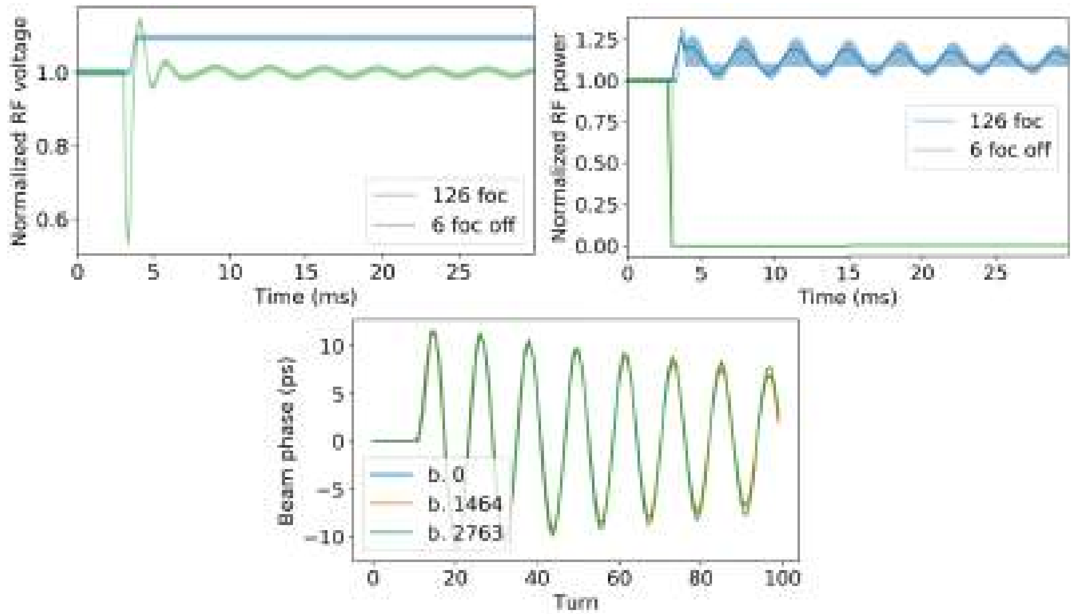


Fig. 3.27 Transients in the case of six RF cavity trips for the WW operating point. Top left: evolution of RF voltages normalised by the nominal value of 7.95 MV as a function of time. Top right: evolution of the RF power normalised by the nominal value of 380 kW for the focusing and tripped RF cavities. Bottom: synchrotron oscillations of different bunches in a train

signals of the remaining cavities (blue and orange traces) to compensate for the missing RF voltage within the following turn, thanks to a strong direct RF feedback. In that case, the RF voltage of the tripped cavity overshoots for a short time by about 6% of the nominal RF voltage and then settles slightly below the nominal value. At the same time, the RF power (Fig. 3.26, top right) is modulated at the synchrotron frequency due to the synchrotron oscillations excited of different bunches (Fig. 3.26, bottom). Although the peak RF exceeds the nominal value by about 40% (shaded blue and orange areas), the total average power of all remaining cavities increases by less than 10% (solid black line). In this scenario, the RF power system adapts the high-voltage set point to efficiently cope with the corresponding overshoot (Sect. 3.4.12). The amplitude of bunch oscillations remains within a few ps, which is significantly smaller than the rms bunch length. The beam, however, becomes unstable due to the increase of the impedance around the FM (the direct RF feedback is no longer active). In particular, coupled-bunch modes −2 or 2 become unstable depending on the type of cavity tripped. To suppress these instabilities, a longitudinal damper system can be employed (Fig. 3.24, left) using the remaining RF cavities as the kicker cavities and providing the shortest damping time of the order of two synchrotron periods [254, 255]. The algorithm needs to be adapted for the RPO case, and the potential increase of RF power transients should be further studied. After that, a recovery scenario can be evaluated. For completeness, the results of simultaneous trips of focusing and defocusing cavities were evaluated. In that case, the RF power modulations are unacceptably high (more than 70%) and the beams must be dumped. Note that coupled-bunch instabilities due to the impedance of two tripped cavities of the same type can not be suppressed by the longitudinal damper.

WW operating point A similar analysis was performed for the scenario in which all cavities are in phase for the W operating point. A tripped RF system cannot drive a coupled-bunch instability due to a lower beam current, higher energy, and stronger synchrotron radiation (see Fig. 3.24). An example of simultaneous trips of six RF systems is shown in Fig. 3.27. It is the worst-case scenario as the probability of this event is rather low and sequential trips can appear instead. Applying a similar strategy of detecting missing RF cavities and adapting the total RF voltage, the power transients can be kept below 30% while the peak RF voltage can increase by 15% with respect to the nominal value. This requires increasing the time of RF voltage adaptation by another turn at a cost of about 10 ps amplitude of the bunch oscillations (Fig. 3.27, bottom), which becomes comparable with the 18 ps rms bunch length. No coupled-bunch instability is expected in this case due to sufficiently fast synchrotron radiation damping.

3.4.6 RF synchronisation aspects

The ring tunnel of the FCC-ee must also be compatible with the FCC-hh accelerator to be installed in the same infrastructure once the lepton physics programme has been completed. Therefore, the tunnel circumference, which will obviously remain an unchangeable parameter throughout the entire lifetime of the FCC, must be carefully chosen. Flexibility in terms of beam parameters and transfer schemes is key to not exclude any possibilities even in the far future.

For the FCC-ee, there are only a few restrictions as long as the booster and collider rings have exactly the same circumference. RF frequencies for the ultra-relativistic leptons are moreover constant and synchrotron radiation naturally damps longitudinal oscillations of the bunches.

The choice of circumference is more constrained for FCC-hh, since protons will either be transferred from a high-energy booster (HEB) in the existing SPS or LHC tunnel. In this injector, the hadrons must be accelerated with beam control loops to mitigate common-mode dipole oscillations. These beam-derived corrections change the RF frequency during acceleration and, hence, modify the azimuthal position of the bunches at arrival at the flat-top. This requires a cogging process to move them to the desired azimuth prior to the bunch-to-bucket transfer. Additionally, following acceleration and synchronisation in the HEB, multiple transfers of batches of about 80 bunches to the collider cannot be avoided because of the need to keep the stored energy of the injected beam at an acceptable level for protection devices.

The first analysis to identify an FCC circumference compatible with the HEB in the SPS or LHC tunnel can be found in Ref. [256]. Once synchronised to the same RF frequency, two circular accelerators can be modelled as cogwheels. For a circumference ratio of $C_2/C_1 = h_2/h_1 = n_1/n_2$, where h are the harmonic numbers, the bunches in both rings are at the same azimuth only every n_1 turns of the ring with the circumference C_1, which corresponds to n_2 turns in ring with C_2. This is also the basic periodicity with which the beam transfer can take place. In the CDR, a 97,750 m circumference ring was chosen as a baseline solution with the corresponding ratios with the HEB $C_{\mathrm{FCC}}/C_{\mathrm{LHC}} = 11/3$ and $C_{\mathrm{FCC}}/C_{\mathrm{SPS}} = 99/7$. The evolution of the placement required an additional detailed study [257]. For the present FCC baseline circumference of 90,658.2 m the ratios with the HEB are $C_{\mathrm{FCC}}/C_{\mathrm{LHC}} = 1010/297$ and $C_{\mathrm{FCC}}/C_{\mathrm{SPS}} = 1010/77$. This means that beam can only be transferred every 1010 turns in the injector, corresponding to about 90 ms for the HEB in the LHC tunnel. While FCC circumferences of 179.5 m shorter or longer would be ideal from the RF point of view, with much smaller numerators and denominators in the circumference ratios, and provide important flexibility at the transfer, they are excluded based on the integration in the tunnel.

The baseline circumference ratio of the HEB in the LHC tunnel of $1010/297 \simeq 3.40067$ is extremely close to $17/5 = 3.4$ [258]. A promising alternative in view of FCC-hh would therefore be a 18 m shorter FCC circumference of 90,640.2 m, hence exactly 3.4 times the circumference of the LHC. It would allow the injection of hadrons every 17 turns of the HEB, corresponding to only 5 turns in the collider. Such low numbers of turns, with an almost instantaneous transfer, enable non-adiabatic RF manipulations, like bunch rotation to compress or stretch bunches for the injection into the collider, in combination with multiple transfers to limit the maximum stored energy for reasons of machine protection. These manipulations are excluded with the present baseline scenario. To keep the baseline harmonic number of $h_{\mathrm{FCC}} = 121{,}200 = 2^4 \cdot 3 \cdot 5^2 \cdot 101$ for the full flexibility with bunch spacings, the RF frequency of the FCC-ee would have to be increased by only 80 kHz, from 400.79 MHz to 400.87 MHz. This is small enough to stay within the frequency range of the operational cavity tuning systems. The impact of a circumference change as small as 18 m on the tunnel integration would be minor. Table 3.10 compares the baseline scheme with the proposed alternative circumference.

3.4.7 Technological choices for the SRF cavities

The technological choices proposed for the two types of SRF cavities of the FCC-ee collider are driven by the experience of particle accelerators operating at similar parameters. The accelerating gradients are fixed to 10 MV/m at 400 MHz and 20 MV/m at 800 MHz. These accelerating gradients must be reached in operation and be very reliable. Thus, a 20% margin on the accelerating field E_{acc} and the unloaded quality factor Q_0 is added between the values during qualification tests in a vertical cryostat and operation in the machine.

It is indeed important to remember that performance degradation occurs between cavity qualification in the vertical cryostat and cavity performance after cryomodule assembly. This is a well-known phenomenon in the SRF domain. Taking into account an additional margin for reliable operation, performance targets on E_{acc} and Q_0 have been specified for all steps of the cavity lifetime (see Table 3.11).

At the Z, WW and ZH operating points, the 2-cell cavity technological design (Fig. 3.28, left) is inspired by the 400 MHz LHC cavities accelerating a proton beam of about 0.5 A (1 A for HL-LHC) and operating at 300 kW RF power in CW [259]. The cavity is heavily damped thanks to four coaxial couplers placed very close to the accelerating cell. The cavity is made of copper and is coated with a superconducting niobium thin film, operating at the temperature of 4.5 K. Its very large aperture of 300 mm diameter allows the propagation of most of the high-frequency modes induced by the beam. The Nb/Cu version of the 352 MHz - 5 mA multicell cavities used in LEP is also a good reference for the design of the 2-cell FCC-ee cavity [260] where some experience can be gained to push the accelerating gradient to 10 MV/m and above, while keeping the HOM damping properties very efficient.

Table 3.10 Summary of baseline and alternative tunnel circumferences. The length difference with respect to the baseline circumference is indicated by C_{FCC}

h_{FCC}	C_{FCC} [m]	ΔC_{FCC} [m]	$\frac{h_{\mathrm{FCC}}}{h_{\mathrm{LHC}}}$	$\frac{h_{\mathrm{FCC}}}{h_{\mathrm{SPS}}}$	f_{RF} [MHz]	Comment
120,960	90,478.6	−179.5	112/33	144/11	400.8	Ideal for RF, too short for tunnel integration
110,160					364.4	Option for FCC-hh
121,200	**90,640.2**	**−17.95**	**17/5**	**459/35**	**400.9**	**Proposal for FCC-ee, ideal for RF with minimal change**
122,400					404.8	Option for FCC-ee
146,880					485.8	Option for FCC-hh
121,200	**90,658.2**	–	**1010/297**	**1010/77**	**400.8**	**Baseline**
121,440	90,837.7	+179.5	92/27	92/7	400.8	Ideal for RF, too long for tunnel integration

Table 3.11 Main RF performances targets of the 400 MHz and 800 MHz cavities

Cavity configuration		bare	dressed	cryomodule	operation
Orientation in test		vertical	vertical	horizontal	horizontal
Added elements		helium tank HOM couplers	FPC tuner shieldings		
400 MHz	E_{acc} [MV/m]	13	12.4	11.8	10.6
Cavity	Q_0	3.3×10^9	3.15×10^9	3×10^9	2.7×10^9
800 MHz	E_{acc} [MV/m]	24.8	23.6	22.5	20.25
Cavity	Q_0	3.8×10^{10}	3.65×10^{10}	3.5×10^{10}	3×10^{10}

Fig. 3.28 Artist's view of the 2-cell 400 MHz (left) and 6-cell 800 MHz (right) SRF cavities

Bulk niobium technology is very suitable for the 800 MHz 6-cell cavities (Fig. 3.28, right) used at the $t\bar{t}$ energy. Similar 5-cell cavities of this type have already been developed for high-intensity proton accelerators like the SNS linac at ORNL in Oak Ridge [261], the SPL project at CERN [262], the ESS accelerator in Lund [263], and the PIP-II linac at Fermilab [264]. It is also important to remember that a prototype FCC-ee 5-cell bare cavity was manufactured and successfully tested in a vertical cryostat by the Jefferson Laboratory in 2018 [265].

3.4.8 RF design of elliptical cavities

A multi-objective optimisation was performed for the 2-cell 400 MHz cavity, targeting both the FM properties, such as peak surface electric and magnetic fields, and the longitudinal impedance of the HOMs. At the Z operating point, the longitudinal impedance of the 0-mode in the fundamental passband becomes critical for ensuring longitudinal stability, as this mode only couples to the power coupler with a loaded quality factor of approximately 10^6. To address this, the (R/Q) of the 0-mode was incorporated into the optimisation problem. As a result, the half-cell lengths were reduced from 187 mm to 180 mm, lowering the (R/Q) of the 0-mode to below 0.01 Ω. This

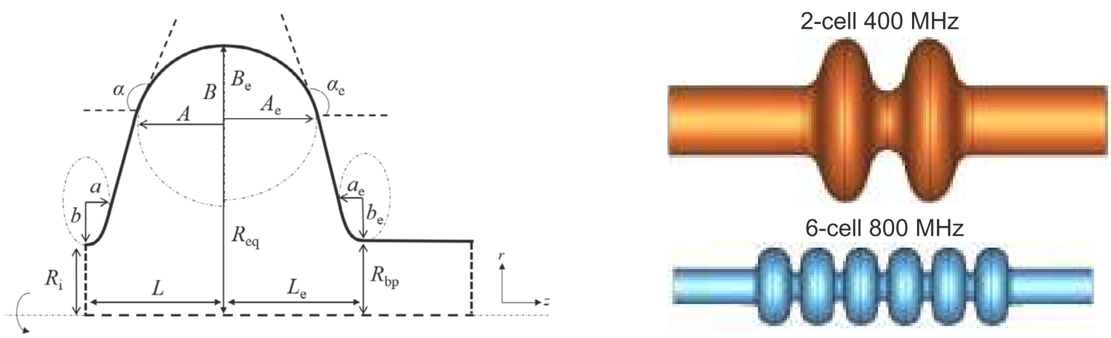


Fig. 3.29 Parametrised model of the cavity's end-cell (left) and the shapes of the two FCC-ee cavities (right). The inner side of the end-cell has the same shape as the middle cells in the 6-cell cavity

Table 3.12 Geometric parameters of the FCC cavities

	A/A_e [mm]	B/B_e [mm]	a/a_e [mm]	b/b_e [mm]
2-cell 400 MHz	94.06 / 102.81	127.81 / 137.97	77.19 / 61.11	109.06 / 58.94
6-cell 800 MHz	67.72 / 66.5	57.45 / 51.0	21.75 / 17.0	35.6 / 23.0
	R_i/R_{bp} [mm]	L/L_e [mm]	R_{eq} [mm]	α/α_e [°]
2-cell 400 MHz	125.58 / 150	180 / 180	351.041	105.3 / 109.6
6-cell 800 MHz	60.0 / 78.0	93.5 / 85.77	166.591	100.0 / 96.9

Table 3.13 Some figures of merit for the FCC-ee cavities, with the LHC cavity as a reference for comparison

	LHC (reference)	FCC 2-cell	FCC 6-cell
f [MHz]	400.79	400.79	801.58
$(R/Q)_{\text{linac}}$ [Ω]	88.1	182.7	630.4
G [Ω]	252	232.7	272.8
E_{pk}/E_{acc} [-]	2.3	2.0	2.04
B_{pk}/E_{acc} [mT/MV/m]	5.1	5.33	4.31
$k_{\parallel}$ [V/pC]	0.13	0.26	3.58
	($\sigma_z = 14.6$ mm)	($\sigma_z = 14.6$ mm)	($\sigma_z = 2.32$ mm)

modification was achieved while maintaining the FM figures of merit and HOM performance metrics at levels comparable to the previous design. The design of the 6-cell 800 MHz cavity is based on the 5-cell design reported in the mid-term report, with an additional mid-cell added to the structure. The mid-cells were optimised to reduce peak surface fields, enabling a higher accelerating gradient (E_{acc}) required for $t\bar{t}$ operation. Additionally, the end-cell was designed to facilitate the damping of potentially harmful trapped modes. The parametrised model of a cavity-cell, along with the shapes adopted for the 2-cell 400 MHz and 6-cell 800 MHz cavities, is shown in Fig. 3.29. The corresponding geometrical parameters are given in Table 3.12 and some important figures of merit for the cavities are presented in Table 3.13.

Figure 3.30 presents the impedance spectrum of each cavity type up to 3.4 GHz without any damping features. For the 2-cell 400 MHz cavity, no critical modes with high longitudinal impedance ($Z_{\parallel}$) are identified. However, dipole modes near 530 MHz are trapped, leading to excessive transverse impedance above the coupled bunch instability threshold. To mitigate this, two hook-type couplers are installed per cavity, reducing transverse impedance to approximately 60 kΩ/m. A transverse feedback system with a moderate damping rate (about 50 turns) can ensure stability at the Z operating point. The hook coupler geometries are shown in Fig. 3.31(a). For the 6-cell 800 MHz cavity, two DQW-type HOM couplers, as shown in Fig. 3.31(b), suffice to meet stability requirements for $t\bar{t}$ working point.

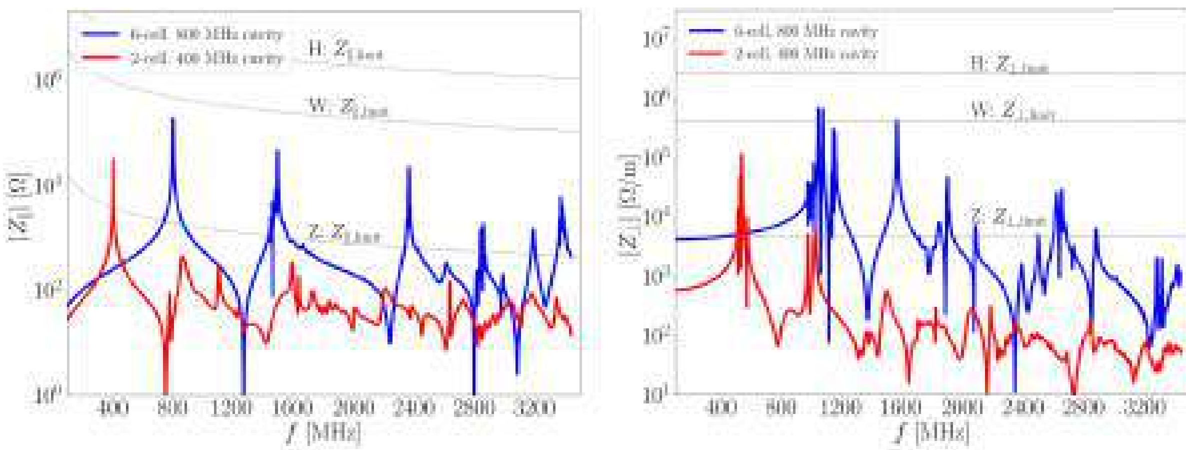
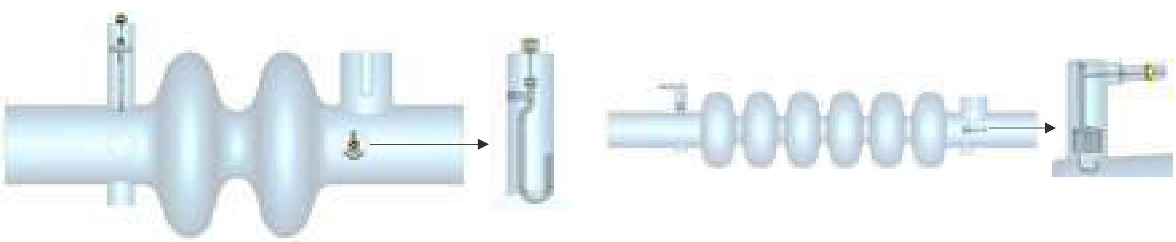


Fig. 3.30 Longitudinal (left) and transverse (right) impedance of the two cavity types. The wakefield simulations are conducted on the cavities without any damping coupler. Consequently, due to the truncation of the wake potential, the impedance peaks are not fully resolved



(a) (b)

Fig. 3.31 (a) Two hook-type couplers are used to damp the trapped dipole modes in the 2-cell 400 MHz cavity. (b) DQW-type HOM couplers are employed for HOM damping in the 6-cell 800 MHz cavity

3.4.9 HOM power calculation

A short bunch length of a few millimetres can excite high-frequency HOMs in the cavities, reaching up to tens of GHz. These high-frequency modes must be extracted from the cryomodules and dissipated in air-cooled or water-cooled RF loads. Several types of RF extractors have been studied, including rectangular waveguides, ridged waveguides, beam line absorbers and coaxial lines. A configuration with two coaxial waveguides oriented at 90° and connected to the beam pipe is chosen for its simplicity, its compactness and its ability to handle high RF power. Since the 2-cell cavities are designed to avoid trapped modes with large longitudinal impedances, there is no need to place the HOM power extractors close to the cavity. Consequently, the coaxial lines, which also lack an FM rejection mechanism, must be positioned far from the cavity on the beam pipe to prevent the extraction of FM energy while absorbing HOM energy. Another advantage of this configuration is that it eliminates the creation of a transverse kick caused by the two couplers interacting with the FM field, as the influence of coaxial lines on the FM is minimal. However, this design choice comes at the cost of requiring a larger distance between the cavities to accommodate these couplers on the beam pipe.

A similar coaxial line inter-cavity damping concept was considered for the 800 MHz cavity. Due to space limitations and the need to shorten 800 MHz cryomodules, studies are ongoing to eliminate the coaxial line for the 800 MHz system. This appears feasible, with the two additional HOM ports near the cavity utilised for HOM couplers to damp other dangerous HOMs mainly required for the booster cavities which have lower beam instability thresholds. Since neither the coaxial lines nor the HOM couplers have broadband transmission capabilities up to tens of GHz, room-temperature high-power beam line absorbers (BLA) are necessary between cryomodules to absorb HOM power above the beam pipe cut-off frequency for both 400 MHz and 800 MHz cryomodules.

Figure 3.32(a) shows the HOM power distribution for the Z operating point. Each coaxial line should handle several kilowatts of HOM power, with up to 7 kW expected for the coaxial extractors located in the middle of the cryomodule. Additional margins must be considered, as some HOMs can generate up to 10 kW of additional HOM power if the beam spectral line aligns with a high-impedance peak. Depending on the mode excited and its

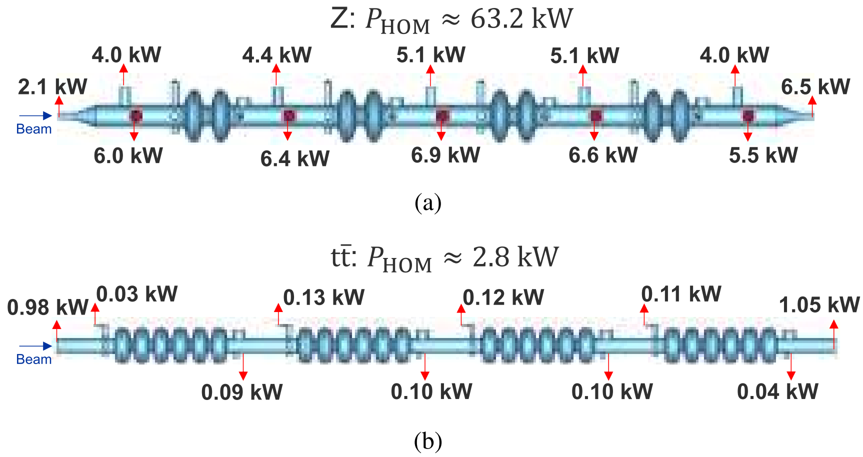


Fig. 3.32 (a) The figure displays an approximation of the HOM power distribution at the Z operating point in a cryomodule configuration consisting of four 2-cell 400 MHz cavities, each equipped with two hook-type couplers for trapped dipole mode damping, and two coaxial lines on the beam pipe for HOM power extraction. The total HOM power propagating through all eight hook-type couplers is approximately 0.7 kW. (b) An approximation of the HOM power distribution in a cryomodule configuration with four 800 MHz cavities at $t\bar{t}$ operation. Each cavity has two DQW HOM couplers. Most of the HOM power propagates out through the beam pipes, requiring beamline absorbers between modules. In both cases, BS bunch length is considered for HOM power calculation

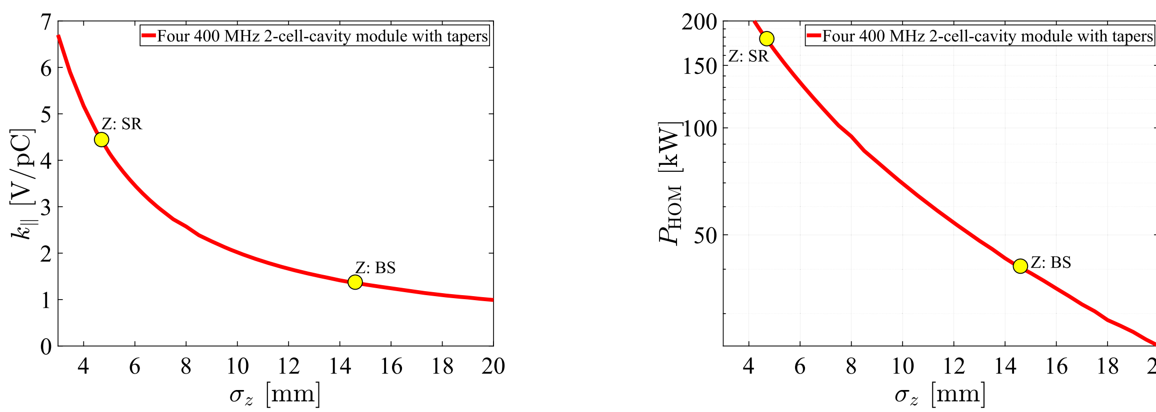


Fig. 3.33 The figures show the loss factor (left) and HOM power (right) at the Z working point for 2D-axisymmetric modules consisting of four 2-cell cavities with tapers at both ends and no couplers. Circle markers highlight the loss factor and HOM power corresponding to the BS and SR bunch lengths at the Z working points

coupling to the coaxial lines, this power can propagate into different couplers. Therefore, to ensure reliability, the coaxial line extractors will be designed to handle power levels between 15 kW and 20 kW to accommodate such worst-case scenarios. Figure 3.32(b) illustrates the power distribution for collider cavities in $t\bar{t}$ operation without using inter-cavity coaxial lines. In this scenario, each DQW coupler absorbs, on average, 0.1 kW of HOM power, with most of the power propagating out of the cryomodule which has to be damped by inter-cavity BLAs.

It is important to highlight that, in the case of the bunch length without collisions (referred to as SR for the synchrotron radiation) there is a significant increase in the HOM power at the Z working point compared to when beams are in collision, where beamstrahlung (BS) increases the energy spread and bunch length. Figure 3.33 illustrates the loss factor of the four-cavity module with tapers and without couplers for both the BS and SR bunch lengths. The resulting HOM power at the Z operating point is calculated using the formula $P_{\text{HOM}} = k_{\parallel,\text{HOM}} QI$, where $k_{\parallel,\text{HOM}}$ represents the longitudinal loss factor of HOMs, Q denotes the bunch charge, and I stands for the average beam current. Figure 3.33 also presents the HOM power levels, showing an increase by approximately a factor of 4.4 when transitioning from the BS to the SR bunch length. A significant portion of HOM power for the SR bunch length is caused by 300 mm to 100 mm diameter tapers at the cryomodule ends. Removing these tapers reduces HOM power by 100.4 kW (SR) and 13.2 kW (BS). Replacing them with 300 mm to 160 mm diameter tapers reduces HOM power by 52.3 kW (SR) and 6.8 kW (BS).

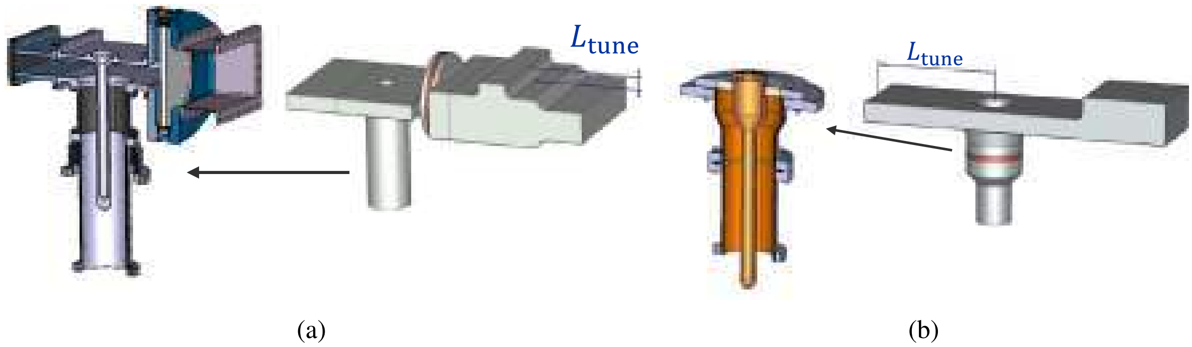


Fig. 3.34 The RF models of the 400 MHz(a) and 800 MHz(b) power couplers, along with their mechanical representation concepts. L_{tune} is used to adjust Q_{L} when transitioning between working points by altering a waveguide plate on the air side of the coupler

3.4.10 Fundamental power couplers

A new family of fundamental power couplers (FPC) has to be developed for FCC-ee which all must operate reliably in CW mode. For the 400 MHz 2-cell cavities, the reverse-phase operation scheme reduces the input power requirement for the Z working point from 0.9 MW to approximately 400 kW, matching the requirements for the WW and H working points at the same Q_L level of 9.2×10^5. However, additional margins must be considered for the RF power modulations and failure scenarios, where one or more cavities may trip, requiring the remaining cavities to compensate. An adjustable coupler is needed to cover a Q_L range from 9×10^5 to 4.5×10^6, as required for the $t\bar{t}$ working point, to minimise the input power to ≈ 80 kW (Table 3.9).

At 800 MHz, the couplers installed on the 6-cell cavities for the $t\bar{t}$ require $Q_{L,\text{opt}} = 4.2 \times 10^6$ to operate at ≈ 200 kW. The same concept of the adjustable FPC is foreseen to unify the coupler designs with the collider and booster 800 MHz RF systems. The Q_L range is from 4.2×10^6 to 2.7×10^7, which is a compromise between the tuning capabilities and RF power overhead (see Sect. 6.3).

At 400 MHz, with a nominal power of approximately 400 kW, the proposed design concept incorporates an alumina ceramic disc window positioned within the rectangular waveguide, following an approach similar to that developed for Linac4. This configuration includes a step transition to a vertically mounted coaxial coupler, which interfaces with both the cavity and the surrounding cryomodule. The placement of the ultra-high vacuum (UHV) boundary within the rectangular waveguide presents logistical challenges for assembly, as the insertion into the outer vacuum vessel is intended to occur outside the clean room. However, technical solutions involving localised enclosures are being explored to address these constraints.

At 800 MHz, for a nominal power of 200 kW, the design adopts a more conventional annular disc window within the coaxial section of the coupler. Integration with the conceptual design of the 800 MHz cryomodule necessitates an innovative approach to the structural support system, ensuring that the horizontally mounted coupler is adequately supported while avoiding hyperstatic constraints that could impede thermal expansion. Engineering solutions to address these challenges are currently under development. The RF models of both couplers, along with their respective mechanical design concepts, are presented in Fig. 3.34.

3.4.11 SRF cryomodules

Two types of cryomodules are planned to accommodate the 400 MHz and 800 MHz cavity strings, covering the four operating modes of FCC-ee. The first type is designed for operation at 4.5 K and will house four 2-cell 400 MHz cavities, with a total length of 11.24 m. For the 6-cell 800 MHz cavities, the cryomodule will be designed to operate at 2 K, with an expected total length of 10.25 m.

The RF design of the cavity string has been refined through iterative development to optimise several key aspects: improving the integration of mechanical elements such as bellows and flanges within the string, enhancing the overall integration of the string within the cryomodule, including the orientation of rigid components such as fundamental power couplers (FPC) and coaxial extractors, and ensuring compactness and efficient longitudinal integration within the FCC tunnel.

The 400 MHz cryomodule conceptual design includes an isostatic supporting system for the cavities that allows free thermal contraction of the different elements, the weight of the FPC and the vacuum forces are intended to be discharged on the vacuum vessel. Helium tank, tuner and reinforcement structures are still to be engineered. In the conceptual design, the space occupation has been identified by rescaling the correspondent elements of the

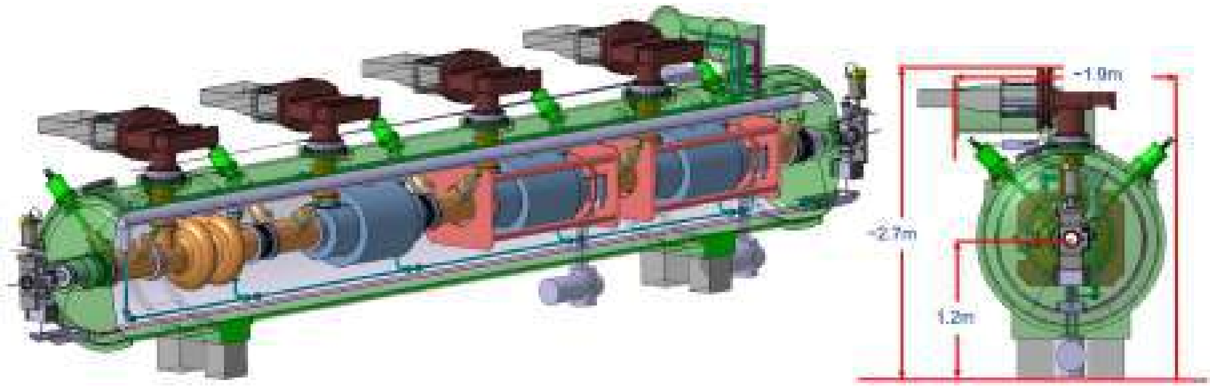


Fig. 3.35 Lateral and front view of the 400 MHz cryomodule

LHC cryomodule. In Fig. 3.35 it can be seen that there is limited clearance to integrate the actively cooled thermal shield and magnetic shield, not present in the LHC cryomodule. The cryomodule outer diameter is constrained by the length of the FPC outer conductor, actively cooled with supercritical helium at 4.5 K. There is a margin to reduce this value towards a more compact cryomodule design once the FPC maximum power and RF losses for the Z working point are finalised.

The current cryomodule design and assembly sequence are based on a cylindrical vacuum vessel, which is the preferred choice for maintaining structural integrity under vacuum forces. This design is commonly used in machines with a large number of cryomodules, such as XFEL and LCLS-II. A cylindrical vacuum vessel also presents a cost-effective solution in several respects. First, it simplifies material procurement, as it allows the use of low-carbon steel tubular products. Second, it facilitates an industrialised assembly process, following established practices from previous machines, where the cavity string slides into the vacuum vessel without requiring the vessel itself to be cleaned to cleanroom standards at any point.

However, the new fundamental power coupler (FPC) design, which incorporates a ceramic window in the waveguide, necessitates a revision of the assembly process. The first integration approach, which is compatible with the current cryomodule conceptual design, involves inserting the coupler antenna and ceramic window in a second step—after the cavity train has been placed inside the vacuum vessel. This would be achieved using a local cleanroom or a glovebox. The local cleanroom approach has been successfully employed for FPC maintenance in other facilities, such as ESS, XFEL, and SNS, but it poses a potential risk of cavity contamination. Therefore, both the local cleanroom concept and the associated assembly procedure must be designed and thoroughly validated with prototype testing before finalising the current cryomodule design.

If this integration method proves too complex or incurs excessive R&D costs, an alternative design is under consideration. This would involve a vacuum vessel composed of two separate sections, as used in other projects such as Crab cavities and SPL. In this configuration, the top part of the vessel would be brought into the cleanroom along with the cavity string, enabling the FPC assembly to take place in a fully controlled clean environment. While this solution minimises the risk of cavity contamination, it introduces significantly greater complexity and increases the cost of the vacuum vessel.

The design of the HOM for the 400 MHz cryomodule is determined by the highest power extraction requirements at Z operating point, the coaxial extractors in between cavities should be dimensioned to extract up to 6 kW-10 kW each. Thus, the coaxial extractors shall be rigid connectors ($P_{\mathrm{HOM}}\ \times 6 > 1$ kW), reducing the freedom in the port positioning across the vacuum vessel, with complications in matching the routing and the assembly and maintenance needs. For the absorption of the HOM power leaking through the beam pipe, it is foreseen that the integration of warm BLA in the cryomodule interconnection regions. Examples of water-cooled BLA have been tested for EIC, and their impact on the machine reliability and cavity contamination is now under assessment.

The 800 MHz cryomodule conceptual design, Fig. 3.36, is based on the PIP-II HB650 cryomodule, with the strong back support for the cavity string, and has been developed in collaboration with FNAL.

The parameters that require adjustment of the current PIP-II design are: (i) the power for the FPC, (ii) the presence of HOM extractors, (iii) the requirement of the design to be compatible with both segmented and continuous architecture. The FPC of the HB650 cryomodule, designed for a peak power of 65 kW, has a bellows in the outer conductor to decouple thermo-mechanically the waveguides from the outer conductor, avoiding transmitting cantilever forces to the cavity string. The bellows must be eliminated from the FCC FPC design, given the requirement of 250 kW of forward RF power to be transmitted. Active cooling is preferred for the cooling of the FPC outer conductor, using supercritical helium at 4.5 K to be able to adjust the cooling capacity by adjusting the helium flow rate in the different working points and phases of machine operation. The requirements for the HOM extractors for the 800 MHz cavity string are still under definition due to the necessity of introducing BLAs. The

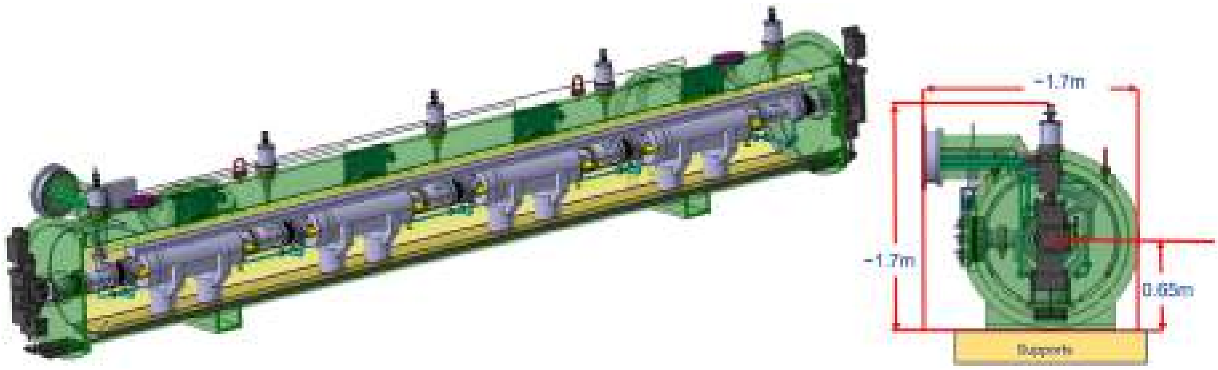


Fig. 3.36 Lateral and front view of the 800 MHz cryomodule

Table 3.14 Cryomodules heat loads budget

	400 MHz	800 MHz
Max. heat load to thermal shield per CM [W]	327	180
Max. static heat load to 4.5 K / 2 K bath per CM [W]	197	56
Max. dynamic heat load to 4.5 K / 2 K bath per CM [W]	619.2	130.2

current design is compatible with a continuous machine architecture, although if the power to be extracted from the BLAs is too high to be dumped in the cryogenic lines (XFEL design for 100 W) the requirement of warm BLA would push towards a segmented architecture for the 800 MHz cryomodule, as currently defined for the 400 MHz. The conceptual design of both cryomodules is well advanced, in both cases the FPC remains the most critical component to design and integrate and may require modifications to the current models. The current design allows some space contingency: the next step will focus on the engineering and dimensioning of the components inside the cryomodules.

To address the definition of the RF cryogenic capacity needs, heat load budgets have been calculated for both cryomodules. The values of static heat loads in Table 3.14 include a 50% margin to account for the preliminary level of maturity of the two design concepts. This margin will likely decrease when engineering the cryomodule internal components. The dynamic heat loads only account for the power dissipated by the cavity at the nominal values of Q_0 and E_{acc}. The heat loads from power coupler, HOMs and non-superconducting elements of the beamline are not included. It is noted that the values of Q_0 and E_{acc} are target values of the R&D processes (Table 3.11). At present, there are no elliptical 2-cell and 6-cell cavities with the stated performance at 400 MHz and 800 MHz, respectively, the specifications are based on the rescaling of performance obtained at different frequencies, with different surface treatment recipes. The stated performances rely on the success of the R&D programmes.

For the dynamic loads, it was assumed that at least a 20% operational margin should be added to the nominal value to ensure machine operation with up to 10% faulty or unpowered cavities, and voltage needs being compensated by increasing the gradient of the remaining cavities. For both cryomodules preliminary cryogenic schemes have been defined, together with the dimensions of the cryomodule inner pipes. The cavities are immersed in a saturated helium bath, the helium tanks are connected on top through a 2-phase tube, from which vapour pumping and pressure control ensure temperature control of the helium bath. Cavity cool-down is done from a lower point through a valve-controlled line at 4.5 K. Steady-state operation, filling is ensured by a valve directly feeding the 2-phase line. For the 800 MHz, Fig. 3.37, the valve is a JT subcooling the liquid to 2 K. Helium level control in the 2-phase is ensured by liquid level measurement (LT) in a phase separator, connected to the bottom supply line, as in the helium tanks, so that the level can be measured in one point only (communicating vessels).

An actively cooled thermal shield at 50 K is needed to intercept the conduction heat from the thermal bridges between ambient temperature and helium bath, such as the cold-to-warm transitions in the beam tubes, cavities supporting system, etc. The static and dynamic heat loads linked to the FPC external conductor are gas-cooled through a double-walled heat exchanger; cold supercritical helium is injected at the coldest end of the FPC and is extracted at room temperature at the vacuum vessel interface. Temperature-based mass flow regulation on each FPC is possible with warm valves outside the CM. Finally, two burst disk exhaust lines protect the cavity circuit against overpressure in the worst-case event of accidental venting of the cavity vacuum with air. For the less critical case of insulation vacuum break, only one of the two burst disks should be enough to evacuate the mass flow rate of helium vapour. The scenarios in which the cryogenic supply is interrupted or the machine is subjected to a power cut are considered abnormal operating conditions, which could happen frequently, rather than an emergency scenario. The limited mass flow will be recovered through the cryomodule return line – the return valve default

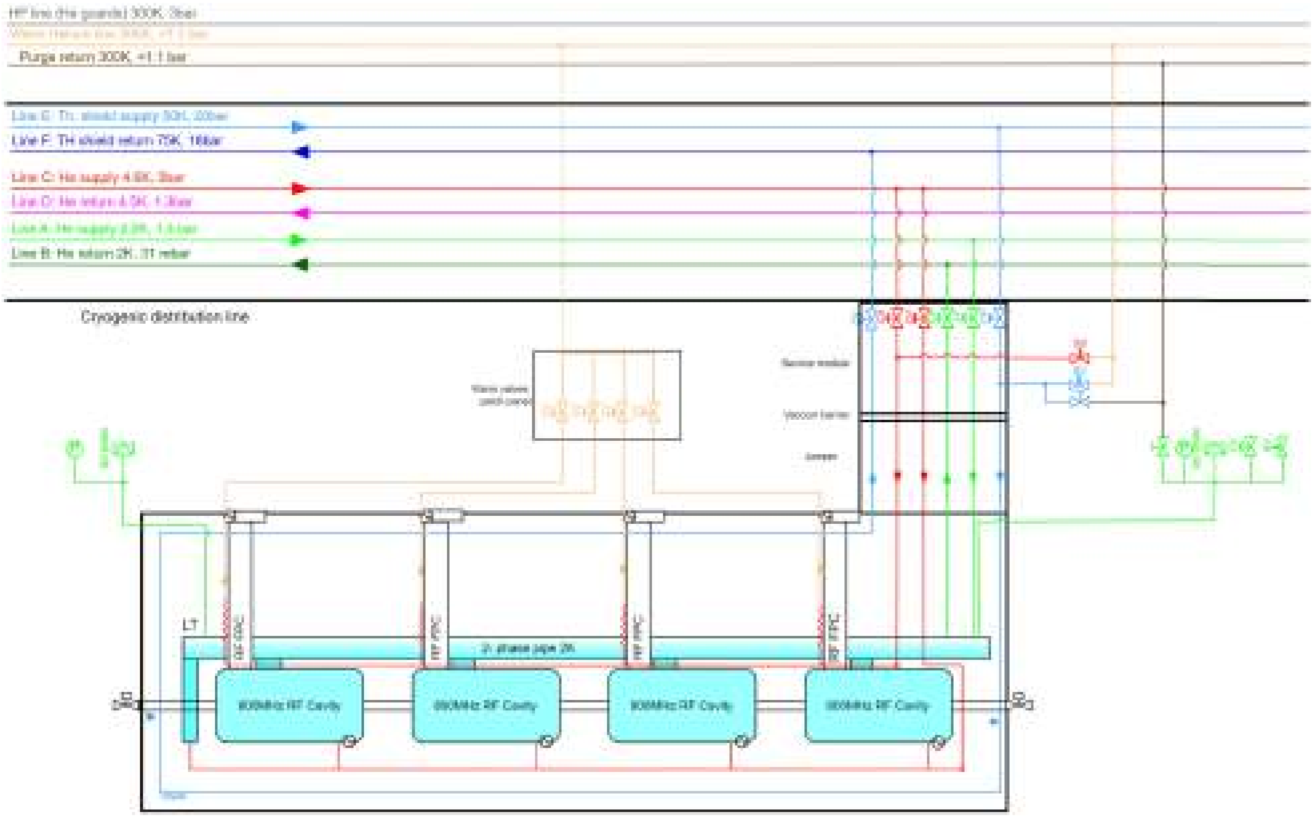


Fig. 3.37 Cryogenic scheme for the 800 MHz cryomodule

position is open in case of a power cut. If there are problems with the return line valve, the helium mass flow will be released in the tunnel through a pressure relief valve, which ensures leak-tight reclosing. It is important to mention that this is a preliminary schematic, several components still need to be included for cryomodule operation, for example the instrumentation, the valves and/or lines for individual cryomodule warm-up/cool-down, etc.

3.4.12 High power RF system

The high-power RF systems will comprise electrovacuum amplifiers and solid-state power amplifiers (SSPA), chosen to meet the RF power level required at different operating points and frequencies. For the FCC collider, the efficiency of electric power conversion from the grid to RF was considered a priority, together with cost-effectiveness and footprint minimisation. In the last three years, a novel concept of the compact (3 m high) low voltage (<60kV) two-stage (TS) multi-beam klystron (MKB) [266] was pioneered within CERN's High Efficiency klystron Project. Such a tube can generate CW RF power up to 1.2 MW at 400 MHz with very high efficiency – above 85%. TS MBK design was completed and is ready for prototyping in industry. TS MBK layout and the tube performance are shown in Fig. 3.38. In the CDR and MTR, it was assumed that for the Z operating point, one tube would feed one cavity and then be reused for other operating points by splitting the RF output power. The novel TS MBK technology can be considered an optimal choice for various high-energy colliders, such as CLIC, ILC, and the Muon Collider.

The present baseline FCC collider layout with a common 2-cell 400 MHz SRF cavity used for Z, WW, and ZH operating points reduces the maximum RF power needed for a single cavity from 1 MW to below 0.5 MW. In addition, the RPO mode leads to different RF power transient modulations for focusing and defocusing cavities due to gaps in the beam filling schemes (Fig. 3.39). Thus, the single 0.5 MW RF power source feeding one cavity was the solution that satisfied the requirements for all beam energies.

Following these changes, the TS MBK design was scaled down in RF power from 1 MW to 0.5 MW, providing high efficiency as before with the original tube. However, analysis of the klystron operation with required RF power transient modulation regulated by the LLRF system brought the operational efficiency of the tube down from 85% to 68%. The reason is that the highest efficiency is delivered by a klystron when it operates in saturation. Without changing the operating high voltage on a fraction of microsecond scale (not yet technically feasible), efficiency will be linearly degraded by reducing the RF power. CEPC adopted a possible solution using the depressed

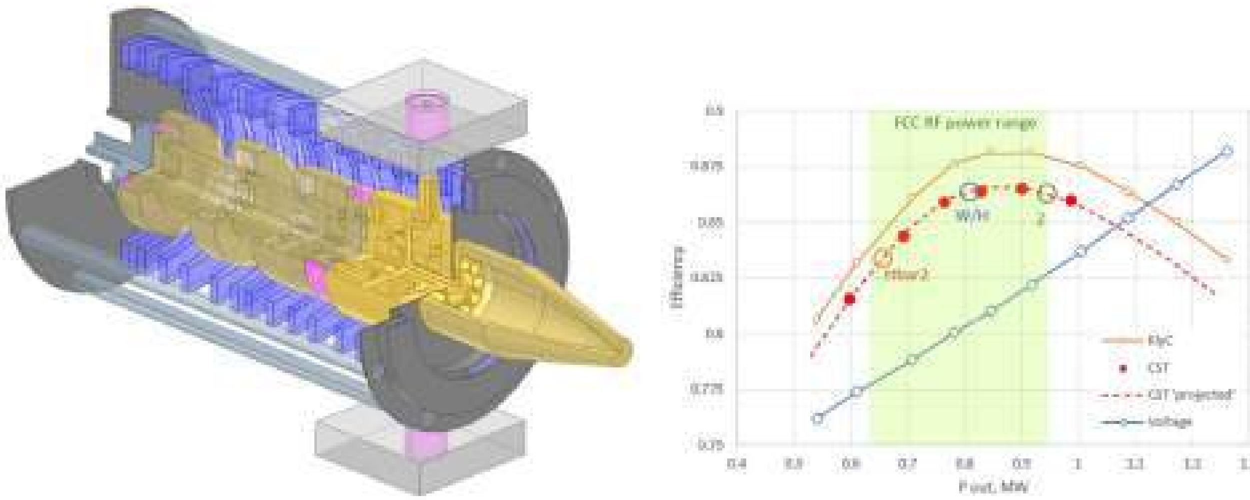
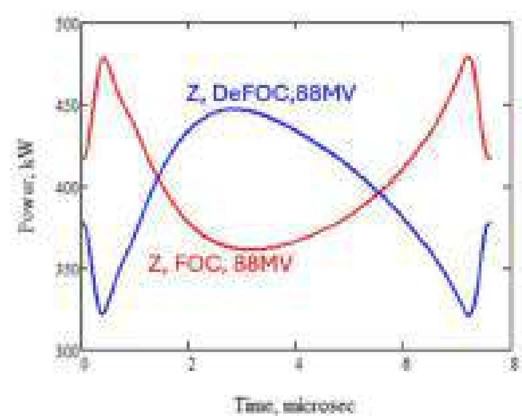


Fig. 3.38 Artist's view of TS MBK is shown on the left. Simulated RF power/efficiency performance of the TS MBK operated at different High Voltage levels is shown on the right

Fig. 3.39 Transient RF power modulation profiles for two types of accelerating cavities (Z-pole)



collector (5 stages) to recover the energy back into HV modulator [267]. At this point, klystrons will operate with an average efficiency of about 65%, but the overall RF system efficiency can be pushed up to 85%. This approach is not commonly used in industrial high-power klystrons, and it will result in a significant increase in the tube complexity and cost. Moreover, the transient nature of the recuperated beam power will require specialised electronics to return the energy to the DC modulator.

A gridded tube, like an inductive output tube (IOT), is another class of electrovacuum device that is renowned for its ability to operate efficiently in a wide range of output RF power levels regulated by the input RF signals. For example, a 1.2 MW, 0.7 GHz multi-beam (10 beams) IOT was successfully prototyped in industry for ESS almost a decade ago [268], proving that powerful MB IOT is a mature technology. However, the practical efficiency in these tubes is limited to 70-75%. The extended IOT version, called Tristron (a hybrid of triode and klystron) was proposed in the late 1960s, but it has never been commercialised. A tristron comprises an additional idler cavity located before the output cavity. This cavity dramatically improves bunching quality and increases efficiency. A tristron was studied and optimised at CERN as a candidate for FCC RF power source [269]. The final MB (10 beams) tristron design at 400 MHz showed excellent performance in RF power range from 300 kW to 600 kW with efficiency exceeding 90%. A snapshot of particle dynamics in the tristron and simulated RF power/efficiency performance at different operating voltages are shown in Fig. 3.40. Compared to TS MBK, the tristron provides a much more compact and cost-effective solution.

The RF power modulation waveform shown in Fig. 3.40 can be convoluted with the tube performance at a fixed voltage for the operational efficiency of the tristron at the Z operating point., The tristron transient efficiency simulated for the operating voltage of 46 kV is shown in Fig. 3.41. Despite the very broad range of the RF power modulation required, a remarkably high average efficiency of 88.7% can be obtained.

The failure scenario of a single cavity trip was also studied. In this case, there must be a dramatic change of the RF power modulation waveform, so that the peak RF power required can temporarily exceed 520 kW (Fig. 3.26).

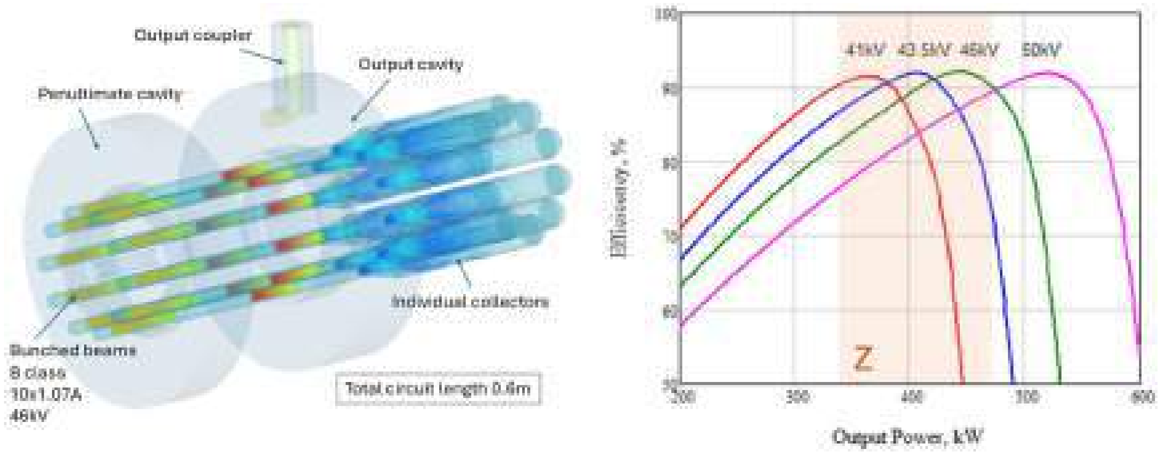
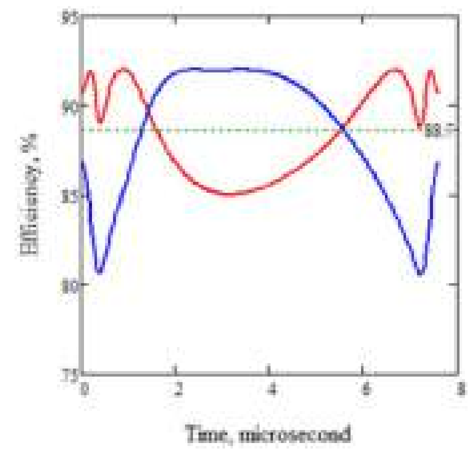


Fig. 3.40 Left: A snapshot of particle dynamics in the tristron simulated in 3D PIC CST. Right: RF power/efficiency performance at different operating voltages

Fig. 3.41 Transient RF efficiency of the tristron when operated at the Z-pole



The proposed recovery scenario is based on the slow (200-300 µs) ramp-up of the tristron operating voltage from 46 kV to about 50 kV. At this new set point, the operating efficiency will be slightly reduced: from 88.7% to 85.2%. For the WW and ZH poles the RF power transient sweep required will stay within 1%, thus, tristron will operate with an efficiency exceeding 90%, while similar performance degradation is expected in failure scenarios. Finally, if a 1-cell 400 MHz cavity for the Z operating point is re-considered in the future, two tristrons can be combined through the 3-dB hybrid and deliver 1 MW RF power. The booster and $t\bar{t}$-pole will be operated with 800 MHz RF power sources. Direct scaling of 400 MHz of tristron to the higher frequency and reduced RF power (200 kW) is a straightforward task, it will be initiated upon completion of the technical design of the 400 MHz tristron. This 800 MHz tube will feed a different number of the cavities depending on its location: one tube per cavity $t\bar{t}$ collider and one tube per four cavities for the Z, WW and ZH poles and the booster.

A preliminary 3D mechanical model of the tristron is shown in Fig. 3.42. The tristron development programme is separated into two phases. The first one is a technology demonstrator based on a retrofit and upgrade of the existing ESS MB IOT. This work will be done in a collaboration of CERN, ESS and Thales. It is expected that the project can be completed on a short timescale of 12-18 months, providing ESS with an additional option for the efficiency upgrades of their RF system in the future. The second phase is technical design and prototyping of a 400 MHz tristron for FCC. During this phase attention will be focused on system optimisation and cost reduction. It is anticipated that a tristron prototype will be built and tested 30-36 months after the formal project assignment between CERN and Thales.

Tristron technology will cover all the power and frequency ranges for FCC collider and booster at different energies. However, $t\bar{t}$ mode booster only requires 13 kW at 800 MHz to feed the cavity. It is then possible to split RF power into 10 cavities from the 200 kW tristron which is operated efficiently at a lower RF power of about 130 kW. However, the RF distribution system could be too bulky and expensive. As an alternative, a 15 kW SSPA can be employed. There is no specific development of such an amplifier at CERN and most of the development is in industry. Recently it was reported that L-band 6 kW GaN/SiC single transistors operated at 100 V are

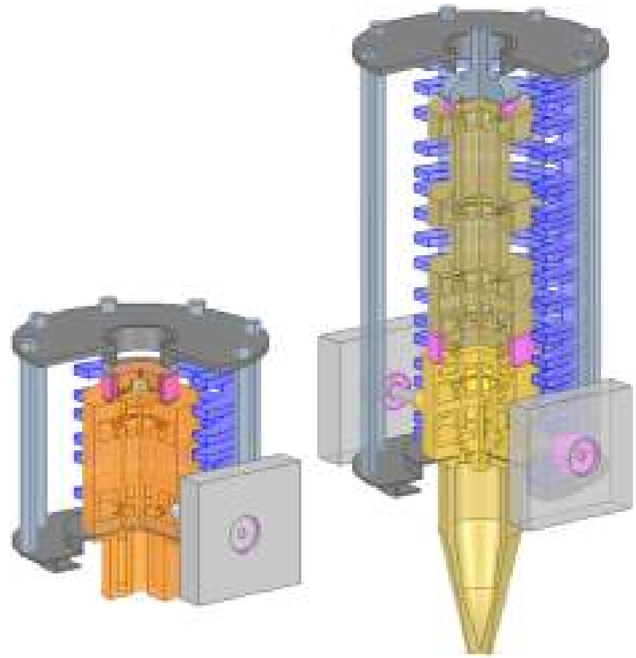


Fig. 3.42 Tristron 3D view (left) compared to TS klystron (right)

commercialised [270], providing drain efficiency of about 80%. So far these chips are operated at a low duty cycle (10%), but predictions are for further performance improvements in the coming years.

The RF power sources are grouped by RF units, each one being individually powered by a power converter located at the surface. Figure 3.43 summarises the distribution schemes for the collider and booster at the different beam energy levels.

3.4.13 RF system integration in the tunnel

The integration studies of the RF system in the accelerator tunnel and in the klystron gallery were considered as high priority and were completed to verify that: (i) the cryomodules and the dedicated services fit, with minor exceptions, in a tunnel with 5.5 m diameter, both for the collider and the booster ring (ii) the RF equipment necessary for the $t\bar{t}$ mode working point fit in the 2032 m of the long straight section. The civil engineering layout, transport constraints, cable trays and general services, as designed for the arcs, were input to the study. The focus was the integration of the cryomodule, cryogenic distribution line and waveguide connection from the FPC to the klystron gallery. All the different working points were considered to ensure feasible transitions from Z to $t\bar{t}$ and coherence in the beam positions between the collider and booster rings, Fig. 3.44.

The cross section in Fig. 3.45 presents the 400 MHz cryomodule in point PH connected to the cryogenic distribution line (QRL) through the jumper. Some space was allocated along the QRL for the service module containing the cryogenic valves and a local heat exchanger (if needed), in the sector with the 800 MHz cryomodules at 2 K, in case the current baseline with a centralised heat exchanger is not viable.

The cryogenic services required for the $t\bar{t}$ working point will be installed at the beginning of machine operation, including all the service modules and jumpers required to feed all the cryomodules. A platform has been included on top of the QRL for the access and maintenance of the FPC and waveguides. Access to both sides of the cryomodule is ensured for the maintenance of the HOM coupler connectors and tuner in case of need. In point PH the 800 MHz cryomodules sit in the shadow of the 400 MHz cryomodules, thus integration is less critical. The cross section in Fig. 3.46 presents the 800 MHz cryomodule in point PL, the same cryomodule design will be compatible with installation on the ground, for the collider, and installation on an elevated platform for the booster, for this reason the FPC is horizontally oriented.

The clashes highlighted in dashed lines can be resolved with the adaptation of the general services, pavement and false ceiling to the requirement of the RF straight section, different to what is required in the arcs. The beam height in the RF straight section should be increased, from the current value of 980 mm in the arcs, to 1200 mm to accommodate the current design of the 400 MHz cryomodule to avoid the clash between the cryomodule supports and the pavement. Several solutions are under evaluation, in case the diameter of the cryomodule cannot be reduced, a slope in the tunnel should be introduced to lower the pavement in only the collider straight sections. After the revision of all the civil engineering and the services, it will also be possible to refine the integration work by adding more details, i.e., patch panels for warm valves, water pumps for the FPC inner conductor cooling, HOM

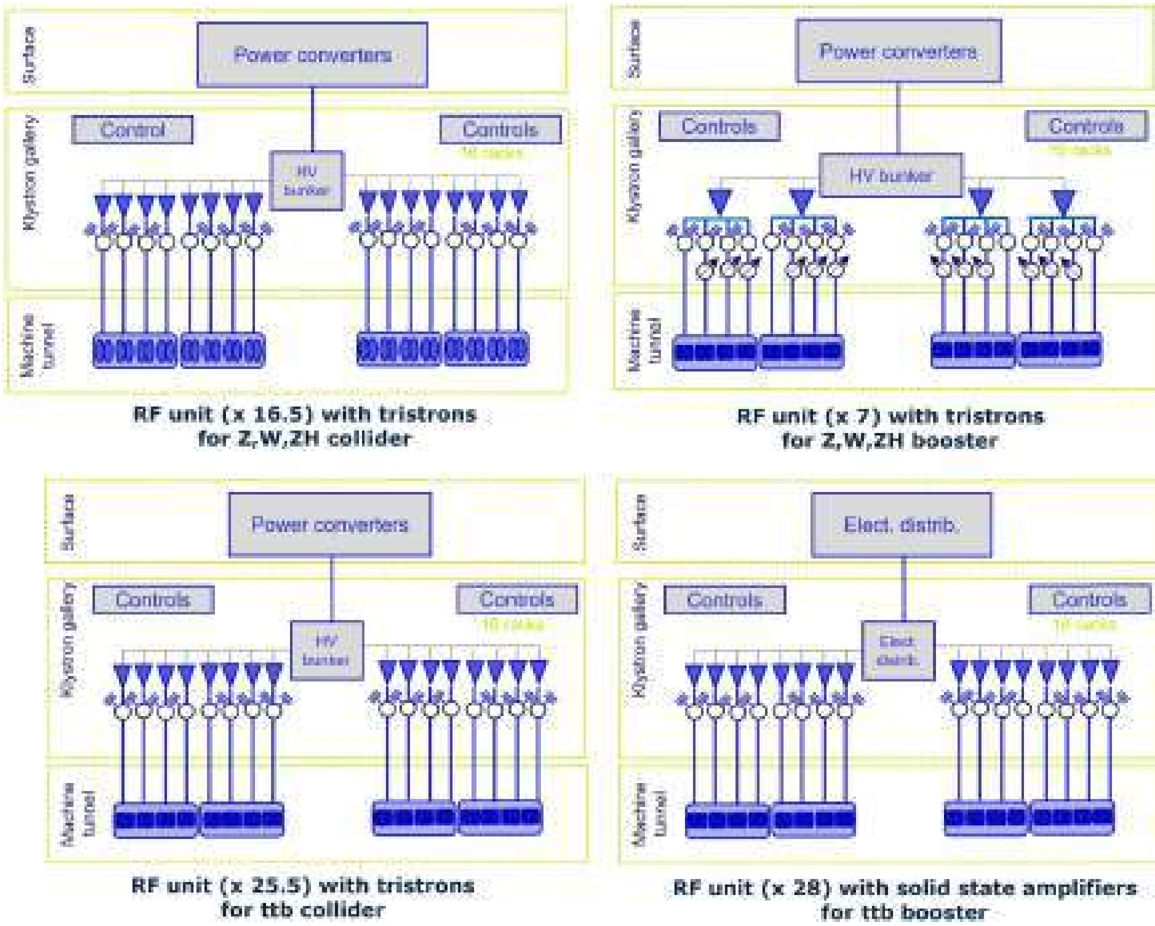


Fig. 3.43 High power RF distribution layouts for the collider and booster

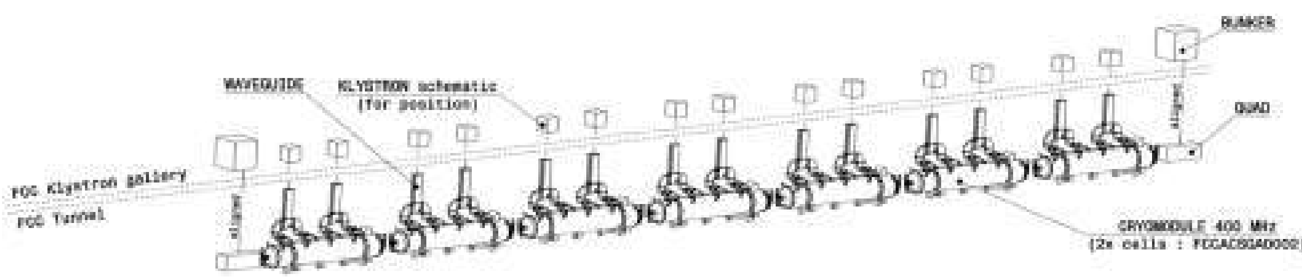


Fig. 3.44 RF longitudinal integration of the 400 MHz cryomodules in point PH, and waveguide system layout from the FPCs to the klystron gallery

load dumpers and BLA with the dedicated water cooled circuits, etc. In the following design stage, the integration work will be refined to adjust the position of the non-accelerated beam, necessary for Z and WW working points, to avoid it being in the transport/passage area.

The collider beam positions and spacing in the RF straight section at the various working points will be achieved by a beam optics system for beam separation and recombination (see Fig. 3.47). It is important to underline that, in point PH both collider beams need steering, the position of the incoming beam needs to be adjusted compared to the arcs, otherwise, the cryomodule would be centred in the machine tunnel, strongly protruding in the transport/passage area. It has been possible to maintain the beam spacing in the collider at point PL at 350 mm, as in the arcs.

The longitudinal integration of the RF equipment along the long straight section was also considered, in parallel with the disposition of klystrons and bunkers in the klystron gallery. A vertical arrangement of the booster and

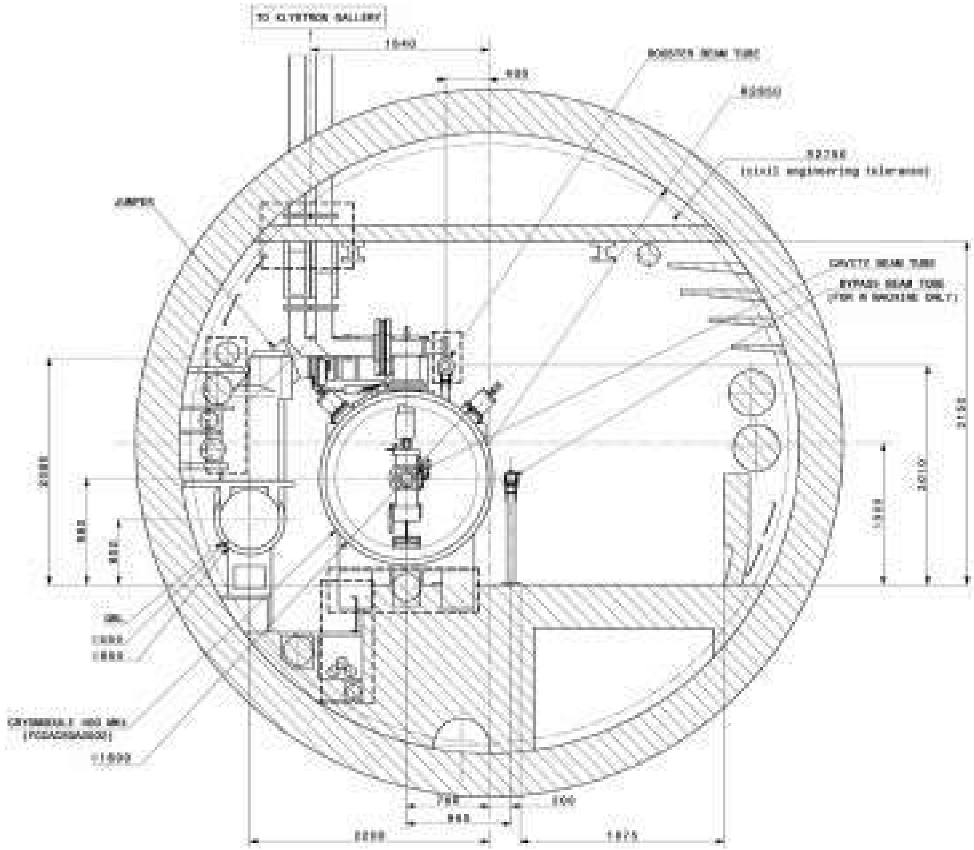


Fig. 3.45 400 MHz cryomodule, integration in point PH (collider). Non-accelerated beam on the right of the cryomodule is necessary for Z and WW working points only

main rings is chosen to ease the installation of the waveguide lines in the ducts. Thanks to a concrete chicane located at the duct entrance, the level of X-rays in the klystron gallery will be limited, thus allowing personnel access to the klystron gallery during commissioning and operation. Seven 400 MHz cryomodules and eight 800 MHz cryomodules are placed between two consecutive quadrupole magnets, whose location vertically corresponds to the location of the bunkers in the klystron gallery. This choice for the longitudinal integration maximises compactness and accounts for the constraint that every bunker can have a maximum of four klystrons on each side. The disposition of the RF equipment, at the $t\bar{t}$ working point, on each side of the IP point is summarised by the scheme in Fig. 3.48.

3.4.14 R&D on SRF

Considering the timeline of the FCC-ee project, there is sufficient opportunity to conduct R&D aimed at enhancing the performance of SRF cavities. This would enable the optimisation of both the size and cost of the overall SRF systems [271].

The 400 MHz cavities built with the Nb/Cu technology require advanced engineering techniques for the copper substrates. The design and fabrication of two bulk seamless 400 MHz copper cavities are ongoing (see Fig. 3.49), allowing the ultimate SRF performance with this geometry and Nb/Cu copper technology to be assessed without the effect of welds in the equatorial area.

Hydroforming technology, which is highly attractive for series production, is being explored in collaboration with KEK. The development of internal welding techniques is also being pursued, in particular, the welding of the RF ports on the cavity beam tubes.

Electropolishing is the best technique for preparing the surface of copper substrates for low surface roughness. The electropolishing setup has been available at CERN since 2022 and was successfully benchmarked on smaller cavities. Some R&D is still needed to optimise the polishing parameters on larger cavities, but a first successful attempt was on an LHC type 1-cell 400 MHz cavity with a simplified geometry (without RF ports - see Fig. 3.50). The most promising coating approach of niobium on copper is high-power impulse magnetron sputtering (HiPIMS), which has shown excellent results on several 1.3 GHz 1-cell cavities. It was performed on a 400 MHz LHC type cavity in 2023 and the test results at 4.5 K and 1.7 K were reported in the mid-term report.

For the 800 MHz cavities built in bulk niobium, the 5-cell bare cavity developed by JLAB on a similar RF design shape has already demonstrated that an accelerating gradient of 30 MV/m is achievable with a quality factor of

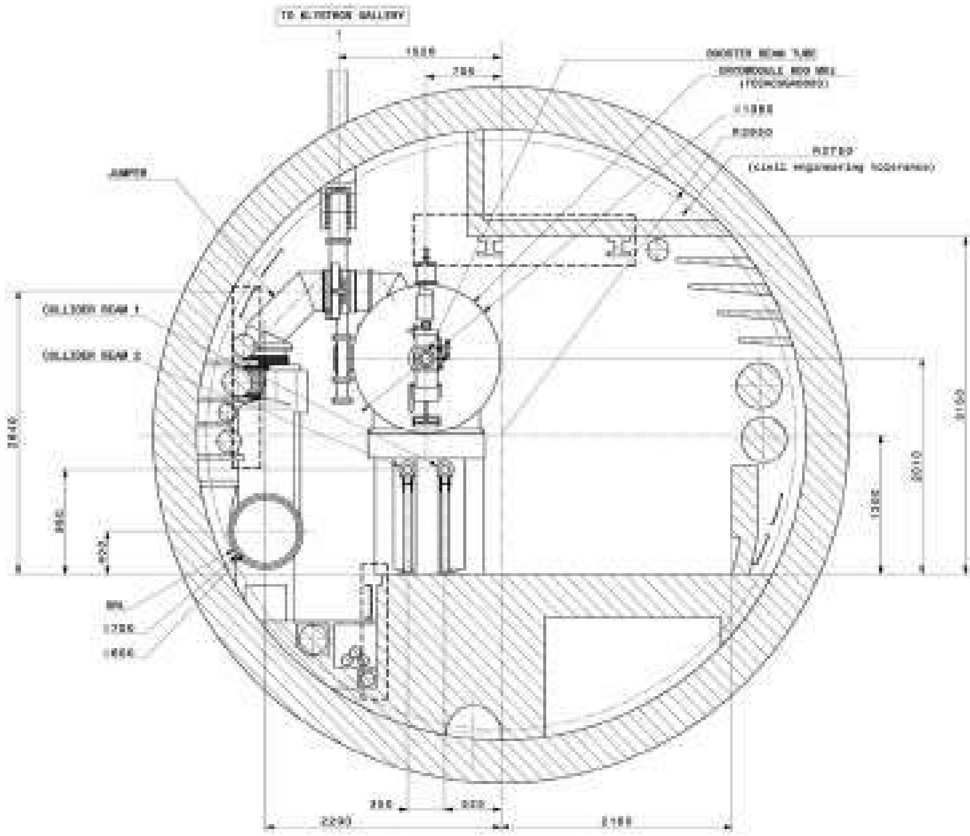


Fig. 3.46 800 MHz cryomodule, integration in point PL (booster)

$Q_0 = 3.0 \times 10^{10}$. To reach a $Q_0 = 3.8 \times 10^{10}$ or higher values, a dedicated R&D programme in collaboration with FNAL [272] is on going. It will be based on a combination of nitrogen doping and mid-temperature bake-out, inherited from the 5-cell 650 MHz cavity R&D performed within the PIP-II project.

An innovative concept of the slotted waveguide elliptical cavity (SWELL) is being developed [273–275] in parallel to the baseline study. The design consists of elliptical cavities where longitudinal waveguide slots crossing perpendicularly to the RF surface are added to damp transverse HOMs. Thanks to this approach, the cavity is seamless by its nature and can be built by sectors, which is very appropriate for precise manufacturing techniques. This quadrant-based configuration allows direct access to the RF surface when separated, thus facilitating the surface preparation, surface inspection and thin film deposition (with any kind of superconducting material). The cavity is also robust against frequency detuning by Lorentz forces or microphonics, and allows cryogenic cooldown with a significantly reduced volume of liquid helium.

RF design efforts led to 400 MHz 2-cell and 800 MHz 6-cell SWELL cavities as alternatives with almost one order of magnitude better transverse impedance damping. A prototype of a simplified SWELL version of a 1-cell 1.3 GHz elliptical cavity has been fabricated for a feasibility demonstration of this new concept (see Fig. 3.51). The cavity was installed in a vertical cryostat at CERN in August 2024. The Q_0 factor was measured at 2.2 K using a self excited loop (SEL) digital LLRF system and the standard decay time procedure. After tens of hours of RF conditioning of low-field multipacting barriers, the accelerating field has been gradually increased. At $E_{\mathrm{acc}} = 1.1$ MV/m, the cavity quenched repetitively, most likely due to the presence of a surface defect observed on one quadrant before cavity assembly. The cavity reached a quality factor of $Q_0 = 1.0 \times 10^{10}$ at 1 MV/m with a very good reproducibility. This corresponds to a residual surface resistance of 20 nΩ as shown on the plot in Fig. 3.51, which is a remarkable result for such a complex RF structure. It demonstrates, in particular, that no RF leakage occurs through the slots and in the contact surfaces of the quadrants. Additional niobium re-coatings, surface treatments and cold RF tests are planned in the next months to study and fully qualify this very attractive and innovative concept.

3.5 Survey and alignment systems

The survey and alignment systems and strategy are based on the steps detailed in this section. Machine and detector components undergo fiducialisation and assembly measurements at the surface to ensure precise alignment

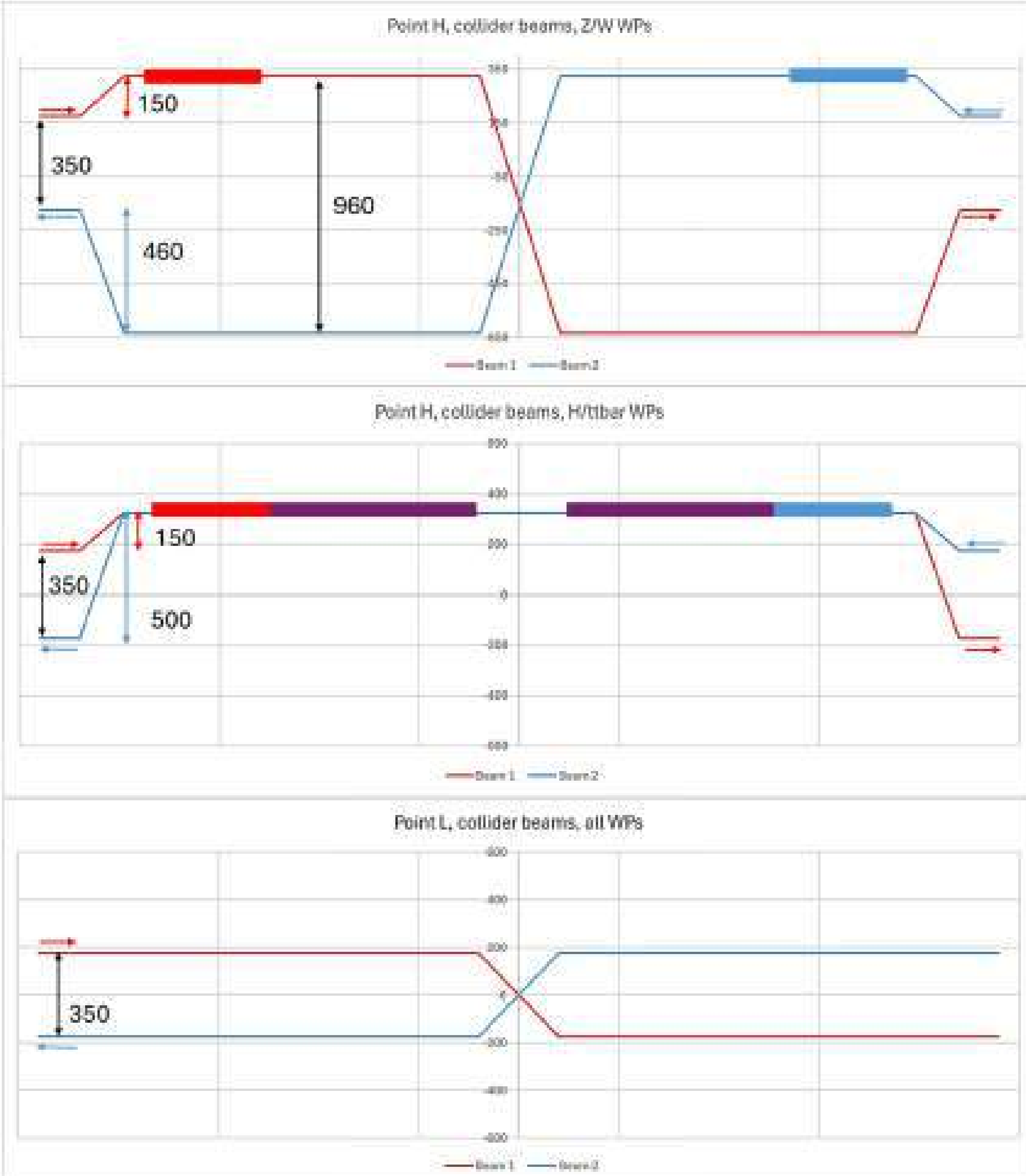


Fig. 3.47 Beam location required at the arc-RF interconnection region, in point PH (top and centre) and in point PL (bottom)

once installed in the tunnel. This process begins with marking the floor to indicate the designated positions for the jacks that will support each component. After placement, these jacks are surveyed to confirm their correct positioning.

Following this, absolute alignment is carried out relative to the underground geodetic network, establishing a stable reference for all components. Once the components are interconnected, a process known as smoothing is performed to refine their relative alignment, ensuring seamless integration.

The final and most time-consuming phase of alignment involves maintaining the initial precision over time. This aspect is particularly critical for a newly constructed tunnel, such as that of FCC-ee, where long-term stability must be carefully monitored and preserved.

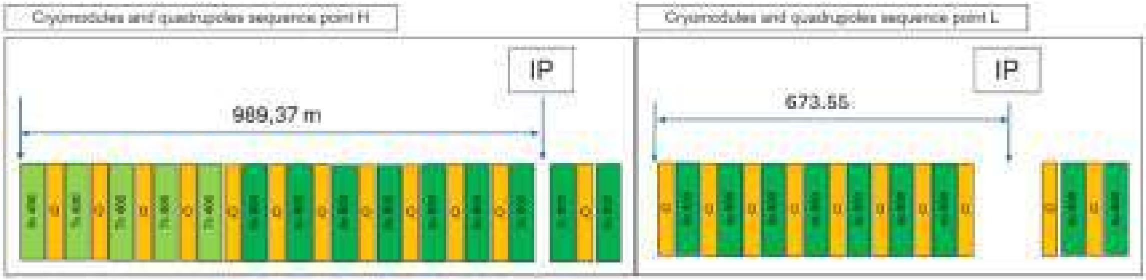


Fig. 3.48 Scheme illustrating the distribution of cryomodules and quadrupoles in point PH (left) and point PL (right)

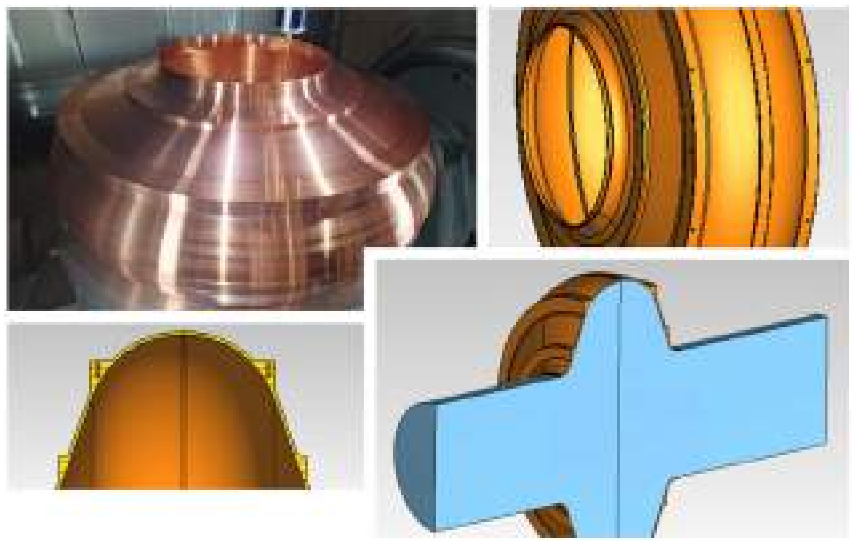


Fig. 3.49 Design and fabrication of the first 400 MHz 1-cell cavity machined from bulk copper

Fig. 3.50 Electropolishing and niobium coating of a simplified LHC 400 MHz cavity

3.5.1 Alignment tolerances for the FCC-ee machine

The initial mechanical alignment tolerances assumed for the FCC-ee arcs are described below. It is assumed that adjacent arc quadrupoles and sextupoles are pre-aligned at 50 µm accuracy with respect to a common ~ 6 m long girder. In the tunnel, the alignment tolerances from girder to girder or between girders are 200 µm over 50 m and 500 µm over 200 m. In the interaction regions (IR), transverse misalignment errors for quadrupole and sextupole reference axes are taken to be ± 100 µm (1σ) (± 250 µm (1σ) longitudinally, and ± 0.25 mrad in roll). Current requirements regarding the alignment are of 30 µm for the final focusing quadrupoles; the LumiCal will need to be aligned at 50 µm, and the screening and compensation solenoids at 100 µm (all values referring to 1σ).

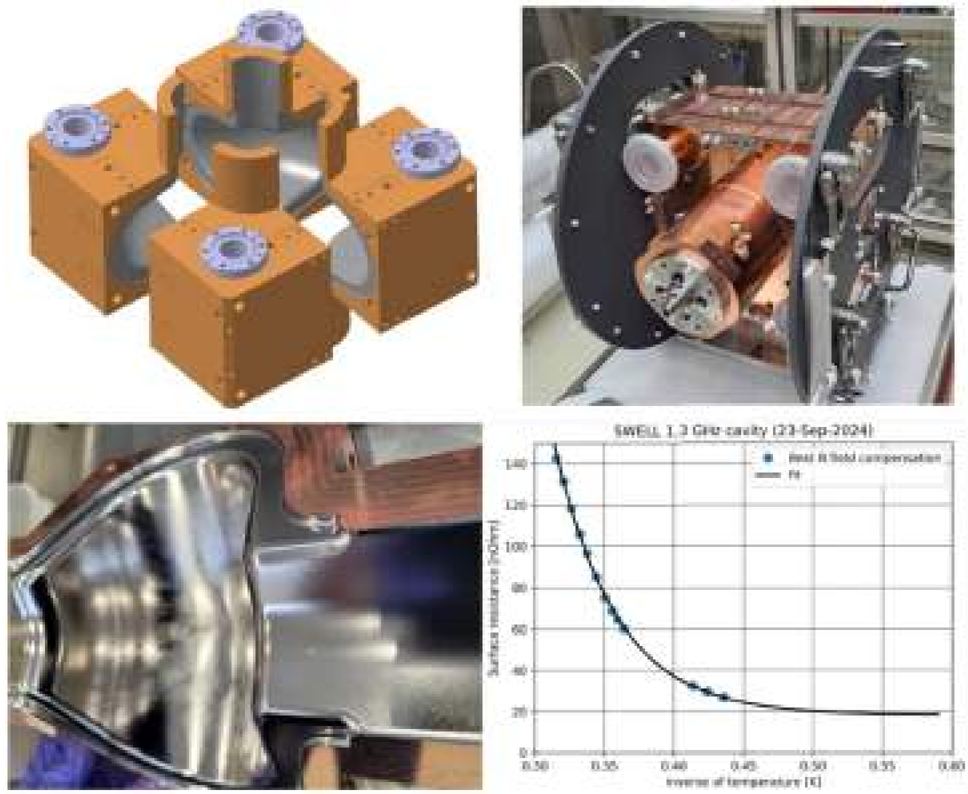


Fig. 3.51 SWELL cavity prototype design, fabrication and test

The figures presented above represent misalignment errors at the level of the reference axis, incorporating both the fiducialisation process and the subsequent adjustment steps. To meet the specified alignment requirements, position determination and adjustment solutions will need to achieve precision and accuracy at least three times higher than the stated tolerances.

Regarding fiducialisation, the required measurement tolerances are well within reach for synchrotrons operating under stable environmental conditions with rigid support structures. However, for FCC-ee, the process must be automated due to the large number of girders and components that require fiducialisation and pre-alignment.

Furthermore, in a newly constructed tunnel such as that of FCC-ee, where stable and unstable areas have yet to be identified, a significantly greater number of components will require (re)alignment compared to the LHC. The implementation of automated solutions will be essential in achieving and maintaining the necessary alignment standards over the machine's operational lifetime.

3.5.2 Alignment tolerances of FCC-ee experiments

The alignment accuracy for the assembly of the experiment is assumed to be similar to that of the LHC experiments, i.e., 0.5 mm with respect to the machine geometry. The positioning and stability tolerances and requirements of each sub-system of the FCC-ee experiments need to be identified in order to estimate the means of adjustment.

3.5.3 Theoretical data

The spatial position and orientation data for the beamline elements including the FCC detectors need to be extracted from the beam optics calculations, such as BEATCH/MADX beamline definition files. Additional parameters necessary for geodetic metrology can be derived from the layout drawings of the detectors.

3.5.4 Metrology

In addition to the metrological controls of detector and machine components throughout the manufacturing and assembly process, the final transfer measurement of the component axis, called fiducialisation, is a major step in the metrologic controls and is mandatory for later alignment. This job is carried out for each piece of equipment whose precise alignment parameters are to be determined. The proposed techniques are similar to those proposed for the Compact LInear Collider (CLIC), i.e., laser tracker and close-range photogrammetry. For smaller components, coordinate measuring machines (CMM) and new technologies such as frequency scanning interferometry (FSI) may be used, depending on the accuracy requested.

For larger components, the effects of thermal expansion must be carefully accounted for and compensated to ensure precise alignment. Metrology measurements should be conducted in a controlled environment to maximise accuracy. On-site measurements in the tunnel or experiment caverns should be minimised, as they inherently introduce uncertainties that can reduce the overall precision of the alignment process.

The feasibility of metrology measurements within the tunnel or caverns must be thoroughly assessed, as factors such as environmental conditions, spatial constraints, supporting systems, and concurrent activities can impact measurement quality and accuracy.

The placement, number, and distribution of alignment targets (fiducials) on the components play a critical role and must be determined based on survey requirements, selected alignment technologies, and the specific constraints of the experiment caverns and accelerator tunnel. Additionally, the supporting system must adhere to alignment specifications and constraints while following established survey guidelines [276].

Depending on the object, the parameters of the fiducialisation are stored in the survey reports or a database and can originate from metrology reports, geometrical quality control measurements or from a specific fiducialisation operation. The external fiducials are supposed to stay visible and accessible for the various measurement operations during the lifetime of the component.

3.5.5 Alignment of accelerator components

Introduction The alignment of the beam components of future CERN accelerators will be achieved with various techniques depending on the alignment tolerance (mainly depending on component type and physics requirements), the sector concerned (long straight sections, arcs, transfer lines, injection/extraction zones, etc.), the geometric dimension of the components, and the phase of the project (initial installation of the machine, a single isolated component alignment, voluntary displacement, smoothing campaign).

The radiation level will also influence the instrumentation and methods chosen for measurement and alignment.

Marking the beam line and supporting system on the floor Using the MAD-X sequence files transmitted by the physicists in charge of beam optics, and prior to the installation of the first component in the tunnel, the vertical projection of the beam point assembly and the position of specific component supports such as jacks must be traced on the ground. This will be based on the geodetic reference network of the tunnel. This tedious work, previously done manually, should be automated in the future (see below).The ground marking prepares the floor for the installation of the equipment support systems and later the components.

Position control of supporting systems Following the installation of the supporting systems of the largest and most voluminous components (mainly jacks), their position must be verified to ensure safe installation and to detect any positioning errors prior to the critical component installation step. The positioning accuracy of the supports can be easily achieved with well-known and standard 3D measurement systems.

Component pre-alignment The pre-alignment phase in the tunnel (not to be confused with the pre-alignment of components on girders before installation in the tunnel) consists of the initial alignment of the components after their installation. This activity is performed using the absolute reference frame, i.e., based on the geodetic reference network of the tunnel.

During this phase, the tolerance required is slightly less stringent than in the relative alignment stage of the machine (smoothing phase), allowing the use of 3D polar measurement techniques such as total stations and laser trackers.

A similar approach will be used when aligning an isolated component, for instance, when replacing a unit with a spare. In such cases, the new component is typically positioned relative to the nearest reference component to ensure continuity in alignment.

Once all components have been pre-aligned, they can be mechanically interconnected, ensuring a stable and precise overall assembly.

Machine smoothing Smoothing consists of refining the relative position of neighbouring components to meet relative alignment tolerances and avoid offset between adjacent components.

The first step is to precisely measure the vertical and radial position of the whole machine or section concerned. In the following step, components outside the alignment tolerances are identified and will be displaced.

The initial machine smoothing after installation is distinguished from maintenance smoothing, which is repeated regularly to compensate for displacements due to mechanical constraints, geological movements or support instability. The frequency of periodic maintenance smoothing depends mainly on physics requirements, ground motion and time available during technical stops.

It is a relatively time-consuming activity. Thus, during machine operation, where maintenance time is limited to yearly technical stops, it is not possible to measure the entire machine. Smoothing is then restricted to some sensitive portions of the machine.

Generally, the acquisition techniques depend on the machine plane to be measured (vertical, radial) and on the required accuracy. For radial measurements, wire offset measurements are favoured, while direct levelling is used for vertical position determination.

Outside the arcs and within much smaller volumes (a few dozen metres at most), 3D polar techniques can also be used for machine alignment.

The most restrictive areas in terms of precision will be equipped with permanent and automatic measurement systems. In addition, most of the machines could, in principle, be measured by the remote alignment system to be developed, which is described below.

Transfer lines The transfer lines are different from the main machine in terms of geometry (continuously changing slope and roll), topology (fewer components and greater spacing) and the alignment needs as the beam passes only once. The alignment techniques must be compatible with these various constraints. In particular, offset measurements and direct optical levelling are significantly more challenging to implement.

Notion of primary and secondary components Since the machine components vary in size and weight, their stability over time also differs. The largest and heaviest components are more stable. These are usually magnets, such as dipoles, which have an impact on the trajectory of particles and are considered as 'primary' elements. The other components are qualified as 'secondary' elements.

From a practical point of view, the precise alignment of primary components is generally performed during the smoothing campaign (see above), while secondary components are mainly aligned with respect to the primary elements in a second phase.

For the FCC-ee the alignment tolerances of the dipoles are quite loose, e.g., at the level of 1 mm transversely. The relative alignment of quadrupole magnets, sextupole magnets, and beam-position monitors (BPMs) is more sensitive. These elements, forming the arc 'short straight sections', should be pre-aligned on common girders prior to installation in the tunnel, as it is being done for modern light sources. The closest of these girders, which are about 25 or 50 m apart in the tunnel, should then be aligned with respect to each other.

Impact of component type on alignment There are several categories of components, each with specific alignment tolerances. Magnetic elements, which actively influence the beam, typically require more precise alignment in at least one plane—whether roll angle, horizontal, or vertical. This is particularly critical for dipole and quadrupole magnets, where small misalignments can significantly affect beam dynamics.

Beam diagnostic equipment forms another group of components with distinct alignment constraints. Some, such as beam position monitors (BPMs), require precise knowledge of their position relative to the primary beamline. This can be achieved using beam-based alignment techniques, ensuring optimal accuracy in beam monitoring and control.

The weight and dimensions of the components play a crucial role in determining the appropriate supporting system and alignment strategy. Stability and safety considerations necessitate the use of isostatic supporting systems, which minimise structural deformations. Additionally, the mechanical design of the components must ensure that deformations remain negligible. The length of the components, along with associated lever arm effects, is a key factor influencing both alignment precision and interconnections within the system.

3.5.6 Interaction regions including MDI

The alignment of the MDI is described further in Sect. 1.6.

The initial alignment in the interaction region, surrounding the MDI (±900 m around the IP) will be performed with the rest of the collider.

Position monitoring is planned for the components of the incoming beam in this region, using a combination of hydrostatic levelling systems (HLS), FSI distance measurements, wire positioning systems (WPS), and inclinometers, resulting in a configuration similar to the HL-LHC. Knowledge gained during CLIC studies (see [277] and [278]) could also be applied if needed. In addition, innovative systems, such as the structured laser beam (SLB) [279], are being studied for use in this region.

3.5.7 Remote alignment and monitoring

Along the straight sections, for example, in the IR areas, the same alignment solutions as those proposed for the implementation phase of the CLIC project can be used [138]. The solutions developed for CLIC will certainly meet the FCC requirements. The transverse position of components will be measured with regard to a long-range straight alignment reference over several hundred metres. Alignment sensors measuring the transverse offsets with respect to an alignment reference will be installed on the components. Overlapping references will be used over very long distances, allowing for a highly accurate determination of a common straight reference. Two types of alignment references can be considered: a structured laser beam (SLB), or a stretched wire. Both systems will have to be combined with a hydrostatic levelling system (HLS) which will provide relative vertical references.

The SLB can be defined as a pseudo non-diffractive optical beam, with a very bright central core, sharp boundaries, a minimal divergence and a theoretically infinite range (tested on 1 km). All of its properties are under evaluation, and its application to the transverse alignment of components and, more particularly, to the FCC-ee is the object of two PhD theses. The R&D on the SLB has just started. Preliminary studies indicate that maintaining the straightness of the SLB along its trajectory requires it to be enclosed within a vacuum pipe. However, due to the specific properties of the beam [280], the required pipe diameter is smaller compared to those used in optical-based alignment systems.

Stretched wires used as straight references are not at a development stage. They have been in use, combined with WPS, for many years in the LHC for the continuous determination of the position of the low beta quadrupoles. The same combination will be used for a full remote alignment system of the main components of the long straight sections around IP1 and IP5 for the HL-LHC project. (see Refs. [281] and [282]). Their main drawback comes from the limited length of cables between each sensor and its remote electronics/acquisition system (maximum 120 m). Cables will be a great concern in the FCC-ee tunnel, from the integration/space available and radiation perspective. One R&D development to overcome this issue would be the development of WPS sensors based on FSI measurements (replacing the current capacitive technology). A 'chained' optical fibre configuration could be developed that would take far less space in the tunnel and could be compatible with the high level of radiation expected during the machine's operation.

Extrapolating such solutions to the arcs will require additional R&D as there is currently no solution allowing the permanent monitoring of the position of components in the arcs. Alignment solutions have been developed for straight portions, not circular ones and should be adapted, either using the specific properties of SLB, or developing a new configuration of alignment references based on 'broken lines' of wires.

Position adjustment is an activity that will be challenging to automate. Since 3D adjustments of components are required, continuous monitoring is essential when using actuators to perform these adjustments in all three dimensions. This ensures that the bellows at the extremities of the component can accommodate the displacement without excessive stress or deformation. Additionally, for longer components, even small movements can create significant lever arm effects, leading to unintended shifts at the opposite end. Real-time monitoring throughout the adjustment process is, therefore, necessary to maintain alignment precision and prevent mechanical strain.

3.5.8 Survey robot options

Given the size of the collider, many alignment steps will have to be automated, from the 3D scans to the initial alignment. A few examples of robot options are provided below. 3D scans could be performed by a 'dog robot', provided that there are permanent targets which define the underground network and allow the geo-referencing of scans. For the step consisting of marking the beam axis and the jack position on the tunnel floor, an increasing number of floor marking robots piloted by tacheometers are now available on the market. An automatic inspection of the position of components pre-aligned on girders could be performed with high accuracy by a robot in the tunnel once the girder is at its final location. In all cases, adaptations to the specific tunnel configuration and the underground geodetic network will be necessary. These may include increasing the density of the network and incorporating permanent targets that various types of instruments can measure to enhance alignment precision.

3.5.9 Impact of beam-based alignment on alignment system requirements

The FCC-ee design assumes one BPM close to each quadrupole. Beam-based alignment (BBA) will determine the BPM position offsets (reflecting both mechanical and electrical errors) with respect to the magnetic centre of the nearby quadrupole and sextupole magnets, and it will help steer the beam through the magnetic centre of these elements by using orbit correctors along with dipolar and (skew) quadrupolar trim coils to minimise feed-down effects. Instead of relying on magnetic trims, Beam-Based Alignment (BBA) could also be carried out using movers. While movers are not included in the current baseline scenario for the arcs, they could be a viable solution for the strong sextupole magnets in the experiment insertions. If movers were to be implemented, their displacement range would determine whether additional measurement systems are required to assess potential risks and ensure safe operation. Since BBA must be performed regularly to monitor and correct possible alignment drifts, the choice of adjustment mechanism should also consider long-term stability and operational efficiency.

3.5.10 Experiments

In the FCC-ee experiments, the geodetic metrology survey work will be performed in different steps: design, manufacturing, construction, assembly, and alignment of the detector elements. This means:

- Participating in the project at an early stage, e.g., when collecting the geometrical parameters, alignment needs and discussing the integration of the survey needs in the design of the infrastructure, tools or detector elements.
- Providing the necessary geometric data for adjustment and control of the assembly infrastructures.
- Providing the position and orientation information related to the FCC-ee detector assembly and tests, i.e., the geometric information:
  - for the detector assembly tooling alignment,
  - for the geometrical follow-up and adjustment of the detector elements during assembly,
  - for the positioning of the detector elements for tests.
- Establishing, measuring, computing and maintaining geodetic networks or coordinate systems and defining the parameters linking them when needed.
- Providing surveyed position and orientation information to locate the detector in the CERN Coordinate System (CCS) and to link it to the accelerator geometry.
- Providing, when necessary, metrology measurements for the fiducialisation of the detector elements as well as of module assemblies, as described in the metrology section above.
- Providing, when and where necessary, geometric control and validation measurements for detector elements as well as module assemblies.
- Providing the control of the position and the alignment of elements and module assemblies in the experiment area.
- Participating in any upgrade projects at an early stage to ensure high-quality geometric information during the lifetime of the detector.
- Providing stability measurements of cavern walls and floor on demand.

This covers both the theoretical and the practical aspects of the geodetic metrology work for the FCC-ee project. The theoretical positions of the beamline elements are provided by the accelerator optics team.

In-field measurements should be performed using suitable survey instrumentation and methods such as total stations, optical levelling, photogrammetry, 3D laser scanners or laser trackers.

3.5.11 Link of machine geometry to the experiment area

The very first geometric link between the tunnel geometry and the experiment cavern is expected to pass directly from the tunnel to the cavern, while the access and visibility exist. In later stages, the geometric link between the accelerator and the experiment area will be performed through the survey galleries using geodetic methods and dedicated monitoring systems as described in the MDI section above.

Marking out With respect to the geodetic network, reference marks representing the projected beam line and the elements to be aligned can be painted on the floor and walls by the survey team. These marks help with the installation of the services and beamline elements. Everybody working in their vicinity must ensure that these marks remain visible. The marks and annotations required have to be defined in collaboration with technical coordination.

Geometric quality control measurement The survey team should provide on-demand, where and when necessary, the geodetic measurements and analysis for the geometrical and dimensional control of prototype and production elements.

Positioning Prior to the installation of the detector elements, their supports are installed by others and pre-adjusted to their nominal position by the survey team. These survey interventions can also happen before the support installation if shims are required to overcome local floor deformations.

Once the detector elements are installed, their initial positioning will be carried out with respect to the geodetic network of the area. Precise survey methods and instrumentation have to be used, such as laser trackers, total stations and direct levelling.

In collaboration with the technical coordination of the experiment, the development and installation of simple alignment systems for the positioning of the detectors after maintenance or equivalent could be included.

3.5.12 As-built survey, 3D scans and measurements

The FCC-ee tunnel will have a diameter of 5.5 m. All services and cable paths will have to be optimised inside. Furthermore, the FCC project has a rather long lifetime: it is planned to dismantle the components of FCC-ee and replace them with a superconducting machine for the FCC-hh after 15–20 years of operation. It will be necessary to perform 3D scans of the empty tunnel as soon as possible, before any services are installed and subsequently perform 3D scans at well-defined milestones: all services in place before the installation of components, all components in place, etc. The geo-referenced 3D point clouds obtained during the installation process will be highly valuable for verifying that components are positioned according to their theoretical locations and for identifying potential interferences between systems. Additionally, these data will play a crucial role in facilitating the future installation of new equipment once the FCC-ee is in operation, ensuring seamless integration and minimising disruptions.

It is recommended to execute equivalent as-built measurements using 3D scans of the civil engineering structures in the experiment caverns, followed by as-built measurements of the infrastructure installed and, finally, the experiments in order to provide 3D documentation of the experiment areas of the FCC-ee and to save time during installation and future upgrade works. The survey team should pre-process these measurements to give the geo-referenced point clouds and their 3D coordinates in the CCS, or a defined experiment coordinate system, to the integration team of the FCC-ee experiments.

By utilising 3D scans, a comprehensive digitisation strategy can be developed, incorporating data-to-cloud solutions for remote visualisation. This will enable access to detail historical documentation, such as girder assembly records, while also supporting the implementation of digital twin technology. A digital twin would allow real-time anomaly detection and advanced simulations, including studies on the impact of temperature variations and other environmental factors.

3.5.13 Software

The Survey Database plays a critical role in storing all the parameters needed for surveyors to align and determine the position of accelerator components in the LHC era. This database stores the calibrated component geometry (fiducialisation) as well as their theoretical positions within the global CERN Coordinate System (CSS). It also contains an element's voluntary displacement (bump) and its measured offset to the theoretical position at a given date. Furthermore, it stores all the measurements acquired and other crucial information, such as calibration parameters of the instruments and sensors.

For the FCC-ee, the survey database will require similar capabilities, including the ability to handle an ever-increasing number of accelerator elements followed in 4D (3D position plus time). Additionally, future concepts such as girders, housing elements and so-called cells will need to be accounted for in the database.

The survey database will need to seamlessly interface with the digital twin framework and any Building Information Model (BIM) solutions implemented for the construction and maintenance of the FCC-ee accelerator infrastructure.

To support planned monitoring systems, the development of custom databases or integration into a broader CERN-standard database will be essential. These databases must efficiently manage an ever-growing number of sensor parameters—both existing and newly developed—to ensure reliable data processing for computational models. Additionally, automated, robot-based, and as-built measurement data will need to be incorporated, either within a dedicated system or as part of CERN's global database infrastructure.

Moreover, due to the inherent complexity of the data structure, dedicated APIs should be developed to enable secure and efficient access to internal data for various CERN applications, including survey-related tools. These interfaces will be designed using standard IT technologies, ensuring interoperability with other systems and facilitating seamless data exchange across different platforms.

Given the sheer volume of data and the complexity of the survey processes, specialised software will be required for geodesy, alignment, and surveying. Commercial software may have serious limitations due to the specificity of the alignment processes that involve combining several methods of observation, geodesy aspects, and non-widely used sensors and instruments.

Although a significant level of automation is planned, in-field intervention by surveyors will be required to observe, check, and, in some cases, move an accelerator element. As such, specific computing interfaces will be needed to acquire geometrical observations from the survey instrument. In-house developed solutions will provide the geometric data in a reliable and adapted way. New processes will require either the evolution of the current software, such as SMART [283] and TSUNAMI [284] or the development of entirely new software adapted to the FCC-ee alignment strategy. Most likely, surveyors in the field will use a combination of existing commercial software that satisfies typical needs and follows standard procedures, with in-house software that meets CERN and FCC-ee specific workflows and instrumentation. Common rules, formats and standards should, therefore, be defined and implemented; this strategy will involve strong and long-term industrial partnerships.

Monitoring systems will also be put in place, and acquiring data from these systems will require special development to be integrated into future standards at CERN, according to the evolution of the control system IT-infrastructure (communication middleware and low-level framework controlling the accelerator equipment). Post-processing the permanently acquired data is a crucial step. It involves a variety of tools available to surveyors or machine-based routines to compute the positions and their related statistics for numerous geometric elements such as points, planes, lines, or circles. In configurations where the monitoring system must provide real-time positions, for example, when synchronised with the accelerator's timing system, optimisation strategies should be found and implemented in the global calculation process. Collaborations with academic partners will be a key to success in developing new algorithms and achieving the expected performance.

The main computation shell, LGC [285], will need to evolve or be re-developed to handle new mathematical models describing the behaviour of new instruments or sensors. It will need to be a single point entry from across most of the survey, alignment, and geodesy projects. It will need to be able to handle most of the survey processes and combine several sources of data in a reliable, fast, and integrated way.

Special post-processing algorithms and dedicated routines, such as smoothing algorithms or best-fit processes, for various geometric primitives will need to be available. Automated processes intended for fiducialisation, robot-based measurements or any other geometrical checks may also require dedicated post-processing tools and algorithms.

In summary, the feasibility study has provided valuable insights into the surveying, alignment, and geodesy requirements for the FCC, highlighting the need for further analytical refinement and dedicated development to establish a robust software environment and adequate database. While many existing solutions can be adapted, some aspects of the FCC-ee project will require the development of specialised tools or the evolution of current software. Particular attention must be given to data storage and management strategies to ensure long-term accuracy, reliability, and interoperability with other systems.

3.6 Beam intercepting devices

The FCC-ee complex, including the collider, booster, and injectors, will require several beam-intercepting devices to be installed in the various accelerators, covering a wide range of functionalities. At this point, the following devices have been identified:

- Positron target (injector)
- Extraction dumps & spoilers (collider and booster)
- Beamstrahlung (photon) dump
- Betatron and momentum collimators
- Synchrotron radiation (SR) collimators
- Interaction region (IR) masks and machine detector interface (MDI) devices
- Injection protection devices (collider and booster)
- Extraction protection devices (collider and booster)
- Beam stoppers
- Slits/scrapers
- Collimators (booster)

A detailed study and design process is required to ensure that all these devices meet their specific operational requirements. So far, three key components—collimators, the positron target, and photon dumps—have been identified as presenting significant technological challenges. Addressing these challenges necessitates dedicated R&D efforts and prototyping to develop viable solutions.

As the functional requirements of additional components become fully defined, further challenges are expected to emerge. In particular, injection protection devices likely need to intercept a low-emittance beam with high-energy density, a condition that could potentially damage or destroy conventional materials. Therefore, advanced material research and innovative engineering solutions are critical.

Similarly, some interaction region (IR) and machine-detector interface (MDI) masks are expected to experience substantial energy deposition, leading to significant thermo-mechanical loads. Their design must adopt suitable materials and structural configurations capable of withstanding these conditions. In extreme cases, sacrificial protection devices may need to be incorporated to safeguard critical elements and ensure the long-term integrity of the system.

3.6.1 Lepton dumps and spoilers

Specific dumps are necessary to safely absorb the beams from the collider and booster. There are two dumps for this purpose, one for positrons and one for electrons. Each dump will receive the beams from both the collider and the booster. Preliminary estimates indicate that spoilers upstream of the dumps are not required, as the beam will be sufficiently diluted to allow the dump to manage the thermo-mechanical loads safely.

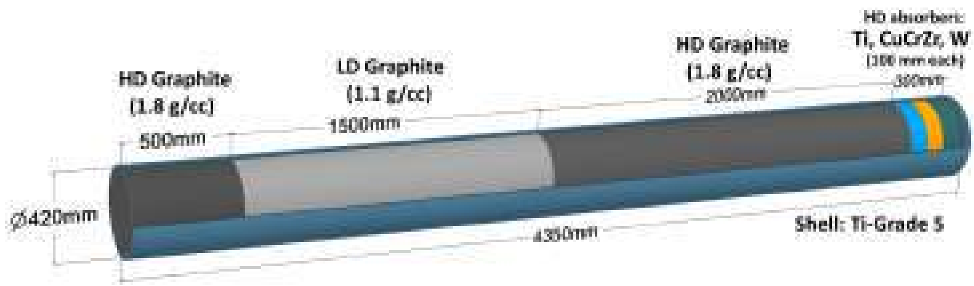


Fig. 3.52 Schematic diagram of the FCC-ee dump block design, showing the material for the dump core and the vessel

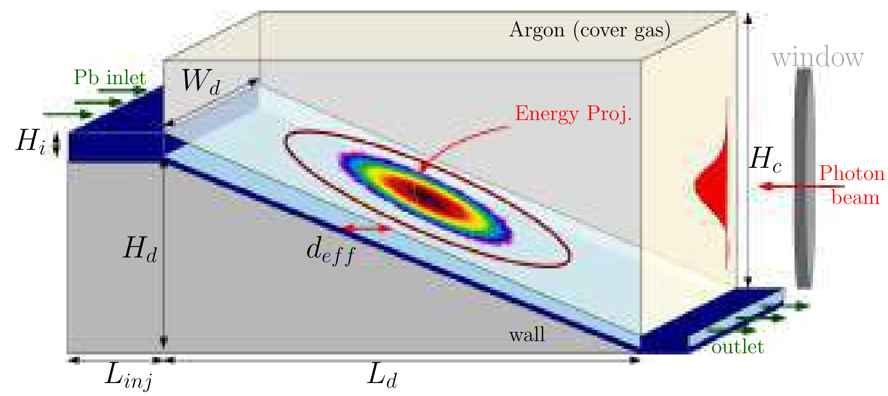


Fig. 3.53 Schematic of the FCC-ee beamstrahlung dump

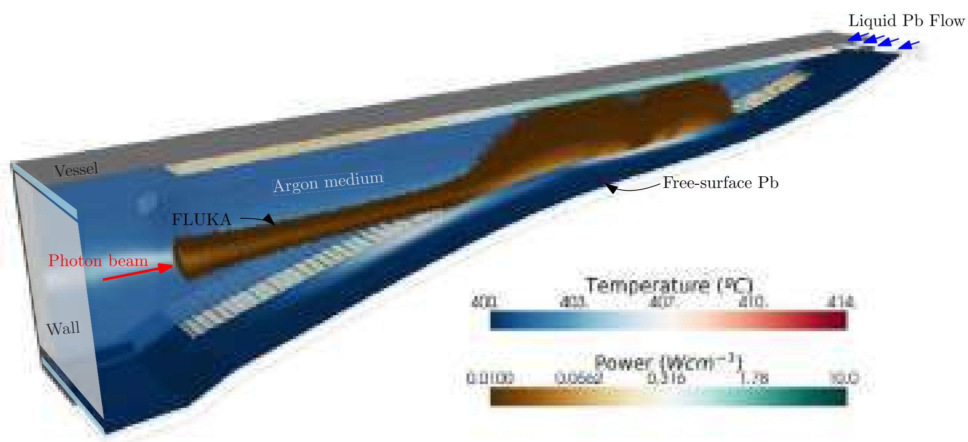


Fig. 3.54 Preliminary simulation of liquid-lead beamstrahlung dump

Nevertheless, if, after detailed studies, spoilers are deemed necessary, they have already been studied. The principle would be to use passive graphite cylinders, some hundreds of metres upstream of each dump [286].

The design concept planned for the dumps is similar to the current LHC dumps [287], i.e., a combination of different graphite and CfC grades enclosed in a metallic, cylindrical vessel (Fig. 3.52). Also, the dimensions are expected to be similar to those of the LHC dumps (diameter in the order of 400-700 mm × length ∼5 m).

3.6.2 Beamstrahlung radiation dumps

High-intensity beamstrahlung (BS) radiation is expected to be generated at the interaction points due to the synchrotron radiation emitted during the collision in the electromagnetic field of the opposing beam. Dedicated devices are required to safely absorb the power carried by this beam, which can reach hundreds of kilowatts. One BS dump is required on each side of each interaction point; hence, a total of eight dumps are needed for the entire collider. One of the most efficient materials for absorbing this type of radiation is lead. Moreover, in order to avoid thermal-stresses and unpredictable change of phase during operation, liquid lead, circulated in a closed circuit, has been chosen as the baseline (Figs. 3.53 and 3.54). Moreover, due to the strong dependence of the photon beam power to beam separation, a robust system capable of absorbing rapid power excursions is required. Research and development activity for the optimisation of this device is ongoing, and a robust prototyping activity is envisaged in the next phase of the project.

Additionally, a robust shielding enclosure needs to be installed around the liquid lead system so that activation of the cavern and limitations to personnel access to the area are avoided. An alternative design using gas-cooled graphite discs is also being considered. Both design options are to be studied and prototyped to have a robust design for such a device.

3.6.3 Betatron and momentum collimators

The design of these devices will depend on the operating requirements and the accident scenarios that they may need to withstand. Since these devices are located in proximity (and even interact with) to the beam, special constraints are imposed so that their impedance is as low as possible.

The selected materials and geometries must preserve beam quality while ensuring that the devices can withstand beam impacts under off-normal conditions, including potential accident scenarios.

A total of 58 units will be required, covering all installations at point PF, within the experiment insertions, and the shower absorbers. The design will incorporate key improvements based on operational experience from the LHC and SuperKEKB collimation systems. Openable tanks will be implemented to facilitate maintenance and replacement, while optimised bellows movement will enhance mechanical flexibility and reduce wear. The use of high-performance absorbing materials will ensure the system can withstand sustained beam loads without degradation, and enhanced radiation resistance will contribute to long-term durability. Additionally, reliable actuation mechanisms will be developed to enable precise and repeatable positioning. These design choices aim to maximise system robustness, ease of maintenance, and overall operational reliability.

3.6.4 Synchrotron radiation collimators

These devices have a different function to the betatron and momentum collimators. However, the design considerations and constraints are expected to be similar due to their proximity to the beam. The materials and technologies selected for the hardware design will be based on the functional requirements. A total of 48 units will be required for operation.

3.6.5 Interaction region masks and absorbers

As their names suggest, these devices absorb secondary particle showers generated by upstream collimators and to protect sensitive hardware in the interaction regions.

The specific design of these components may vary depending on their exact function and installation layout. They may incorporate either fixed or movable absorbing elements, depending on operational requirements. Given the high-energy environment, high-density materials such as tungsten heavy alloys are preferred for their superior absorption properties.

A total of 16 of these devices will be needed, with two per beam positioned upstream of each interaction point.

3.6.6 Injection protection devices

These devices protect the machine from any physical damage in case of injection failure (e.g., beam on the wrong trajectory). These devices are expected to have a similar function to the TDIS for the (HL-)LHC machine (see Fig. 3.55).

The materials and design to be selected must fulfil the functional requirements whilst guaranteeing robust protection of the machine elements that may be exposed to accidental injection failures. One device per injection point will be required (hence, a total of 2).

3.6.7 Extraction protection devices

These devices are responsible for protecting the machine from any physical damage in case of extraction failure scenarios (e.g., a beam at the wrong trajectory). These devices are expected to hold a similar function as the TCDS/TCDQ system for the (HL-)LHC machine.

The selected materials and design must meet the functional requirements while providing reliable protection for machine elements that could be exposed to accidental injection failures. To ensure adequate safeguarding, one device will be required per extraction point, resulting in a total of two units.

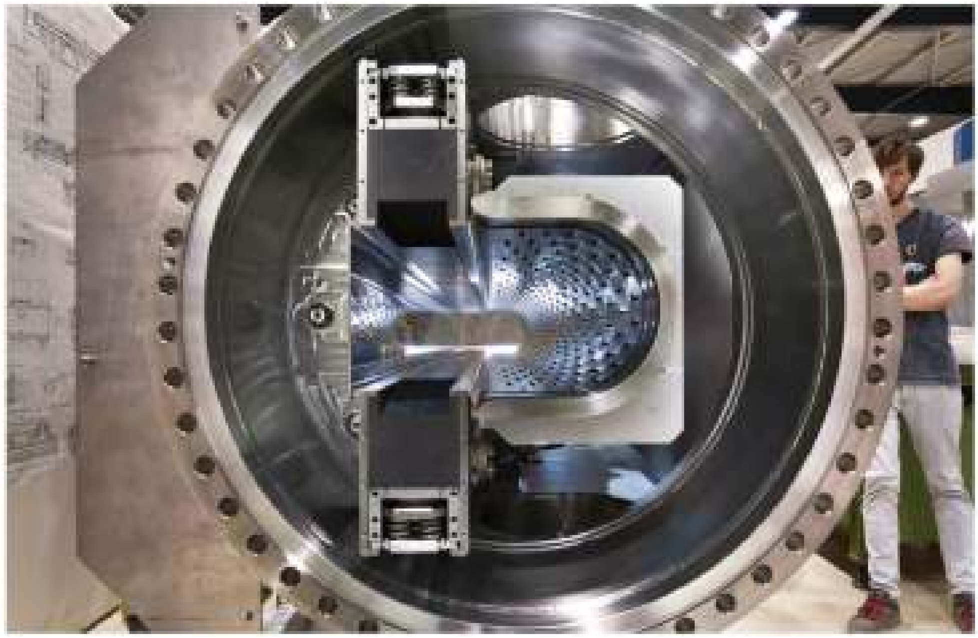


Fig. 3.55 Front image of the (HL-)LHC injection protection device, the TDIS. It shows the two graphite absorbers, kept in place by a TZM back stiffener and TiGr5 clamps. The RF screen for the circulating beam is visible on the right side

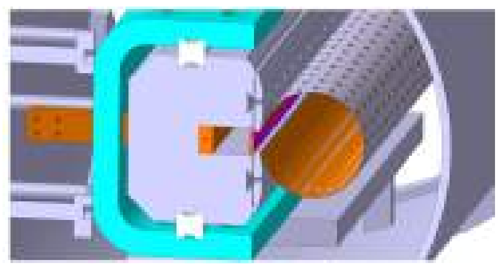


Fig. 3.56 Mechanical design concept for the collider thin, under vacuum, injection septum

3.7 Beam transfer systems and separators

3.7.1 Beam transfer

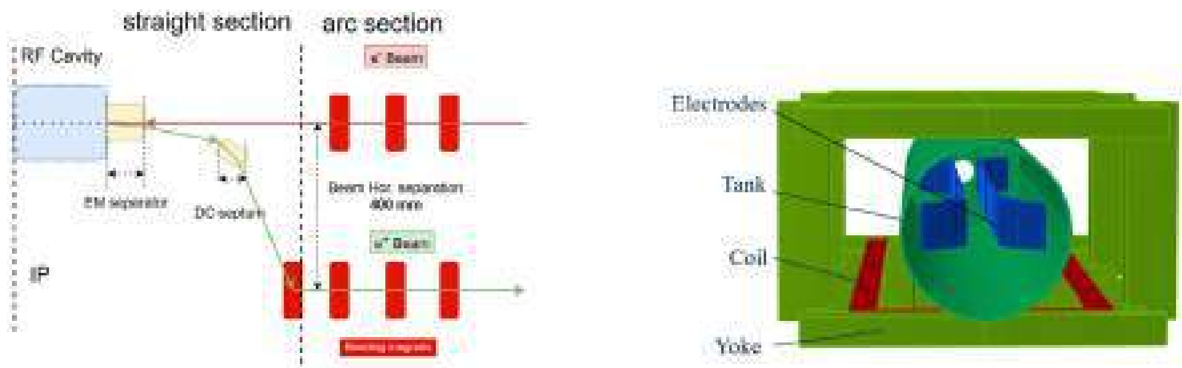
The concepts for the beam transfer systems of the collider and their associated requirements are discussed Sect. 1.8. This section focuses on a few systems, but a comprehensive assessment of the technical choices and specifications can be found in [177].

Thin septum For collider injection, a very thin septum with an apparent blade thickness of up to 2.8 mm is required (see Table 1.18). The long pulse length of at least 304 µs prevents using an eddy-current, so the proposed topology is a direct drive, under vacuum, septum. Figure 3.56 shows the mechanical concept for the septum, with the thin blade carrying the drive current between the injected and circulating beam, shown in magenta. A circular perforated shield carries the image current of the circulating beam to minimise the impedance.

During injection, the distance between the blade and the circulating beam becomes very small. The design will need to consider both synchrotron radiation and direct impact from the beam halo, with the possible need for a specific mask to protect the thin blade of the septum.

Kicker systems For the collider dump and injection systems, the kicker requirements are listed Tables 1.18 and 1.19. Benefiting from the design of a completely new accelerator complex, the same kicker hardware design was selected for both systems. A ferrite-loaded lumped-inductance kicker magnet operating at relatively low current and voltage is selected. This choice of an out-of-vacuum magnet enhances reliability, reduces costs, and simplifies maintenance, making it more favourable compared to other technologies, such as striplines, considered during the feasibility study. Additionally, this magnet topology was previously implemented in LEP, where it demonstrated reliable performance in a lepton collider environment.

A primary constraint for the system presently considered is to rise and fall within the time between trains, within less than 600 ns. This limits the maximum length of each kicker to 0.7 m and requires a total of 16 kickers for the



(a) (b)

Fig. 3.57 Schematic representation of the separator system function in PF (a) and the concept of an EM separator combining electric and magnetic fields (b)

injection and 18 for the dump. Every magnet will be connected to its generator with a maximum cable length of approximately 250 m. Additionally, harmonising the systems across the FCC machine can lead to significant cost savings.

For the collider injection, two generator options are possible: a pulse forming network (PFN)-based pulse generator or a Marx generator, with the latter being the preferred choice as it maintains a lower voltage. To compensate for the long flattop duration, a significantly large capacitor is required, necessitating adequate space allocation in the service gallery. The magnets will operate in short-circuit mode for the dump system, since there is no fall time requirement.

3.7.2 Separators

An electromagnetic (EM) separator is required at the entry and exit of the RF section to merge and separate beams travelling in opposite directions (see Fig. 3.57a). Operating for H and $t\bar{t}$ modes, they allow both beams to circulate on the same trajectory in the cavity.

To achieve this, perpendicular electric and magnetic fields are used to deflect the outgoing beam while allowing the incoming beam to maintain a straight trajectory, preventing synchrotron radiation from being directed towards the RF section. A key challenge lies in generating the extremely low magnetic fields required to counteract the electric field in one direction, as remanent magnetisation can disrupt the delicate field balance. The current design concept [288], which explores shaping the end fields and potentially implementing an air-coiled dipole magnet, is under active investigation to ensure that the required field overlap is both technically feasible and stable (see Fig. 3.57b).

Additional design considerations include beam impedance, thermal loads, and the risk of high-voltage sparks. To minimise impedance, the integration of ground electrodes along the length of the separator has been proposed. However, synchrotron radiation striking these electrodes must be taken into account in the cooling strategy. The potential for stray particles and electrical discharges further necessitates a design that allows either collective or independent power regulation of the separators.

Maintaining proper overlap of the electric and magnetic fields is another key challenge. Online measurements of the magnetic field or beam position could be incorporated into fast feedback loops, enabling real-time corrections to ensure field balance during operation. While the current design does not include active cooling for the electrodes, energy deposition due to RF heating and synchrotron radiation must be carefully assessed. Although active cooling remains a viable option, its implementation would increase both cost and system complexity [289].

Important uncertainties remain regarding the high voltage breakdown probabilities in the presence of synchrotron radiation. An R&D programme has been initiated to quantify this relation, but the present concept addresses it by limiting the maximum electric field to 1.46 $\mathrm{MV\,m^{-1}}$. Electric breakdown during beam operation will also need to be considered for interlocking and machine protection strategies, as the sudden loss of the electric field will cause strong betatron oscillations of the circulating beam.

Dedicated DC septa magnets are needed towards the arc from this separator to further separate the trajectories up to the nominal arc separations. Two groups with thin and thick septa will operate at a relatively high field of up to 0.244 T for $t\bar{t}$ mode. The resulting high power of the synchrotron radiation generated will need specialised absorbers to protect other nearby components and downstream septa.

The combined system of EM separator and DC septa is required for the higher energy modes where the collider cavities are shared between the two beams. The present concept results from the initial studies conducted [288, 290]

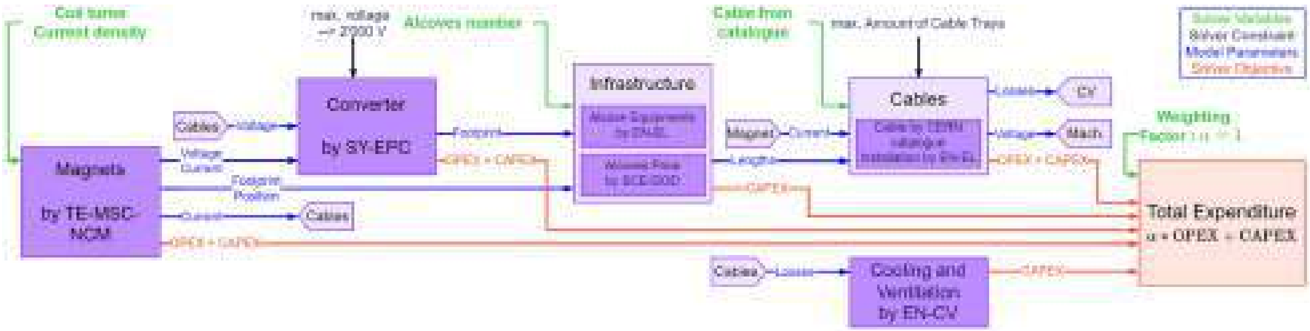


Fig. 3.58 Interconnected sub-models within the global optimisation of the magnet powering systems

and a more detailed review of the overall implementation and operation of the separator system will be needed in the technical design phase.

3.8 Powering systems

3.8.1 Collider magnet powering systems

Global optimisation of the magnet powering systems Evaluating cost-effective, efficient and reliable powering solutions is critical to assessing the feasibility of the FCC project. This requires balancing factors such as current density, number of turns, magnets in series, power converters location, energy storage systems and redundancy, while complying with constraints like footprints, power losses, and machine performance.

For instance, increasing cable current density lowers capital cost by allowing smaller cross-section cables but raises operational costs due to higher power losses. Identifying a current density that minimises total costs, both capital and operational, is crucial. Tunnel and alcove space must also be considered: Is there room for larger cables, or should space prioritise high-current cables? Could shorter cables reduce expenses further?

A comprehensive optimisation model addresses these complexities. This global model evaluates interconnected systems/circuits configurations, machine placements, and constraints, providing actionable insights to guide design decisions. Sub-models for magnets, cables, trays, power converters, alcoves, and cooling systems were developed in collaboration with feasibility study teams. Figure 3.58 illustrates their interconnections, which are critical for global optimisation.

The main output, total expenditure (TOTEX), combines capital (CAPEX) and operational (OPEX) expenditures:

$$\text{TOTEX} = \text{CAPEX} + \alpha \cdot \text{OPEX} \tag{3.4}$$

Where TOTEX [CHF] is the total expenditure; CAPEX [CHF] is the capital expenditure; OPEX [CHF] is the operational expenditure; α is the weighting factor, a parameter to balance the relative importance of CAPEX and OPEX.

The global model also outputs other important parameters such as power consumption, power losses, material masses and carbon footprint. Key inputs include the number of alcoves, cable and magnet current density, magnet turns and circuit configurations. Constraints include the maximum voltage drop and the availability of cable trays.

An evolutionary optimisation algorithm, suited for multi-variable, non-linear and non-continuous systems, iteratively determines the input parameters that minimise TOTEX while respecting constraints.

The model guided choices for magnet and cable parameters to identify cost-effective solutions. The magnet parameters were refined by the magnet team to meet additional constraints and form the baseline of this report.

Collider magnet circuits Magnet powering is performed by power converters in alcoves located either at the end of the straight section or in the machine tunnel, called *Big Electrical Alcove* and *Small Electrical Alcove* respectively. The installation of power converters in the machine tunnel is not considered due to space and radiation constraints.

The location of the power converters is dictated by several factors, including the granularity of control required, the maximum voltage tolerance of the cable insulation and the resulting impact on expenditure for cables and converters. The granularity of control required by the optic layout:

- Collider dipoles, as well as collider quadrupole focusing and defocusing magnets, can each be powered in series within their respective family.
- Collider sextupoles need to be powered in groups of two or four (depending on the energy level).
- Collider tapering magnets can be powered in groups of up to four consecutive magnets.
- Collider correctors need to be powered individually.

Table 3.15 Collider Magnet Powering Circuits

	Magnet Quantity	Circuit Quantity	Peak Current (A)	Peak Voltage (V)
Dipole	5680	16	3665	420
Quadrupole (F and D)	2836	32	366	1914
Sextupole (F and D)	4672	1168	178	284
Dipole Tapering	5680	710	7	148
Quadrupole Tapering	5672	709	9	150
Horizontal Corrector	2824	2824	8	47
Vertical Corrector	2824	2824	14	48
Skew Quadrupole	2824	2824	10	44
†*Straight Section*	*n/a*	*1666*	*n/a*	*n/a*
†*Injection*	*n/a*	*n/a*	*n/a*	*n/a*
Collider subtotal	**34,698**	**12,773**	-	-
Booster Subtotal	21,068	7917	-	-
Total	**55,766**	**20,690**	-	-

†Magnet specifications not yet fully defined or nonexistent, values extrapolated

The power converters for the collider dipoles and quadrupoles are installed in the big electrical alcoves at the end of the straight section.

In contrast, all other converters are located in the small electrical alcoves of the tunnel, as they power fewer magnets in series. Table 3.15 presents the quantity of magnets and circuits and the powering parameters.

Magnet specifications and quantities for the *straight section* and the *injection* are not yet defined, estimations were made.

For the Booster details, see Table 6.7 in Sect. 6.7.1

Precision of power converters Converter precision class is used to encapsulate metrics such as accuracy, reproducibility, stability, resolution and tracking. Depending on the precision class, the cost and complexity of the power converters varies significantly. Table 3.16 shows the precision classes used for CERN power converters.

Currently power converters offering class 4 precision have been considered, but the current precision requirements for the power converters remain unspecified. These requirements are essential to determine the precision class and, consequently, the cost implications of the converters.

Standard precision converters (class 7) are readily available from manufacturers, offering a cost-effective solution for most applications. However, a step higher in precision involves additional costs due to more stringent stability and resolution requirements, which remain manageable within standard practices. In contrast, the highest precision converters, often required for the most demanding applications, are not only difficult to manufacture but also come with substantial cost increases. Defining the precision class required is thus critical to accurately estimate the capital expenditure and to identify whether standard or custom-designed converters will be necessary.

Availability of power converters Please see Sect. 2.4.4.

3.8.2 RF powering

The RF systems of the FCC-ee machine will be distributed between point PH, which will host the collider RF, and point PL, which will house the booster RF. The RF infrastructure will evolve throughout the operational lifecycle of FCC-ee, adapting to the different modes of operation. The primary RF amplifiers will be tristrons (or potentially klystrons), while the booster in the $t\bar{t}$ phase will utilise solid-state amplifiers (or possibly IOTs).

The tristrons will require a high-voltage DC supply, which will be provided by the RF main power converter system. This system is planned to be located on the surface and will require a 40 kV AC supply. In contrast, the solid-state amplifiers for the booster during $t\bar{t}$ operation will be installed underground in the klystron galleries and will operate with a low-voltage AC supply.

The electrical infrastructure must be designed to accommodate all modes of operation, ensuring sufficient capacity for the $t\bar{t}$ phase, which has the highest power demand. Given the substantial energy requirements of the RF systems, a dedicated branch of the machine's electrical network will be allocated to their supply, ensuring stable and efficient power distribution.

Table 3.16 HL-LHC Precision class and metrics

	Class							
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Resolution [ppm]	0.5	0.5	1.0	1	1	1	1	1
Initial uncertainty after cal. [2x RMS ppm]	2.0	2.0	3.0	7	10	50	100	200
Linearity [max. ppm]	2.0	2.0	5.0	8	9	20	50	100
Stability during fill (12 h) [2x RMS ppm]	1.0	2.6	15.5	33	39	50	100	200
Short term stability (29 min) [2x RMS ppm]	0.2	0.4	1.2	2	5	10	20	50
Noise (< 500 Hz) [2x RMS ppm]	3.0	5.0	7.0	15	19	50	100	200
Fill to fill repeatability [2x RMS ppm]	0.7	1.6	14.5	32	38	60	100	200
Long term fill to fill stability [2x RMS ppm]	9.5	9.5	26.5	56	64	200	500	1000

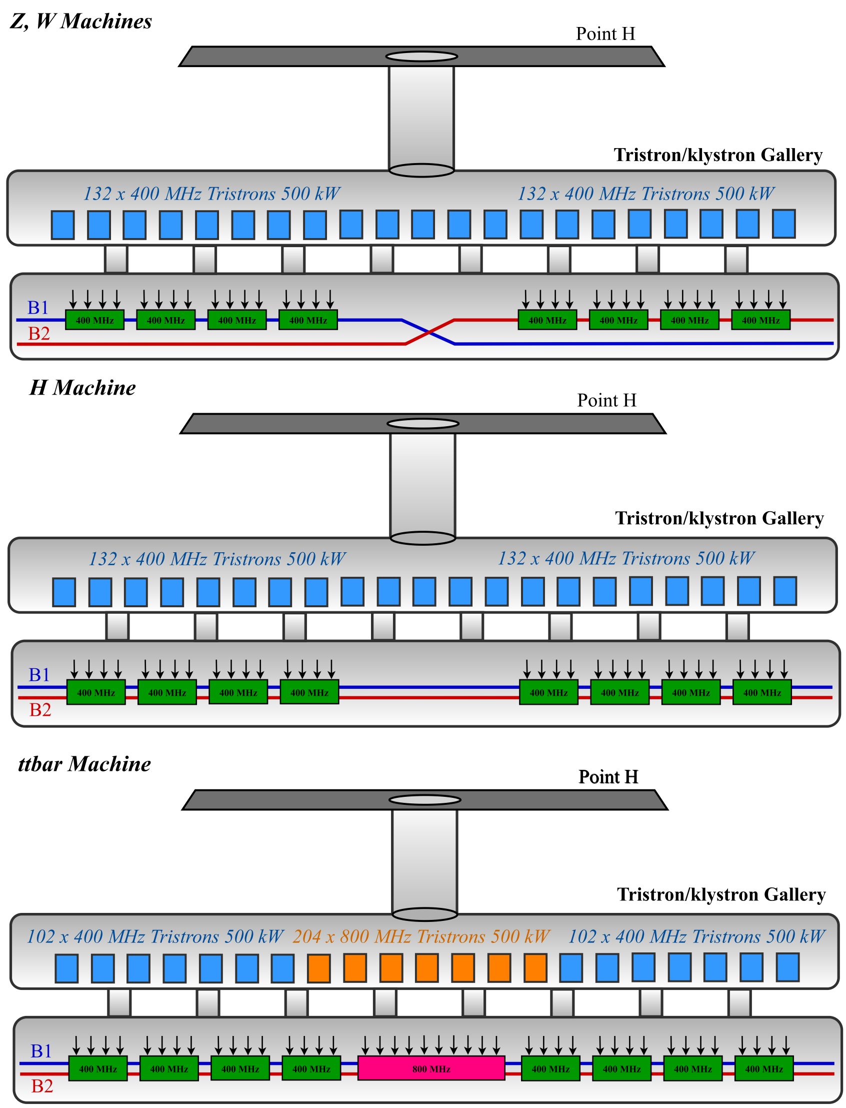


Fig. 3.59 Collider RF amplifiers as a function of operating mode

Point PH layout The number of RF cavities and RF amplifiers will increase with the beam energy, see Fig. 3.59. There will be updates to the machine for each operating mode. The strategy is to increase the number of cavities and RF amplifiers within the operating year. The technical infrastructure to cover all modes of operation will be installed from the beginning, see Fig. 3.60.

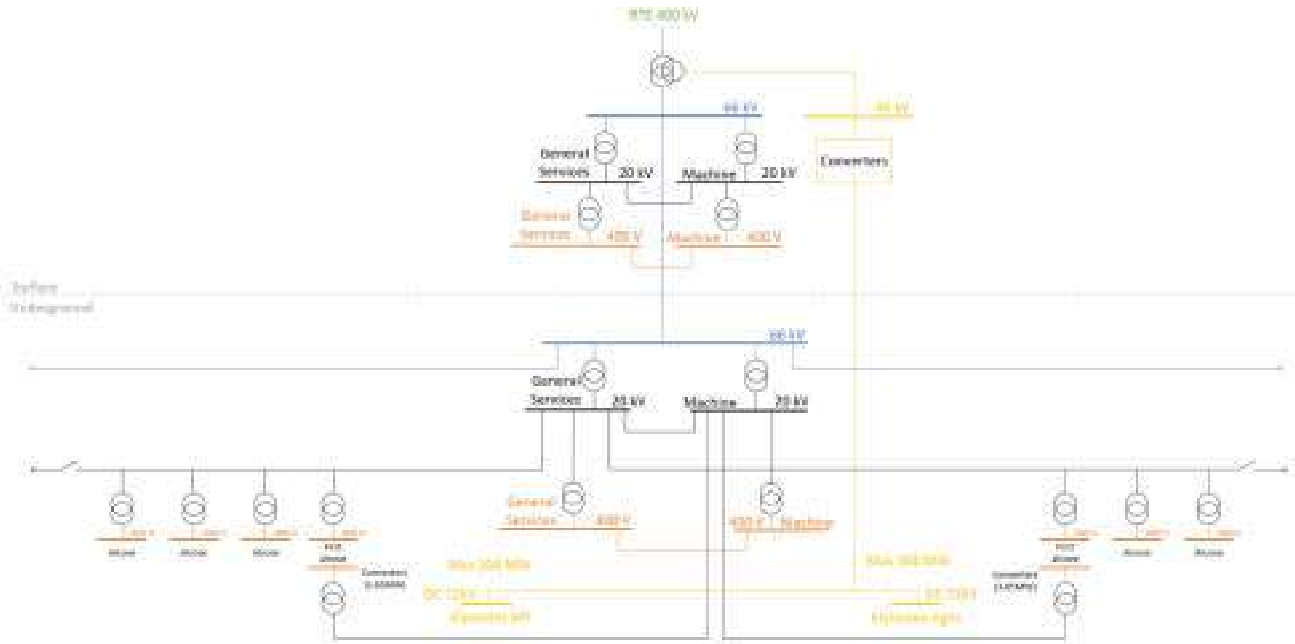


Fig. 3.60 Concept of electrical distribution at point PH

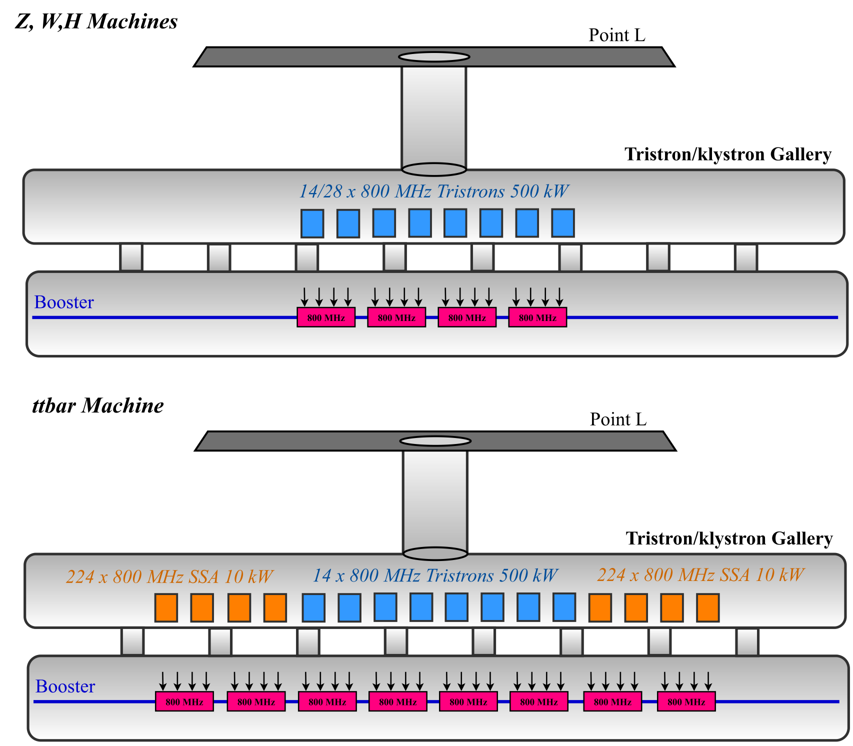


Fig. 3.61 Booster RF amplifiers in function of operation mode

Point PL layout Like the collider, the booster will be upgraded with additional cavities and RF amplifiers as the operating mode advances, as shown in Fig. 3.61. The technical infrastructure will also be installed from the beginning to cover all operating modes, see Fig. 3.62.

RF high-voltage main power converters The powering solution for the tristrons (or klystrons in case they are used) of the collider still needs to be optimised. However, a single, centralised high-voltage power converter installed on the surface has several advantages. Figure 3.63 illustrates the principle of this case.

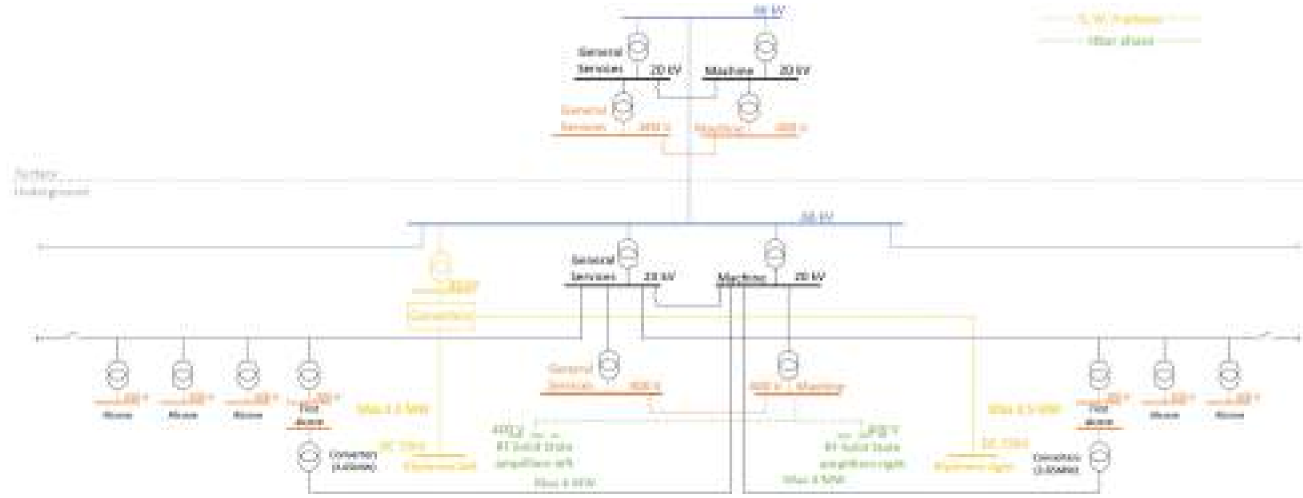
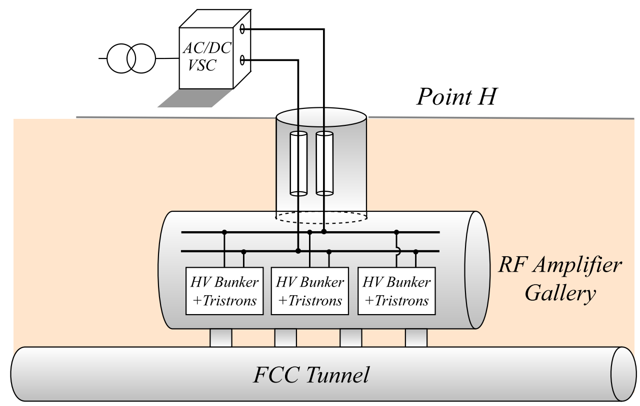


Fig. 3.62 Concept of Electrical distribution layout at point PL

Fig. 3.63 The principle of the integration of FCCee RF powering



Even with a centralised power converter solution, some RF powering equipment needs to be installed in the klystron gallery (HV tank in Fig. 3.63):

- Filtering capacitors in the proximity of the tristrons for DC filtering and DC bus decoupling.
- If needed, a small power converter can be used to trim the voltage on each tristron (powering fine tune / klystron perveance drifts in case they are used, etc.)
- A crowbar protection system (probably a series HV switch) to disconnect a klystron in case of a fault.
- Small power converters for the tristron (or klystron) filament heater and solenoid.

As a first rough estimation, a volume of 1 m^3 is to be reserved in the RF amplifier gallery for each tristron. The centralised RF high voltage power converter can be based on the so-called MMC (Modular Multilevel Converter), offering very high efficiency (97-98%) and high modularity. These types of converters are already deployed (e.g., for high-voltage DC transmission systems) at even higher voltages and power. An illustrative draft layout of the 150 MW / 60 kV RF power converter is shown in Fig. 3.64. The estimated total surface area for the collider RF power converter is 50 m$\times$30 m = 1500 m^2.

There can be a similar approach for the booster, but with a smaller power level of around 10 MW.

3.9 Beam diagnostics

The FCC-ee beam instrumentation (BI) will be composed of a very large number of devices that will provide a means to measure relevant beam properties across the FCC complex (injector complex, booster and main ring). Table 3.17 shows the overview of the number and type of BI systems needed in the complex. A feasibility study was only carried out for specific systems in the main ring that are considered the main challenges for the FCC BI. The section includes the requirements and design solutions for such systems.

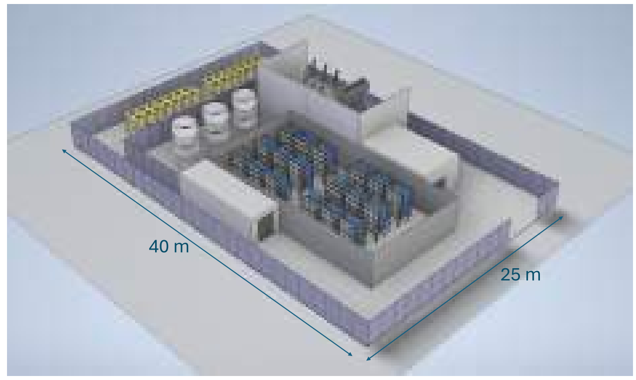


Fig. 3.64 Centralised RF high-voltage power converter

Table 3.17 Number of BI systems in the FCC-ee complex

	Dump line	Main ring	Booster ring	Inj. lines	HE linac	Comm. linac	e^- linac	e^+ DR	e^+ TL	e^+ linac	TOTAL
Beam position											
Quad BPM	20	5800	2944	420	82	35	11	258	30	17	**9617**
Special BPM		20	5					4			**29**
Collimator BPM		66		5							**71**
Beam loss											
Fast BLM channels	34	152	126	200							**512**
Arc BLM channels		17,616	8808								**26,424**
Arc BLM crates		1468									**1468**
Beam intensity											
Fast BCT & WCM	3	4	2	1	2	2	2	1	4	2	**23**
DC BCT		4	2					1			**7**
Transverse profile											
Imaging screen	6	6	2	20	2	2	2	2	4	2	**48**
SR-based		4	1					1			**6**
Laser Wire Scanner		2									**2**
Longitudinal profile											
b/b(EO/streak)		2	1		1	1	1	1	1	2	**10**
Luminosity/collision rate											
Beamstrahlung		8									**8**

3.9.1 Beam position diagnostics

The R&D for the FCC-ee BPM systems is focused on the design, integration and alignment of button-type BPM pickups for the arc and the interaction regions (IR) of the main rings, as well as R&D of the related signal processing electronics. Given the size of the system and its importance for FCC operation, the reliability and potential repair strategies should be considered at all stages of the system design.

Figure 3.65 illustrates the skewed arrangement of the BPM button electrodes to avoid the exposure of the synchrotron light fan.

The BPM system, with the button pickups as the signal source located at every quadrupole, has to meet several challenging requirements, such as a turn-by-turn resolution of 10 µm and an orbit resolution better than 1 µm, with the relative accuracy and the alignment tolerances in the same range. A bunch-by-bunch measurement capability is required for the nominal FCC-ee bunch spacing of 25 ns. The BPMs will also serve several feedback

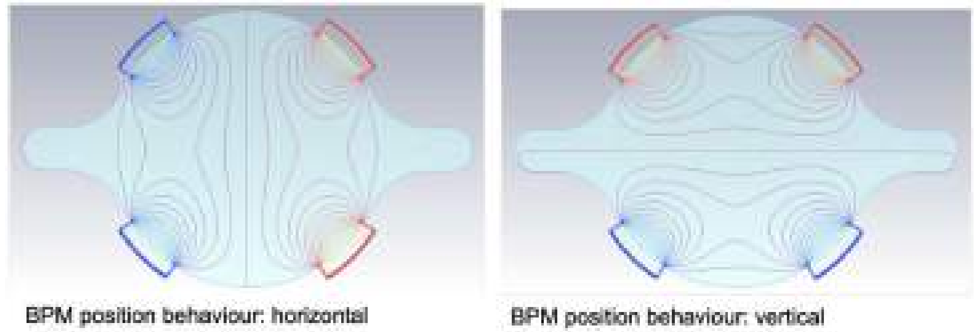


Fig. 3.65 Electrode arrangement of an FCC-ee main ring button BPM, along with lines of constant beam horizontal (left) and vertical (right) displacement

applications, thus the layout, segmentation, and data transmission need to be studied to minimise the latency of the BPM readings.

To tune and optimise the luminosity in the interaction points (IP), BPMs will be symmetrically located on each IP side. One pair of BPMs is planned in the combined beam vacuum chamber near the luminosity calorimeter to serve an IP luminosity feedback system. Another 3 - 5 BPMs accommodated in the IR cryostat with the beams in separate chambers will be mounted next to the segmented superconducting quadrupoles. These IR BPMs and associated signal cabling need to be particularly reliable, as their locations will be unreachable after the final assembly.

Requirements and details of the BPM system are still being discussed. Current studies based on electromagnetic simulations are targeted to find an optimal button electrode arrangement and size, ensuring at the same time that there are sufficient signal levels to achieve the required resolution and the BPM beam impedance within the limit assigned to the BPM system for all FCC-ee operational modes [291]. Preliminary studies have been performed [292, 293], and the longitudinal beam coupling impedance of 4000 BPM pickups with conical button electrodes has been compared to other impedance-contributing elements, such as the resistive wall (RW), bellows, RF cavities, and taper section. So far, initial studies have shown that the BPM impedance budget of 40.1 V/pC should not be very difficult to fulfil and more challenging could be thermal aspects related to beam heating and resulting changes of the BPM mechanical dimensions and material properties [13].

In many aspects, the performance required from the BPM systems for the FCC-ee and current synchrotron light sources is quite similar, and therefore, technical solutions used in such systems could be used as a reference. However, the size of the FCC-ee BPM systems, the radiation levels, and tunnel temperature gradients are by far less favourable, therefore new design, production, installation and maintenance challenges will have to be addressed.

Early estimates for both the mechanical alignment of the BPMs required with respect to the quadrupoles and the alignment's long-term stability are of the order of 100 µm. Solutions used in synchrotron light sources suggest that the BPMs may have to be rigidly attached to their corresponding quadrupoles to meet this alignment requirement. The relative positions of the BPM and quadrupole geometrical axes would need to be measured with even greater accuracy. As this requirement could influence the design of the quadrupoles and alignment strategies, aspects related to BPM alignment should be studied at an early stage of the arc cell design. Given the importance of the BPM alignment for the FCC-ee commissioning and subsequent operation, the solutions chosen should be confirmed by measurements performed on an arc cell prototype.

Contrary to light sources, there will be high levels of ionising radiation in the FCC-ee tunnel. The current experience with BPM electronics shows that they can be built from commercial off-the-shelf (COTS) components carefully selected and qualified with radiation tests when the integrated radiation dose over the whole lifetime of the project stays below some 1 kGy. Higher radiation doses may require the design of dedicated integration circuits, which would necessitate significant financial and workforce resources, especially since the CERN BI group currently lacks experience in designing radiation-tolerant BPM electronics.

Temperatures in the FCC-ee tunnel will have significant gradients and variations related to changing operational conditions, unlike in light sources. To achieve the beam position measurement accuracy required, it may be necessary for the BPM temperature drifts to be reduced by active cooling to ensure that the BPM dimensions stay within the necessary margins. Similarly, the BPM electronics may also require active cooling to stabilise their temperatures to a level that ensures the long-term accuracy required of the system. Such aspects will be studied in more detail once the temperature variations and gradients in the machine tunnel are better quantified, along with the temperature sensitivity of the prototypes of the BPM electronics.

Beam signals from FCC-ee arc BPM electrodes will not be able to be sent to the signal processing electronics over long coaxial cables due to very limited space in the tunnel cable trays. Instead, the beam signals must be treated close to the BPMs, so that the resulting beam data can be sent over optical fibres to an alcove. At this initial stage of the system design, it is expected that there will be a mini-rack located near each BPM pair (one BPM per beam, installed close to each arc quadrupole). This mini-rack would accommodate BPM electronics, receive beam signals from the BPMs over short coaxial cables, and transmit results over optical fibres to an alcove. Racks to accommodate computers to process and concentrate beam position data at rates adequate for sending it to the surface will be located in the alcoves.

Currently, the design effort is focusing on the arc BPMs, as they are the most important components for the design of the arc cell, a crucial part of the machine design. It is expected that the booster BPMs and their electronics will have a similar design.

The IR BPMs have stricter requirements for the measurement resolution and accuracy. Therefore, their mechanical design will be addressed separately. Also, the IR BPM processing electronics will need to fulfil very challenging requirements. It would be favourable to accommodate the IR BPM electronics in places free from high levels of ionising radiation so that the electronics can be based on the best commercial components available on the global market. Otherwise, it might be very difficult to design and produce radiation-tolerant versions.

3.9.2 Transverse diagnostics

Transverse profile measurements must be non-invasive during regular operation, whilst invasive measurements may be considered in the initial stages of commissioning or dedicated low-intensity fills.

Monitoring the relative evolution of the transverse emittance is the main priority for transverse diagnostics, and the precision target is set to 2% in emittance, corresponding to 1% in beam size. Absolute accuracy is less critical and not strictly necessary from the very beginning of the operation. The accuracy target is set at ±15% in emittance. These precision and accuracy targets apply to both transverse planes, irrespective of the machine's operation mode.

Most machine operations require a relatively slow monitoring of the evolution of the average beam emittance. Measuring the average emittance at a frequency of at least 1 Hz is desirable, as it can provide input for feedback systems aimed at optimising luminosity. However, faster diagnostics enabling bunch-by-bunch measurements become necessary for studying effects such as single-bunch instabilities or detecting any emittance patterns in the filling scheme. Bunch-by-bunch capabilities are not required from all instruments, but at least one system per beam must provide such measurements. Bunch-by-bunch measurements can be acquired by integrating tens or hundreds of revolutions to enhance the signal as needed. These measurements can occur either through a continuous bunch scan or with on-demand measurements. In both cases, the full-ring scan should not exceed a few minutes to ensure sufficient beam stability. Single-bunch measurements recorded in a single-turn may be investigated, but are not a priority.

As is customary in high-energy lepton machines, the transverse diagnostics for FCC-ee will primarily rely on synchrotron radiation (SR). To achieve the resolution needed for picometre-level transverse emittance, diagnostics techniques operating in the x-ray domain become necessary.

The baseline locations for the SR diagnostics are downstream of the two major experiment interaction points (PA and PG), just after the wiggler straight section. This location features a series of weak dipoles that are suitable candidates for the radiation source, with the photons emitted efficiently separated by the strong dipoles downstream that transport the beam towards the arc. The light will propagate to the instrumentation in a dedicated extraction line. Extraction lines approximately 100 m long will be required to transversely separate the light from the main beam and intercept the radiation at a distance of 0.5 m.

Placing the diagnostics outside the arcs offers several advantages, including reduced radiation levels, improved accessibility to the equipment, and more flexibility in adapting the machine design to meet diagnostic requirements. Moreover, in the baseline GHC optics model, the location downstream of the interaction points is favourable due to relatively high betatron functions. These produce vertical beam sizes exceeding 40 µm, thereby relaxing the resolution demands on the instrumentation.

The radiation energy range for diagnostics is expected to remain between 20 keV and 80 keV, well within the capabilities of existing diagnostic systems at modern light sources. To address variations in the synchrotron radiation spectrum across different beam energies, segmenting one of the existing dipoles into a sequence of tunable bends has been proposed. This approach minimises changes between operational modes while remaining transparent to the machine optics as long as the global bending angle of the dipole is preserved.

A multilayer monochromator will be installed as the first element of the photon beamline, positioned immediately after the vacuum exit window. Beyond its primary function of providing quasi-monochromatic light for specific diagnostic techniques, this monochromator also bends the photon beam, reducing the transverse space occupied by the diagnostics line. Additionally, it absorbs the majority of synchrotron radiation power emitted outside the spectral range of interest, thereby reducing the thermal load on the detector.

Due to their simplicity and robustness, X-ray pinhole cameras are identified as the baseline for transverse diagnostics. These instruments will fulfil the requirement for precise average emittance monitoring. Bunch-by-bunch measurements can also be achieved with a fast gated detector. The optimised pinhole width for a typical photon energy of 20 keV is 60 µm, which can be manufactured using the same technologies as modern-day light sources. This configuration provides a theoretical resolution of 35 µm, comparable to the (vertical) beam sizes of interest, though not ideal for absolute beam size measurements.

Techniques based on synchrotron radiation interferometry (SRI) can improve resolution and compensate for the limited accuracy of pinhole cameras when the beam size approaches its resolution limit. Diagnostics exploiting the Heterodyne Near-Field Speckles (HNFS) technique [294] is being developed as a potential SRI candidate, and Young's double-slit interferometers have also been studied for FCC-ee. All interferometry-based devices can be installed on the same beamline as the pinhole camera, and their configurations can be switched as needed.

Alongside SR-based techniques, scintillating screens for beam observation (BTVs) will be installed in the transfer and dump lines. BTVs will also be placed in the main ring for beam detection during the initial stages of machine commissioning.

3.9.3 Beam loss monitoring

For circulating machines, the main functionality of a beam loss system is to:

- detect beam losses fast enough to protect accelerator components by triggering a beam extraction before the equipment is damaged and to
- provide regular measurements of the amount and location of beam losses along the accelerator to optimise machine operation and assess its performance.

However, the design of the beam loss monitoring (BLM) system depends on the knowledge of beam losses that are expected to be detected. Beam losses could be classified as accidental (or also known as irregular beam losses) and unavoidable (also known as regular beam losses). Regular beam losses are those that can be minimised but not completely avoided; they correspond to beam debris from collimation cleaning, physics collision debris, Touschek scattering along the accelerator or Coulomb scattering from residual gas interactions, among others. Therefore, continuous monitoring of beam losses with a distributed BLM system is required. Irregular beam losses can appear as a result of equipment failures, beam instabilities, micro-particles interacting with the beam or aperture restrictions, i.e., an object inserted in the way of the beam. These are, to some extent, avoidable losses, but a beam loss system has to detect and define the levels allowed for such losses to protect the accelerator.

Stored energies in the FCC-ee collider ring are expected to be lower than present existing machines like the LHC or its high luminosity upgrade (HL-LHC). However, as the beam size becomes very small, particularly for the vertical plane, the expected beam energy density is comparable to HL-LHC parameters. Assuming a beta function in the arc of 50 m (on average), beam sizes are expected to be of the order of microns, and the beam energy deposition per surface can go up to 11,082 MJ/mm^2 in the most critical case of the Z-pole configuration, see Table 3.18.

Ionisation chambers have collection times of the order of µs for electrons and ms for ions, and although they perform very stably under radiation and could be very sensitive, they are not ideal for bunch-by-bunch measurements. Instead, solid-state detectors have risen and decay times of the order of ns, which will make them the most suitable candidates for fast loss detection. A new beam loss detection technology under study is the use of large-core silica fibres to convert the secondary charged particles from beam impacts into Cherenkov light. This process is instantaneous. The signal is then transported to both fibre ends and read-out by photo-sensors. The photo-sensor choice defines the time response of the device. Regular photo-multipliers, can be fast, in the order of 1-2 ns rise and decay times. Silicon photo-multipliers, are of the same magnitude although a bit slower, in the order of 10-20 ns.

Final specifications on minimum and maximum beam losses to be measured and the required timing resolution will define the final choice of technology. In the meantime, R&D is needed to evaluate the performance of such devices under the 50 MW synchrotron radiation levels per beam expected in the tunnel.

Fast beam loss monitors With unprecedented stored beam energies for an electron collider, up to 17.5 MJ in the Z-pole operations, the electron/positron beams are highly destructive. A collimation system will be set in place in order to reduce the backgrounds to the experiments as well as to protect the machine from unavoidable losses. There is one system in PF for global halo collimation (betatron and off-momentum) and a second system around the colliding points. Beam loss monitors need to be installed at each collimator, with the aim of measuring turn-by-turn losses or faster, if possible. With the presently proposed collimation system, 27 collimators will be installed per beam, and thus 54 beam loss monitors covering both beams in the collider ring.

Regarding the synchrotron radiation collimation system, presently, six collimators and two masks per beam upstream of the interaction points are planned. To monitor the losses in these locations, a total of 16 beam loss monitors per collision point will be needed (corresponding to 64 beam loss monitors in the collider ring).

The injection and extraction to the booster and collider rings will also need beam loss monitoring, in particular at the location of collimators, beam masks or absorbers, kicker magnets and septum magnets. Table 3.19 shows

Table 3.18 Collider beam parameters

	HL-LHC	Z	W	ZH	$t\bar{t}$
Beam Energy [GeV]	7000	45.6	80	120	182.5
Particle	p	e^+e^-			
No. bunches	2748	11,200	1780	440	60
Beam current [mA]	1090	1270	137	26.7	4.9
Bunch Intensity [10^{11}]	2.2	2.14	1.45	1.15	1.55
Stored beam energy [MJ]	678	17.5	3.3	0.97	0.3
Geom. emittance hor. ε_x [nm]	0.34	0.71	2.17	0.71	1.59
Geom. emittance ver. ε_y [pm]	340	1.9	2.2	1.4	1.6
Hor. beam size $\beta_x = 50$ m [µm]	130	188	329	188	282
Ver. beam size $\beta_y = 50$ m [µm]	130	9.7	10.5	8.4	8.9
Energy density [MJ/mm^2]	40,118	11,082	682	645	87.2

Table 3.19 Fast beam loss monitors for Colliding and Booster ring, excluding injectors

Purpose	Colliding ring	Booster ring	Total
Collimation Halo (PF)	27/beam		54
Collimation SR (PA/PD/PG/PJ)	32/beam		64
Booster injection region		10/beam	20
Booster to Collider extraction		15/beam	30
Booster to Dump extraction		15/beam	30
Booster to Dump transfer line		(12 + 5)/beam	34
Booster to Collider transfer line		6/beam	12
Collider injection region	2/beam		4
Collider to dump extraction	15/beam		30
Collider dump line	(12 + 5)/beam		34
Total Injectors			**200**
Total Ring	**93/beam**	**63/beam**	**312**

the present estimate of beam loss monitors to cover the collider ring collimation and the injection/extraction needs for both rings.

The injectors to the Booster will need additional beam loss monitoring, and a first estimate of an additional 200 monitors is being considered.

Arc cell beam loss monitors Potential beam losses occurring in the arc cells of the collider and booster rings need to be continuously monitored. Beam loss monitors are typically located where losses are expected. In the case of the arc cells that correspond to near the arc quadrupoles, the aperture available is smaller. On the other hand, it is not predictable where micro-particles will interact with the beam.

A generic beam loss system in the arc cell should be able to cover a distance of several metres and reconstruct the main beam loss location. The implementation of this beam loss system is still under R&D, but a minimum configuration with 3 monitors or channels distributed along that distance could provide the location of the loss by triangulation. This number has been used to estimate the number of beam loss channels and read-out tunnel electronics needed to cover both the collider and the booster rings. Figure 3.66 shows a schema of the configuration of a generic beam loss system in the FCC-ee arc cell.

The tunnel read-out electronics will be installed under the arc quadrupoles. A total of 18 BLM channels per arc cell can be read-out with a single crate. This includes the beam loss monitors for the collider and the booster rings. Table 3.20 shows the number of channels in both rings together with the number of crates needed in the tunnel. R&D is needed to develop radiation-tolerant electronics that are able to withstand the FCC-ee radiation level, which comes mainly from synchrotron radiation.

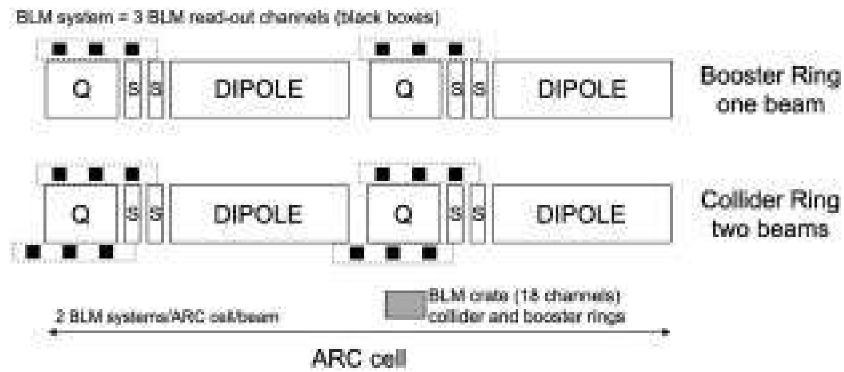


Fig. 3.66 Proposal of beam loss system in the arc cells, for Booster ring (on top) and Collider ring (on bottom), sharing the same read-out crate

Table 3.20 Arc beam loss monitors

	Collider	Booster	Total
BLM channels per quadrupole	6	3	9
BLM channels in the ring	**17,616**	**8808**	**26,428**
BLM crates per arc cell	1	0	1
BLM crates in the ring	**1468**	**0**	**1468**

3.9.4 Longitudinal diagnostics

Longitudinal profile monitoring is needed to assess the effect of beamstrahlung, which will increase bunch lengths depending on the charge balance between colliding bunches. A bunch-by-bunch measurement of the bunch length is deemed crucial to determine the collision condition and the energy spread. Turn-by-turn measurement is not needed as the evolution of the bunch length will be in the order of the longitudinal damping time (i.e., from 1320 turns at Z to 20 at $t\bar{t}$). The precision of the order of 1% between bunches (both beams) is needed, while absolute accuracy is not strictly needed (still undefined). Considering a minimum bunch length of 1.91 mm or 6.4 ps ($t\bar{t}$) bunch length measurements must have a precision of better than 60 fs. A bunch-by-bunch profile measurement on selected bunches is required during commissioning and when requested to check the quality of top-up injected bunches, where fresh bunches at 10% nominal population are injected onto circulating bunches.

As part of this feasibility study, electro-optical spectral decoding (EOSD) is one of the candidate techniques that could fulfil these requirements. The Karlsruhe Institute of Technology (KIT) is working on the design of an EOSD system adapted to the FCC-ee environment and parameters that allow single-shot longitudinal measurement with sub-picosecond resolution and a repetition rate in the MHz range [295]. Simulations have been carried out to investigate its performance under FCC-ee conditions that present significant challenges for EOSD measurements, especially the long bunches during Z operation with σ ranging from 4.7 to 15.5 mm and the high bunch charge. A prototype was tested in the CLEAR facility at CERN in 2024. Further studies will be needed to optimise thermal management of the EO pick-up system under very high repetition rates, investigate the placement of monitor and laser/detection system and optimise the resolution to achieve 50 fs resolution.

Cherenkov diffraction radiation (ChDR) is an alternative to EOSD for longitudinal diagnostics [296, 297]. ChDR is generated as a charged particle passes in the vicinity of a dielectric material with a velocity which exceeds the speed of light in the given dielectric material. As the radiation is emitted at the well-known Cherenkov angle, the extraction of the signal is simplified in comparison to diagnostic techniques based on synchrotron radiation, which is emitted at a very small angle. For that reason, the incoherent part of the ChDR spectrum is a promising candidate for measuring bunch length in the FCC-ee. However, two analytical models [298, 299] predict a very different photon yield with very little experimental data [300, 301]. To assess the potential of incoherent ChDR for FCC-ee, a photon counting experiment is being prepared to measure the photon yield in the visible spectrum. The ATF2 beamline at KEK [302] is a suitable candidate for these tests, as it provides high particle energy and charge and a small beam size, which allows a beam-radiator distance in the sub-mm range, maximising the photon yield obtained.

3.9.5 Luminosity monitoring diagnostics for IP tuning

At each interaction point where the opposing beam is encountered, beamstrahlung emitted during the beam-beam collision results in an intense flux of photons on both sides of the IP, that are extracted through a dedicated 500 m

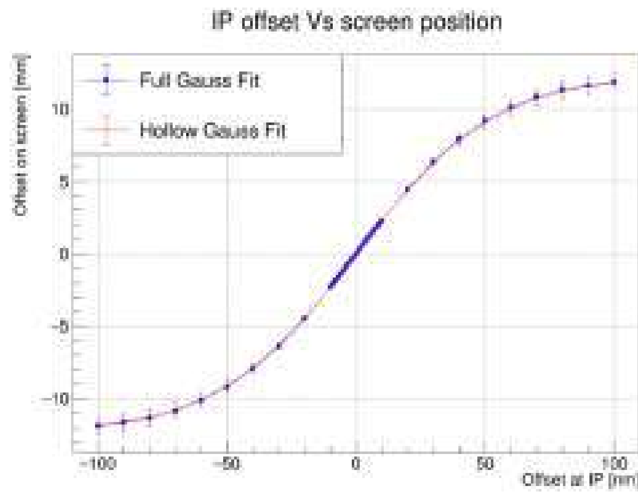


Fig. 3.67 Position of the beamstrahlung peak on the BTV screen installed at 400 m from the interaction point. In blue is a Gaussian fit applied to a full-screen image. The Gaussian tails fit to a hollow screen image are shown in red. The tail fit is based on the use of a 30 mm aperture

long dilution channel terminated by a liquid lead dump. Specific instrumentation dedicated to monitoring the beamstrahlung profile position and its intensity is under development. Since the position of the photon peak is sensitive to the beam-beam transverse distance in the nanometre range as well as to residual optical aberrations at the IP, these signals are a valuable input for the IP tuning; see Fig. 3.67. The sensitivity range spans almost linearly over 200 nm and then saturates. This beamstrahlung information is used, in particular, for precision IP tuning scans.

A beam television screen (so-called BTV) is under development with the goal of imaging the beamstrahlung photon profile. The scintillator technology used for this device should be optimised for providing the best signal-to-noise ratio (i.e., synchrotron radiation vs beamstrahlung radiation) while keeping the thermal load from the ultra-intense flux of photons acceptable. Considering the worst-case scenario, a hollow screen is being simulated such that the profile position is tracked by fitting the tails only. The result obtained with a gap of 30 mm (equivalent to 1 sigma of the profile) is presented by the red curve in Fig. 3.67. It accurately follows the curve obtained by fitting the whole distribution (blue curve). If a screen imaging technique cannot be employed due to the heat load, the ionisation of rest gas is a possible alternative means of measuring the beamstrahlung profile [303].

Another process of interest in measuring luminosity is the rate of radiative Bhabha scattering. Since the resulting off-energy leptons mainly hit the beam-pipe about 150 m from the interaction point, a fast beam loss monitor installed at that location would allow monitoring bunch-by-bunch collision rate, complementing the beamstrahlung profile imaging technique. The latter might not be able to resolve individual bunch crossings. An example of a similar instrument is the BRAN developed for the LHC [304].

3.9.6 Inverse Compton polarimeter for energy calibration

A beam energy measurement based on resonant spin depolarisation will be implemented [305], providing precise collision energy calibration for the Z and WW modes. This technique performs regular transverse beam excitation tune scans on a dedicated pilot bunch to identify the spin resonant depolarisation frequency, which then provides the collision energy with great precision. The subject is covered in detail in the EPOL section of this feasibility report (Sect. 1.7). Here, the need for the inverse Compton polarimeter (IPC), which will perform the bunch polarisation measurement, is highlighted. The vacuum chamber for this 100 m long instrument must comply with the impedance budget of the machine, and a design study has been initiated. The simulation of the detector made good progress in building a digital twin of the future instrument. The EPOL section of this document provides further insight into the entire energy calibration procedure and the associated instrumentation.

3.10 Arc region: integration and supporting systems

The current FCC-ee layout has a circumference of around 90 km, and about 85% (i.e., 77 km) are taken by the arcs. Arcs are made of a sequence of FODO half-cells, about 3000 for the high-energy optics, and consist of a short straight section (SSS) with quadrupole, sextupoles, beam instrumentation and correctors, followed by a long dipole length that can be achieved with a series of two or three interconnected magnets. This section describes the optimisation of the arc-supporting structures to maximise their performance, easing the installation and maintenance while minimising cost. The section also reports the state of advancement of the construction of the arc half-cell mock-up.

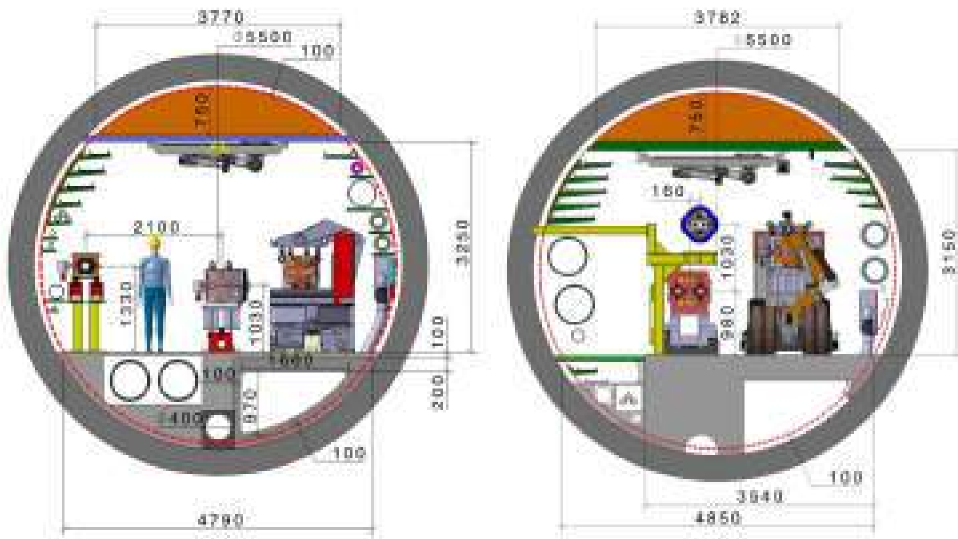


Fig. 3.68 Configurations for the relative placement between booster and collider. Left: horizontal configuration. Right: vertical configuration

3.10.1 Collider-booster placement configurations

The placement of the booster and the collider must be optimised in the radial and vertical directions of the tunnel cross-section, with a hard constraint of a maximum tunnel inner diameter of 5.5 m. The longitudinal positioning of the SSS of the collider relative to the position of the SSS of the booster also requires optimisation. An optimised configuration of the tunnel cross-section, as described in Ref. [306], with respect to that presented in the CDR [13] has the booster placed on top of the collider. This frees more space for the services, especially the cooling and ventilation piping, the space reserved for transport vehicles, and the alignment system (Fig. 3.68). In addition to being more compact, the vertical configuration provides further advantages:

- Permits a smaller tunnel diameter in the RF sections.
- Same basement configuration as FCC-hh.
- Easier access for handling and removal of booster magnets and SSS (when leaving enough vertical clearance to allow installing/uninstalling both machines once the supports are already in position).
- Better from a radiation point of view, as the highest dose is generated on the outer side of the tunnel, which could be detrimental to the booster ring in case of a horizontal placement [307].

However, the vertical placement of the booster could raise dynamic stability challenges: due to the longer lever arm between the ground and the magnet, the booster could oscillate further, exceeding the tight dynamic positioning tolerances, particularly in the SSS region. For this reason, a significant effort in design and simulations has been made to improve the supporting system and maximise the stability of the two accelerators.

Given that the booster will be positioned above the collider, it is essential to maintain sufficient clearance with the collider underneath. This could be done by longitudinally shifting the SSS of the collider with respect to the SSS of the booster, keeping the cell periodicity (i.e., the azimuthal distance between the booster SSS and the collider SSS is maintained constant along the arc). Since the SSS is the bulkiest section of the arc for both machines, the proposed modification allows the SSS of the collider to be longitudinally positioned corresponding to the location of the smaller and more compact booster dipoles, and vice versa (example for ZH/$t\bar{t}$ phases with the Quad-Sext-Sext configuration of the collider Fig. 3.69).

Further work will be required during a next phase of the project to optimise the interface and spacing between the collider, the booster, and their support structures. Sufficient clearance must be ensured to facilitate handling procedures, allowing for the installation or removal of individual magnets from each accelerator without interfering with the magnets of the other machine. This must be achieved while keeping the support structures in place, avoiding unnecessary disassembly and minimising operational disruptions.

3.10.2 Arc cell configurations of the collider

The configuration of the collider arc cell changes from the low to the high energy phase. The number of quadrupoles per unit length is doubled between the Z/WW and ZH/$t\bar{t}$ phases as the length of the FODO cells is halved: the length of the half cell is 52 m for Z/WW phases and 26 m for the ZH/$t\bar{t}$ phases. As can be seen in Fig. 3.70, there are two configurations for the Z/WW phase: 568 short straight sections with one quadrupole and one sextupole and 856 short straight sections with a single quadrupole. Similarly, there are two configurations for the ZH/$t\bar{t}$

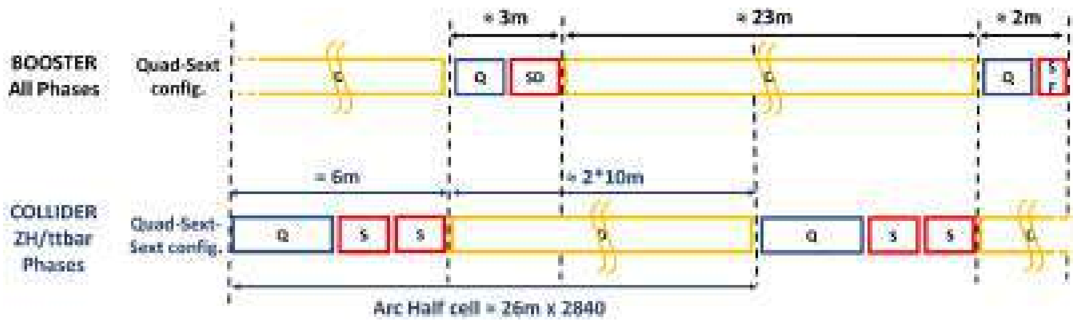


Fig. 3.69 Azimuthal shift between booster and collider - collider optics V24.3_GHC and booster optics V24_FODO

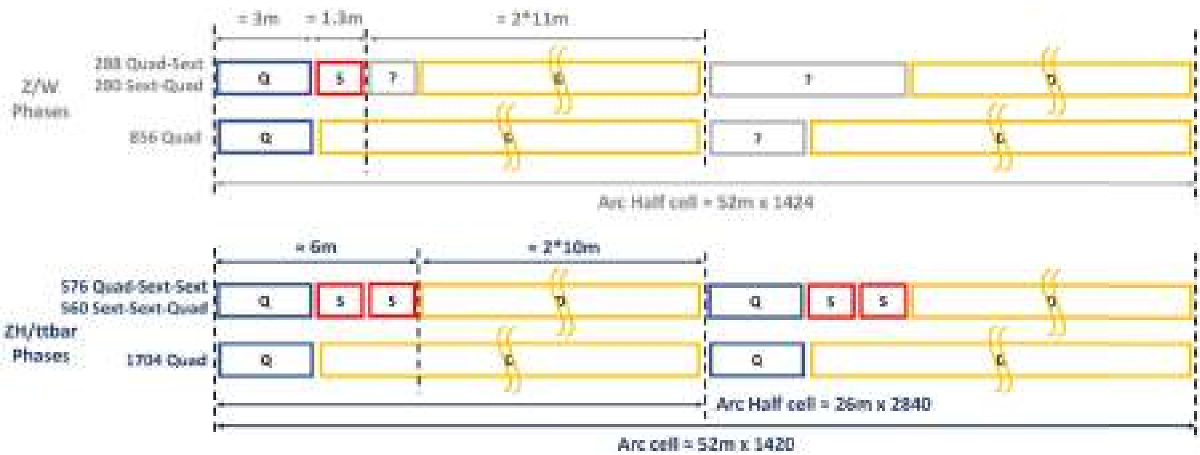


Fig. 3.70 Arc cell configurations for the collider, for the Z/WW phases and the ZH/$t\bar{t}$ phases - optics V24.3_GHC

phase: 1136 short straight sections with one quadrupole and two sextupoles, and 1704 short straight sections with a single quadrupole.

Among these different SSS configurations, the Quad-Sext-Sext configuration has been studied in detail and will be installed in the mock-up. This SSS configuration is the bulkiest and the most challenging for its integration. It is also the most complex in terms of static and dynamic stability.

The optics of the collider is still evolving. However, the reference optics for the first phase of the mock-up was frozen at version V24.3_GHC by the end of 2024, to allow installation in the first half of 2025. To document this baseline solution, two drawings were produced, one of the cross-section (Fig. 3.71) and one longitudinal view representing an arc half-cell (Fig. 3.72), for the reference baseline optics V24.3_GHC. These two drawings, which constitute the baseline configuration for the mock-up, will be versioned following the mock-up study and will evolve in the coming years.

Further work is needed to define the strategy for the modification of the FCC-ee between the Z/WW and ZH/$t\bar{t}$ phases. At first glance, a mechanical reconfiguration of the collider will be necessary between these phases. To understand this reconfiguration, consider an ensemble of five FODO cells at Z/WW phase, corresponding to 10 cells at ZH/$t\bar{t}$, this forms a pattern that repeats 17.5 times in one arc, and over the eight arcs of the entire collider. In these five cells at Z/WW (i.e., 10 cells at ZH/$t\bar{t}$), there are 20 slots where SSS can be installed (10 cells at ZH/$t\bar{t}$ multiplied by 2 SSS per cell). Over these 20 slots, moving from the Z/WW to ZH/$t\bar{t}$ phase will involve:

- 2 slots are not changing
- 2 slots are for single quadrupoles at Z/WW phase, which change polarity at ZH/$t\bar{t}$ phase.
- 2 slots are for single quadrupoles at Z/WW phase, which will change slot location at ZH/$t\bar{t}$ phase.
- 6 empty slots at Z/WW phase will receive single quadrupole at ZH/$t\bar{t}$ phase.
- 4 slots are for quadrupole - sextupole at Z/WW phase, which will be removed at ZH/$t\bar{t}$ phase.
- 4 empty slots at Z/WW phase will receive quadrupole - sextupole - sextupole at ZH/$t\bar{t}$ phase.
- 4 occupied slots at Z/WW phase will receive quadrupole - sextupole - sextupole at ZH/$t\bar{t}$ phase.

The mechanical reconfiguration of the collider between the Z/WW phase and the ZH/$t\bar{t}$ phase presents many inconveniences and challenges. The number of SSS that would need to be dismounted, moved or installed is very

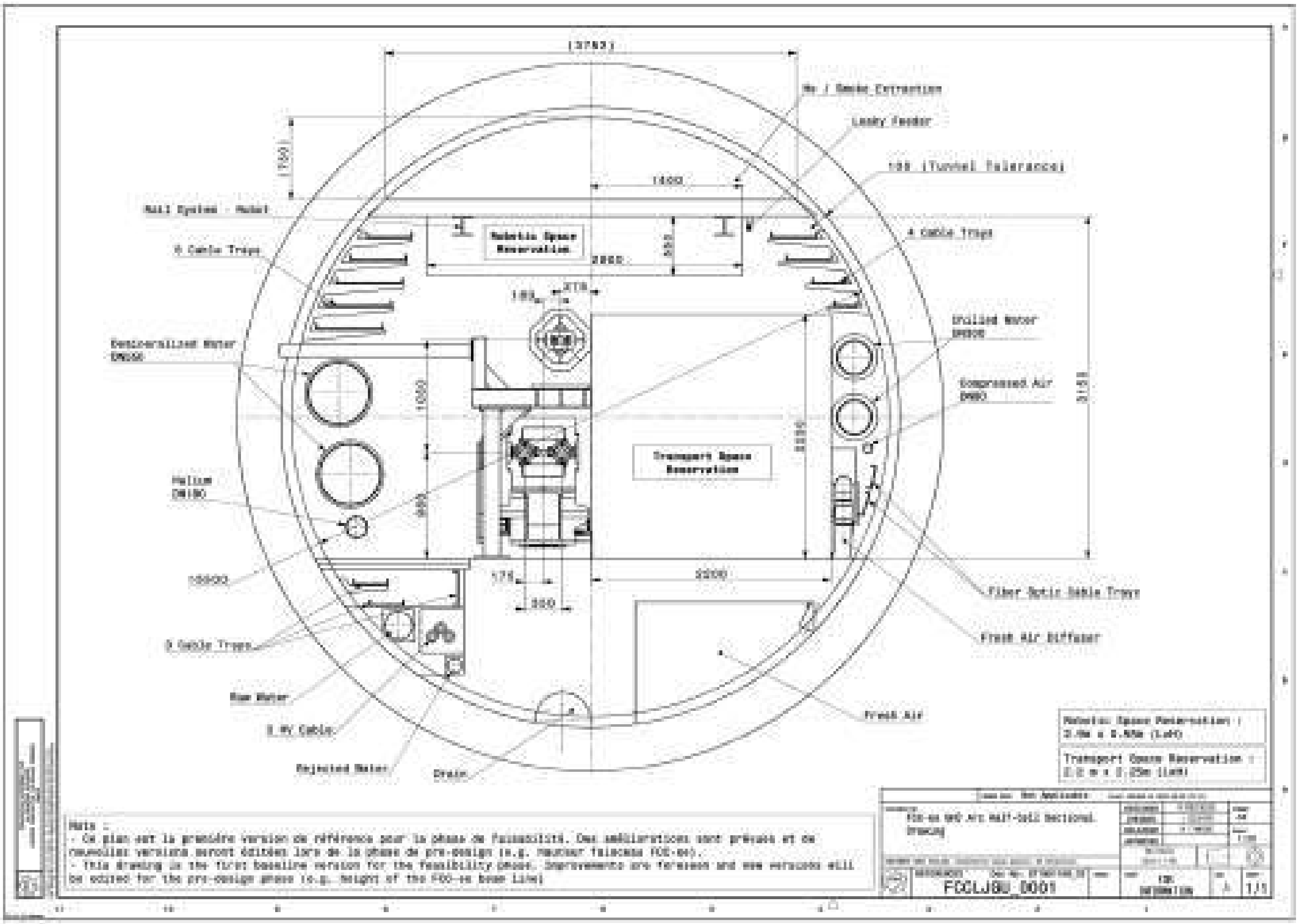


Fig. 3.71 FCC-ee GHC Arc Half-Cell sectional drawing - EDMS 3180552 [319]

large, requiring a large number of activities in the tunnel, transport to and from the access points and the surface, as well as breaking the vacuum of the collider beam pipes and proceeding with full realignment of the collider. Another solution to alleviate most of these issues requires the installation of all SSS girders from the start, that is, installing the full contingent of elements required for the ZH/$t\bar{t}$ operation, while less than half of these would be used for the Z/WW phase of operation. A careful optimisation of the power converter circuits for the magnets in the arcs would allow a very fast (order of one hour) switch between the two modes of operation. This solution is being actively studied to avoid the mechanical and operational challenges linked to a collider reconfiguration.

3.10.3 Optimisation of the collider supporting structure - static and dynamic analyses

Overview and principles Figure 3.73 shows the 3D model of an arc half-cell, with a focus on the short straight section of the collider and booster. The supporting system of the booster shown in this picture is one of the possible solutions under study, compared to the conceptual configuration reported in Sect. 8.2.7.

The principle for assembling, installing, aligning and maintaining the elements in the SSS on their supporting system has been extensively analysed.

Using girders to support the common elements in the SSS, as shown in Fig. 3.74, offers significant practical advantages. The SSS elements, magnets, and vacuum chambers can be pre-assembled and pre-aligned on a girder in a workshop at the surface with the proper tools and environment. The entire SSS module (girder with quadrupole, sextupoles, alignment fiducials and vacuum system) can then be transported as a single object to the tunnel, optimising the transport and maintenance operations. Hot spares of SSS modules can be stored and rapidly prepared for installation in case of a major fault. Repair can then be done in the correct conditions at the surface. Finally, a pre-alignment of elements on the girder at the surface reduces the time required for the positioning and final alignment of the girder in the tunnel.

However, a potential disadvantage of a girder is that it usually requires more space vertically, than, for example, a supporting system with standard jacks for each magnet of the SSS. This means that the vertical position of the

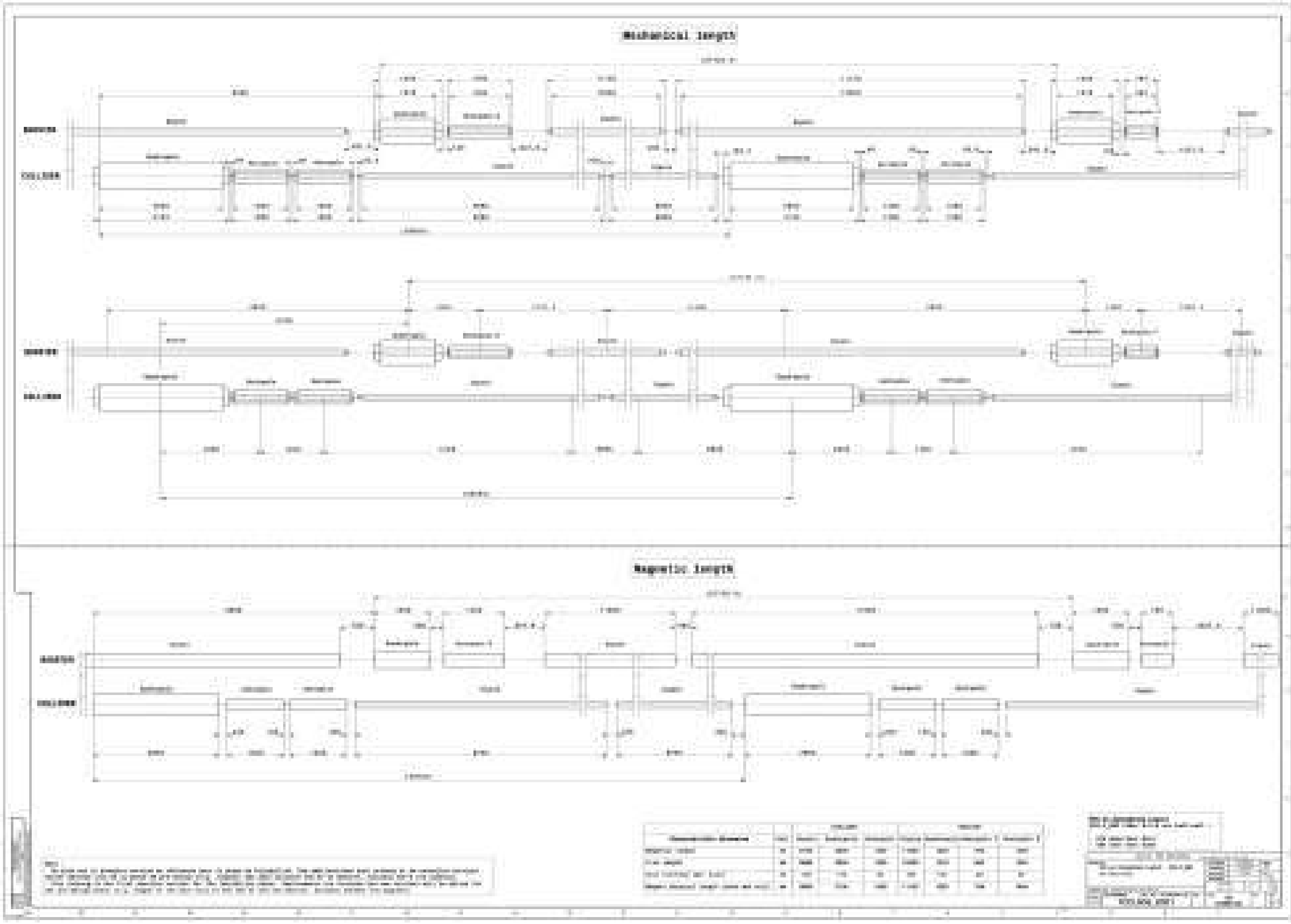
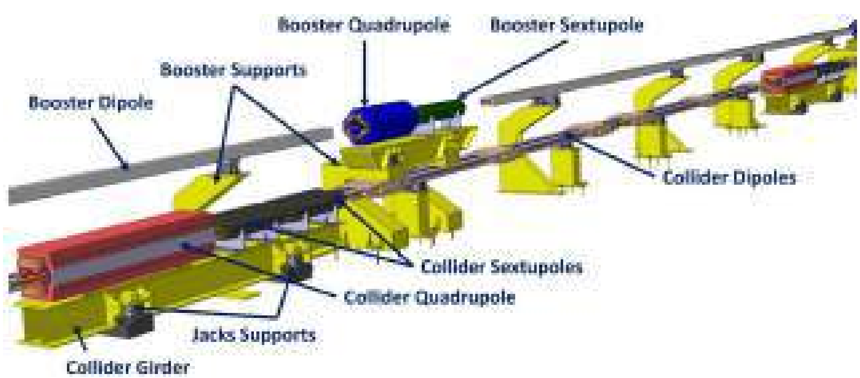


Fig. 3.72 FCC-ee Conceptual layout Arc Half-Cell - V24.3_GHC Q-S-S configuration - EDMS 3180559 [320]

Fig. 3.73 CAD model of an arc half-cell, with focus on the Short Straight Section



accelerators would be higher, with possibly a detrimental effect on the dynamic stability at the level of the beam axis. It is, therefore, important to maximise the girder stability by optimising its design and materials.

Specifications An initial estimation of the acceptable vibrations in the SSS was defined in 2022, and is reported in Table 3.21. This specification did not distinguish between vertical and lateral motion and between booster and collider.

To consolidate the tolerance estimates, the sensitivity to vibrations of the GHC optics at the Z operating point was evaluated assuming a tolerance on the beam oscillation amplitude at the collision point of less than 5% relative to the collision point beam size [308]. Due to the small emittance ratio, vertical oscillations are more than an order of magnitude more critical than horizontal oscillations. Assuming that an orbit feedback will efficiently damp beam oscillations with frequencies below 1 Hz, the integrated RMS motion for frequencies higher than 1 Hz is ideally

Fig. 3.74 CAD model of the optimised actual steel girder

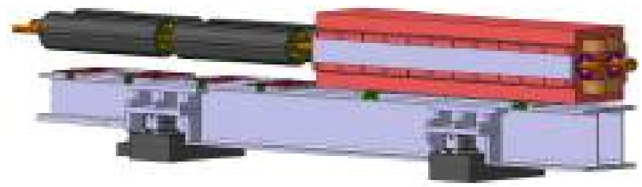


Table 3.21 Proposed dynamic stability requirements in the arcs, presented at FCC IS workshop for the arcs [309] in 2022

Frequency range	Tolerance	Correlation
0.01 Hz < f < 1 Hz	1 µm	10 km
0.01 Hz < f < 1 Hz	100 nm	none
1 Hz < f < 10 Hz	20 nm	none
10 Hz < f < 100 Hz	5 nm	none
100 Hz < f	1 nm	none

Table 3.22 Updated dynamic stability requirements in the arcs at the level of the quadrupole magnetic axis

	Tolerance at 1 Hz frequency
Collider vertical direction	20 nm
Collider lateral direction	200 nm
Booster vertical direction	40 nm
Booster lateral direction	400 nm

around 10 (100) nm for the vertical (horizontal) plane. If the beam orbit feedback bandwidth can be extended above 1 Hz, it would be possible to set the targets for the vertical (horizontal) plane to 20 (200) nm, in line with Table 3.21. It is worth noting that the sensitivity may evolve in the future, particularly with advancements in optics and machine layout. For the low-beta regions, the tolerances are an order of magnitude tighter. These considerations are summarised in Table 3.22, the key frequency of interest is 1 Hz, and tolerances are given at the quadrupole (SSS) magnetic axis.

Historical background It is interesting to compare the current stability specifications with what was studied in other projects or achieved in past CERN machines, such as the Large Hadron Collider (LHC/HL-LHC) and the future Compact LInear Collider (CLIC). For the LHC/HL-LHC quadrupoles [310]:

- In standard operation, the root mean square (RMS) should be < 5 µm at 1 Hz;
- Beam instabilities can be provoked if the RMS is between 5 µm and 20 µm at 1 Hz;
- A beam dump is usually needed for an RMS > 20 µm at 1 Hz.

On the other hand, the future Compact LInear Collider (CLIC) has significantly more stringent specifications: given its very small beam sizes, even minor oscillations of one quadrupole reduce the luminosity. It has been estimated that in the vertical direction the RMS must be below 1 nm at 1 Hz and similarly, it must be below 5 nm at 1 Hz in the lateral direction to ensure sufficient performance [311]. A study has demonstrated that these specifications can be achieved, albeit through the use of active stabilisation based on piezo-actuators combined with a stiff and optimised design of the quadrupole support [312].

Hence, the FCC arc specifications are closer to those of a linear accelerator (CLIC) than those of existing circular accelerators (LHC/HL-LHC), which illustrates their challenging aspects.

Numerical methodology It is possible to calculate the vibrations expected for a given configuration of the SSS numerically and compare it with the specification above. A finite element method (FEM) has been defined and is described in the following steps:

1. Definition of a baseline model (support and simplified magnets);
2. Carry out static analysis of the system → to assess the structural resistance and the static stability of the support;
3. Carry out modal analysis → to assess the rigidity of the system, study the dynamic characteristics of the system;

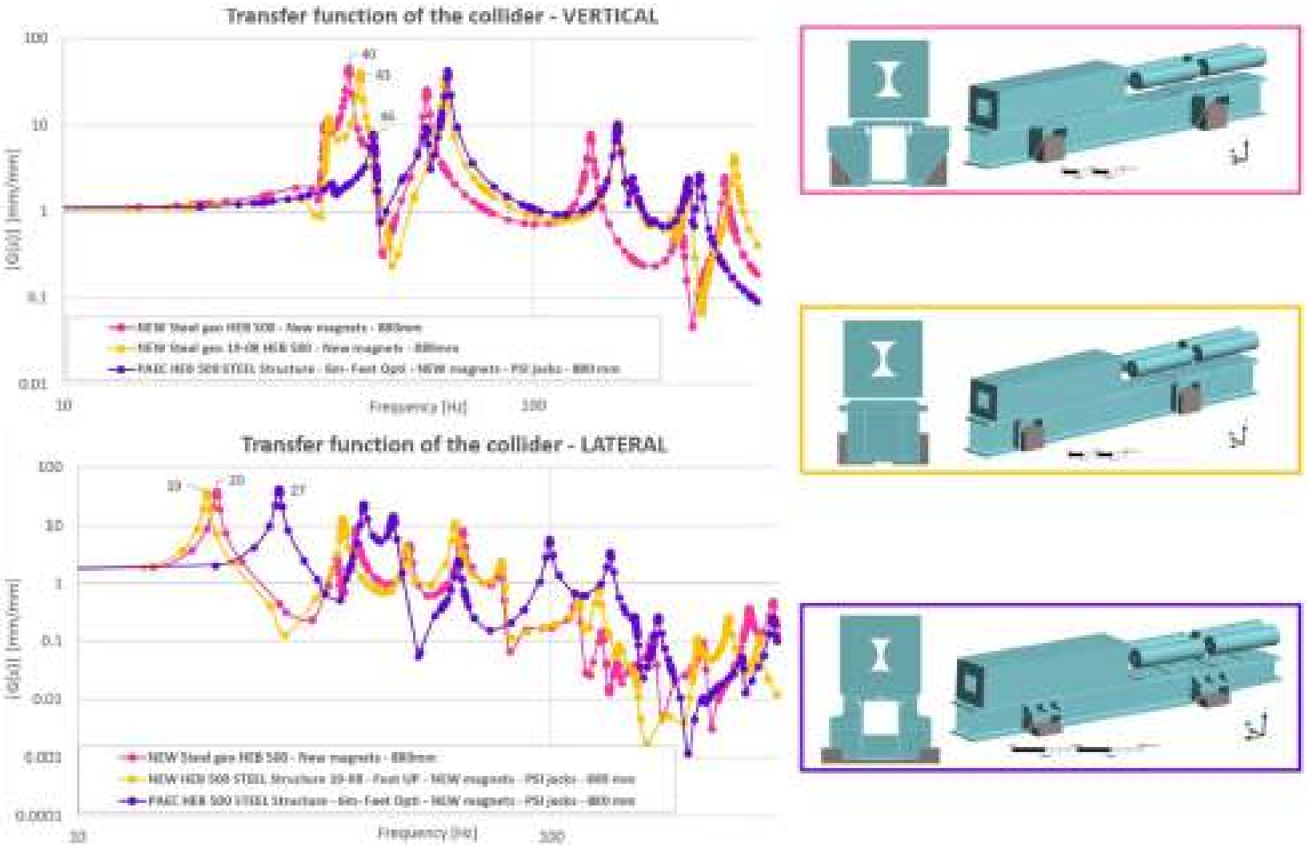


Fig. 3.75 Transfer function comparison for different girder geometries in the vertical and lateral directions

4. Identify the transfer function of the support from the ground to the magnet axis → identify the critical modes of the supports, carry out a comparative study between different supports;
5. Conduct random vibration analysis in response to ground motion → study the impact of the support on the RMS at the magnetic centre, and obtain an estimate of this RMS;
6. Add vibrational cross-talk between the booster and the collider, add excitation forces dependent on the support environment such as pumps, water pipes, ventilation, etc.;
7. Compare the results to the specifications.

For the moment, this methodology is being applied from step 1 to step 5. The vibrational cross-talk between the booster and the collider, and how to account for it in the simulations, is currently being studied [313]. Further investigations are required to determine and include excitation forces.

An example of a transfer function comparison for different geometries is shown in Fig. 3.75. The first graph displays the transfer functions obtained in the vertical direction and the second in the lateral direction. Each plot represents the amplification or reduction of the input oscillation through the system over a given range of frequencies. The transfer functions provide insight into how the system behaves and reacts over a range of frequencies. The higher the natural frequencies and rigid body frequencies, the more rigid the system is considered to be. Comparative studies can be carried out to analyse the impact on stability of the geometry, materials, position, rigidity, number of feet, etc. and to determine the most suitable geometry.

Knowing the spectrum of the ground motion over the relevant range of frequencies, as well as the transfer function of the supporting structure between the ground and the centre of the magnet, it is possible to estimate the displacement of the mechanical axis of the magnet in response to the ground motion. As values of the estimated movement of the ground in the FCC tunnel are not yet available, the power spectral density (PSD) of the ground motion measured in the LHC tunnel [314] has been used instead as an initial input. When performing a random vibration analysis of the system with such a ground PSD as an input for the calculation, the PSD of the magnetic axis is obtained as an output, and the integrated root-mean-square (RMS) displacements at the level of the axis can then be computed. The methodology is detailed in Fig. 3.76.

Experimental benchmarking It is important to note that the method described above is sensitive to several parameters that cannot be precisely estimated at this stage of the study; similarly, the simulations contain approximations,

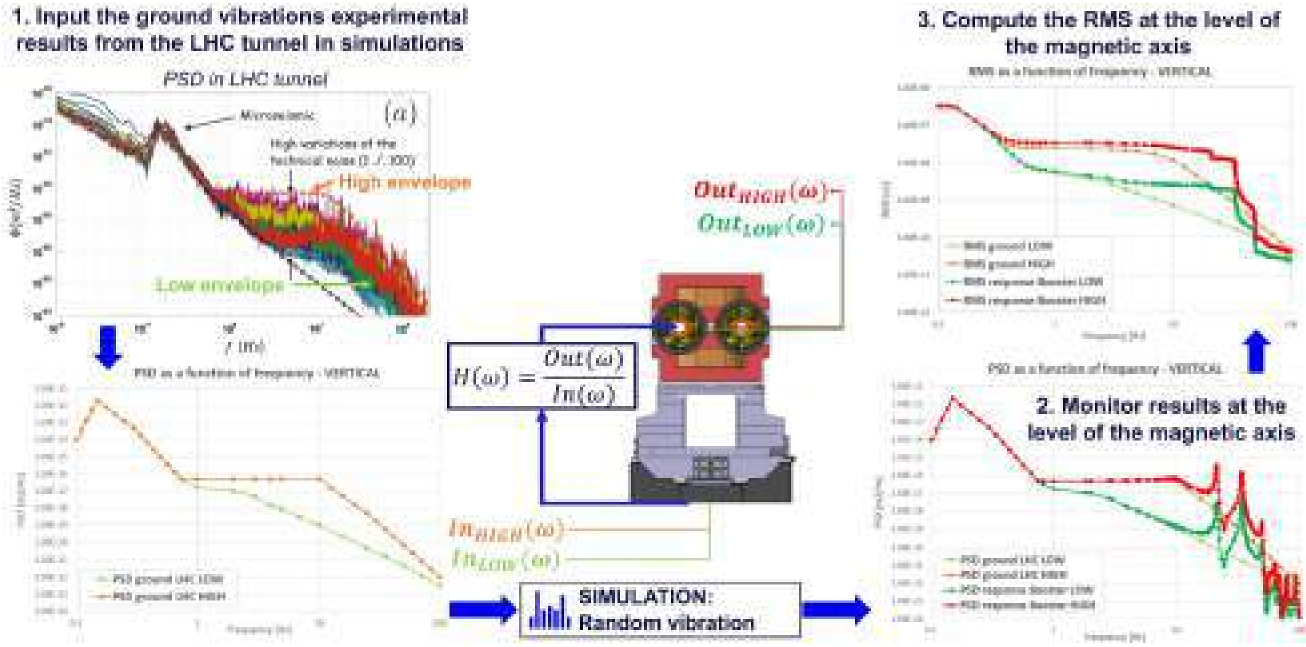


Fig. 3.76 Methodology to assess the stability of the supporting systems

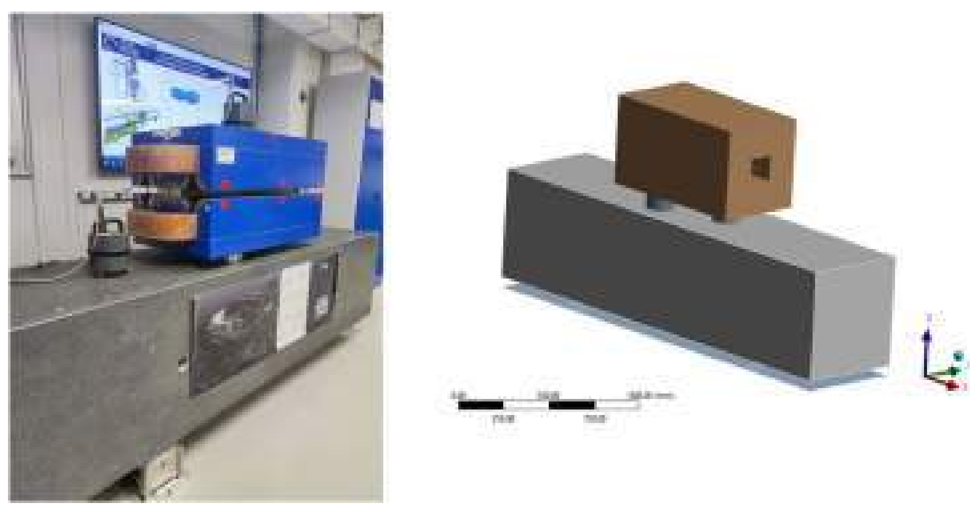


Fig. 3.77 2.5 m long short straight section demonstrator and its equivalent in simulation

such as simplified magnets and interfaces (ground to support, support to magnets, etc.). It is thus of paramount importance to experimentally benchmark and tune the simulations to acquire confidence in the numerical model. A simple 2.5 m-long Short Straight Section demonstrator (see Fig. 3.77) was therefore assembled to allow an understanding of how the different elements of the SSS affect the system stability. This SSS consists of feet/jacks supporting a granite girder, on which the prototype quadrupole built by TE-MSC during the CDR phase [315] was installed.

A multistep experimental characterisation of each element and, successively, of the full assembly, in terms of modal analysis and transfer function, was then performed. These measurements were carried out at CERN in the Mechanical Measurement Laboratory of EN-MME. The experimental results are compared with the numerical analyses to gradually refine the simulations and to determine the dynamic stability of the different elements more accurately. The different steps and their key results are summarised below.

1. **Characterisation of the prototype quadrupole:** the vibrational natural frequencies of the prototype quadrupole, even after extrapolation for the 2.9 m-long quadrupole, are quite high, around 100 Hz, and typical of a very stiff system. It will thus only marginally affect the vibrational behaviour of the SSS. Particular attention should be given to the interfaces between quadrupole and girder, as these interfaces, depending on their stiffness, can be

Table 3.23 Experimental and simulation results for the 2.5 m long granite girder with the prototype quadrupole: Integrated Root Mean Square at 1 Hz at the level of the floor, the girder and the quadrupole in the vertical and lateral direction

Integrated RMS values at 1 Hz	Vertical direction EXP.	Vertical direction SIMU	Lateral direction EXP.	Lateral direction SIMU
On the ground	5 nm	5 nm	7 nm	7 nm
On the girder	12 nm	10 nm	162 nm	124 nm
On the quadrupole	13 nm	15 nm	309 nm	220 nm

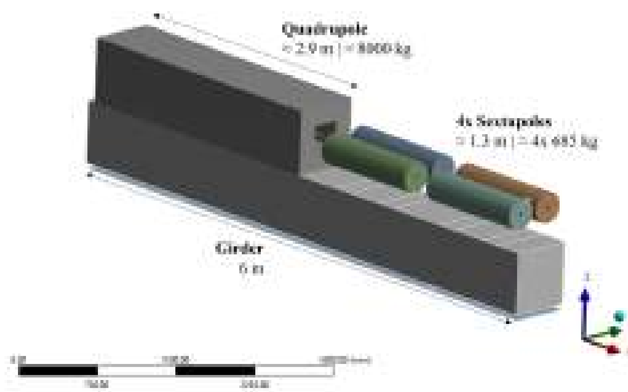


Fig. 3.78 6 m long short straight section in simulation composed of the granite girder, the simplified quadrupole and sextupoles

the source of rigid body modes, generally at low frequencies, which have a major impact on stability. For more details, see Ref. [310].

2. **Characterisation of the 2.5 m long girder:** the natural frequencies of the girder are above 400 Hz, whereas the rigid body modes are below 100 Hz and even fall below 20 Hz for the first. The results show that the frequencies associated to the girder rigid body modes are determined by the vibrational modes of the feet/jacks. The girder is therefore a rigid component, but the feet/jacks have a significant effect on its stability, which is why it is important to work on the design of the feet/jacks that will be used to support the girder. For more details, see [310].
3. **Characterisation of the 2.5 m long girder with the prototype quadrupole:** the third step involved characterising the 2.5 m long girder with three jacks and the 1 m long quadrupole prototype on top. This configuration was chosen because it is the closest to that which is most likely to be adopted in the FCC-ee tunnel. The key results are presented below and details can be found in Ref. [310].

To summarise, the measurements demonstrated that individual subcomponents such as the quadrupole and the girder are relatively stiff compared to the supports on which they are placed, i.e., the jacks and the interface between magnets and girder.

Table 3.23 displays the integrated RMS of the 2.5 m long girder with the prototype quadrupole, at the level of the ground, girder and quadrupole, in both vertical and lateral directions. This table also compares experimental measurements with data obtained from simulations.

Direct comparison of the values presented in Table 3.23 with the specifications presented in Table 3.22 shows that with the 2.5 m long demonstrator, the specifications have been reached or even exceeded. However, the real SSS will be 6 m long instead of 2.5 m, which will have a detrimental effect on stability.

Given the consistency found between the experimental results and the data obtained via simulation, a first extrapolation was carried out: simulating a 6 m long granite girder with the simplified quadrupole and sextupoles (see Fig. 3.78). Table 3.24 presents the modal results following extrapolation. Given the increase in mass and length of the system, there is a clear decrease in all mode frequencies: the system becomes less rigid. The refinement process on the simulations is still in progress to determine the integrated RMS for the 6 m length of the short straight section.

Conclusions and highlights The experimental measurements facilitate the understanding of how the different elements of the SSS affect the stability of the system and indicate an order of magnitude of the displacements expected in the frequency range of interest for FCC-ee. Individual subcomponents such as the quadrupole and the girder are relatively stiff (vibrational natural frequencies are in the order of a few hundred Hz) compared to the supports on which they are placed, i.e., the jacks and interfaces girder/magnets. From the dynamic stability point of view, the latter thus requires more work, during the next project phase.

Table 3.24 Simulation results of the modal analysis of the 2.5 m long granite girder with the prototype quadrupole vs. the 6 m long granite girder with the quadrupole and sextupoles

Modes	Frequency for 2.5 m-long config. (simu. and exp. results)	Frequency for 6 m-long config. (simu.)	Mode shape identification
S1	14 Hz	6 Hz	Tilting mode around X
S2	30 Hz	16 Hz	Tilting mode around Y
S3	34 Hz	12 Hz	Tilting mode around Z
S4	47 Hz	26 Hz	Rotation mode around X
S5	55 Hz	30 Hz	Up and down mode

The measurements of integrated RMS on the 2.5 m long demonstrator show vibrations comparable to the current specifications. However, simulations performed so far on the 6 m length of the SSS demonstrate that, with the current configuration of the systems, the specification will be exceeded. Moreover, for the moment, the study considers only the ground motion and does not account for additional external vibration sources (such as pumps, cooling systems, and ventilation) or the vibration cross-talk between the booster and collider structures through the ground. These additional sources will have a detrimental effect on the stability of the system, and they require further work.

The specifications appear challenging, and considerable work is required to optimise the system in terms of stability. This stability challenge must be taken into account by all stakeholders who will have equipment in the tunnel (pumps, ventilation, cooling, tunnel cross-section etc.) that will have a direct impact on the stability of the supporting structure.

3.10.4 Integration studies magnet/vacuum system

The design of key components, including magnets, the vacuum system, alignment mechanisms, and beam instrumentation, is still in the early stages for both the collider and the booster. To advance this work, a dedicated design study was initiated with the primary objective of refining the collider's integration model, with a particular focus on system interfaces. This study has proven to be crucial not only for optimising the integration layout but also for improving the optical design, as discussed in the following sections.

As part of the study, several critical aspects were analysed, including the integration of the vacuum absorber cooling system, heating jackets, dipole-to-dipole and dipole-to-quadrupole interconnections, magnet busbar insulation, vacuum shape-memory alloy (SMA) flange tooling, and overall accessibility to interconnections. More details on this work can be found in Refs. [316–318]. The present discussion, however, focuses on one of the key outcomes of the study: the separation of the e^+/e^- beams in the collider.

In the CDR [13] and, still, at the beginning of the Arc Half-Cell Mock-up Project, the optics design of the collider had a 30 cm radial spacing between the e^+ and the e^- beams. In light of the results of the interfaces design study, this distance has been increased to 35 cm. The main reasons are the following:

1. Integration of vacuum synchrotron radiation absorber cooling circuit, heating jackets and dipole busbar insulation.
   (a) 300 mm e^+/e^- separation results in jacket/busbar interference
   (b) 350 mm e^+/e^- separation allows >25 mm radial clearance between the two systems, a part of which will host the connection fittings of the cooling water supply tubes of the SR absorbers
2. Dipole to dipole interconnection (see Fig. 3.79).
   (a) 300 mm e^+/e^- separation results in a clash between vacuum chamber flanges and busbar insulation
   (b) 350 mm e^+/e^- separation guarantees 24.5 mm clearance between vacuum chamber flanges and insulation, as well as a continuous dipole busbar interconnections (no need of jumpers)
3. Vacuum chamber interconnection (see Fig. 3.80).
   (a) 350 mm e^+/e^- separation provides more space for SMA flange tooling and general access to interconnections
   (b) ∼127 mm between flange-to-flange insulation (assuming ∼10 mm insulation)
   (c) Enough space for BPM positioning (3× vacuum chamber outer diameter from SMA flange connection.)

3.10.5 Arc half-cell mock-up: concept verification

A mock-up of the arc half-cell is being built at CERN, on the Meyrin site and specifically in building 355/358. Among its objectives, a distinction can be made between short-term (2025) and long-term ones:

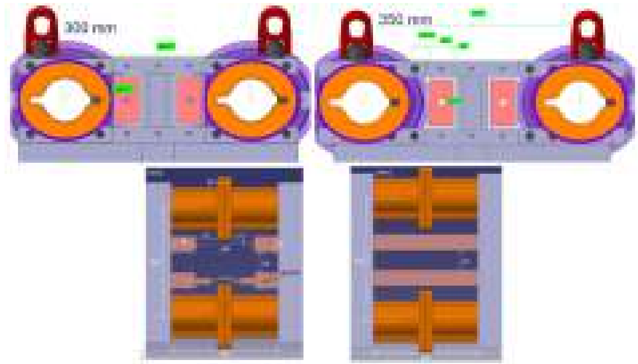


Fig. 3.79 Relative position of vacuum flanges and busbar insulation. Top and bottom Left: 300 mm e^+/e^- separation. Top and bottom Right: 350 mm e^+/e^- separation

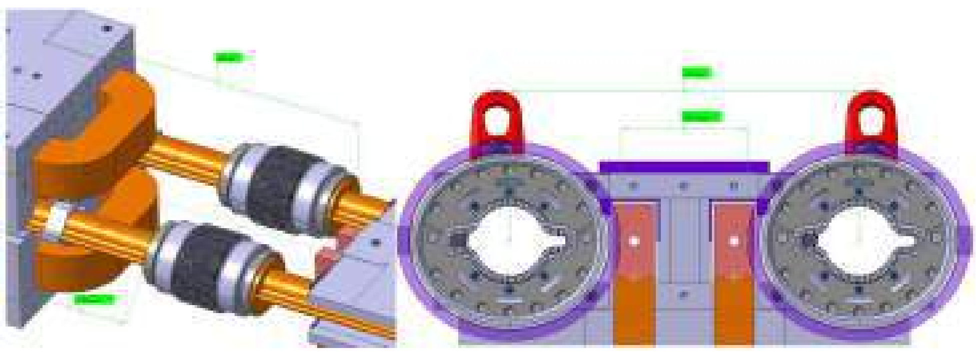


Fig. 3.80 350 mm e^+/e^- separation, vacuum interconnections and SMA flanges

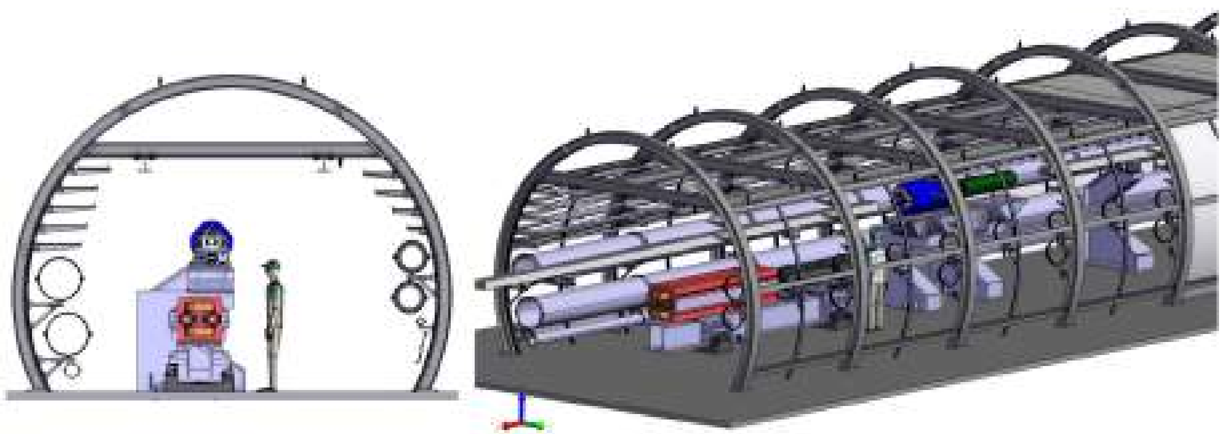


Fig. 3.81 CAD of the mock-up structure in development

- **Short term objective:** a mock-up allowing the testing of the integration of simplified elements within a short time-frame (detailed study of the integration of elements, analysis of access and compatibility with safety requirements, test of alignment strategy and mechanical stability, etc.). This mock-up will also be used for outreach, it is a 'visual' demonstrator for the stakeholders of the FCC.
- **Long term objective:** an evolving mock-up allowing equipment groups to install and test their equipment. The mock-up could, in the future, house the full-size/weight functional elements.

The mock-up will be 1:1 scale, meaning that the 5.5 m of the tunnel, and the half-cell length at high machine energy (30 m), will be accurately reproduced. The only area that will not be reproduced in the mock-up is the trench under the ground level.

As shown in Fig. 3.81, the mock-up structure will be made of steel, featuring an arch every 3 metres, reinforced by transverse beams. Wooden or aluminium panels will be attached to the structure and painted to replicate the appearance of concrete accurately. The main advantage of the steel structure is that it can be easily dismounted and remounted if needed, as well as updated and adapted to the evolution of the machine arc region.

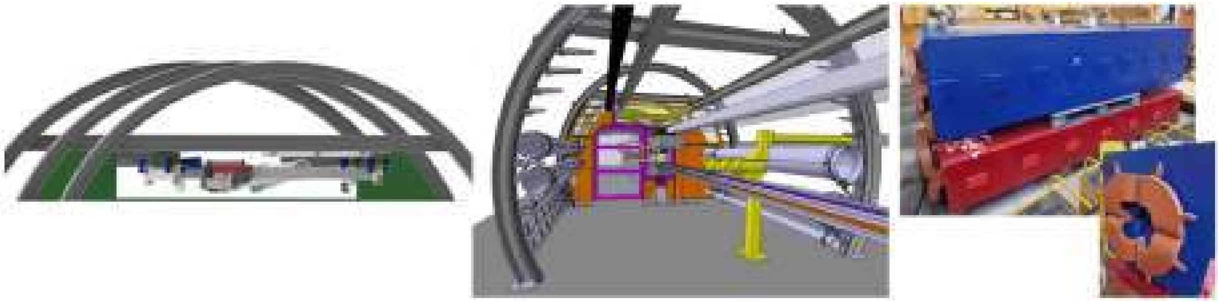


Fig. 3.82 CAD of the integration of the RMIS, CAD of the integration of the fire door and partition and services, example of wooden magnets

For the 2025 installation, the initial mock-up will consist of a combination of real and dummy elements, with the flexibility to evolve over time. To facilitate integration testing and optimisation, the magnets will be constructed from wood, while actual support structures, including jacks, girders, and pillars, will be installed. The arc envelope is designed to support the full weight of all real components from the outset, ensuring that no structural modifications will be required when transitioning from dummy to real elements.

As shown in Fig. 3.82, a prototype of the remote maintenance and inspection system (RMIS) robot will be installed to evaluate various operational scenarios, including routine maintenance, emergency procedures, and leak detection. Additionally, a prototype of the fire door and its partition will be deployed to assess its positioning, integration, installation process, and interaction with the RMIS. Following these initial installations, all essential services—including cooling and ventilation systems, electrical infrastructure, and IT networks—will be implemented.

3.10.6 Next steps

As mentioned above, a significant amount of work still needs to be done before reaching a satisfactory solution for the integration and stability of the arc half-cell elements. In particular, the following main activities have been identified:

- Install the first version of the mock-up, and test integration aspects.
- Build an arc configuration compatible with the installation/uninstallation/handling procedures defined by the Handling Engineering team (see Sect. 8.6).
- Develop and commission the mixed reality system in the mock-up region.
- Continue the study and optimisation of the supports (jacks, girders, supporting structures) from the stability and cost point of view, also via prototypes and dedicated experimental measurements in the mock-up (e.g., ground-induced vibrations on the 6 m SSS, random-vibrations effects).
- Perform thermomechanical simulations to evaluate, for example, the thermal deformations induced by the tunnel temperature variation on the elements of the girder, also validating the proposed air flow cooling system.
- Update and upgrade the mock-up main systems. In particular, the initial dummy structures (wooden magnets, vacuum chambers) were replaced with the first prototypes produced by the equipment groups while also adapting the mock-up to the changes of the arc region.

3.11 Machine protection hard- and software systems

This section describes the systems, hardware and software, closely related to the machine protection of the accelerator. They are the systems which presently fall under the responsibility of the TE-MPE group.

3.11.1 Interlock systems

Interlock systems are essential for the safe operation of the FCC-ee. The following interlock systems have been identified for the FCC-ee collider and booster.

- Warm magnet interlock controller (WIC). The system protects the warm magnets and the synchrotron radiation absorbers from over-heating because of missing (water) cooling and/or running at too high a load (magnet current or synchrotron radiation load). In case of a power converter fault, it can also act as an interface between the power converters and the beam interlock system. The system is connected to thermal switches, flow meters of the water-cooling system, the power converters and the beam interlock system.

A diagnostic system that identifies which magnet or synchrotron radiation absorber segment has an over-temperature needs to be developed. The system should not require individual cables to be installed to these magnets; such a system does not exist at the moment. In the existing machines, individual cables are installed, but this would be too expensive for a machine as large as the FCC-ee.

- Beam Interlock System (BIS). This is the core of the machine protection system and connects the many Users (Power converters, RF, Beam Loss Monitors, Interlock Systems etc.) to the beam dumping system. There are dedicated BIS for the injection and extraction systems, which can inhibit injection or extraction.

  The BIS is based on customised electronics and needs to be designed and developed based on the failure cases and reaction times derived by detailed machine protection studies for the main ring, the full energy booster-ring and the transfer lines. The current LHC system does not account for any especially fast interlock channels. Potential designs of extra fast interlock channels have to be studied and the electronics required designed and developed in case the machine protection studies show that reaction times in the microsecond range are required.
- Safe Machine Parameters (SMP). The SMP is closely linked to the BIS. It provides flags to the different BIS to allow masking of certain interlock channels when operating with low beam intensities and/or energies (needed for setting up the accelerator). It also provides beam parameters to many different systems, like the beam loss monitors and the experiments, all in a highly reliable environment.
- Fast Magnet Current Change Monitor (FMCM). For some normal conducting magnet systems, the reaction time from the power converters to request a beam in case of power failures can be too long. For those systems, a dedicated system can be installed. The FMCM has a very fast reaction time to request a beam dump in case of fast magnet current changes (in general, a power converter trip).
- Powering Interlock Controller (PIC). This system interfaces the protection of the super conducting magnets (Quench Detection System) to the Beam Interlock System and requests a beam dump in case of any problems related to the superconducting magnets. For this reason it also interfaces to the many systems to which the superconducting magnets are connected: power converters, cryogenics, UPS etc.

3.11.2 Protection systems for superconducting magnets

The FCC-ee will be dominated by normal conducting magnets and circuits. However, superconducting circuits of the FCC-ee (e.g., the circuits of the final focusing magnets at the IPs) will require dedicated protection systems to ensure their safe operation.

- Quench detection and data acquisition system (QDS). The QDS is made of high-precision, fast, dedicated electronic boards for the detection of quenches in superconducting magnets, busbars, links and HTS current leads. It interfaces all superconducting magnet and circuit protection systems (energy extraction system, local protection units, coupling loss induced quench systems), the powering interlock controllers and the beam interlock system. If a quench is detected, the QDS will send high-resolution data to the post-mortem system, which is crucial to validate the correct behaviour of the circuit and the protection system before releasing them for re-powering.
- Energy extraction systems (EE): These are clusters of racks with high-current switches, controls and extraction resistors. If there is a power failure or quench of a superconducting magnet, the EE systems are activated and they ensure the timely and safe extraction of the energy stored in the circuit to the extraction resistor. The EE systems interface the QDS and the PIC and send high-resolution data to the post-mortem system.
- Local protection units. These are quench heater power supplies, to protect superconducting magnets in case of a quench. They consist mainly of an energy storage system based on capacitor banks, which discharge their energy into quench heater strips installed on or in the coils of the magnets if there is a quench. They interface the QDS and the instrumentation feed boxes (IFS).
- Coupling loss induced quench system (CLIQ). These are special double racks size systems, to protect superconducting circuits in case of a quench or powering failure. They consist mainly of an energy storage system based on capacitor banks, which discharge their energy into the magnet's inductance, creating a high di/dt in the circuit. They interface the QDS and the Instrumentation Feed Boxes (IFS).
- Cold diodes for circuit protection. These are radiation hard by-pass diodes required to divert the circuit current around the quenching magnet. They are specially designed together with industry and need to be qualified for the integrated radiation dose expected, and the 1 MeV equivalent neutron fluence levels.
- Warm diodes for circuit protection. These are warm bypass diodes to ensure a discharge path for the oscillating currents induced by the activation of the CLIQ systems around the power converter of a circuit. They are usually procured from industry.
- Electrical quality assurance (ElQA). This is the dedicated high precision, high voltage (mobile) hard- and software for the ElQA testing of all superconducting circuit elements during production, reception and commissioning.

- Proximity equipment (current lead heaters). These consist of regulators and power transformers with support structures and controls racks. They are required to heat the normal conducting end of the HTS current leads to avoid the creation of condensation and ice. They are usually custom designs based on commercial components.
- Instrumentation feed boxes (IFS). These boxes interface cables for discharge and instrumentation from the cold mass of superconducting magnets and links. They consist of dedicated PCBs for interfacing the QDS, cryogenic and protection equipment (CLIQ, Local protection units) and are installed on top of the instrumentation flanges of the cryo-assemblies.

3.11.3 Software systems

Software systems play an important role for interlocking, efficient and safe validation and safe operation of the FCC-ee.

- Software Interlock System (SIS). The SIS completes the hardware interlock system. It generally reads the equipment status over software and is connected to the BIS to request a beam dump when needed. It is less reliable and significantly slower in reaction than a full hardware system however it is more flexible. This system is presently developed mainly by the BE-CSS group. However, as it is important and related to machine protection, while very likely not listed in any other category, it has been added to the TE-MPE list of items.
- Post mortem systems. The safety of the accelerators depends on the correct functioning of the complete chain of the machine protection system and the in-depth understanding of the reason for beam dump requests and powering failures. The post-mortem system receives and reliably stores high-resolution data from all relevant systems and performs automatic analyses of these data. It interfaces with the SIS and can block beam operation if the analysis criteria are not met.
- Accelerator testing (AccTesting) & analysis tools for commissioning and operation. These are software systems running on top of the CERN IT infrastructure for scheduling, automatically performing and evaluating hardware commissioning tests of the accelerator systems. They are essential for efficient and safe hardware commissioning and for validating the conformity and correct operation of various hardware systems, many of which are related to different electrical circuits and machine protection.
- Fault tracking and machine availability. These are software tools for the simulation and the tracking of system and accelerator faults. They are very important during the design and operation of the accelerators and their different hardware systems, especially those related to the safety of the accelerator. The machine availability needs to be studied and tracked to optimise performance and determine where investments are best placed to improve performance.

3.11.4 Conclusion on machine protection hard- and software systems

New techniques and concepts will need to be developed for the WIC system to identify the faults' location, without having to pull individual cables to the sensors. In case required, special extra-fast channels of the BIS will need new technologies. No specific new developments have been identified for all other systems described in this chapter.

3.12 An alternative arc magnet design

FCC is also pursuing an alternative design for the magnets in the three versions of the arc short straight sections shown in Fig. 3.83. The alternative design could bring the following advantages compared to the baseline design:

1. Lower power consumption and lower weight.
2. More flexibility in optics design.
3. An improved filling factor.
4. State-of-the-art technology with increased societal impact.

The lower power consumption is achieved by replacing the main quadrupoles and sextupoles of the arcs with superconducting ones. In the baseline scheme, about 80 MW of electrical power is consumed at top energy by the collider main magnets, the majority of which goes to power the quadrupoles and sextupoles. An estimated further 14 MW is consumed by the cooling and ventilation systems for these magnets. By employing superconducting quadrupoles and sextupoles, one can dispense with ohmic losses at the expense of cooling power, which is estimated to be only a fraction of the ohmic load.

Replacing the normal conducting sextupoles and quadrupoles with magnets based on high-temperature superconductors (HTS) would result in the following gains:

- Magnets can be nested, increasing the dipole filling factor;
- Magnets for the electron and positron beams are independently powered, giving greater flexibility;

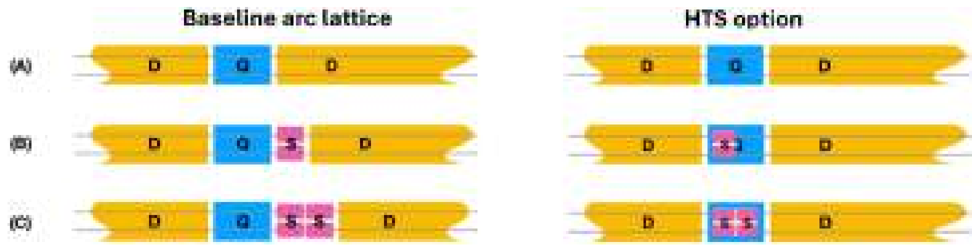


Fig. 3.83 The three different types of short straight sections of the baseline design (left). On the right, the single type uses nested HTS magnets

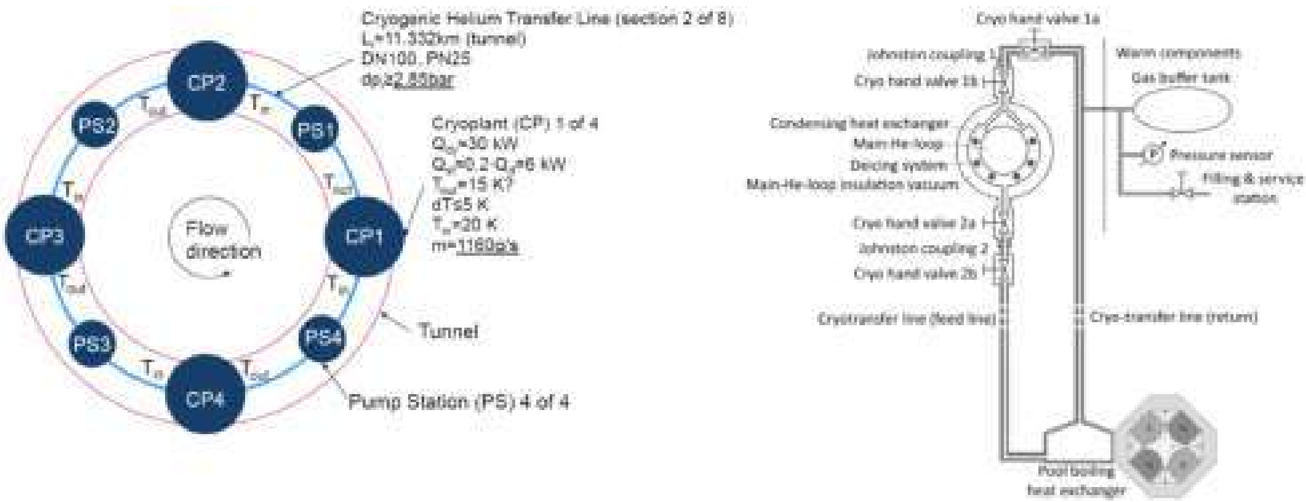


Fig. 3.84 Concept of cooling method based on cryogenic distribution line (left), and heat exchangers between the line and the HTS SSS's (right). Sketches courtesy of J. Bessler, E. Rosenthal, Forschungszentrum Jülich

- Power consumption for the relevant systems is significantly reduced;
- The use of novel materials and techniques (HTS conductors) increases the relevance of FCC to society and its sustainability credentials.

The idea has led to the approval of two projects, named *FCCee-HTS4* and *FCCee-CPES*, that have been financed through the CHART programme, a Swiss mission-oriented research network focused on technology development for the FCC.

HTS4 aims to investigate the nested magnet idea using HTS conductors. The end goal of the project, a metre-class prototype, is supported by subscale sextupole demonstrators manufactured at CERN and PSI. The first two demonstrators investigate the options of using a wax-impregnated canted-cosine-theta (CCT) coils, based on insulated HTS tape, and a partial-insulation based cosine-theta (CT) configuration. The prototype will consist of a nested quadrupole-sextupole configuration.

The minimum length of the short straight section (SSS), 3.5 m, is dictated by the minimum length of the quadrupoles, below which synchrotron radiation issues arise. This corresponds to a total magnetic length of 3 m. To make the magnets as compact as possible, the sextupole can be nested in the same axial space as the quadrupole.

Two cooling strategies are being considered, as shown in Fig. 3.84. Both involve a dry, cryogen-free magnet. The first consists of a cryogenic distribution line connected to several cryoplants located on the surface. The distribution line services the HTS modules via Neon-based heat exchangers. This arrangement allows simple installation and replacement of magnets.

A second option is to give each magnet its individual cooling system in the form of multiple redundant cryocoolers. By utilising high-reliability single-stage coldheads, it is expected that such a configuration can achieve high overall system reliability and availability.

The optimum operating temperature of an HTS-based short straight section (SSS) is found by balancing the operational costs (dominated by electricity use for cooling) with capital costs (dominated by HTS conductor). For the cryocooler-based cooling option, 40 K seems to be a sweet spot for a wide range of energy and conductor prices. It is expected that results from a conceptual design study of the distributed cooling line would yield an overall lower total cost-of-ownership option, with the optimum at a lower temperature.

The sextupole demonstrators (Fig. 3.85) are designed to generate a gradient of 1000 T/m^2 (the FCC design calls for a gradient of 820 T/m^2) at a current of 250 A.

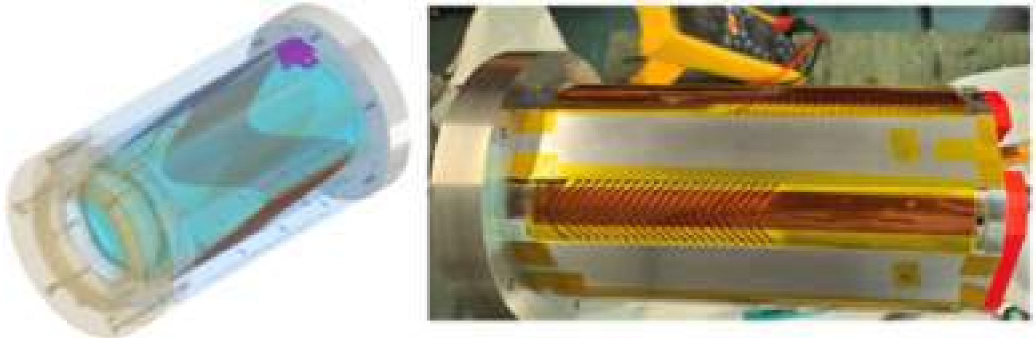


Fig. 3.85 The HTS4 sextupole demonstrator: left: CAD design; right: the magnet after winding, before the assembly of its aluminium sleeve

Fig. 3.86 Left: The coating station, with the uncoated tape-spool on the left and coated tape spool on the right. The coating occurs near the bottom of the setup, after which the tape is heated to be dried before re-spooling. Right: one CT sextupole coil wound using 4 mm coated dummy tape

The improvement expected in the dipole filling factor over the baseline solution is 7%. This would translate to 7% higher luminosity at the same beam power or one year of running less in the FCC-ee 14-year programme for the same physics output. This also translates to 7% less RF voltage needed at top running, and thus the number of 800 MHz cavities required is reduced.

The nesting of quadrupoles and sextupoles paves the way for nesting a dipole component as well see, for instance, Ref. [321], increasing the filling factor to 120% of the baseline value. Such an inclusion in the HTS SSS is possible.

HTS4 is also pursuing technologies of partially insulated HTS tapes. Partially insulated coils have distinct advantages in robustness and effective current density, as they reduce the amount of stabilising copper required in case of a quench. Developing such a technology is important for the future of HTS accelerator magnet technology and a coating station (Fig. 3.86) has been built at PSI to coat HTS tapes with a partially insulated layer.

The CPES project at ETHZ designed a highly efficient power supply suitable for powering accelerator magnets while operating inside the cryostat at cryogenic temperatures. In this way, the large heat load associated with the high-current conduction-cooled leads required to transfer the current from room temperature to cryogenic conductions can be avoided. This is a key component in making cryogen-free magnets energy efficient.

CPES built a demonstrator (Fig. 3.87) with five full-bridge phase modules and up to 100 A output. Test results of this module at 100 A are extrapolated to a heat load of 4.4 W at 250 A. In comparison, a pair of high-current conduction-cooled current leads would have 23 W of losses in the cryostat. For cryogenic power supplies to be viable in an accelerator environment, additional studies on component- and system-wide reliability and radiation hardness are required.

For the cryo-cooled approach, equipment needs to be placed in the collider tunnel (cryocooler and associated electronics) or indeed inside the SSS cryostat (power supply). Therefore a radiation study has been performed

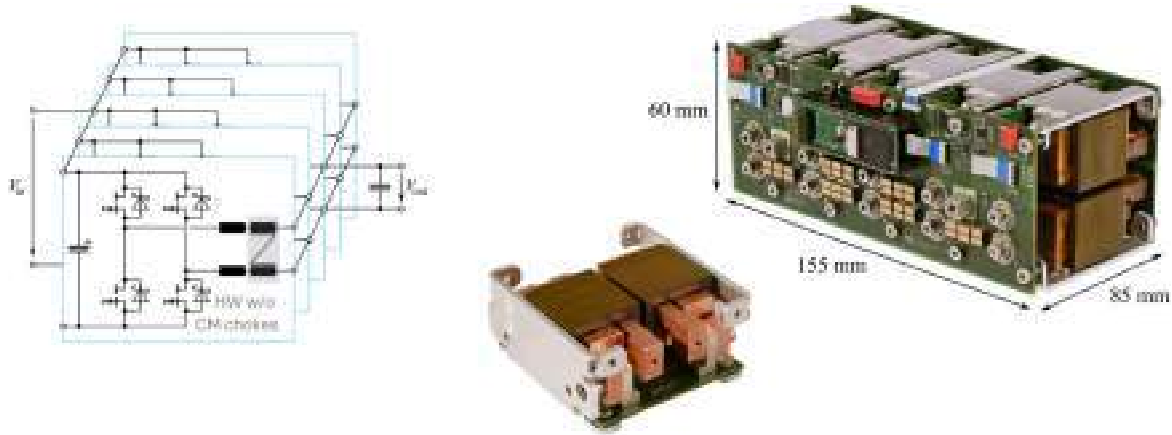


Fig. 3.87 The CPES demonstrator comprises five full-bridge phase modules using Gallium Nitride (GaN) transistors

to ensure that equipment will continue functioning during the whole lifetime of the FCC. This study, that uses somewhat more shielding around the SR photon stoppers, shows that doses of 1 kGy or less are possible for the equipment concerned (to be validated in the next phase).

The possibility of using HTS superconducting magnets operated at or below 40 K and replacing the baseline approach of iron-based non-superconducting magnets seems promising but also involves some risks (mainly having to do with costs and the fact that this is a radically different approach) that need to be understood. The HTS4 prototype will be tested in early 2026, at which point the technological readiness level as well as integration into the FCC-ee tunnel and timeline will be reviewed.

3.13 Dismantling FCC-ee

In order to make way for the FCC-hh, the FCC-ee machine and infrastructure will have to be removed. This section presents a first look at the strategy and process for dismantling FCC-ee and identifies the main cost drivers as well as logistics and planning constraints. Given that the details of the machine and its components are still being refined, it is clear that the considerations here can only be approximate but can be refined as the project progresses. The dismantling study drew heavily on the experience of dismantling LEP [322].

3.13.1 Basic strategy

Objectives The objective is to dismantle the FCC-ee machine and its specific infrastructure in order to leave the underground areas in a state ready for the installation of the FCC-hh. Since the regular arcs account for 80% of the FCC circumference and 90% of the mass, their clearing will dominate the overall dismantling process and drive the logistic constraints.

Figure 3.88 shows the cross-section in the regular arc of the FCC-ee. The areas circled in light blue represent the principal areas that will be dismantled in the machine tunnel. The equipment consists of the collider and booster rings along with their metallic support and alignment structures, control and DC powering cables and piping for a variety of cooling circuits. It is assumed that the main ventilation system as well as safety systems, AC power cables and fibre optic cables will not require dismantling. In addition to the main machine tunnel there are alcoves, located at about every ∼1.5 km along the circumference of the arc, housing local equipment, like low voltage distribution and repeaters. Much of this equipment will not be dismantled. However, the alcoves will also house the power converters for some of the FCC-ee magnets. The removal of this equipment, along with the associated DC cabling, represents a significant workload and logistic challenge.

Assumptions for the study A number of assumptions were made for the study and these are listed below (in no particular order) along with a brief explanation of the reason for the assumption and its impact.

- FCC-ee operation will end with ∼5 years of physics at the top energy (360 GeV). This is the most constraining scenario from a radiological point of view as operation at this energy will produce the highest levels of induced activity in some machine elements. It is assumed that the arc magnets and vacuum chambers of the collider and booster, as well as the photon stoppers, will become activated. However, the materials chosen for these components will be selected so that the levels of activity are minimised, and it is expected that the activity will

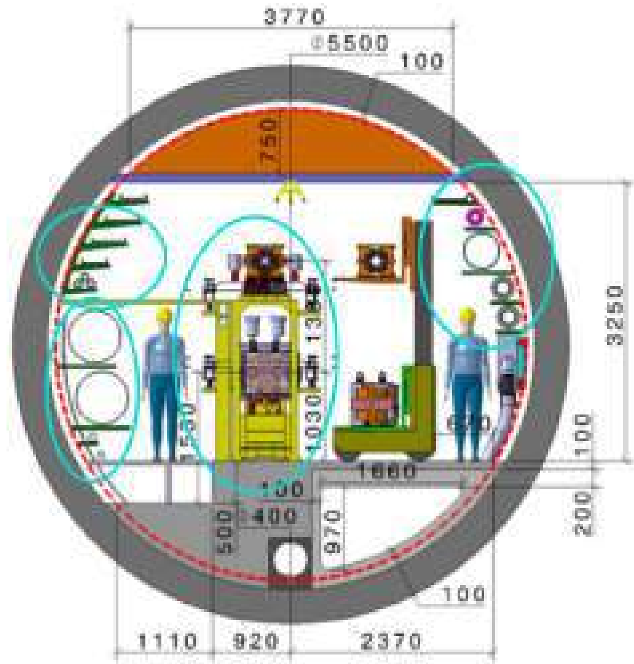


Fig. 3.88 Cross-section of the current FCC-ee tunnel integration in the regular arcs. The main areas to be dismantled are circled in blue

Table 3.25 RF system installed for $t\bar{t}$ running (180 GeV/beam)

Frequency [MHz]	Machine	Number of cryomodules	Total Volume [m^3]
400	Collider	70	2519
800	Collider	100	4320
800	Booster	124	5357
Sum		294	13,196

decay to below release levels within a few years. In the straight sections, parts of the RF modules and individual components (such as beam dumps and collimators) will also become activated. The levels will be determined from FLUKA simulations as well as measurements in-situ (see Sect. 3.13.3) during and after operation. The remaining machine elements will be treated as conventional.

- To determine the timescale of dismantling, it is assumed that the work will be done during two 8-hour shifts per day, working five days a week. Such a schedule assumes that equipment maintenance can be carried out overnight and during weekends.
- The machine shafts at all 8 points will be used to extract the equipment (although not necessarily at the same time). The dismantling of the experiments will be conducted via the experiment cavern shaft(s) and will be kept separate from the machine dismantling.
- As the bottleneck for dismantling is likely to be in the underground areas, the logistics of the disposal of the equipment once at the surface are considered in less detail here. The primary consideration for the surface sites is to make some estimates of the temporary storage needs.

Equipment to preserve Most of the equipment removed from the machine will be treated as waste. After radiological checks, it will be disposed of via the appropriate pathway. However, some of the equipment is of high value and has potential for reuse. The major system in this class is the RF, with a total installed voltage of over 23 GV, and a construction cost well in excess of 1 BCHF. Table 3.25 summarises the RF system installed for the $t\bar{t}$ run.

Preserving the cryomodules in a way that would allow their reuse in another facility implies storing them in appropriate conditions, with the cavities themselves either under vacuum or filled with an inert gas. Assuming that cryomodules can be stacked on top of each other to a maximum of 3 modules, the storage space needed would amount to a floor surface area of 4400 m^2 (not including access space). In addition to the cryomodules, there is the RF power system, consisting of klystrons, circulators, waveguides and power supplies. With 2 klystrons per module a total of 140, 400 MHz klystrons and 288, 800 MHz klystrons would need to be stored.

For this study, it is assumed that all RF-related equipment apart from the waveguides is kept and stored, although in reality, a much more detailed study will be required to determine which parts of the system to preserve and which to discard. Besides the RF system, there may be other pieces of equipment to be kept, but these are likely to be smaller, individual items (e.g., specific beam instruments) which are all installed in the long straight sections. None of the machine elements in the arcs will be preserved.

It is also assumed that the radioactivity of the arc components (magnets and vacuum vessels) will take a few years to decay, and they will require interim storage for this period.

3.13.2 Regulatory framework

The regulatory framework concerning the elimination of radioactive waste is currently defined by the tripartite agreement between CERN and the Host States, as explained in Ref. [323]. The agreement allows CERN to eliminate radioactive waste in the two Host States by using the most technically and economically advantageous pathways in both countries. This principle allows CERN to optimise its radioactive waste elimination by choosing the most appropriate solution corresponding to the type of waste.

Concerning the elimination of radioactive waste produced by CERN experiments, the principle is that the collaborating institute remains the owner of the equipment they have provided (even if radioactive) and that they take it back unless otherwise agreed.

The cost estimate for the disposal of radioactive waste from CERN's facilities is based on an inventory indicating the amount and radiotoxicity of present and future radioactive waste, i.e. waste stored at CERN and waste that will be produced by preventive and corrective maintenance or by the upgrade of CERN's facilities or experiments. The estimate of future waste will not include an estimate of waste produced in the case of the decommissioning of CERN's facilities until the decommissioning has been approved.

3.13.3 Radiological estimations and zoning

The radiological zoning is a key driving factor for the logistics of dismantling the machine. The aim of the process is to identify all components and structures which are likely to become radioactive. This will be based on knowledge of the beam's behaviour and its interaction with matter and the history of operation. The classification of a zone determines the precautions and procedures which have to be applied. The synchrotron radiation emitted by the high-energy leptons will strike the localised absorbers in the vacuum chamber and will induce radioactivity. Other areas expected to become radioactive are beam scrapers, collimators, shields, beamstrahlung, main beam dumps and, to some extent, the magnets themselves. The vacuum vessels and magnets and, in particular, the absorbers, which are placed every 4-5 m around most of the machine circumference, obviously present the largest volume of radioactive material. Simulations show that the level of activity in the activated components will be very weak (TFA) and appropriate precautions will be taken in the dismantling process. Current studies indicate that the magnets and vacuum vessels of both booster and collider will not become activated until the $t\bar{t}$ run. During dismantling, the most active components will be removed first, unless they are in an area which can be closed off until the rest of the machine has been removed. This could apply, for example, to the beam dump where the tunnel containing the dump transfer line and radioactive dump block, could be sealed off.

Predictions of the levels of activity are made by simulations using tools such as FLUKA and these will form the basis of the initial zoning. Unexpected beam losses may lead to additional localised radioactivity, and this information will be incorporated in the overall picture. The operational zoning for dismantling will be confirmed by radiation measurements carried out after the definitive stop of the machine and before any dismantling is started.

3.13.4 Dismantling process

It is assumed that the dismantling can be done from all 8 points. However, it is unlikely that all 8 points will be used at the same time. The activities will be split into a series of 'trains' that will move progressively through the arcs. Each train will consist of the personnel, equipment, and transport vehicles needed to remove a specific set of equipment or carry out specific actions. Each train will have to complete its work before the next train starts. However, some optimisation may be possible. The order of the activities is listed below:

- Radiological measurements and zoning – measurements of radioactive activity. Final verification of the zoning of the arcs.
- Where essential systems and services (fire protection, communications, safety systems etc.) will be interrupted or removed, compensatory measures will have to be installed before the start of dismantling activities.
- Cryogenic systems will have to have the helium evacuated and be warmed up before the start of dismantling equipment in the affected areas.
- Cooling circuits will have to be emptied.

- Electrical safety: all elements to be removed have to be made electrically safe with an electrical lockout, followed by a definitive separation from the supply.
- Radiation survey measurements of the equipment and its surroundings (checking for anomalies and contamination risks).
- All of the equipment removed from the machine will undergo a triage measurement to determine its further destination: release, detailed free release measurement or further storage as a radioactive item. There will have to be space and dedicated measurement equipment for this free release measurement.
- Removal of radioactive components like collimators, which will be more highly activated.
- Removal of booster magnets and vacuum chambers as activated materials.
- Dismantling of the metallic structures supporting the booster as the last part of booster machine element removal.
- Removal of the collider vacuum chambers and magnetic elements together with the photon stoppers.
- Dismantling of the remaining machine support structures (can probably be done in parallel with the removal of the collider).
- Removal of straight section elements and equipment.
- Removal of unused piping.
- De-cabling.
- Final cleaning and floor/walls repair/repainting as necessary.

Critical logistics paths for dismantling As already mentioned, this analysis is based on dismantling two half-arcs from each point. Since the main components to remove will be the arc magnets, this defines the scale and sets the limits of the dismantling process.

Tunnel transport of arc components The average distance travelled will be 3 km each way from the loading location to the extraction point. Based on a vehicle speed of 10 kph loaded and 20 kph empty, the average travelling time for a round trip will be $\sim$30 minutes. Clearly, journeys to the beginning of the arc will be short, and those to mid-arc will be longer, but the average time/distance was used in the calculations. Dismantling will start on one side with the closest magnets, and on the other at the 6 km mid-arc extremity. To be added to the travelling time are the loading/unloading times: 45 minutes for loading (135 minutes for the 3-dipole trains) and around 30 minutes for unloading.

Taking into account that there will be two 3-dipole trains for every three SSS trains, each side of the arc would be capable of delivering 6 or 7 loads to be lifted within a double 8-hour shift. Therefore, it is assumed that only one transport vehicle will be needed on each side in the tunnel to deliver enough magnets to saturate the crane capacity (see below).

Arc equipment dismantling As well as the transport team, each train will have a team at the worksite to cut or dismantle the equipment and prepare it for transport. It is assumed that enough time will be available between each transport to prepare the next load.

Lifts and cranes The bottleneck in the extraction process is the crane lifting time. The depth of the shafts varies from 180 m (PD) to 400 m (PF) giving an average shaft depth of 240 m. For heavier loads, assuming a lifting speed of around 8 m/minute [324], a single hoist would take around 35 minutes to complete. Allowing 30 minutes for loading and 30 minutes for unloading, an average single round trip to the surface (240 m) will take $\sim$1.8 hours. This sets an upper limit on the number of hoists during a double 8-hour shift in the range 6 to 10, according to the depth of the shaft.

3.13.5 Material quantities

Arcs Details of the quantities concerned have been addressed in a separate document [325], and only the main conclusions are presented here. These numbers have been derived based on the current state of the design, which will certainly evolve but should not affect the conclusions by more than ±20%. Table 3.26 summarises the contents of the regular half cells; the weight of booster magnets has been assumed to be the same as those of the collider ring. For the support structures, an overall weight of 10 tonnes per half-cell is assumed.

Excluding the busbars, total material weight is 118.35 ktonnes for the arcs and 121.25 ktonnes for the whole machine if the straight sections are included. If one assumes that copper cored cables are used, there will be around 2.4 ktonnes for the whole machine (0.8 ktonnes, if aluminium is used). Based on cabling of the sextupole families using 120 mm^2 section copper-cored cables, their weight will be 1.6 ktonnes for the whole main ring. A similar value for the booster sextupole powering can be assumed, and in both cases the weight will be reduced by a factor 3 if aluminium is used. Each half-cell will also contain other equipment, which is cabled to the nearest alcove (orbit

Table 3.26 Contents of a half-cell in the regular arc

Description	Quantity	Length [m]	Approx. Weight [kg]
Booster dipoles (2 sections)	4	5.55	2500
Collider main dipoles (2 sections)	4	5.55	5000
Booster short straight section	1	2	4200
Collider short straight section	1	6.3	∼11,000
Metallic support structures	1		10,000

Table 3.27 Hoist inventory for one extraction point, assuming dipoles can be transported three at a time, working for a minimum duration of 28, 5-day weeks with 2 shifts per day

Element	Quantity	No. Hoists	No. per week per crane
Booster dipoles	736	245	11 (×3)
Booster SSS	368	368	16
Collider dipoles	736	245	11 (×3)
Collider SSS	368	368	16
Total		**1226**	

Table 3.28 Summary of electrical equipment to be dismantled from the various alcoves

		Cables		Converters	
	Number of alcoves	Number per alcove	Length per alcove [m]	Number of converters	Number of racks
Big alcoves	16	460	274,666	228	273
Small alcoves	40	880	429,148	440	238
Grand Total	**56**	**42,560**	**21,560,578**	**21,248**	**13,888**

correctors, beam position monitors, beam loss monitors, interlock cables and miscellaneous signals). It has been estimated that there will be ∼31,000 km of these cables. It is assumed that the other cables for such things as AC power, fibre optics and the access system will not be removed as they will serve FCC-hh.

The collider and booster dipole magnets can be transported and lifted stacked in groups of 3 on the transport trailer. The collider QSS girders are the heaviest elements and will be evacuated one at a time. There will be 368 lifts for each of the quadrupole girders (QSS, QS and Q) and booster SSS and 245 lifts for the collider dipoles and a similar number for the booster dipoles (see Table 3.27).

LSS The long straight sections of the collider and booster contain a further 520 quadrupoles and 200 sextupoles, and they have a total weight ∼2900 tonnes.

RF There will be 170 cryomodules installed in the collider at PH and 124 in the booster at PL. These will be powered by the klystrons in the gallery above the tunnel and linked to the modules by the waveguides.

Cryogenics The cryogenics equipment is located in the klystron galleries, the long straight sections, the service caverns, shafts and surface buildings. The equipment to be removed the comprises control equipment, distribution lines, cold boxes and storage vessels. Sensitive elements like instrumentation and valves will be removed first. The cryogenic equipment associated with the machine-detector-interface, MDI, has not been specified at the time of writing and its dismantling has not been considered. However, it is not expected to have a significant impact on the overall timescale or cost.

It is assumed that both cryoplants at PH will be dismantled, although one may be kept for FCC-hh.

Alcoves Detailed estimates of the equipment in the alcoves which has to be removed are given in Ref. [325]. Table 3.28 presents an overview of this equipment and the associated cabling.

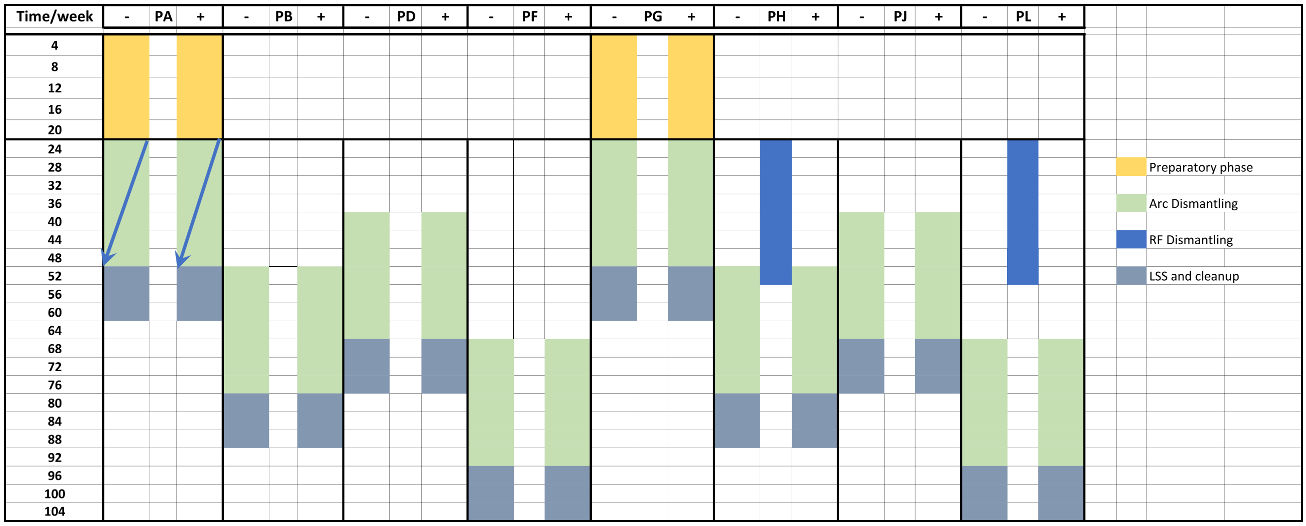


Fig. 3.89 Schematic representation of a possible timeline of machine dismantling based on 2 shifts working, 5 days per week. The arrows on PA indicate the direction of progress through the arc. The preparatory phase is only shown for the first two arcs

3.13.6 Timescales

Arcs Given the average 1.8 hours needed for a round trip of the crane hook, the time required to perform the 1226 hoists corresponds to about 28 weeks working two shifts per day and five days per week.

LSS It is assumed that the machine elements in the LSS between the IP and the arc can be dismantled in ∼4 weeks.

RF The rate of removal of RF cryomodules is limited by the time it takes to carefully dismantle and transport them, and it is expected to take around the same time as the installation. The removal of klystrons and waveguides should be ∼50% faster than installation and can be done in the shadow of the cryomodule dismantling. The rate of dismantling cryomodules is expected to be approximately 16 stations per month, working two shifts, five days a week. Working in PH and PL in parallel, the time envelope determined by the dismantling of the 170 cryomodules in PH will be <12 months.

Cryogenics The sensitive elements in the service caverns and tunnel will be removed first, and the cold boxes will be purged and sealed before removal. Once the connecting pipes have been removed, the boxes can be lifted and removed. At the surface, as many elements as possible will be carefully removed for potential reuse in FCC-hh. Dismantling at the surface can only start once all cryogens have been stored and underground elements have been disconnected.

It has been shown in Ref. [323] that if PH and PL are done in parallel, the cryogenics system can be dismantled in <1 year allowing around 6 weeks for the initial preparatory stages.

Overall timescale The overall duration is governed by the rate at which the main arc components can be removed from the tunnel. In the following, it is assumed that the overhead crane will be working continuously 5 days per week and 16 hours per day.

To be added to 28 weeks for arc equipment removal are the times needed for initial activities such as radiological zoning, electrical safety, implementation of compensatory systems for safety and services, cryogenics warmup etc. as well as the dismantling of the straight sections and the de-cabling and de-piping activities which follow. It has been assumed that the LSS dismantling and cleanup will require around 3 months after the arc has been cleared. Careful overall planning should allow much of the work to be performed in the shadow of the overall dismantling of the machine elements in other areas. Smaller loads can be brought to the surface using the lifts, which have a 3 t capacity.

Based on 5 days, two shifts working, and these assumptions, a possible timeline for dismantling is shown in Fig. 3.89. The direction of the trains' progression is indicated on PA, showing that one train starts from mid-arc and the other at the IP end. The preparatory phase is only indicated for PA and PG, as it will be in parallel with other activities for the other points. The total time required for this scenario is ∼2 years. Adding two shifts and working at weekends would reduce it to a total of about 1.4 years.

Table 3.29 Summary of equipment and infrastructure changes required for dismantling

Description
New temporary storage facilities (8×1500 m^2)
New storage facilities for radioactive decay (20,000 m^2)
New long-term storage facilities (5000 m^2)
Transport and handling materials (incl. cranes, vehicles, fuel etc.)
Tooling for dismantling
Transport containers
Equipment maintenance/consolidation (vehicles, cranes. . .)
Equipment for traceability, safety, signage etc.
Infrastructure modifications (access/safety systems, surface areas etc.)

3.13.7 Surface storage and logistics

Once the equipment reaches the surface, it will have to be transported from the shaft head to a temporary storage where it can be re-checked for radioactivity before being prepared for onward transport. At this stage, traceability data will also need to be generated for each load. The preparations may include further dismantling and sorting of the material before loading into (new) specific transport containers. Cranes will be needed for the new storage facilities.

After $t\bar{t}$ running, the arc magnets and vacuum chambers will remain radioactive for a period of up to a few years. They should be stored on-site for the decay period before entering the disposal pathway. The space requirement for this would amount to ∼20,000 m^2 if they are piled four high. This interim storage could be in the form of tent-like structures.

A tent-type structure which has no foundations but which could be heated to keep it above freezing should also suffice for temporary surface storage (triage, etc.).

To set the scale on the size of the covered storage and preparation area, it can be assumed that it should be capable of holding the material which comes out of the machine in one week, and there should be sufficient space around each element to allow any dismantling/conditioning to take place. Based on the numbers given in Table 3.27 and that dipoles will require a footprint of 11 m×3 m (to allow access), a covered area of 1500 m^2 would be required for the 5-working day, two-shift scenario. Additionally, space will be allocated for loading and unloading the equipment. The installation of a temporary industrial tent/hanger of an appropriate size at each surface point will, therefore, be required. It should be noted that during dismantling, equipment for FCC-hh will be arriving at CERN for assembly and testing, which will put an additional strain on the space available at CERN. Site security is an important issue, given the value of the materials being temporarily stored at surface sites, as well as the sensitive nature of low-level radioactive elements. Additional security will, therefore, be necessary.

For equipment requiring long term storage in controlled conditions, a more substantial building will be required. This type of building typically has large access doors, thermal insulation and a small capacity crane. These lightweight buildings are limited to a span of around 20 m so it may be necessary to construct a number of them.

3.13.8 Dismantling budget items

As much as possible of the work will be done by CERN staff and their regular support contractors, so that they are familiar with the equipment being dismantled. However, they will not be able to do all the work, and therefore additional contractors will be required. These contracts will also cover things such as operating the traceability system, removing cables and pipework, and ensuring safety supervision.

Details of the costs for the various labour components have been given in the report of the FCC-ee dismantling study [323].

Estimates of the cost of infrastructure changes and additional equipment, summarised in Table 3.29, have also been included in Ref. [323].

3.13.9 Pathways for FCC-ee components after removal

As mentioned above, high-value equipment that can be reused will be stored in storage. Materials that are not classified as radioactive (i.e., conventional waste) can be sold for recycling, and the remainder will be treated as waste. Institutes in member states will be offered the possibility of receiving equipment which is not needed by CERN and that they can use at their facilities. Radioactive waste will be disposed, using the Host State authorised facilities. The cost of this will be minimised by the appropriate choice of materials for components which will be activated, thereby limiting the volume of waste classified as radioactive. Both long-term and temporary storage will be required at CERN: the temporary areas will serve as buffer zones for equipment to be recycled and as intermediate storage for materials requiring processing before disposal. Long-term storage will be for equipment of high value which can be reused.

3.13.10 Dismantling of the experiments

The FCC-ee detector systems resemble LEP detectors in the sense that they are optimised for electroweak precision physics and precision measurements of the Higgs sector in a similar energy range. The overall size of the detectors is comparable to the LEP experiments. The CLIC-like Detector (CLD), for instance, has a height of 12 m and a length of 10.6 m, compared to DELPHI, which was $\sim$10 m in both length and diameter. The typical mass of a LEP experiment was approximately 3000 tons (barrel + endcaps), concentrated in the instrumented iron of the return yoke. Depending on the size and weight of the solenoid magnets, their lowering/lifting may require dedicated lifting equipment that exceeds the capacity of the overhead cranes in the assembly halls above the caverns. The FCC-ee caverns are equipped with two independent lifts capable of evacuating 300 people within 30 minutes. The occupancy of the caverns is therefore not expected to be a limiting factor for the dismantling schedule. A crucial difference between LEP and FCC-ee may be the radioactive activation of detector (and accelerator) hardware originating from the up to 10^5 times higher instantaneous luminosity.

Dismantling of the LEP experiments Traditionally, the detector systems and specific infrastructure are owned by the international collaborations that designed and built them, with CERN as a member of the collaborations. It is thus also the collaborations that are in charge of the preparation and implementation of the dismantling. Dismantling of FCC-ee experiments is expected to follow the LEP approach, which is outlined below.

The dismantling of the LEP experiments had to be integrated into the global LHC project plan and tightly coordinated with the accelerator dismantling. CERN, as the host lab, was in charge of the experiment sites, logistics, radiological and general safety, planning, and coordination. The year before the start of dismantling was dedicated to the preparation of the site, e.g., the mechanical workshop, setting up storage area for sub-detectors and zones for the safe storage of activated materials, zones for temporary storage of high-value waste, such as copper cables and pipes.

The dismantling teams of the four LEP experiments typically consisted of 10-15 persons. A small core of experienced CERN technical staff (2-4 persons) with in-depth knowledge of the detector, its infrastructure and the experiment site was reinforced by handling and electro-mechanical support personnel (about 5 persons). The international collaborations assumed their responsibility and sent expert teams that, ideally, had been involved in the installation process of a sub-detector approximately 12 years earlier.

A radiological zoning analysis based on detailed modelling of the detector and its environment was performed well before the start of the dismantling. The main steps of dismantling were:

- Making the areas safe (flushing detector gases, cutting electrical power, coolant supplies, removal of beam pipe and calibration sources)
- Cutting and removing cables and pipework
- Extraction of sub-detectors in the reverse order of installation
- Removal of remaining components and materials

The overall dismantling budget of the 4 experiments was about 3 MCHF (in year 2000 prices). About 1 MCHF was contributed by CERN, mainly used for financing of additional handling personnel, rental of cranes and special transports. Each of the 4 scientific collaborations foresaw a budget of about 0.5 MCHF. This covered the additional personnel for the systematic radioactivity monitoring, additional personnel for the dismantling operations, purchase of special tools and infrastructure modifications/preparations. The sales of the dismantled material brought a nett income of about 100 kCHF per experiment. A big fraction of the sales price of the return yokes (corresponding to about 10,000 tons of steel) was offset by the cost of cutting and transport (special heavy-load transports).

The unprecedented luminosity of the FCC-ee storage ring may lead to significantly higher activation of the detector hardware and its infrastructure. Hardware close to the beam pipe, like the luminometers, will be activated the most.

Conclusions from LEP dismantling Preliminary considerations suggest that the dismantling of the FCC-ee experiments can follow the same approach that was used for the four LEP experiments in 2001. The estimates of time and resources required appear still valid. The degree of activation and the related classification of certain parts of the detector need to be assessed with dedicated simulations based on realistic detector models and operational scenarios. The amount of material declared as TFA may have an impact on the planning and cost of the dismantling.

3.13.11 Recycling of materials

It can be anticipated that there will be some offset in the costs from the sales of materials for recycling and some specialist equipment. In the case of LEP dismantling, the sales revenue corresponded to ∼15% of the total cost of dismantling. The LEP dipole magnets, which formed the bulk of the materials, were made from steel embedded in concrete, and at the time, it was not financially viable to sell them for recycling. However, the FCC-ee magnets will be made of steel, weigh a total of ∼120 ketones, and will form the bulk of the recyclable materials to be removed. Copper and aluminium cables/busbars, as well as stainless steel pipework, will constitute further materials to be sold for re-cycling. Heavy metals (like lead and tungsten) will potentially be used for shielding, which will be available for recycling. The vacuum chambers in FCC-ee will be fabricated from high-purity copper and will, therefore, be of high value for recycling. There will be more copper and/or aluminium in the busbars and cables. A total of 3000 tonnes of copper or 1000 tonnes of aluminium will be required for magnet powering, further boosting the income from sales.

Planning Figure 3.89 presents a possible timeline for the dismantling process based on an initial preparatory phase of 20 weeks followed by 40 weeks of dismantling activities. The schema presented assumes that up to 4 arcs can be dismantled simultaneously. Such a scheme, however, will require additional transport equipment and larger facilities for triage, storage, and processing of the equipment than if only two arcs were dismantled simultaneously. If the LSS could be done in parallel to an arc at another point and the sequence was, for example, to complete dismantling from PA and PG (28 weeks), then start PD and PJ and so on, the overall duration would increase to around 144 weeks, but the total labour costs would remain the same. The gain would come from a reduction in the quantity of transport equipment required and fewer infrastructure requirements.

3.13.12 Conclusions

The general scheme for dismantling up to 8 half arcs through 4 access shafts concurrently has been analysed and is feasible given the current design of the FCC-ee and its infrastructure. If it were necessary to only work through two shafts concurrently due e.g., to bottlenecks in the extraction channels, the total cost would not change very much, but the overall duration would increase from around two to three years.

The collaborations will fund the dismantling of the experiments, but some support will be required from CERN staff. Once the design has been completed and the specifications of the materials are known, it should be possible to estimate the cost of the elimination of radioactive waste.

Chapter 4

FCC-ee booster design and performance

4.1 Optics design and beam dynamics

4.1.1 Booster parameters

The booster is located in the same tunnel as the collider. To simplify its mechanical integration, the length of one arc cell is set to 52 m, matching the short cell length in the collider. More precisely, the arc periodicity corresponds to five short cells due to the non-interleaved sextupole scheme.

However, the booster layout (see Fig. 4.1) differs in several aspects from the collider layout. These differences are highlighted in Fig. 4.2 and summarised below:

- The booster beam runs at a radial offset of 8 m on the outer side relative to the interaction point not to interfere with the experimental detector.
- The booster beam pipe is positioned at the top level of the tunnel, with a vertical offset of 1030 mm and a horizontal offset of 161 mm towards the inner side. This offset ensures that the booster and collider maintain exactly the same circumference. Additionally, the booster cells have a slight longitudinal offset to enhance mechanical stability and facilitate tunnel integration. Due to minor differences in the arc cell patterns of the booster and collider, the distance between their reference trajectories oscillates by approximately ±4 mm. This orbit variation is also influenced by the dipole arrangements in the arcs.
- The RF cavities in the booster are positioned in the long straight section H, whereas in the collider, they are located in section L.

The parameters for the booster are summarised in Table 4.1.

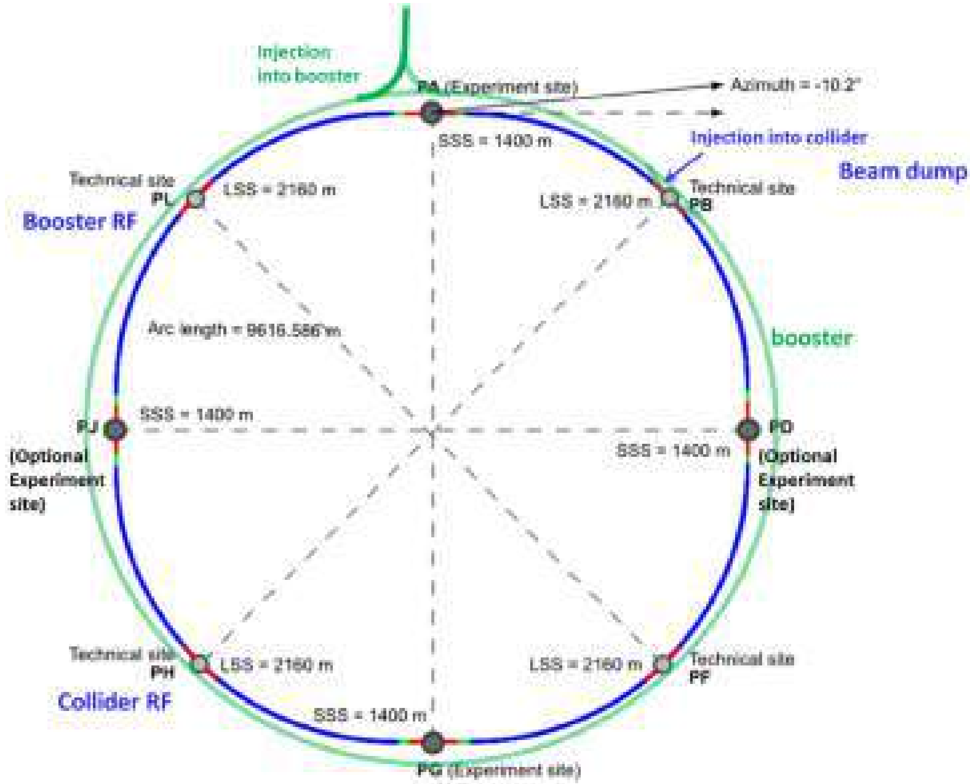


Fig. 4.1 Layout of the booster and collider. The booster shares the tunnel with the collider. The RF cavities of the booster are located in point L

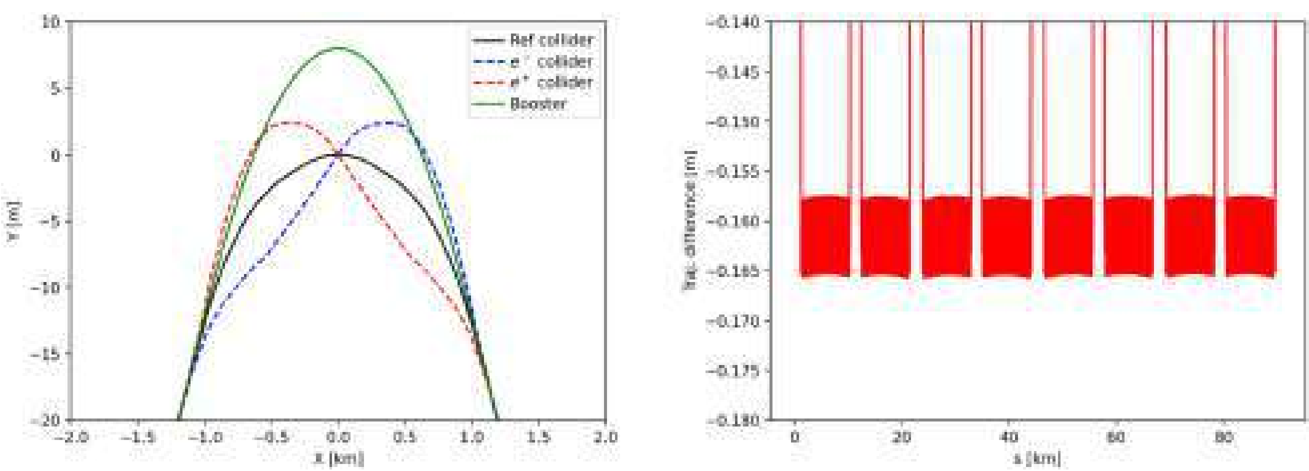


Fig. 4.2 Layout of the booster and collider in the section A, left. The distance between the reference axis of the booster and collider arcs is shown on the right picture

4.1.2 Main constraints

At injection energy, Transverse Coupled Bunch Instabilities (TCBIs) may limit the total beam current, while the Transverse Mode Coupling Instability (TMCI) may determine the maximum allowed bunch charge. Both effects could, in principle, be mitigated by a larger momentum compaction factor.

For the ZH/$t\bar{t}$ modes, TCBI is not a concern due to the significantly lower average current. However, TMCI remains a limiting factor because of the large bunch charge (4 nC) required during collider filling. Studies on the filling scheme have shown that a bunch charge of 4 nC is not essential for all operations. A reduced bunch charge of 1.6 nC, which remains above the minimum required to mitigate bootstrapping instability, has been identified as a viable alternative. This reduction has a negligible impact on the collider filling time for the ZH/$t\bar{t}$ modes.

For the Z/W modes, collective effects studies have demonstrated that the beam pipe is the main driver of TMCI. Two approaches were investigated to accommodate a bunch charge of 4 nC: increasing the momentum compaction

Table 4.1 Preliminary key parameters of the high-energy booster of FCC-ee. We consider here a linac of 20 GeV as a pre-injector and a high-energy damping ring

Running mode		Z	WW	ZH	$t\bar{t}$
Circumference	[km]	90.65871376			
Injection energy	[GeV]	20			
Extraction energy	[GeV]	45.6	80	120	182.5
Number booster ramps per cycle		10	2	1	1
Number of stored bunches		1120	928	300	64
Particle number/bunch (filling)†	[10^{10}]	2.725	1.268	1.268	1.268
Particle number/bunch (top-up)†	[10^{10}]	2.725	1.035	1.268	1.125
Collider top-up interval	[s]	43.405	14.772	11.286	10.446
RF frequency	[MHz]	800			
Lattice version		V24_FODO			
Momentum compaction		7.12×10^{-6}			
Coupling		2×10^{-2}			
Injection emittances (norm.)	[μm]	20×2			
Extraction horizontal equilibrium emittance	[nm]	0.087	0.27	0.61	1.4
Extraction vertical equilibrium emittance	[pm]	1.75	5.37	12.1	28.0
Injection Energy loss / turn	[MeV]	1.34			
Extraction Energy loss / turn	[MeV]	36.1	342	1730	9270
Injection bunch length	[mm]	4			
Extraction bunch length	[mm]	2.43	2.56	2.26	1.98
Injection RMS energy spread	[10^{-3}]	1			
Extraction RMS energy spread	[10^{-3}]	0.38	0.67	1.01	1.53
Injection Maximum relative energy acceptance	[%]	3			
Extraction Maximum relative energy acceptance	[%]	1	1.01	1.51	2.29
Injection RF voltage	[MV]	50.1			
Extraction RF voltage	[MV]	57.2	402	1960	10,200
Filling time	[s]	2.8	2.315	3	0.64
Up-Ramp time	[s]	0.706	0.857	1.429	2.321
Flat top	[s]	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1
Down-Ramp time	[s]	0.334	0.689	1.148	1.866
Total cycling time	[s]	39.4	7.922	5.68	4.927

† The required particle numbers in the booster assume an injection efficiency into the collider of 80% as specified in 2.3.9

or reducing the transverse impedance. Increasing the momentum compaction would lead to a larger equilibrium emittance, necessitate different optics for different operational modes, and require additional magnet families to operate the booster at different working points, similar to the collider. Conversely, reducing the transverse impedance implies the need to minimise the contribution from the resistive beam pipe.

The proposed solution is to use a beam pipe made from copper or copper-coated stainless steel and to enlarge the inner diameter of the beam pipe from 50 mm to 60 mm. Studies have shown that further increasing the diameter beyond 60 mm would result in a significant rise in magnet costs. A 60 mm diameter provides a reasonable compromise between the need for larger and heavier magnets and achieving lower transverse impedance.

Finally, reducing the stored current in the booster by a factor of ten significantly alleviates the constraints associated with TCBI, reducing the need for large momentum compaction. Consequently, the current strategy is to adopt the same optics for all operation modes while increasing the inner diameter of the vacuum chamber.

Ensuring beam stability in the booster requires chromaticity correction, which necessitates the use of sextupoles. The CDR compared three different sextupole schemes, where sextupoles separated by a phase advance of π form a family:

- Classical sextupole scheme. After every quadrupole a sextupole magnet is installed leading to a maximum number of sextupoles. In this case there are two families per plane.
- Interleaved sextupole scheme, consisting of pairs of sextupoles separated by 180° betatron phase advance. The sextupoles are considered to mainly, or only, act in one plane, and the pair for one plane is interlaced with a pair of the other plane.
- Completely non-interleaved sextupole scheme. In order to optimise the cancellation of the sextupole geometric effect, only linear elements are installed between two sextupoles forming a pair, and there is no interference between the pairs affecting one or the other plane.

The non-interleaved sextupole scheme was found to give the best dynamic aperture and momentum acceptance. Thus, this scheme has been retained.

To further increase the momentum acceptance, we have also added some transparency conditions on the dispersion suppressors and insertions to match the chromatic functions:

- The phase advance between the sextupoles in the dispersion suppressor is π in both planes to maximize the geometric aberration cancellation.
- The angles of some dipoles in the dispersion suppressors have been matched to cancel the second-order dispersion. However, the total angle of the dispersion suppressor stays unchanged.
- The phase advance between the end of the upstream arc (or the beginning of the upstream dispersion suppressor) and the beginning of the downstream arc (or the start of the downstream dispersion suppressor) is equal to the phase advance of one arc cell plus an integer.
- Although the insertions are not perfectly symmetric, we have preferred to keep some waist conditions in the middle. In other terms, we ask to have $\alpha_x = \alpha_y = D'_x = 0$ at the middle of the insertion. We also ask to keep the chromatic derivative of α and the second-order dispersion derivative near 0: $A_x \approx A_y \approx dD'x/d\delta \approx 0$.
- We match the Twiss parameters but also the Montague functions A_x, A_y, B_x, B_y and second-order dispersion $dD_x/d\delta$ and $dD'_x/d\delta$ at the entrance of the right arc.

4.1.3 FODO lattice

The starting configuration for the design of a booster cell is a sequence of five FODO cells with 90 degree phase advance, and each approximately 52 m long.

The booster cell must follow the geometry of the collider determined by the structure for the collider short 90/90 FODO cell of the GHC optics. This condition requires the basic unit length of five booster arc cells to be 260.554 m.

To maximise the cancellation of geometric aberrations introduced by the arc sextupoles, a phase advance of π in both planes between the sextupoles of a pair is required, imposing four constraints. Additionally, the global tune of the machine is fine-tuned by adjusting the arc cells, adding two more constraints. As a result, the arc cell tune is $1.25 \pm \epsilon_{x,y}$ with $\epsilon_{x,y} \ll 1$. To accommodate these constraints, the arc cell requires six quadrupole families to control the phase advances between sextupole pairs and the global tune, along with two sextupole families to regulate the global chromaticity. The optical and chromatic functions of the arc cell, based on a FODO lattice, are shown in Fig. 4.3 (top).

The dispersion suppressor consists of 1.5 FODO arc cells followed by two additional FODO cells of the same type as the arcs, but with only one dipole per half-cell instead of two (see Fig. 4.3 (middle)). The dipole lengths have been optimised to minimise second-order dispersion at the end of the dispersion suppressor. The dispersion naturally damps along this section, requiring minor quadrupole adjustments in the dispersion suppressor to cancel the dispersion, correct second-order dispersion, and ensure a phase advance of 180° between the last sextupole in the arcs and the entrance of the dispersion suppressor. This phase advance constraint allows the possible later insertion of an additional sextupole to further correct geometric aberrations.

The dispersion suppressors and insertions have been optimised according to transparency conditions. The optical functions and second-order chromatic functions for one quarter of the booster, based on a FODO lattice, are shown in Fig. 4.3 (bottom).

4.1.4 Alternative: HFD lattice

The Hybrid FODO (HFD) lattice is an alternative to the FODO cell. The main motivation of this cell is to reduce the anharmonicity and second-order chromaticity of the FODO cell to enlarge the momentum acceptance and dynamic aperture. The main difference between the HFD and FODO cells is:

- The phase advances between the two sextupoles of the same pair are near π (and not exactly π).
- The dipoles do not have the same length, which enable a modulation of the distance between the quadrupoles. The total length of the dipoles stay the same, to keep the same curvature radius and thus radiated power per turn.

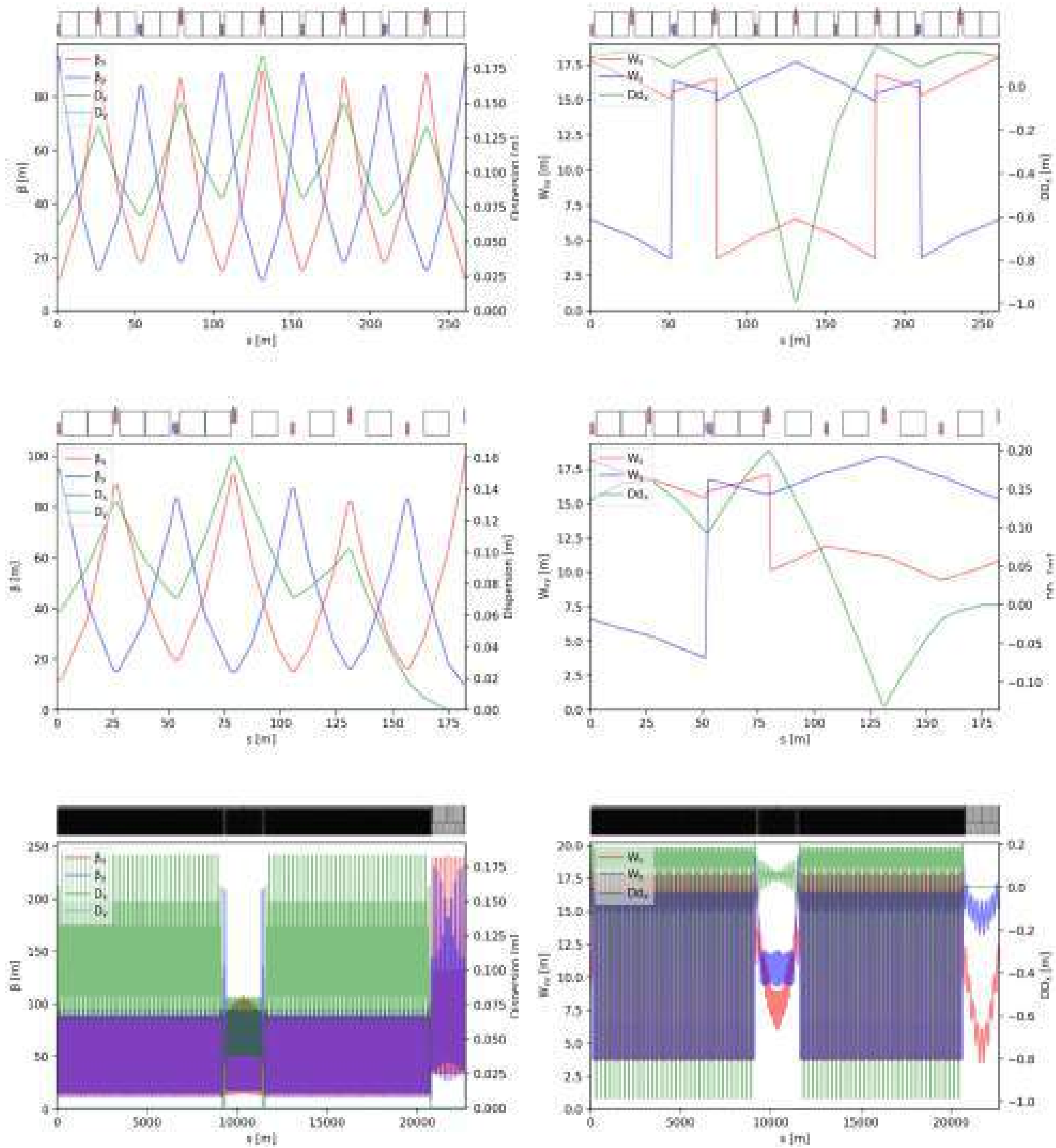


Fig. 4.3 Optical functions (left) and second-order chromatic functions (right) in the arc cells (top), in the dispersion suppressor before section B (middle), or in one quarter of the booster (bottom) for the booster baseline optics with FODO arc cells

- The horizontal and vertical tunes are quite different. In the case of the FODO cell, the tunes are about 1.25 in both planes against 1.25/1.15 for the HFD cell.

The optical functions and second-order chromatic functions in the arc cell and in one-quarter of the booster based on an HFD lattice are shown in Fig. 4.4.

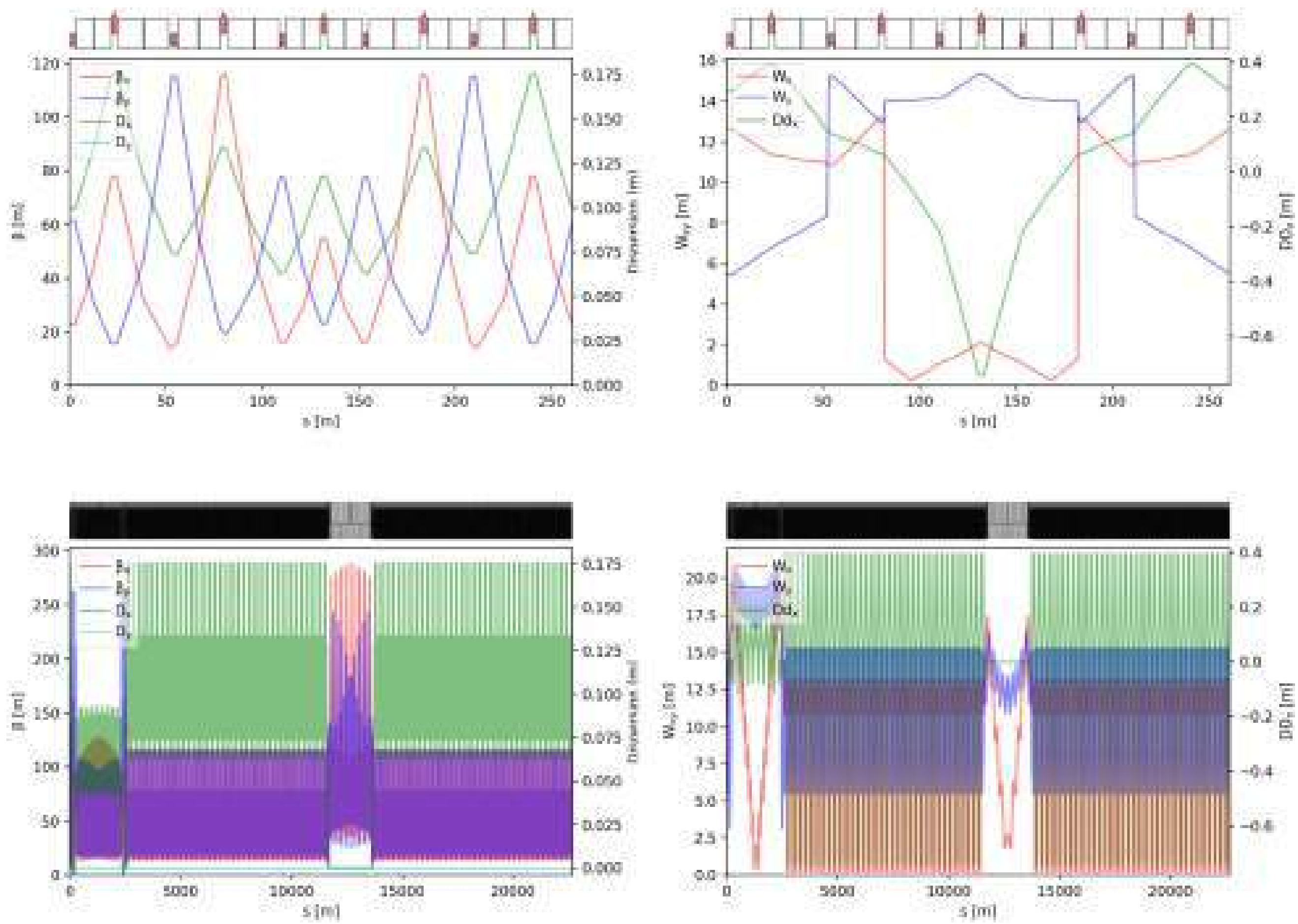


Fig. 4.4 Optical functions (left) and second-order chromatic functions (right) in the arc cells (top) and in one-quarter of the booster (bottom) with the version with HFD arc cells

4.1.5 Dynamic aperture and momentum acceptance

One of the main concerns is to ensure a sufficiently large dynamic aperture and momentum aperture to keep the beam losses small at injection. The dynamic aperture without errors is calculated by scanning the initial particle positions that are stable on the x and y axes after 1000 turns, without taking into account synchrotron radiation damping. Different initial energy offsets between -2% and $+2\%$ are also considered checking the momentum aperture. Figure 4.5 compares the horizontal and vertical stable regions as a function of the energy offset, illustrating the dynamic aperture of both the FODO and Hybrid FODO lattices.

In both cases, the margin is sufficient to ensure the stability of the injected beam. The target dynamic aperture of 15 σ is indicated by the dashed red line in Fig. 4.5.

The corresponding momentum aperture for the FODO lattice exceeds $\pm 0.75\%$ in the horizontal plane and $\pm 1\%$ in the vertical plane, equivalent to 5 σ_δ where σ_δ denotes the rms relative momentum spread of the injected beam. The HFD lattice exhibits a larger momentum aperture in the horizontal plane. However, this difference is partly thanks to the absence of an injection optics in one of the insertions. This injection optics disrupts the superperiodicity of the FODO lattice. Injection has not yet been developed for the HFD lattice.

The impact of eddy currents on the dynamic and momentum aperture has also been investigated. The cyan dashed lines in Fig. 4.5 represent tracking results for the FODO lattice, including a systematic b_3 field error component applied to each dipole in the arcs.

The expected sextupole gradient in the dipoles due to eddy current effects is -0.015 T m^{-2}, corresponding to an integrated b_3 of approximately -0.0025 m^{-2} at injection energy. To assess its impact, the dynamic aperture was evaluated for ten different integrated b_3 values over a range of 0.01 m^{-2}.

The phase variation that corresponds to the $\Delta p/p$ is shown on the top horizontal axis of Fig. 4.5 and is calculated following Sect. 3.4 of Ref [326]. The impact of the linear and random non-linear field errors on the stability region and a possible mitigation strategy are the next steps of investigation.

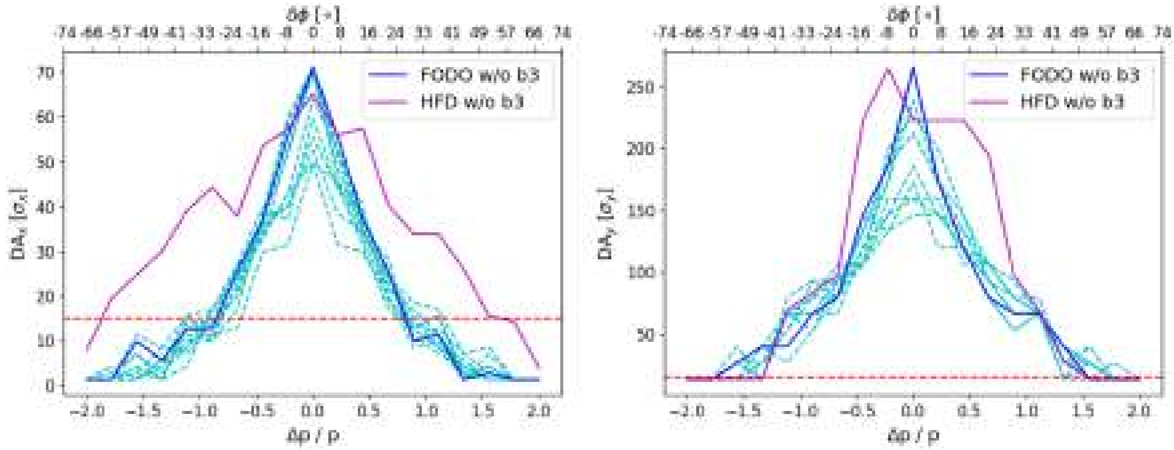


Fig. 4.5 Horizontal (left) and vertical (right) Dynamic Aperture at injection as a function of momentum deviation for the FODO and the HFD optics. The normalised horizontal and vertical emittances used to compute the beam sizes are 20µm and 2 µm, respectively. The dashed red line is the target value of 15 σ transverse dynamic aperture, the cyan dashed line show the effect of several values of the systematic b_3 component due to eddy-current in the main dipole, as described in the text

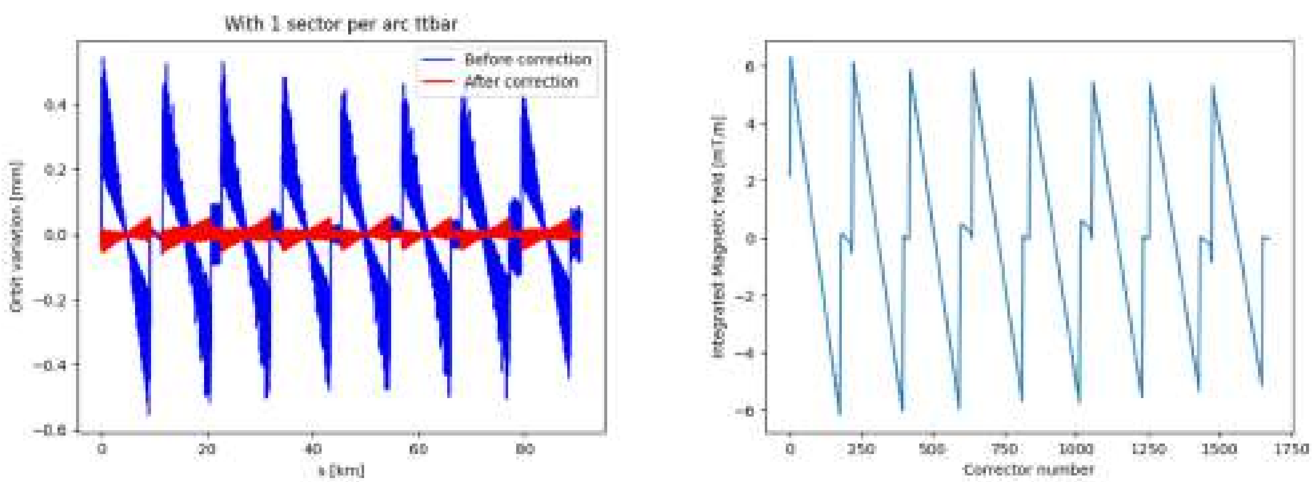


Fig. 4.6 Left: Beam orbit around the booster at the extraction energy for the $t\bar{t}$ mode taking synchrotron radiation losses into account, and comparing the cases of a different magnetic field in each arc with the horizontal correctors off (in blue) or on (in red). Right: Integrated field of the horizontal dipole correctors to minimise the orbit with synchrotron radiation

4.1.6 Tapering

The energy lost per turn due to synchrotron radiation scales with the fourth power of the beam energy. Consequently, the relative energy loss per turn scales with the third power of the energy. As a result, the relative energy lost per turn increases from 6.7×10^{-5} at injection to 5×10^{-2} at extraction for the $t\bar{t}$ operation.

In consequence, the beam energy varies around the ring with a maximum just after the RF section and a minimum, when the beam arrives again at the RF section one turn later. The magnetic fields have to be adjusted to ensure that the beam remains close to the centre of the vacuum chamber.

Since the arcs are individually powered, the dipoles in different arcs can be supplied with different currents, allowing for tailored magnetic field adjustments. Assuming a single power supply per arc, the maximum beam deflection in the booster can be reduced to 553 µm (see Fig. 4.6). Further improvement can be achieved using horizontal dipole correctors positioned near the focusing quadrupoles. In this case, the maximum orbit variation is reduced to 55 µm, while the maximum integrated strength of the dipole corrector remains at 6.3 mTm, which is below the specified dipole strength listed in Table 5.4.

These results indicate that a combination of varying the dipole field for each arc and employing dipole correctors is sufficient to maintain the orbit within the required tolerances. However, this study could be further refined by increasing the number of sectors within the dipole arcs to achieve a finer magnetic field distribution.

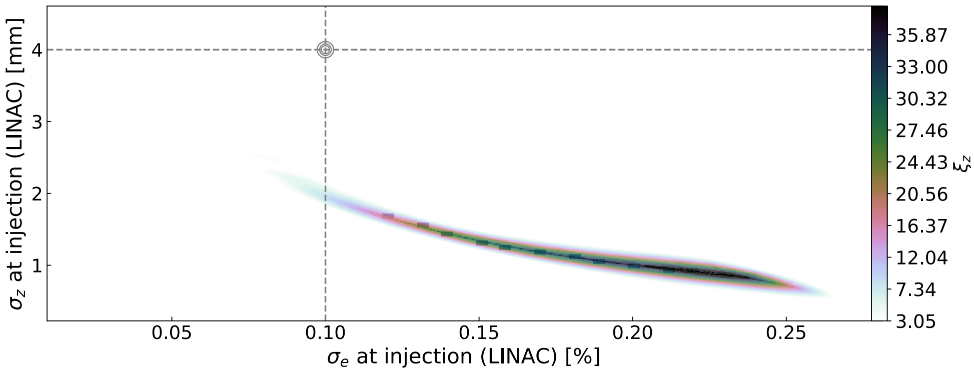


Fig. 4.7 Kernel density estimate of the longitudinal mismatch as a function of bunch length and energy dispersion at injection. The energy considered is 20 GeV, and the different booster parameters considered are those of the Z-pole operation (see Table 4.1). The target circle shows the present baseline injection parameters to the high-energy booster

Additionally, while this analysis has focused on orbit correction, synchrotron radiation losses also induce beta-beating and impact the equilibrium emittance. Further studies should investigate beta-beating correction through arc rematching with the interaction region.

4.2 Collective effects

4.2.1 Baseline assumptions for collective effects studies

The high-energy booster may be subject to impedance-induced instabilities, which depend on various factors and can manifest as either short-range or long-range effects. Some of these factors, such as the number of bunches and the number of particles per bunch, are linked to the cycling and operational mode. In contrast, others, like the momentum compaction factor, are determined by the optics design.

At this stage of the study, only resistive wall contributions and RF cavities have been taken into account. While these do not represent the full spectrum of impedance effects, they are dominant and play a crucial role in defining key physical parameters of the beam pipe, such as its diameter and material. These parameters, in turn, influence other critical subsystems, including the vacuum system and magnet designs.

4.2.2 Mismatched beams at injection

The high-energy booster serves as the intermediary between the high-energy LINAC and the main ring. Its ability to deliver a beam that meets the required specifications depends on multiple factors, including the properties of the injected beam from the high-energy LINAC. While the booster design demonstrates robustness to a range of transverse beam parameters at injection energy, the longitudinal parameters can introduce significant mismatches and microwave instabilities. A study was conducted to ensure that the injected beam does not induce instabilities. The injector complex is capable of providing beams with specific bunch lengths and energy dispersion. A two-dimensional parametric scan was performed to further assess injection energy stability. The longitudinal mismatch ξ_z has been quantified in terms of:

$$\xi_z = \sigma_z^{\mathrm{eq}}/\sigma_z^{\mathrm{inj}} , \tag{4.1}$$

where σ_z^{inj} is the bunch length at injection and σ_z^{eq} is the bunch length at equilibrium. Figure 4.7 shows that the baseline bunch lengths and energy dispersion requirements from the LINAC provide a significant safety margin regarding longitudinal mismatch and microwave instabilities. Figure 4.7 also rules out a configuration where an energy compressor would not be used after the high-energy LINAC, resulting in an injection energy dispersion of 0.25% and a bunch length of 1 mm. The figure shows that the present baseline injection parameters from the high-energy LINAC, with $\sigma_z = 4$ mm and $\sigma_e = 0.1\%$, allow a significant margin to avoid mismatch and microwave instabilities at injection energy.

Another effect being studied is the result of a transverse jitter of up to 1 σ in the vertical and horizontal planes. Present particle tracking studies do not show any effect at equilibrium. However, amplitude detuning has not yet been taken into account, and these results need to be confirmed with more realistic simulation parameters.

4.2.3 Coupled bunch instabilities

Transverse coupled bunch instabilities due to resistive wall impedance Transverse resistive wall wakefields contain long range components. These can lead to transverse coupled-bunch instabilities that are destructive to the beam.

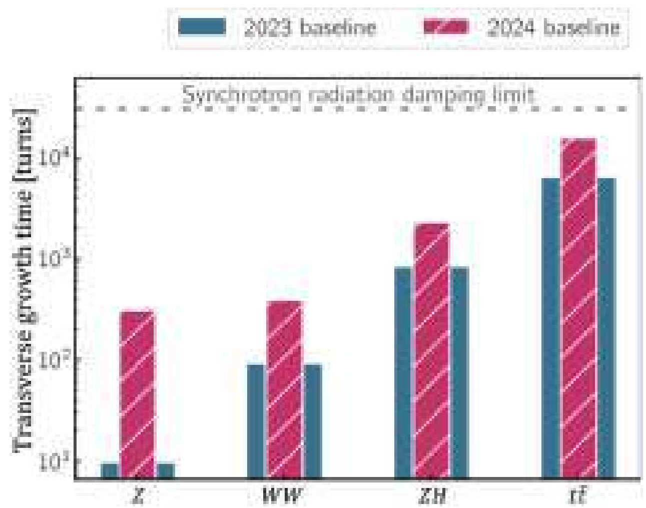


Fig. 4.8 Resistive wall transverse impedance induced transverse growth time constants as a function of the mode number for the 2024 (hashed-red) and 2023 baseline (plain-blue)

Given the following assumptions, one can estimate analytically the transverse growth rate due to coupled bunches: 1. Equally spaced Gaussian bunches 2. Only coherent bunch modes 3. Only the most prominent radial mode in the longitudinal azimuthal mode.

With these assumptions, the transverse growth rate $\tau_\perp$ [327] can be expressed by:

$$\tau_\perp \sim \frac{N_p \cdot N_b}{4\pi \cdot Q_{x,y} \cdot E} \cdot \Re(Z_\perp) \cdot \mathcal{G}(Q_{x,y}, \sigma_z, \sigma_e) \tag{4.2}$$

where N_p is the number of particles per bunch, N_b is the number of bunches, $Q_{x,y}$ is the transverse tune, E is the energy, $Z_\perp$ is the transverse impedance, and $\mathcal{G}$ a factor which can be approximated by 1 in our case. With the Z operation mode being the worst-case scenario, one can estimate the growth rate as a function of the mode numbers. By normalising the modes, one can compare the growth rate for two different booster configurations, namely from 2023 and 2024, respectively. Figure 4.8 shows that the growth rate has been reduced in the new baseline design compared to the previous one. The most drastic change is at the Z-pole operation, which represents the worst-case scenario. For this case, a reduction is observed from 374 s^{-1}, i.e., (8.7 turns)$^{-1}$ in the 2023 design to 10 s^{-1}, i.e., (310 turns)$^{-1}$ in the 2024 design. This is due to several important changes, including the increase of the beam pipe diameter from 50 mm to 60 mm and the reduction of the number of bunches from 15,880 to 1120 bunches. While the new growth rates are still faster than the transverse synchrotron damping ($\sim$ 30,000 turns), they reduce the constraints on the dampers needed to mitigate such coupled-bunch instabilities.

Longitudinal coupled bunch instabilities due to cavities high order modes The higher order modes of the RF cavities are the main drivers of the longitudinal coupled bunch instabilities. The strategy to keep the RF system below the stability limit of longitudinal coupled bunch instabilities is detailed in Sect. 6.3.3.

4.2.4 Single bunch instabilities

Single bunch instabilities that may arise in the high-energy booster and hinder achieving technical targets are of two types: microwave instabilities (MI) and transverse mode coupling instabilities (TMCI) (see [327]). The bunch population thresholds for these instabilities can be expressed as:

$$N_{p,th}^{TMCI} = \frac{Q_{x,y} \cdot Q_s \cdot E \cdot \sigma_z}{\mathrm{Im}\{Z_\perp\} \cdot e \cdot c}, \quad N_{p,th}^{MI} \propto \frac{n \cdot \alpha_c \cdot E \cdot \sigma_e \cdot \sigma_z}{|Z_\parallel|}, \tag{4.3}$$

where $Q_{x,y}$ is the transverse tune, Q_s is the synchrotron tune, E is the energy, σ_z is the bunch length, $Z_\perp$ is the transverse impedance, α_c is the momentum compaction factor, and $Z_\parallel$ is the longitudinal impedance.

Although these two effects are interconnected, transverse mode coupling instabilities are particularly critical due to their potential to cause destructive transverse exponential growth in the beam. In contrast, microwave instabilities primarily result in longitudinal emittance growth, which, given the injected beam parameters, remains within the limits required for extraction to the main ring.

The design of the high-energy booster requires balancing multiple dominant effects, as outlined in Eq. (4.3). Among these, resistive wall contributions are the primary source of impedance effects, while the momentum compaction factor plays a crucial role in determining the optimal optical design.

The following section examines the influence of these parameters on transverse mode coupling instabilities.

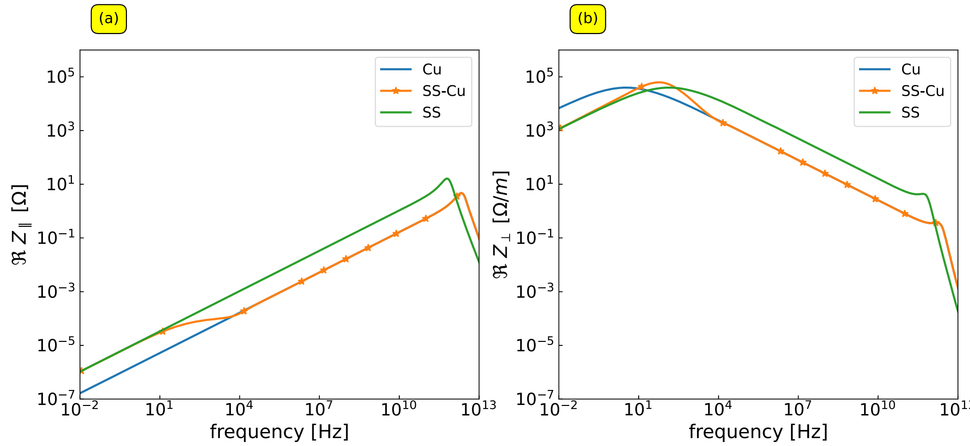


Fig. 4.9 (a) Longitudinal impedance and (b) Dipolar impedance for a pipe with R = 30 mm and L = 1 m, for three different scenarios (Cu, SS, and SS-Cu)

Resistive wall contribution The large circumference of the booster ring makes the resistive wall (RW) impedance the dominant contributor to collective effects. In this study, the VACI Suite [328] was used to analyse different materials and beam pipe radii. The resulting impedance calculations were directly incorporated into Xsuite [174] and PyHEADTAIL [329] for beam dynamics simulations. These tools enabled precise modelling of beam behaviour and its interaction with the surrounding environment, ensuring accurate predictions and optimisations for the beam pipe design.

A detailed study of beam pipe materials has been done for three cases: a copper beam pipe (Cu), a stainless steel pipe (SS), and a stainless steel pipe with an internal copper coating (SS-Cu). Various copper coating thicknesses were evaluated, and a 1 mm copper layer was identified as the optimal configuration. The different material scenarios (Cu, SS, and SS-Cu) are illustrated in Fig. 4.9. The choice of materials played a crucial role in controlling RW impedance, directly impacting overall beam stability and performance.

Given that the beam pipe has a round geometry, no detuning (quadrupolar) impedance was observed, even in the case of the coated pipe, which featured a narrow strip of missing copper on the inner surface. While the absence of a continuous copper layer might have been expected to introduce a detuning impedance, the VACI results indicated that the effect of this strip was negligible. Consequently, the final design adopts the SS-Cu configuration with a 1 mm copper coating, providing an optimal balance between material properties and impedance control.

Beam-pipe radius and material Two materials were considered for the beam vacuum chamber: stainless steel and copper. Stainless steel offers advantages such as lower initial cost and reduced eddy currents induced by magnetic field ramps during acceleration. However, it comes with increased longitudinal and transverse impedance (see Fig. 4.9). Given the low magnetic fields involved, eddy currents are not a concern, allowing for a 1 mm copper coating: beyond approximately 2 kHz, the skin depth ensures the beam interacts predominantly with the copper layer.

The impact on beam dynamics was assessed using the PyHEADTAIL[4] tracking code [329].

A comparison was conducted on a circular beam pipe made of either copper or stainless steel, each with a diameter of 50 mm, using the `PA31.0` baseline design (2023 CDR baseline) for the Z-pole operation. A substantial increase in bunch length and longitudinal emittance was observed with a stainless steel vacuum chamber of 50 mm diameter, necessitating an increase in the inner diameter of the beam pipe. To address this, an optimisation study was conducted to determine the ideal beam pipe diameter for stainless steel. Modal analysis, following the methodology in Ref. [61], established a minimum of 70 mm, with a potential increase up to 100 mm to accommodate impedance margins.

Momentum compaction variation For a given bunch of particles, variations in the relative path length due to changes in momentum can significantly affect transverse mode coupling instability (TMCI) bunch population thresholds. This is quantified by the variation of the momentum compaction. Figure 4.10 (a) illustrates that the 2023 optics for $t\bar{t}$ operation with $\alpha_c = 7.34 \times 10^{-6}$ and a 50 mm diameter copper beam pipe resides in an unstable region. By contrast, the 2023 Z mode optics ($\alpha_c = 1.49 \times 10^{-5}$), with nearly twice the momentum compaction, falls within a stable zone.

Bunch population variation A high-energy booster design featuring a 50 mm diameter beam pipe, whether made of copper or stainless steel, coupled with an optics design featuring a momentum compaction of $\alpha_c = 7.34 \times 10^{-6}$,

[4] https://github.com/PyCOMPLETE/PyHEADTAIL.

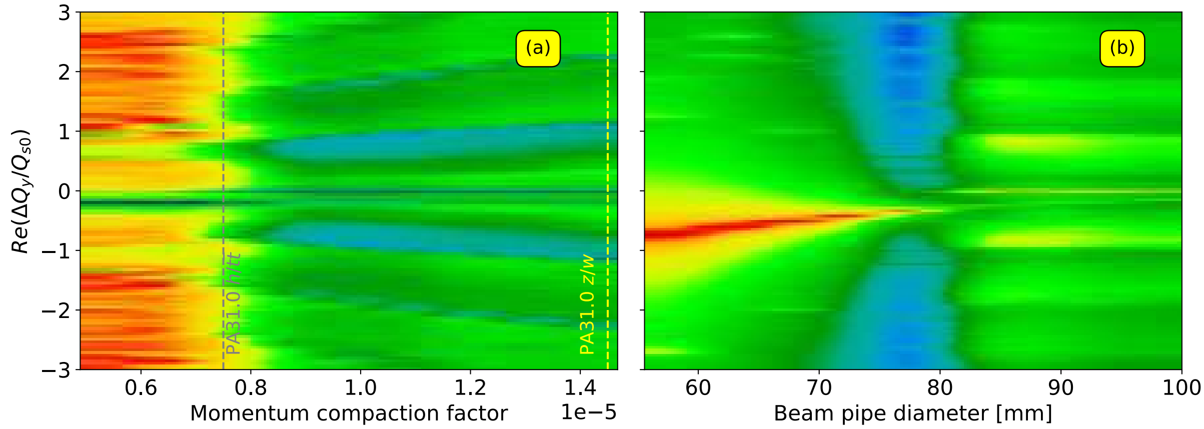


Fig. 4.10 Real part of the tune shift of the first azimuthal transverse coherent oscillation modes normalised by the synchrotron tune as a function of the momentum compaction factor (left) and the beam-pipe diameter (right) for the Z-operation mode. For (a), a copper beam-pipe of 50 mm diameter and a bunch population of 2.5×10^{10} particles are considered. For (b), a stainless steel beam-pipe with a bunch population of 2.5×10^{10} particles and a momentum compaction $\alpha_c = 7.34 \times 10^{-6}$ are considered

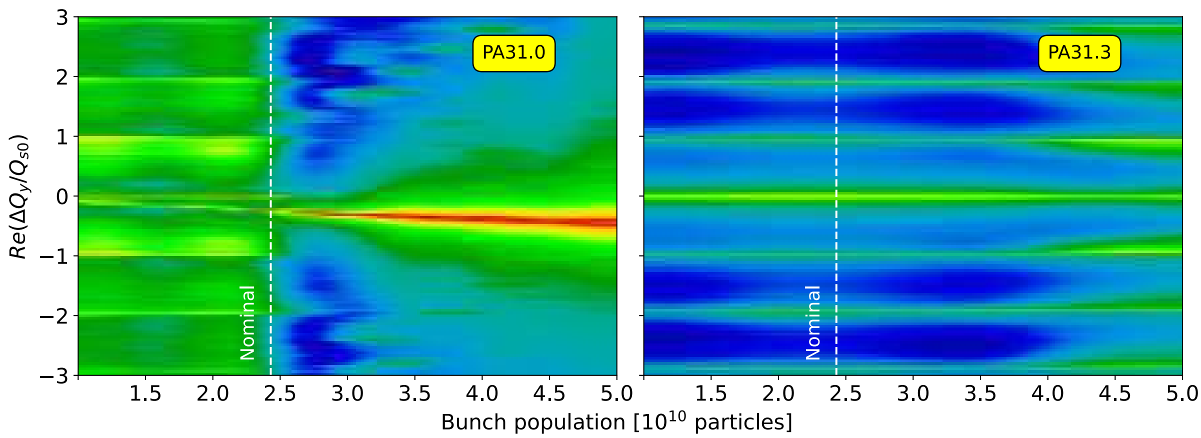


Fig. 4.11 Real part of the tune shift of the first azimuthal transverse coherent oscillation modes normalised by the synchrotron tune as a function of bunch population for the `PA31.0` 2023 CDR baseline (left) and the `PA31.3` 2024 baseline design (right)

proves impractical. Conversely, adopting a single optics design instead of separate values for different operation modes offers benefits. A compromise was reached, maintaining a single momentum compaction value ($\alpha_c = 7.12 \times 10^{-6}$) while increasing the beam pipe diameter from 50 mm to 60 mm and opting for copper as the beam pipe material. Figure 4.11 demonstrates that this new baseline design increases the TMCI threshold bunch population from 2.5×10^{10} to 5.7×10^{10}. Additionally, incorporating a 300-turn transverse damper would further enhance the threshold and provide additional safety margins. These results, however, require validation with a more comprehensive machine impedance model.

4.3 Radiation environment

Given the significant power dissipated by synchrotron radiation in FCC-ee, appropriate mitigation measures must be implemented to prevent radiation-induced equipment failures and degradation of machine performance. Although the radiated power is considerably higher in the collider than in the booster, the booster's contribution must still be carefully evaluated, as no dedicated photon stoppers are foreseen, unlike in the collider ring.

This section examines the ionising dose generated by synchrotron photon emission in the booster arcs and assesses the shielding efficiency of the dipole yokes. Other radiation effects, such as single-event effects in electronics or radiation-induced corrosion, fall outside the scope of this section and will be addressed in future studies. Additionally, other radiation sources in the booster, such as beam-gas scattering, must also be considered. However, the dose studies presented here provide an initial assessment of the shielding requirements for the booster.

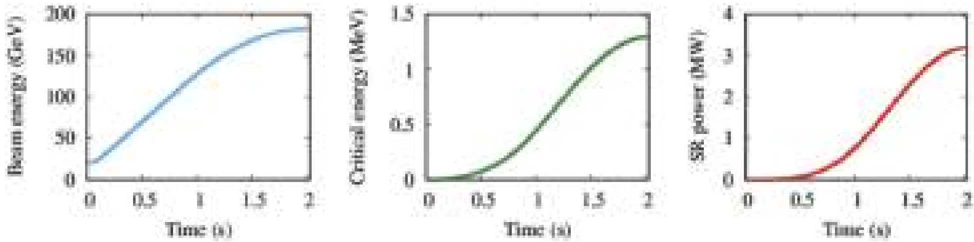


Fig. 4.12 Time evolution of the beam energy (left), critical energy of the synchrotron photon spectrum (centre) and emitted synchrotron radiation power (right) for a booster ramp from 20 GeV to 182.5 GeV ($t\bar{t}$ operation). The flat bottom and flat top plateaus are not shown

4.3.1 Synchrotron radiation emission during a booster cycle

The primary source of radiation in the FCC-ee arc tunnel is synchrotron radiation emitted in the collider ring. By design, this radiation is limited to 100 MW across all operating modes (50 MW/beam). In contrast, the average synchrotron power emitted by the booster is significantly lower due to several factors: the lower stored beam intensity, the strong dependence of synchrotron radiation power on beam energy ($\propto E^4$), the relatively short duration of booster cycles, and the intervals without beam between cycles.

For top-up injection, the booster train intensity is expected to be lower than for full collider refills, as the bootstrap bunch charge can vary between 0% and 100%. However, top-up cycles are anticipated to have a greater impact on cumulative radiation effects because they will be executed more often.

The evolution of the radiated power and photon spectra during a booster cycle depends on the ramp function. Figure 4.12 shows the time dependence of the beam energy, critical energy and emitted power during a ramp from 20 GeV to 182.5 GeV in $t\bar{t}$ operation. The figure assumes a bunch train of 64 bunches, with a bunch intensity of 10^{10} $e^{\pm}$, which is the maximum top-up intensity in $t\bar{t}$ cycles (see Table 4.1). At the end of the ramp, the power reaches about 3 MW, while the average power during the $\sim$2 s-long ramp is about 1 MW. The presently foreseen repetition rate of booster cycles for $t\bar{t}$ operation is 10.4 s, alternating between electrons and positrons. Taking into account the time without beam between cycles, the average power is less than 0.2 MW, i.e., more than 500 times lower than in the collider. This estimate can still slightly change depending on the need of a flattop plateau before beam extraction. The peak power and top-up interval is similar for ZH operation, but the radiation leakage from the magnets is expected to be less compared to $t\bar{t}$ due to the lower critical energy at flattop. For the other beam modes (Z and WW), the top-up intervals are longer and the peak power and critical energies are lower. They are, hence, expected to be less relevant for cumulative radiation effects than the two higher-energy modes.

4.3.2 Booster contribution to the ionising dose in the arcs

The synchrotron radiation absorbers in the collider ring need to be surrounded by heavy shielding in order to sufficiently reduce the ionising dose in the tunnel (see Sect. 1.9). It is, therefore, highly desirable that the booster contribution to the ionising dose remains as low as reasonably achievable. Contrary to the collider, the synchrotron photons emitted in the booster impact directly on the vacuum chamber. The chamber walls are too thin to fully shield the photons and secondary particles, but the H-shaped yokes of the booster dipoles still provide a significant attenuation of the secondary radiation. The shielding efficiency required of the booster dipole yokes represents an important prerequisite for the magnet design. In order to study the necessary yoke thickness, the radiation leakage from the magnets and the resulting dose in the tunnel was estimated by means of FLUKA Monte Carlo simulations [126, 127, 330]. In this very first study, the booster was modelled as a series of 11 m-long dipoles with 30 cm drift spaces. The studies will have to be repeated in the future with a more realistic simulation model that includes quadrupoles and sextupoles; nevertheless, the results obtained provide a first estimate of the booster-induced radiation environment.

Figure 4.13 compares the booster and collider contributions to the annual dose in the arc tunnel for $t\bar{t}$ operation. The simulation assumes 185 days of operation, with 75% machine uptime. The results for the collider assume a 400 kg lead-alloy shielding around the photon stoppers, with a thickness of 10 cm on the internal and external side of the magnets (see Sect. 1.9). For the booster, dipole iron yokes with thicknesses of 2 cm and 4 cm were simulated. As a conservative assumption, each booster cycle was modelled at maximum top-up intensity, corresponding to the highest bootstrap bunch charge. The results indicate that, with the current collider shielding, the dose contribution from the collider remains dominant.

At the location of the upper cable trays on the walls (above 2 m from the floor), the radiation dose from collider operation reaches 2–10 kGy/year, while the booster contributes up to approximately 2 kGy/year when using 2 cm-thick dipole yokes. To maintain the dose at the cable trays below 10 kGy/year, the booster's contribution cannot

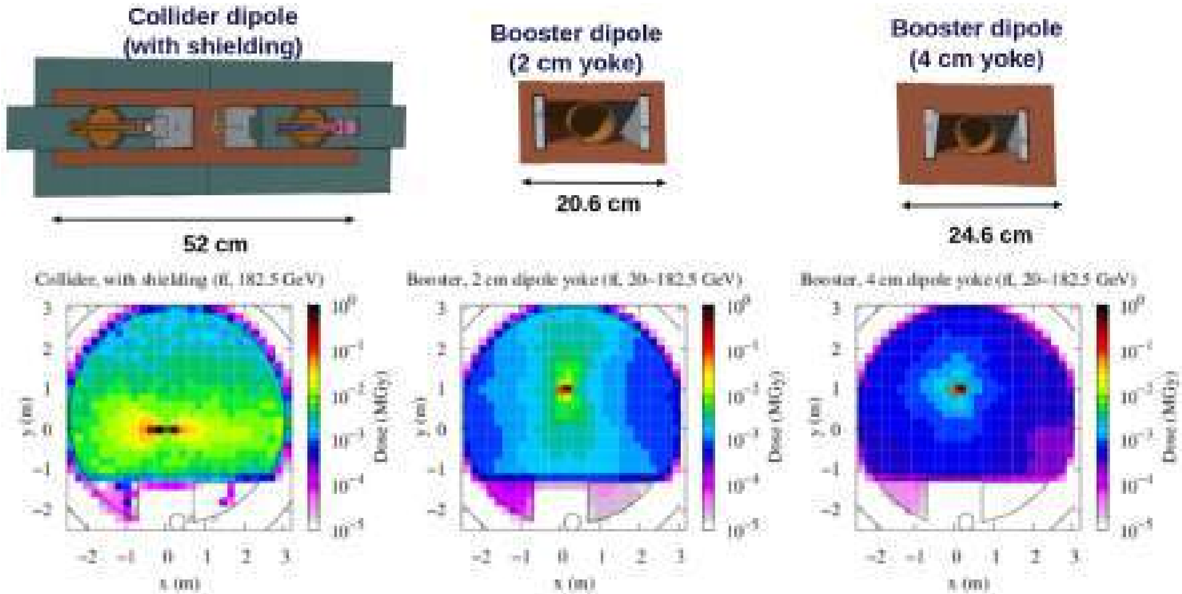


Fig. 4.13 Annual ionising dose in the arc tunnel during $t\bar{t}$ operation, showing separately the contributions of the collider (left) and the booster (middle: with a 2 cm-thick yoke, right: with a 4 cm-thick yoke). The collider simulations assume a preliminary lead-based shielding around discrete photon stoppers (see Sect. 1.9). The studies were carried out using the FLUKA code. The FLUKA magnet models are shown at the top of the figure

be entirely neglected. Reducing booster-induced radiation at the walls to below 1 kGy/year in $t\bar{t}$ operation can be achieved by increasing the booster dipole yoke thickness to 4 cm.

The results presented indicate that the booster's contribution to overall dose levels in the tunnel is non-negligible and must be considered alongside collider shielding. Further studies are required for both the collider and the booster to optimise the overall shielding strategy.

4.4 Injection and extraction

The beam is accelerated to 20 GeV in the high energy linac and transported from the injector complex to the collider complex close to point PA, through the injection transfer lines shown with bright green colour in Fig. 4.1. The injection transfer-line tunnels merge with the collider tunnel on either side of the PA experiment straight section, approximately 600 m from the IP. This layout is symmetric around the interaction point (IP), and since the booster optics is also symmetric, the injection scheme described below for the clockwise direction applies equally to the counter-clockwise injection on the opposite side of the straight section.

At the junction with the collider tunnel, the current baseline design features an angle of approximately 150 mrad between the injection and booster beamlines. While the precise geometry of the injection line has not yet been finalised, the present concept envisions using approximately 10 m of dipoles to achieve a total deflection of 125 mrad, followed by a septum system providing an additional 25 mrad deflection to align with the booster trajectory [331].

The design of the booster injection has primarily focused on the booster FODO lattice and on the injection elements. The detailed trajectory and optical matching from the injection line will be addressed at a later stage, with no significant challenges identified so far.

The beam produced by the injector complex is composed of up to 4 bunches separated by 25 ns per batch, whose parameters are detailed in Table 4.1. The booster accumulates the injected batches at a maximum rate of 100 Hz and for up to several seconds. The baseline uses a fast injection scheme, allowing consecutive batches to be injected between circulating ones. Therefore, the injection kicker has to provide a flattop of up to 80 ns.

Taking advantage of the low field of the dipole magnets in the injection region close to an IP, where the average bending radius is twice as large as in the arcs (19.8 km), the current injection scheme removes selected dipoles and redistributes their deflection among the adjacent ones. In total, six dipole magnets are removed on each side of the PA section, with their deflection transferred to six neighbouring dipoles. This redistribution does not affect the reference trajectory outside each injection region and results in a negligible impact on the ring circumference (28 µm). The dipoles are removed symmetrically with respect to the FODO lattice to minimise optical perturbations, particularly in the dispersion function. Some minor effects on the local dispersion remain, as seen around the electron injection point in Fig. 4.14.

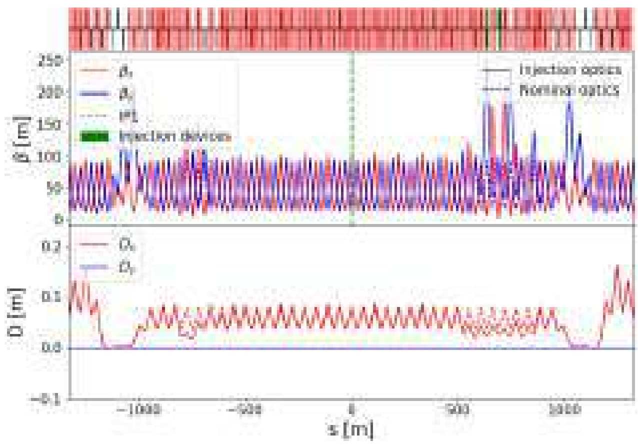


Fig. 4.14 Magnets layout, apertures, beam paths with envelopes and Twiss functions for the booster ring along the PA straight section with the injection optics on the positron injection side and the nominal optics on the electron injection side. The dipole position is shown in red, and the quadrupoles are depicted in black

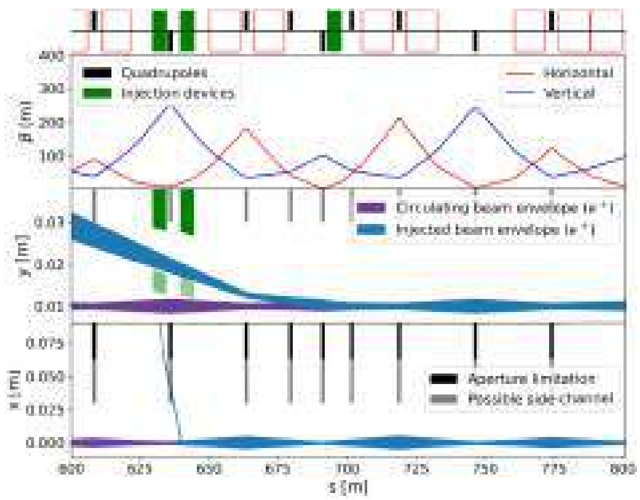


Fig. 4.15 Layout, apertures, Twiss functions, beam paths and envelopes in both planes around the clockwise injection point of the booster. Injected and circulating envelopes are defined by the $\pm 15\sigma$ beam size and the injected beam parameters

The second key requirement of the injection scheme pertains to the optical functions and phase advances in the vertical plane at the injection devices. A high beta function at both the kicker and the septa, combined with a phase advance close to 90°, enhances the kicker's efficiency and maximises the separation between the circulating and injected beams at the septum. To achieve this while maintaining symmetry in the lattice around the local FODO structure, two additional quadrupoles (`inj0` and `inj1`) and independent powering of 2×11 existing quadrupoles are introduced.

The resulting injection optics, illustrated for the positron injection side in Fig. 4.14, features a vertical beta function of up to 250 m at the septum. While this optics modifies the phase advance and the local sextupole correction scheme, a global correction allows both effects to be compensated [332]. Once the injection process is completed, at the start of the energy ramp the optics can adiabatically be reverted to the nominal configuration for the remainder of the booster cycle, thereby minimising the impact of the injection optics on the booster beam dynamics.

The placement of the injection elements and the threading of the injected beam through the lattice elements can be seen in the close-up of the injection region in Fig. 4.15. Following the injected envelope, a side channel in the horizontal plane will need to be installed between the poles of the quadrupole `065`. This seems feasible with the present quadrupole design in the grey part of the aperture, between 31.5 mm and 65 mm [333].

In the vertical plane, a closed orbit bump of 10 mm at the septum is foreseen to bring the circulating trajectory closer to the injected one in order to reduce the required kicker strength. This bump is taken into account only as a constant vertical orbit shift in Fig. 4.15, but properly modelled in beam dynamics simulations. The inside edge of the septum is located 11.5 mm from the centre of the beam pipe and the injected beam is placed closer to the blade with an envelope of ± 3 mm to be compared with the blade thickness of 5 mm and the septum vertical aperture of 10 mm. At the septum, the vertical slope of the injected beam is 260 µrad and reduced to 86 µrad after the quadrupole `066`. Downstream, a fast kicker provides an angle of 90 µrad.

The injection optics features optimised beta function and phase advance, but one may notice that the vertical beta function at the kicker remains around 100 m. The low vertical beta function at the kicker allows relaxing

Table 4.2 Summary of the booster injection scheme hardware requirements

	Kicker	Septum
Beam energy (GeV)	20	
Deflection angle per system (mrad)	0.09	4.5
Maximum repetition frequency (Hz)	100	DC
Rise/Fall time (ns)	25†	–
flattop time (ns)	80	–
Blade thickness (mm)	–	7
Aperture (H×V mm)	–	5×10
Longitudinal available space (m)	5.5	20

†A 25 ns rise or fall time is not needed with the present filing schemes described in Sect. 2.3.8.

the requirements on the kicker pulse flatness [177]. In practice, an active damper of the injection oscillations is required but at this stage, only injection system and ring optics are considered.

Another source of injection offset may come from the high energy linac with up to 1 σ jitter in each transverse plane [334]. In the longitudinal plane, the maximum relative energy jitter is 3×10^{-3} (see Table 7.13). Such a jitter should not impact the aperture requirement at injection but active damping may need to be considered to avoid emittance growth.

This baseline injection scheme relies on a set of hardware requirements summarised in Table 4.2, considered achievable using existing technologies. A comprehensive discussion on the hardware choices is provided in Sect. 6. Further investigations are needed to advance this concept towards a technical design, focusing on error analysis and their impact, as well as the operational and performance optimisation of the scheme to maintain a reliable injection despite the various drifts that may occur.

4.4.1 Extraction

The booster beam is extracted in the technical straight section in PB (see Fig. 4.1) towards the booster-to-collider beam transfer line. The structure of the circulating beam depends on the operation mode and the required filling scheme of both booster and collider as well as collective effects considerations in both synchrotrons [335]. However, the present concept is based on the most stringent requirements of a fast extraction of a full turn of 304 µs, with a rise time of the kicker system within the planned minimum collider gap between trains of 600 ns.[5]

Unlike the experiment sections, the PB technical straight section of the booster is physically straight and consists solely of quadrupoles. Due to the ample space available between these quadrupoles, no modifications to the layout are required to accommodate the extraction elements.

To facilitate the extraction of both electron and positron beams, a symmetric design is preferred. Since the collider injection system is positioned in the second half of the straight section (see Sect. 1.8.1), the booster extraction system is placed at the centre of the section. Figure 4.16 illustrates the layout along the entire straight section, where the extraction scheme is centrally located and symmetrically configured to extract both beams towards the section's exit.

The extraction scheme operates entirely in the horizontal plane, with both the kickers and septa providing a horizontal deflection.

The nominal optics follows a FODO structure without dispersion and features a strong beating over a period of two cells (see Fig. 4.16). The large beta function and near 90° phase advance per cell already match the typical requirements of a fast extraction system. However, the optics was adjusted to relax the requirement on the kicker pulse flatness to limit the extracted beam offset to 1 σ. This extraction optics uses 9 independent power supplies, but no additional magnets will be needed. The injection optics is required only for a short time before extraction without perturbing the rest of the booster cycle.

The extraction layout is fully symmetric for electron and positron beams, with the kickers placed at the precise centre of the straight section on either side of the focusing quadrupole `022` (see Fig. 4.17a). Although the present concept considers dedicated kickers for electron and positron beam extraction, this placement at the centre of the straight section could allow the reuse of the same kickers for the extraction of both beams.

[5]For the baseline bootstrapping injection and filling scheme described in Sect. 2.3.8, the gaps in the booster are significantly larger than 600 ns.

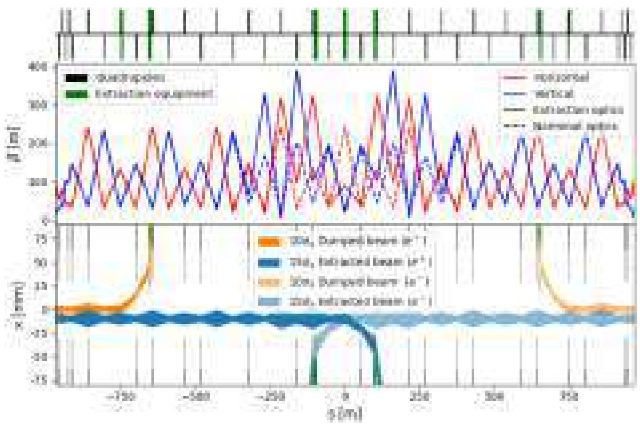
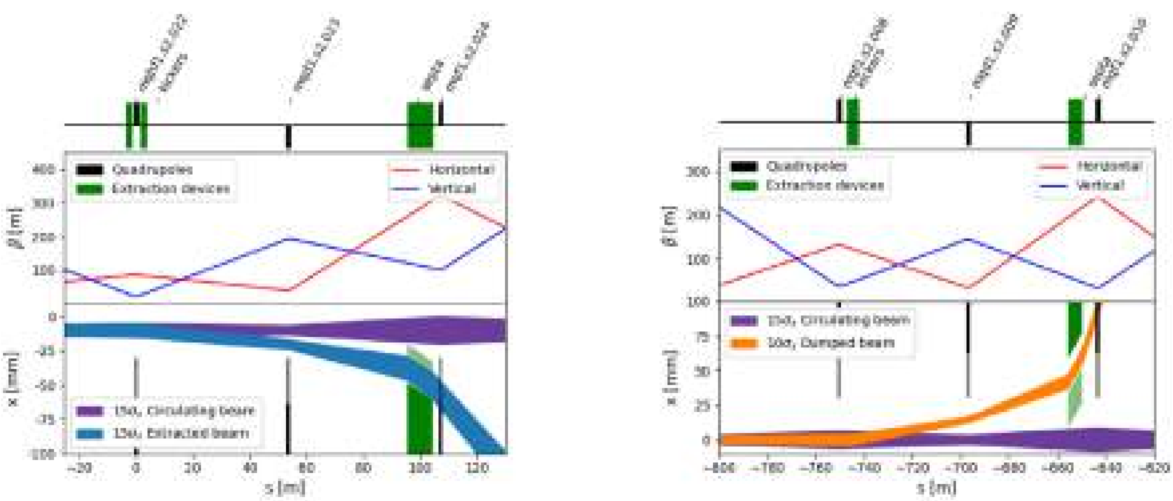


Fig. 4.16 Layout, apertures, beam envelopes, and Twiss functions for the booster ring along the PB straight section, showing the extracted and stored beam. The envelopes are computed using the largest equilibrium beam parameters (reached for $t\bar{t}$-mode)



(a) (b)

Fig. 4.17 Magnet layout, Twiss functions, beam paths and envelopes in the horizontal plane for the booster extraction (a) and dump (b). The envelopes are computed using the largest equilibrium beam parameters (reached for $t\bar{t}$-mode)

The circulating beam is moved closer to the extraction septum using a closed-orbit bump of 10 mm, although it is presently only modelled as a shift of the reference trajectory in Fig. 4.17a. The kicker system provides a total angle of 0.2 mrad to ensure the required clearance at the septum blade located upstream of the following focusing magnet. In this scheme, the septum blade has a thickness of 8 mm, with its inside edge located 20 mm from the reference position of the booster beam. Downstream of the septum, the extracted beam envelopes pass through the quadrupole between its poles, within a side channel that will need to be installed—similar to the booster injection setup (Sect. 4.4).

The hardware requirements for this extraction scheme are summarised in Table 4.3. This concept is based on realistic hardware specifications achievable with current technologies. A detailed discussion of the hardware choices is provided in Sect. 6. Comprehensive error studies and failure mode analyses are required to advance the present concept toward a technical design.

Passive absorbers must be installed after the extraction kickers to protect the septum and the most exposed downstream components from potential failures that could result in miskicked bunches striking the booster aperture. Likewise, a system of masks should be implemented in the transfer lines to the collider to intercept particles with large oscillations, preventing them from reaching the collider aperture and shielding the transfer line itself.

4.4.2 Dump

The booster transfer dump system closely resembles the collider dump system described in Sect. 1.8.1. It is positioned at approximately the same longitudinal location (see Fig. 4.16) and, like the collider system, extracts the beam at the entrance of the straight section towards its centre. The system must rise within the minimum

Table 4.3 Summary of the booster extraction scheme hardware requirements

	Kicker	Septum
Beam energy (GeV)	45.6–182.5	
Deflection angle per system (mrad)	0.2	2
Maximum repetition frequency (Hz)	0.3	0.3
Rise/fall time (µs)	1.1	N/A
flattop time (µs)	304	N/A
Blade thickness (mm)	N/A	8
Aperture (H×V mm)	N/A	18×10
Longitudinal available space (m)	15	15

possible gap between trains of 600 ns (or larger, for the present filling schemes) and extract the entire beam in a single turn. This necessitates a fast extraction scheme with a flattop duration of 304 µs, with both the kicker and septa designed to provide horizontal deflection.

Unlike injection or extraction systems, a dump may be required anytime. As a result, the system must be capable of safely extracting the circulating beam within a few turns. This requirement means that the concept cannot depend on manipulating the optics or the closed orbit before the kicker system is triggered. Consequently, the optics in the extraction region remains unchanged, and the reference position of the circulating beam stays at the centre of the vacuum chamber.

The kicker system provides a slightly larger deflection angle of 0.3 mrad compared to the extraction scheme. Further downstream, the septum is positioned upstream of the next focusing quadrupole (see Fig. 4.17b) to take advantage of the approximately 90° phase advance per cell and the larger beta function. At the septum, the dumped beam is shifted by a total of 43 mm, allowing for a septum blade thickness of 25 mm and placing its inner edge 4 mm from the ring reference position. The total septum deflection is 5 mrad, and the downstream quadrupole will need to be adapted to accommodate a side channel for the dumped beam.

Since the circulating beam energy varies continuously throughout the booster cycle, both the septum power supply and the kicker charging system must adjust to match the beam energy, from injection at 20 GeV up to the maximum energy of 182.5 GeV. Additionally, specialised control systems will be required to trigger a dump if any of these elements fails to follow their expected voltage or current profiles.

The transport line to the dump consists solely of a drift tube, without dipoles or quadrupoles. Small correctors may be considered at a later stage to fine-tune the beam trajectory. With a total distance of 1200 m from the dump kicker to the dump, the beam naturally expands to a 1 σ size of 3.5 mm in the horizontal plane and 1 mm in the vertical plane. These beam sizes are calculated for the smallest possible beam parameters, corresponding to the design equilibrium emittance in Z-mode.

For dump system, reliability is a critical factor, and one particular aspect must be addressed from the earliest stages of development. The total deflection provided by the kicker system is typically distributed across multiple independent magnets and generators, but the failure of at least one component is always a possibility. Therefore, it is essential to ensure that beam extraction and transport to the dump remain functional even in the event of a missing kicker.

In the current design, a total of nine kickers are used, meaning that the loss of a single unit results in an overall deflection reduction of 11%. The present concept guarantees that an extraction kick variation of up to ±20% keeps the dumped beam envelope at the dump location within ±150 mm, which is considered acceptable for the dump's size and design.

Additionally, to accommodate a ±20% variation in kick strength, the horizontal aperture of the septum must exceed 30 mm.

The hardware parameters required for this dump scheme are summarised Table 4.4 and a detailed discussion on the technology choice of the hardware system can be found in Sect. 6.4.

To develop this dump concept towards a technical design, a comprehensive review of the failure cases and mitigation measures, as well as possible errors in both the circulating beam and the dump line, will need to be carried out. Similar considerations as those presented in the previous section hold for protecting the booster aperture in case of failure of the dump extraction elements.

4.5 Ongoing studies and possible upgrades

Since the CDR, the booster has faced several major changes:

Table 4.4 Summary of the booster dump scheme hardware requirements

	Kicker	Septum
Beam energy (GeV)	20–182.5	
Deflection angle per system (mrad)	0.3	5
Maximum repetition frequency (Hz)	0.3	0.3
Rise/fall time (µs)	∼1.5	N/A
flattop time (µs)	304	N/A
Blade thickness (mm)	N/A	25
Aperture (H×V mm)	N/A	30×10
Longitudinal available space (m)	20	20

- The layout has changed to follow the different changes on the collider layout (see Sect. 4.1.1: the circumference has decreased; the length of the insertions has changed to go from a scheme with 2 IPs to 4 IPs; the booster is located on top of the collider with a transverse offset in the arcs; the location of the RF cavities has changed.
- The baseline optics is based on FODO cells (Sect. 4.1.3. Maintaining the same optics for the different operation modes may reduce the costs. An alternative, based on hybrid cells (Sect. 4.1.4) has been developed and compared. Improving the matching conditions, including second-order considerations, has enlarged the momentum acceptance and dynamic aperture.
- The injection and extraction systems were developed. The placement of the transfer lines from the pre-injector complex to the booster was optimised (Sect. 4.4). The extraction and dump lines are located in section B (see Sect. 4.4.1). A baseline of the injection and extraction sections exists and this has been integrated in the booster FODO lattice. The baseline injection scheme requires a slight modification of the PA section by changing a few dipoles, adding a couple of quadrupoles and by adding 22 independent power supplies for existing quadrupoles. The injection and extraction sections are able to transport the required envelopes of the circulating and injected/extracted beams. The machine protection at extraction is highly challenging due to the high stored energy and has pushed the reduction of the total number of bunches at Z and WW operation. The hardware required for the injection, extraction, and dump has been listed.
- The collective effects (see Sect. 4.2) have been studied for the updated optics and considered different sources of instabilities: mismatching at injection, microwave, transverse mode coupling, transverse and longitudinal coupled bunches. The studies have shown that present baseline injection parameters from the high-energy LINAC allow a significant margin to avoid mismatch and microwave instabilities at injection energy (see Sect. 4.2.2). Studies on the coupled bunch instabilities have shown that the new parameters (especially the reduced number of stored bunched at Z-operation and the enlarged beam pipe) increase the threshold (see Sect. 4.2.3). Nevertheless, a transverse damper (although with relaxed damping time) is still mandatory. Single-bunch instabilities were investigated for copper and stainless steel beam pipes of several diameters as well as for different values of momentum compaction. The analysis has led to the choice of a copper beam pipe with a diameter of 60 mm as the baseline. With such parameters and with only the beam pipe as an impedance contributor, the beam is stable for all operating modes with the baseline optics.
- The synchrotron radiation power emitted from the booster during one cycle has been evaluated (see Sect. 4.3.1) to estimate the ionising dose in tunnel (see Sect. 4.3.2). The studies have shown that the contribution of the booster to the overall dose levels in the tunnel has to be studied in conjunction with the collider shielding. A recommendation is to increase the thickness of the booster dipole yokes from 20 mm to 40 mm for better shielding efficiency.

There has been a lot of progress, and many changes have been made to the booster design since the CDR. The current booster performance fulfills most of the requirements. Several additional studies remain to be done for a complete validation of the booster design. Among the different topics to be addressed are the following:

- The placement of injection elements for the vertical injection scheme and threading of the injected beam through the lattice elements is particularly challenging. It is necessary to undergo detailed studies on the feasibility of the magnets and proposed channels for the injected beam. Some technical solutions are proposed for the septa and kickers and could be developed towards a technical design but could also benefit from further R&D to apply newer technologies. The apertures and strengths used in the extraction and dump baseline concept are capable of transporting the envelopes of the circulating and extracted beams, but a more detailed study, including kicker technology choices and filling scheme requirements, will be needed to finalise the requirements and converge on the technology choices. Despite the reduced beam intensity in the booster, such beams remain extremely critical and potentially destructive. Additional measures must be considered to ensure the safety and integrity of all machine components in case of failure during the extraction and transfer processes. It is necessary to develop a dedicated system to monitor the position of the beam in the extraction and dump regions, to evaluate the required reaction time to detect anomalies and safely dispose of the beam, and to have interlocks to avoid drifts beyond well-defined limits.

- According to studies carried out so far, collective instabilities will not be a imitation with nominal beams in the HEB with the foreseen larger Cu coated chamber and a transverse damper for TCBI. Nevertheless, the studies have to be refined by taking all impedance sources into account, and the instability thresholds need to be confirmed by self-consistent simulations, which include possibly compounding effects, like intrabeam scattering and synchrotron radiation.
- To further validate the booster dipole design, the next step is to produce and test a short prototype. The optimisation of the magnets will be pursued in order to include in the process: (1) the yoke thickness of the dipole to provide additional radiation shielding, (2) the operational temperature of the magnets to improve the efficiency of waste heat recovery, (3) the industrialisation and design for manufacture and assembly, and (4) detailed integration with the other technical systems.
- The results presented demonstrate that the contribution of the booster to the overall dose levels in the tunnel must be studied in conjunction with the collider shielding. In the next steps, it will be necessary to perform further investigations in order to optimise the overall shielding strategy.

Chapter 5

FCC-ee booster operation concept

5.1 Operation and performance

5.1.1 Filling scheme

Following the 2023 mid-term review of the FCC Feasibility Study, a revised proposal for the injectors introduces a Linac that produces and accelerates four pulses with a 25 ns spacing. The repetition frequency is set to 100 Hz for the Z and WW operation modes, and 50 Hz for the ZH and $t\bar{t}$ modes. The damping ring now operates at 2.86 GeV and accommodates both electrons and positrons. The evolution of the damping ring (DR) bunch pattern is sketched in Fig. 5.1 for the old (left) and new (right) injector scheme.

This revised approach is now the new baseline, with the updated collider filling scheme fully detailed in Sect. 2.3.7. The booster-filling scheme has been adapted to follow this new collider-filling pattern.

For the Z mode, the new scheme implies that each booster cycle provides beam to only one tenth of the collider bunch positions. The smaller number of bunches in each booster cycle has several advantages:

- Machine protection considerations only allow for about 1/10th of all bunches, i.e., 1120 (each with max. 1/10th of nominal collider bunch intensity) injected into collider at once at Z energy.
- The shorter booster injection plateau relaxes the vacuum quality required for tolerable emittance growth from rest gas collisions and reduces the impact of intra-beam scattering (IBS) and, thus, emittance growth on early injected bunches.

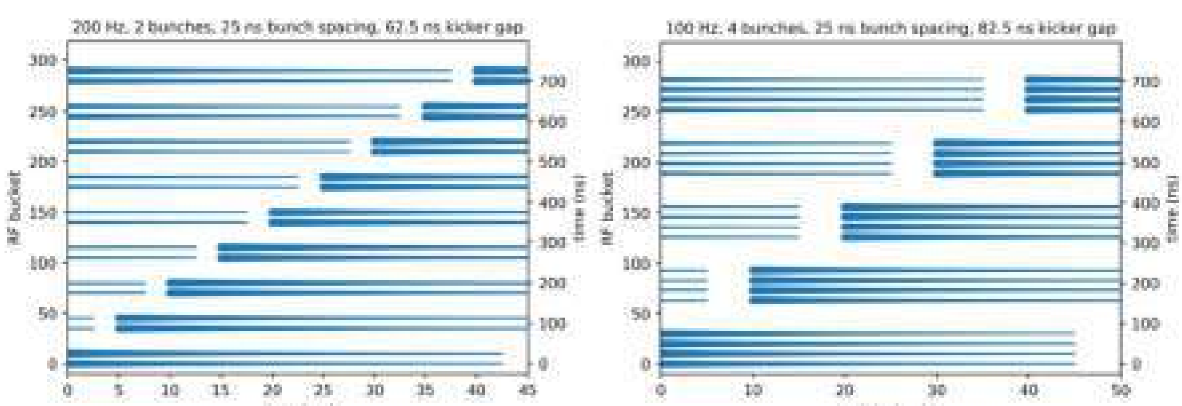


Fig. 5.1 Pulse structure in the damping ring before injection into the linac of 20 GeV for an operating frequency of 200 Hz (left) or 100 Hz (right)

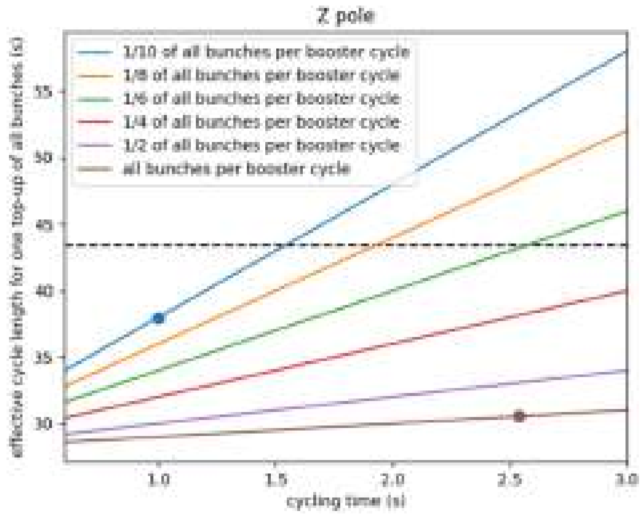


Fig. 5.2 Effective cycle time as a function of the ramping time and the number of bunches transferred per booster cycle. The brown dot corresponds to the scheme presented in the mid-term review and the blue dot is for the new scheme

Table 5.1 Filling parameters

		Z	WW	ZH	$t\bar{t}$
Linac repetition rate	[Hz]	100	100	50	50
Bunches per Linac pulse		4	4	2	2
Linac bunch spacing	[ns]	25	25	25	25
Booster accumulation time	[s]	2.8	2.32	3.0	0.64
Booster total ramping time	[s]	1.0	1.6	2.6	4.3
Booster cycle length	[s]	3.8	3.92	5.6	4.94
Bunches per booster cycle		1120	928	300	64
Number of bunches in collider		11,200	1856	300	64
Max. bunch intensity injected in collider	10^{10}	2.725	1.268	1.268	1.268
Nominal bunch intensity in collider	10^{10}	21.5	13.8	16.9	14.8
Allowable charge imbalance	[%]	5	3	3	3
Beam lifetime: lumi 4 IPs, (q, BS, lattice)/4	[s]	916	517	428	497

- It allows the bunches to be distributed around the booster circumference. This relaxes the fast beam ion instability and tune shifts for the electron beam, as well as the RF power required for beam loading compensation. This distribution can also be exploited to optimise the filling of the collider to mitigate e-cloud for positrons.

However, the main drawback is the increase in the number of ramps, which in turn affects the time required for the top-up of all bunches (the effective cycle length), as illustrated in Fig. 5.2. In the new scheme, the goal is to inject up to 1/10th of all collider bunches per booster cycle. c A consequence of the new scheme that either the accelerating ramp in the booster must be shortened (for operational margin), as assumed in Table 5.1, or the full collider top-up duration length be slightly increased (e.g., the total ramping time in the Z mode rising from 1.0 s to 1.14 s).

An example of the filling pattern in the booster is shown in Fig. 5.3. It is worth noting that for Z operation, it is possible to choose which subset of bunches is injected from the booster to the collider. Such a scheme provides flexibility in the accumulation phase of the collider for the creation of gaps in the bunch train and possibly mitigates the electron cloud effect.

The three operation modes run with a smaller number of bunches and lower bunch intensity compared to Z. The low bunch intensity needed from the injector ($< 1 \times 10^{10}$) resolves transverse coupled mode instabilities (TMCI) limitations in the booster (see Sect. 4.2). The three operation modes allow longer abort gaps, partly occupied by non-colliding bunches for energy calibration. There is still a margin for reducing the injection rate (i.e., pausing between cycles) for energy saving in top-up mode or increased booster cycle length (e.g., if beam injection in the collider needs to be done piecemeal). For WW operation, the transfer of half of the bunches at each injection is considered to limit the length of the injection plateau. For the ZH and $t\bar{t}$ operation, one requirement for the filling

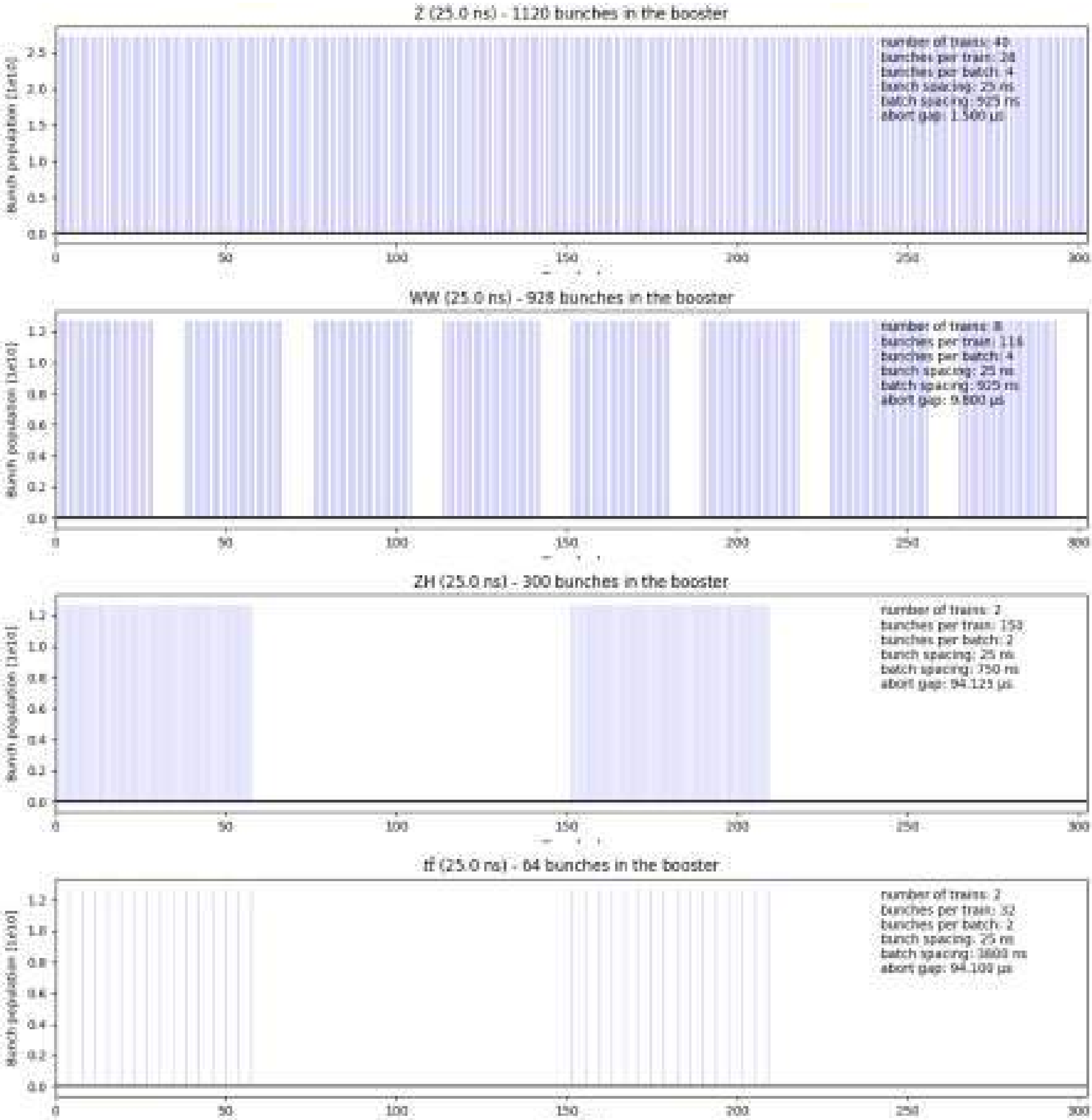


Fig. 5.3 Filling pattern for the different operation modes (from top to bottom): Z, WW, ZH, and $t\bar{t}$. For the Z mode, 4 bunch batches are separated by longer gaps, which is not visible on this scale

scheme is to always have only one beam present in the common RF section at a time. The number of bunches is small enough to run the injector complex at 50 Hz with two bunches.

5.1.2 Emittance evolution

The transverse damping time is respectively 9 s, 0.763 s, 0.141 s, 0.0419 s and 0.0119 s at the injection energy of 20 GeV and at the extraction energy of the 4 operating modes, respectively. The direct consequence is that the damping time at Z operation is of the same order of magnitude as the total ramping time given in Table 5.1 whereas the damping time is small for the other modes. Therefore, the emittance and energy spread at the extraction at the Z mode will depend on the initial injection parameters, whereas the equilibrium emittance will be reached for the other modes. For this reason, only the Z mode has been considered for assessing whether the extracted emittance remains within the collider injection tolerances. This study examines two injection scenarios:

Case 1 (Linac alone for 20 GeV electrons) $\varepsilon_x = 10$ µm, $\varepsilon_y = 10$ µm, $\sigma_\delta = 1 \times 10^{-3}$.

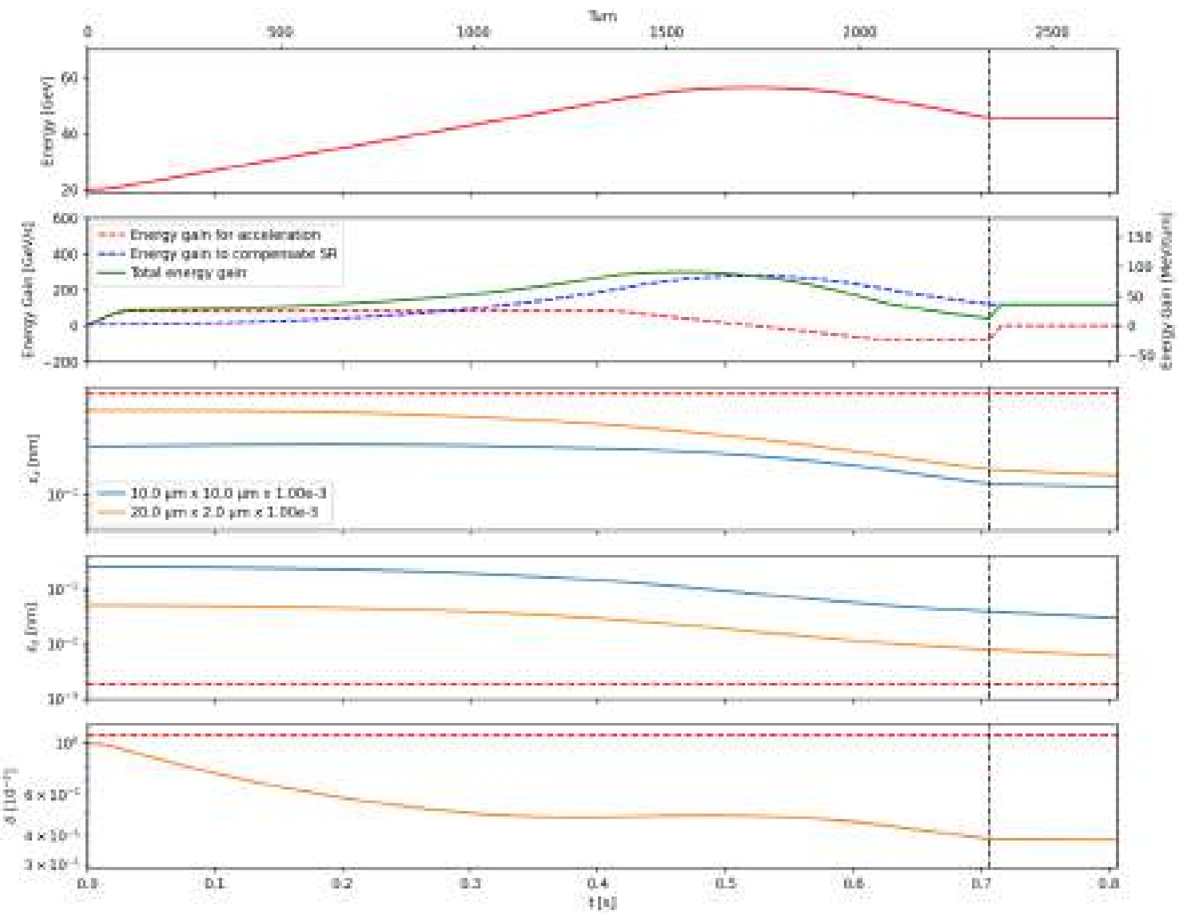


Fig. 5.4 Evolution of the beam energy (first line), radiated power and RF voltage required (second line), the horizontal RMS emittance (third line), vertical RMS emittance (fourth line), and RMS energy spread (last line) as a function of time for Z mode operation

Case 2 (Baseline: Damping ring) $\varepsilon_x = 20$ µm, $\varepsilon_y = 2$ µm, $\sigma_\delta = 1 \times 10^{-3}$

The equilibrium emittance in the collider for Z operation, $\epsilon_{x,\mathrm{RMS}}$, is 0.71 nm $\times\, \epsilon_{y,\mathrm{RMS}} = 1.9$ pm $\times\, \sigma_\delta = 1.09 \times 10^{-3}$. A first study on the injection into the collider suggests that the collider can accept up to 5 times larger vertical emittance. That is why the target for the emittance at extraction, $\epsilon_{x,\mathrm{target}}$, is 0.71 nm $\times\, \epsilon_{y,\mathrm{target}} = 9.4$ pm. However, since the equilibrium horizontal emittance in the booster is lower than in the collider for the Z and WW modes, the expected horizontal emittance at extraction is about 0.12 pm (see Fig. 5.4).

The baseline energy ramp has a parabolic increase from 0–80 GeV s^{-1}, a linear ramp up to a maximum energy higher than the extraction one (to speed up the radiation damping), a decrease back to the extraction energy, a flat-top, and finally a ramp-down of the magnets. The current total time of the booster ramp is 1.14 s, near the target of 1 s and can be shared between a ramp-up of 0.706 s, a flat-top of 0.1 s, and a ramp-down of 0.334 s. It is worth noting that the maximum slope for the magnetic field in the dipole in the ramp-up is the same as in the ramp-down. However, it is likely that it will be possible to have a faster ramp-down since no beam is circulating during this time. The stability constraints and beam loading in the RF cavities are not a concern during the ramp-down. Under these conditions, it is possible to reach a total ramp time of 1 s with a ramp-down of 0.194 s.

The evolutions of the beam energy, the radiated power, the minimum RF voltage, the horizontal and vertical RMS emittance of the energy spread are given in Fig. 5.4 for the baseline. The maximum energy delivered by the cavities is 90.6 MeV/turn. In case 1, the final RMS vertical emittance is 30 pm, well above the target of 9.4 pm. In case 2, the final vertical RMS emittance is 6.12 pm, which is above the equilibrium emittance in the collider but within the injection acceptance.

If the ramp does not include an energy overshoot but maintains the same up-ramp, flat-top, and down-ramp durations with a parabolic profile, the maximum energy delivered by the cavities is reduced to 51.7 MeV /turn. In this scenario, the final RMS vertical emittance reaches 55.4 pm and 11.2 pm in both cases—significantly exceeding the target value of 9.4 pm. This highlights the clear advantage of increasing the energy to accelerate damping and achieve lower emittance values. Several mitigation strategies have been evaluated to enhance damping during the ramp and achieve a smaller vertical emittance while maintaining a total ramping time of 1.14 s. In all cases, accelerating damping requires an increase in radiated power, which in turn necessitates a higher cavity voltage.

Three solutions are proposed to achieve a final smaller vertical emittance. The first possibility is to increase the time allocated to the ramp-up by decreasing the time of the ramp-down. For instance, if the ramp-down time is reduced by 170 ms, the ramp-up time increases to 876 ms. This also enables reaching a higher maximum energy, thereby accelerating damping due to increased power consumption. The maximum energy delivered by the cavities is then 130.0 MeV/turn. The final vertical RMS emittance is 9.27 pm and 1.99 pm for the two cases, respectively.

The second possibility is to achieve a higher energy by increasing the slope of the magnetic field from 80–100 $\mathrm{GeV\,s^{-1}}$, for instance. In this case, the maximum energy delivered by the cavities is 158.5 MeV/turn. The final vertical RMS emittance is 9.1 pm and 1.96 pm for the two cases, respectively. The third proposal is to insert a wiggler in one of the straight sections.

For these studies, the following parameters were assumed: a number of wigglers, $n_W = 2$, each 4.925 m long, with $n_P = 43$ poles, each $L_P = 95$ mm long, a magnetic field in the gap of $B_W = 1$ T, and a gap between the poles of 20 mm. The wiggler parameters are preliminary and require further refinement. The aim in the framework of this study was to obtain an order-of-magnitude estimate of what is needed.

The parameters of the wiggler were calculated to go from $\mathcal{I}_2 = 0.59\ \mathrm{mm^{-1}}$ to $\mathcal{I}_2 = 2.36\ \mathrm{mm^{-1}}$ and from $\mathcal{I}_3 = 0.057\ \mathrm{mm^{-2}}$ to $\mathcal{I}_3 = 27\ \mathrm{mm^{-2}}$ at an injection energy of 20 GeV. The evolution of the beam energy, voltage, and beam emittance with an additional wiggler is given in Fig. 5.4. The emittance evolution takes into account that $\mathcal{I}_2$ and $\mathcal{I}_3$ vary in time since it is assumed that there is a constant magnetic field in the wiggler. The maximum energy delivered by the cavities is then 122.5 MeV /turn. The final RMS vertical emittance for the baseline case is 1.84 pm. Having a larger I_3 significantly enlarges the final energy spread to 1.9×10^{-3}, which is above the requirements. An optimisation of the wiggler parameters should enable a smaller final energy spread to be achieved.

In summary, achieving the required final vertical emittance is only possible with the baseline scenario if two conditions are met: using a high-energy damping ring and maintaining a normalised vertical emittance of 2 pm throughout the linac. However, at the price of more RF power, it is possible to reach the target vertical emittance with a ramp of 1 s if it is possible to combine a shorter ramp-down with a wiggler. Increasing the acceleration rate to reach higher energies more quickly can be beneficial, but caution is needed to avoid excessively high energies, where the radiated power will increase significantly, leading to high power consumption.

5.1.3 Ramping strategy

Following an accumulation time, the booster will ramp the beam energy from the injection energy (20 GeV) up to extraction energy (45.6 GeV for Z, up to 182.5 GeV for $\mathrm{t\bar{t}}$). The optimisation strategy has to ensure beam stability and reach the target emittances.

- The start of the ramp shall be adiabatic to avoid shaking the bunches.
- The energy gain per turn is limited by eddy currents in the magnets. A conservative maximum ramp rate of 80 GeV /s is considered.
- When approaching high energies, the energy gain is dominated by the energy provided to compensate for losses due to synchrotron radiation. The extraction energy needs to be reached adiabatically.

The tracking simulation suite BLonD [336] was used to design the energy and RF voltage ramps for all four modes. The next sections give details of the energy ramps of the two extreme modes (the high current mode Z and the high energy mode $\mathrm{t\bar{t}}$).

Z mode ramp To achieve the target emittances required by the collider (see Sect. 5.1.2), the ramping strategy includes an energy overshoot up to 53 GeV. Since energy loss due to synchrotron radiation scales with the fourth power of the energy, the 8 GeV excess must be compensated by a high RF voltage. Figure 5.5 shows the evolution of the beam energy and various parameters for operation with a wiggler installed in one of the straight sections.

For designing the voltage ramp, the phase-space longitudinal stability regions are considered at three key points: the flat bottom, the overshoot maximum, and the flat top, as shown in Fig. 5.6. To maintain a sufficiently small filling fraction (the ratio of bunch emittance to stability area), an RF voltage of at least 85 MV is required.

A doubly parabolic voltage ramp up to 85 MV is proposed, see Fig. 5.7. The first 1% voltage increase is parabolic to avoid shaking the beam; then there is a steep linear part, and finally a parabolic curve for the remaining 20% of the voltage increase. From 85 MV, the voltage is ramped down to 57.2 MV with a similar strategy, parabolic for the initial 20%, then linear, then parabolic for the remaining 40%, before a 0.1 s flat top. The proposed ramp, based on considerations of longitudinal dynamics, will be fine-tuned according to hardware considerations.

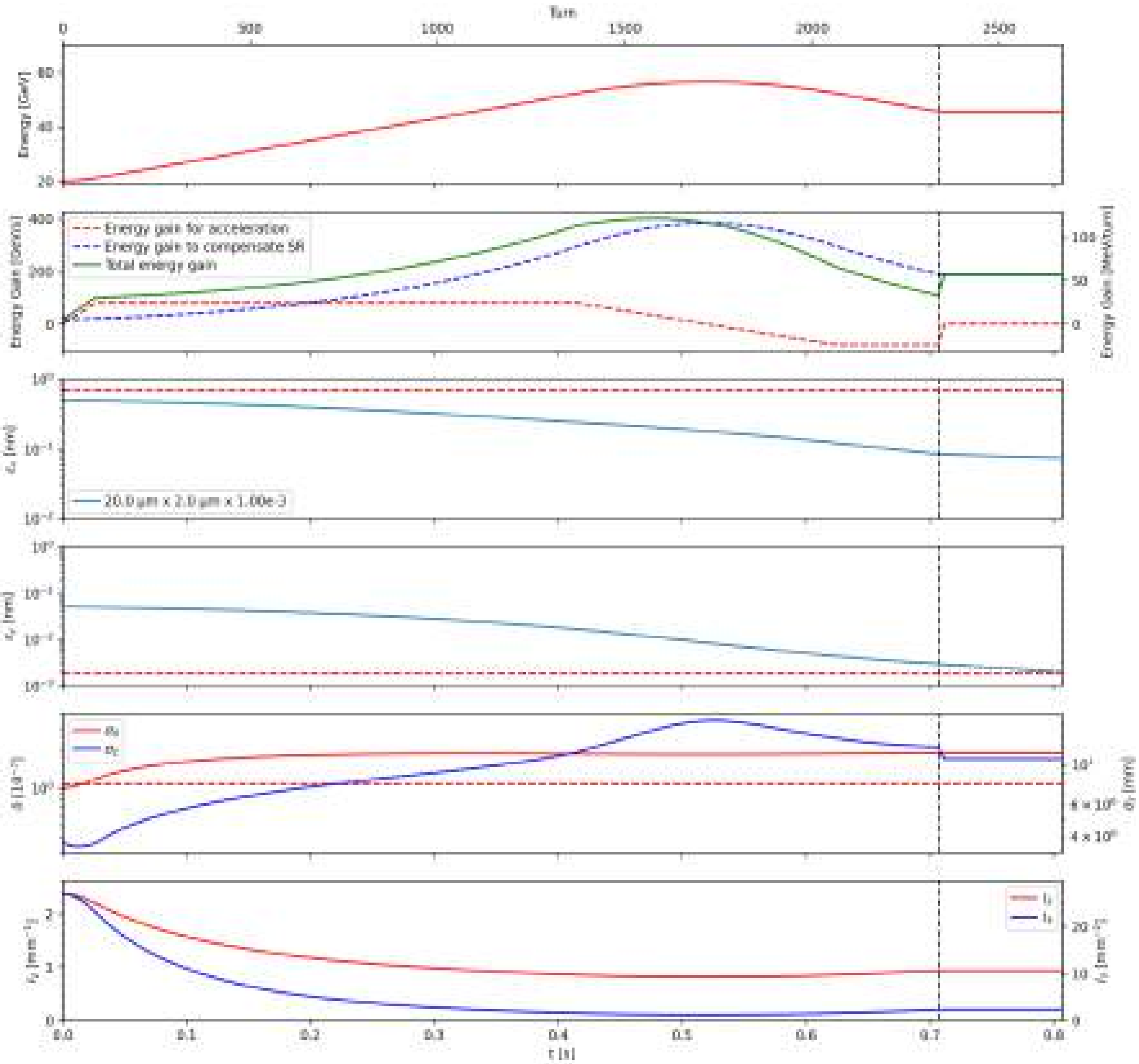


Fig. 5.5 Evolution of the beam energy (first line), the radiated power and required RF voltage (second line), the horizontal RMS emittance (third line), vertical RMS emittance (fourth line), RMS energy spread (fifth line), and synchrotron integrals $\mathcal{I}_{\in}$ and $\mathcal{I}_{\ni}$ as a function of time, for Z mode operation with a wiggler installed in one of the straight sections

$t\bar{t}$ mode ramp The $t\bar{t}$ mode ramp lasts 2.03 s, corresponding to 6713 turns in the booster ring, followed by a 0.1 s flat top. The energy increases nine-fold, from 20 GeV to 182.5 GeV. At flat top, the energy loss due to synchrotron radiation is substantial (over 10 GeV/turn). The top energy has to be reached as slowly as possible. The proposed energy and voltage ramps are shown in Fig. 5.8. A preliminary solution with a linear voltage increase from 50.1 MV up to 11.533 GV is proposed.

5.2 Requirements

5.2.1 Magnets

The magnet design is based on the FODO lattice described in Sect. 4.1.3. The main cell of the arcs uses 1 dipole family, 6 quadrupoles circuits (to tune the phase advances between the sextupoles and also the global tune of the cell), and 2 sextupoles families (to correct the chromaticity in both planes).

Each quadrupole is combined with one dipole corrector. The correction plane is directly linked to the polarity of the quadrupole (horizontal if positive and vertical if negative). More details on the correction scheme in the booster are given in Sect. 5.2.6. The requirements for the main magnets of the booster are summarised in Table 5.2.

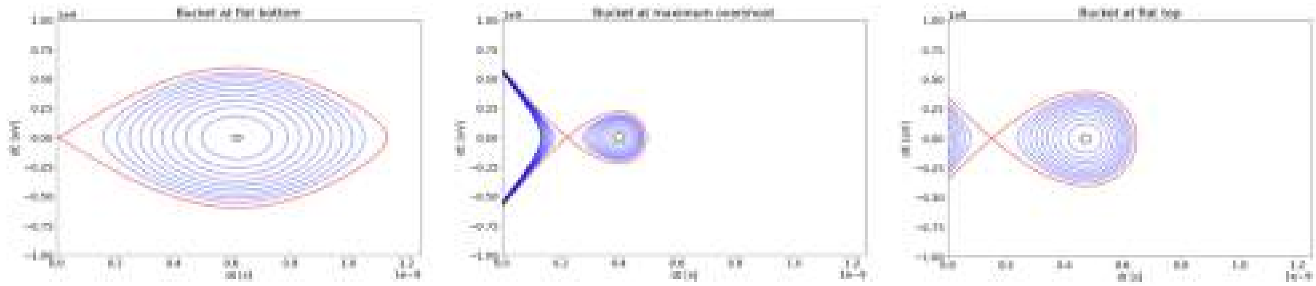


Fig. 5.6 Longitudinal phase space stability regions delimited by the separatrix (red curve). Blue lines show curves of constant energy. Left panel corresponds to flat bottom, with an energy $E = 20$ GeV and voltage $V_{\mathrm{RF}} = 50.1$ MV. Right panel corresponds to flat top, with an energy $E = 45.6$ GeV and voltage $V_{\mathrm{RF}} = 57.2$ MV. The middle panel corresponds to the maximum of the energy overshoot, $E = 53$ GeV, with voltage $V_{\mathrm{RF}} = 85$ MV

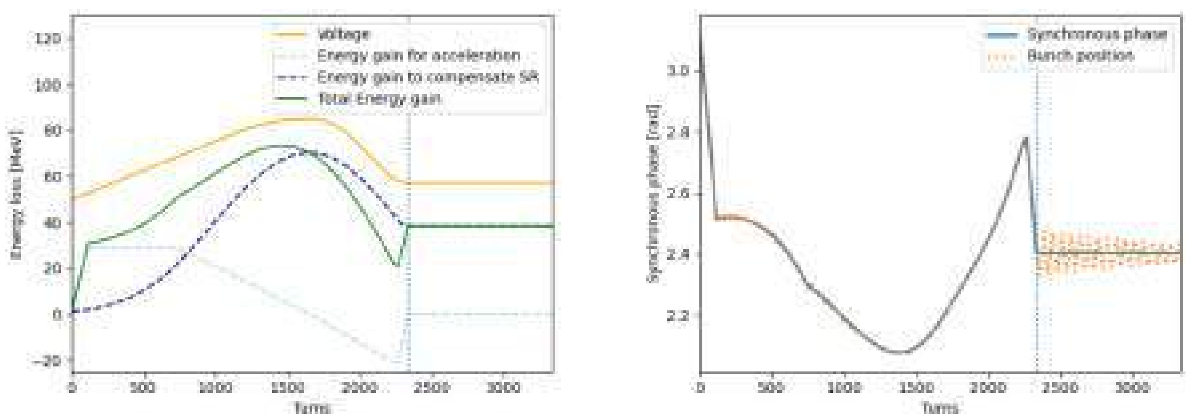


Fig. 5.7 Left: Energy and voltage ramping strategies for the Z mode. The total energy gain is plotted as a full green line; it is the sum of the energy gain needed for acceleration (light-blue dashed line) and the energy required to compensate for synchrotron radiation losses (dark blue dashed line). The voltage is shown as a full orange line. Right: Synchronous phase, theoretical (full blue line) against simulated bunch position (dotted orange line)

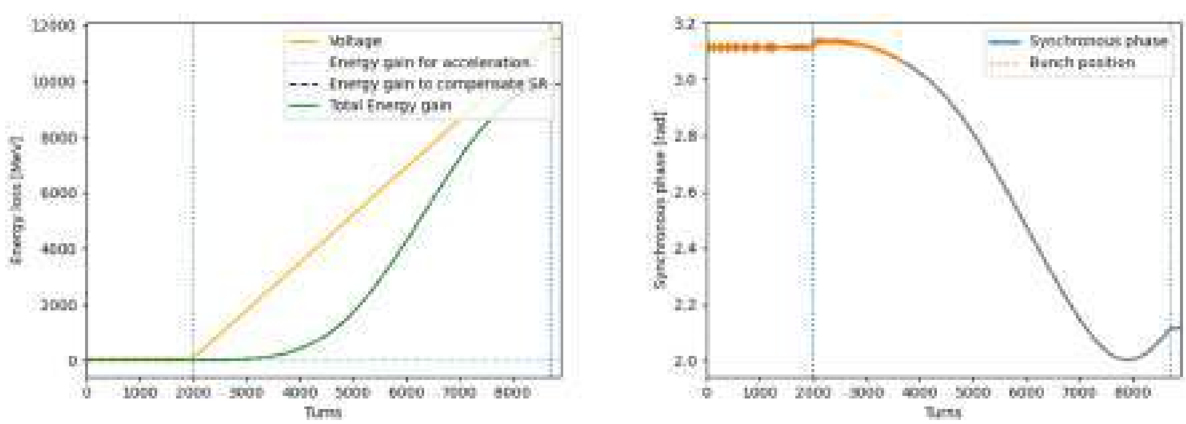


Fig. 5.8 Left: Energy and voltage ramping strategies for the $t\bar{t}$ mode. The total energy gain is plotted as a full green line; it is the sum of the energy gain needed for acceleration (light-blue dashed line) and the energy required to compensate for synchrotron radiation losses (dark blue dashed line). The voltage is shown as a full orange line. Right: Synchronous phase, theoretical (full blue line) against simulated bunch position (dotted orange line)

Table 5.2 Main magnet requirements for the booster

	Dipole	Quadrupole	Sextupole		Corrector
			Focusing	Defocusing	
Total number in lattice ...	6164	3346	576	560	3346
... of which in arcs	5536	2768	576	560	2768
Aperture [mm]	65	65	65	65	65
Length [m]	11	1.3	0.7	1.4	< 0.3
Max strength, arc at $t\bar{t}$	58.9 mT	28.7 T m^{-1}	1147 T m^{-2}	1219 T m^{-2}	20 mT m
Min strength, arc at 20 GeV	6.45 mT	2.8 T m^{-1}	126 T m^{-2}	134 T m^{-2}	20 mT m

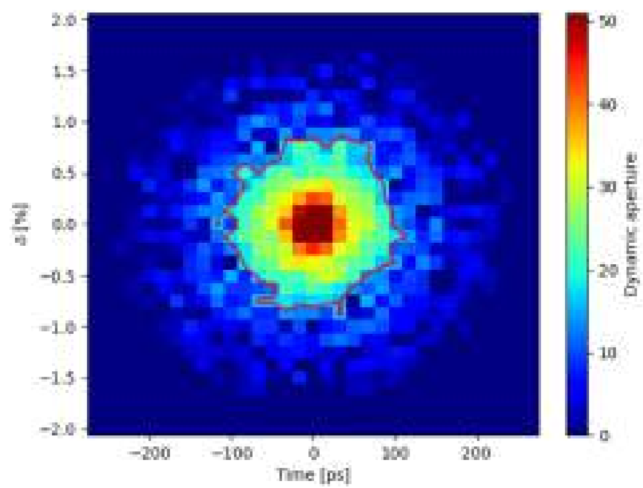


Fig. 5.9 6-D dynamic aperture, in units of rms beam size (σ), at injection into the booster for 1000 turns as a function of the initial time delay and relative energy difference. The injection emittances are 20 µm × 2 µm. The red line gives the contour for a dynamic aperture of 15σ

5.2.2 Injection

To assess the injection requirements for the booster, the 6-D dynamic aperture was calculated at injection over 1000 turns. The calculation was performed by tracking a grid of macro-particles with initial actions ranging from 1–50σ in 1σ steps, considering four different angles in the x-y plane: 0°, 30°, 60° and 90°.

Macro-particles were injected at the injection kicker with an initial time offset between −250–250 ps and a relative energy spread between −2% and +2%. The maximum action for which a macro-particle remains unlost after 1000 turns is shown in Fig. 5.9, with the 15σ limit indicated in red.

If the RMS energy spread at injection is 10^{-3} and the RMS bunch size is 4 mm, the corresponding requirements are a maximum time jitter of 50 ps and a relative energy spread tolerance of 5×10^{-3}. It is worth noting that the injection transfer line to the booster requires a relative energy difference error of 3×10^{-3}. To summarise, the time jitter for the injection complex should be 50 ps and the relative energy error should be less than 3×10^{-3}.

5.2.3 RF staging

The high-energy booster aims to accumulate and accelerate the bunches before injection into the two collider rings. The RF system will be installed in point PL.

In the first stage, the RF system must operate at the Z, WW or ZH operating points without any hardware modification, allowing fast switching between the three different modes as is done in the collider. This is achieved by installing 112 cavities which corresponds to 28 cryomodules with 4 cavities per cryomodule. Due to the large range in RF voltage between injection and extraction energy, reverse phase operation (RPO) [244] is planned (more details are given in Sects. 3.4.3 and 6.3).

The second step will consist of adding 332 cavities (84 cryomodules) to have a total of 448 cavities to run at the $t\bar{t}$ energy, corresponding to a total of 112 cryomodules. This important installation sequence will be performed during a year of shutdown after the last run at the Z, WW, ZH operating points and before the start of the $t\bar{t}$ run.

The same 6-cell 800 MHz elliptical cavities as designed for the collider $t\bar{t}$ mode will be used. As a baseline, the cavity manufacturing technology is the standard bulk niobium technology which has a limitation restricting the usable accelerating gradient to 20 MV/m in operation, assuming that the cavities are qualified in a vertical cryostat at a 20% higher gradient and Q_0 (see Table 3.11).

5.2.4 Vacuum

Collective effects arising from the accumulation of oppositely charged particles in the beam can lead to various undesirable consequences. As these effects are highly sensitive to bunch spacing, they are a primary concern at the Z operating point, where the collider will run with a large number of closely spaced bunches.

In particular, electron cloud build-up and photoelectron emission during operation with positrons and ion accumulation during operation with electrons may lead to beam instabilities, emittance growth and other detrimental effects in the high-energy booster. These effects can most effectively be mitigated by limiting the production of electrons and ions in the beam chamber environment, which sets requirements on the properties of the vacuum chamber surface as well as the vacuum level in the machine.

Ion accumulation and instabilities Beam-induced gas ionisation gives rise to electrons and ions along the beam path. The positive ions are attracted by the electron beam field and may be trapped in oscillation along the bunch train. Trapped ions accumulate over the passage of a bunch train and can seed a coupled-bunch instability known as the fast beam-ion instability [337, 338]. Ions are trapped between bunches if their molecular mass number, A, exceeds a critical mass number, A_c, which in the linear approximation can be defined as [99]

$$A_c \equiv \frac{N_b r_p c\, \Delta t_{\mathrm{sep}}}{2\sigma_y(\sigma_x+\sigma_y)}\,, \tag{5.1}$$

where N_b is the bunch intensity, Δt_{sep} the bunch spacing and r_p is the classical proton radius. Since the trapping mass is inversely proportional to the beam size, the most critical conditions for ion trapping and instabilities occur immediately after injection, when the beam sizes are at their largest, and relax as the emittance decreases during the booster cycle.

The following parameters are assumed: a bunch spacing of 25 ns, as in the collider filling scheme, the critical mass number $A_c \approx 1$, the transverse beta functions $\beta_{x,y} \simeq 40$ m and the horizontal dispersion $D_x \simeq 0.125$ m. In this case, even hydrogen gas, H_2 ($A = 2$), would be trapped around the bunch train and avoiding instabilities in such conditions would set unrealistic constraints on the acceptable vacuum levels, especially for an unbaked vacuum without active pumping from a NEG or similar surface. Following the recent updates after the mid-term review, the proposed strategy for Z mode involves transferring only one-tenth of the total number of bunches at a time from the booster to the collider. This allows the bunches to be distributed around the booster circumference, thereby increasing the bunch spacing.

If each group of four bunches from the linac is separated by the maximum possible distance of approximately 1 µs, the ion trapping mass between successive 4-bunch trains can reach $A_c \approx 35$, significantly mitigating constraints. In this scenario, ions from the lightest and most abundant gases would be trapped along the 4-bunch trains but would dissipate during the gaps before the next group, making them unlikely to cause detrimental effects. However, heavier gas species such as CO_2 could still be trapped from train to train, and their potential impact on vacuum level requirements will need to be studied further.

Electron cloud Electron clouds can be created by secondary electron emission through a beam-induced multipacting process, an accumulation of photoelectrons, or a combination thereof. Electron cloud formation through multipacting depends strongly on the secondary electron yield (SEY) of the beam chamber surface, defined as the ratio between the emitted and the impinging electron currents. The risk of electron cloud build-up for different values of the SEY has been assessed by simulating the process of electron cloud formation in the beam chamber at injection and extraction energy using the PyECLOUD code [73]. Assuming the nominal collider filling pattern with uniform trains of bunches spaced by 25 ns, electron cloud build-up in drift spaces, as well as in the main dipolar, quadrupolar and sextupolar fields is suppressed if the SEY is kept at the value of 1.5 or below. Here, the strongest constraints come from the sextupole magnets at extraction energy, whereas the requirement in other elements is more relaxed. Such values of the SEY are expected to be readily achievable after beam-induced conditioning for warm copper surfaces [339]. In addition, these requirements can be significantly further alleviated if the flexibility available in the booster filling pattern for spacing the bunches over the entire ring, is employed.

Photoelectrons, produced through photoemission from the chamber walls due to the synchrotron radiation emitted by the circulating beam, can enhance the electron cloud build-up process, and in very large quantities can induce electron cloud effects even in the absence of beam-induced multipacting. The amount of photoelectrons emitted is determined by the photoelectron yield (PY) of the beam chamber surface, defined as the ratio between the emitted photoelectrons and the number of impinging photons, along with the number and distribution of synchrotron radiation photons in the beam chamber. While build-up studies for the different photoemission levels have not been finalised for the booster, studies for the collider can be used (see Sect. 1.4.4) for a first estimate of the acceptable level in the booster. For the collider, build-up and ray-tracing studies imply that the photon absorbers need an efficiency well above 90% to ensure beam stability. Since the beam current in the booster is around a factor 100 lower than in the collider, the photon flux is lower by a similar factor and therefore effectively fulfils the collider constraint. In addition, since electron multipacting is expected to be well suppressed in the booster, the risk of photoelectrons enhancing the multipacting to a worrying degree is low. Therefore, the effect of the photoemission is not expected to have a major impact on the beam quality. Detailed studies are pending.

5.2.5 Machine protection systems

Beam intensity limitations for beam transfers Ensuring robust machine protection is a key priority when operating with the high-intensity and small-emittance beams of the Z mode. While the stored beam intensity in the booster is lower than in the collider, uncontrolled beam losses could still pose a risk to equipment. In particular, beam loss incidents may occur during the beam transfer process due to potential kicker failures or timing errors.

Given the large number of booster-to-collider transfers required for top-up injection, the reliability of the hardware systems involved is paramount. To further enhance safety, protection absorbers will be strategically placed in critical areas, including the booster extraction region, the transfer lines, and the collider injection region. These absorbers will ensure that any mis-steered beams are safely intercepted, preventing damage to the accelerator systems.

Similar protection measures are successfully implemented in other high-intensity accelerators, such as the SPS and LHC at CERN, providing a well-established foundation for ensuring safe operation.

The maximum acceptable load on protection absorbers poses a limitation for the beam intensity, which can be safely transferred from the booster to the FCC-ee collider. Some of the most robust absorber materials for protection absorbers used nowadays at CERN include isotropic graphite and Carbon/Carbon composites. Material tests with 440 GeV proton beams in the CERN HiRadMat facility showed that such materials can resist energy deposition densities as high as 5 kJ/g without sustaining any damage (5 kJ/g corresponds to a peak temperature of roughly 3000°C). The maximum acceptable energy density may even be higher, but firm limits can only be established once higher-intensity beams become available in HiRadMat or other facilities.

In order to provide a first order estimate of the expected intensity limitation for booster-to-collider beam transfers in the Z mode, a generic beam loss scenario is considered, where a mis-steered 45.6 GeV bunch train is intercepted by a graphite or Carbon/Carbon absorber with a density of 1.8 g/cm^3. The energy deposition in the absorber block is calculated with the FLUKA radiation transport code. It is assumed that all bunches impact on the same spot and have an emittance of $\epsilon_{x,\text{target}} = 0.71$ nm in the horizontal plane and $\epsilon_{y,\text{target}} = 9.4$ pm in the vertical plane; these values are the target emittances for booster extraction defined in Sect. 5.1.2. Assuming the bunch train corresponds to around 1% of collider intensity (1200 bunches with a bunch intensity of 2.14×10^{10}–$2.68 \times 10^{10}\text{e}^{-/+}$), the simulations suggest that the maximum energy density in the block can reach 5–6 kJ/g if $\beta_{x,y} = 500$ m at the absorber location, and 3–4 kJ/g if $\beta_{x,y} = 1$ km (in both cases the possible contribution of the dispersion to the beam spot size was neglected). These results show that a transfer of 1% of the collider intensity might be acceptable in the Z mode if large β-functions can be achieved at protection absorbers. On the other hand, transferring a train equivalent to 10% of the collider intensity, as originally envisaged in the mid-term report, is considered too high and poses a non-negligible risk for machine protection.

The presented numbers provide an initial estimate of intensity limitations, but a more comprehensive assessment will be necessary through detailed thermo-mechanical studies. These studies will enable a thorough evaluation of material response to energy deposition and temperature gradients induced by particle showers.

Additionally, refining the acceptable load on absorber materials will require dedicated beam impact tests to ensure their resilience under operational conditions. The final intensity limits will also be influenced by the beam's emittance and optics.

Furthermore, a systematic analysis of potential failure scenarios during beam transfer will be essential. This will allow more precise estimates of energy deposition in protection absorbers, ensuring their effectiveness in safeguarding machine components.

Other machine protection aspects for the booster Accidental beam losses can occur not only during the transfer from the booster to the collider but also within the booster ring itself, due to factors such as beam instabilities, interactions with dust particles, or hardware failures. A thorough assessment of potential failure modes and their associated time scales is essential for defining the machine protection architecture of the booster.

Given the destructive potential of the booster beams at Z mode—even at just 1% of the collider's intensity—it is likely that a minimal collimation system will be required to protect the machine throughout the booster cycle. At top energy in Z mode operation (45.6 GeV), the stored beam energy in the booster is comparable to that of

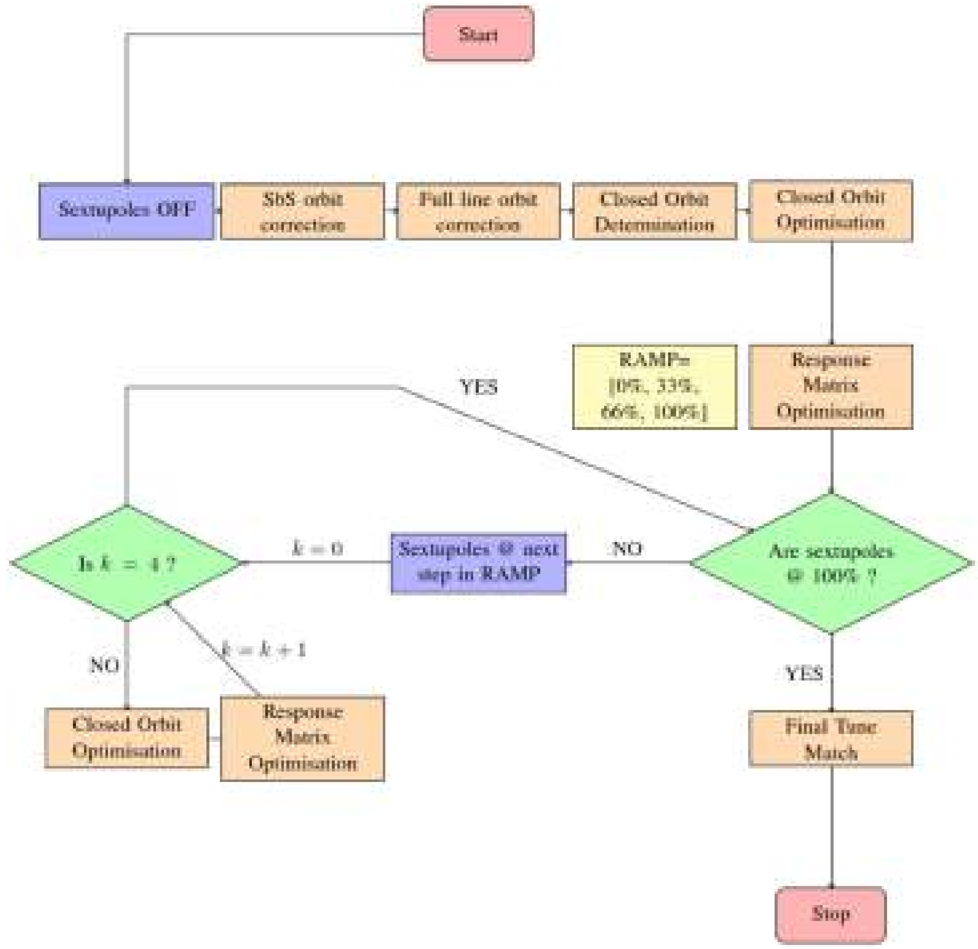


Fig. 5.10 Workflow chart of the tuning scheme of the booster

SuperKEKB, where collimator jaws suffered damage from the beams. This underscores the importance of machine protection in the booster, with the robustness of collimators being a key area of study, similar to the protection absorbers discussed previously.

For safe operation, a beam monitoring and loss detection system will also likely be necessary in the booster. The specific requirements for booster beam instrumentation, such as beam loss monitors, beam position monitors, and beam current monitors, will be determined based on the failure modes identified. In cases of excessive beam loss, a rapid extraction system must be in place to remove the beam in a single turn. As outlined in Sect. 4.4, the current extraction system design assumes that the booster shares a beam dump with the collider. The required reaction time for triggering a beam abort remains to be defined but is expected to be within a few turns.

Beyond beam losses, the impact of synchrotron radiation-induced heating must also be carefully assessed. While the synchrotron power emitted in the booster ring is significantly lower than in the collider (see Sect. 4.3), power deposition on equipment remains non-negligible. Detailed energy deposition studies will be necessary to ensure that sensitive components are adequately protected from heat generated by synchrotron photons.

5.2.6 Correction strategy

The schematic workflow of the correction strategy is shown in Fig. 5.10 and is presented here for the FODO lattice described in Sect. 4.1.3. The emittance tuning is divided in two parts: one with the sextupoles turned off (or very low strength) and the other with the sextupoles ramped to full strength in 3 steps. The momentum aperture of the nominal lattice without errors reduces to $\pm 0.3\%$ when sextupoles are switched off. For the moment, this value is considered acceptable since the high-energy linac can provide dedicated single bunches with an energy spread of 0.05%, during commissioning. Further studies are required in the next phase, including the errors in the momentum aperture evaluation. It is assumed that all the orbit correctors of the booster are individually powered, and they are placed at each quadrupole together with the BPM (i.e., 1400 dipole correctors per plane as given in Table 5.2). Firstly, the sextupoles are off. The orbit correction is applied segment-by-segment (SbS), i.e., in this case, arc by arc, which is similar to the LHC commissioning [340]. After the SbS, two iterations of orbit correction

Table 5.3 Summary of the different error types and their values

Error type (Gaussian RMS)	Value	Unit
MB relative field error	10^{-3}	
MB main dipole roll error	300	µrad
MQ offset (with respect to the girder)	50	µm
MQ roll	100	µrad
MS offset (with respect to the girder)	50	µm
BPM offset (with respect to the girder)	50	µm
Girder-to-girder offset	200	µm

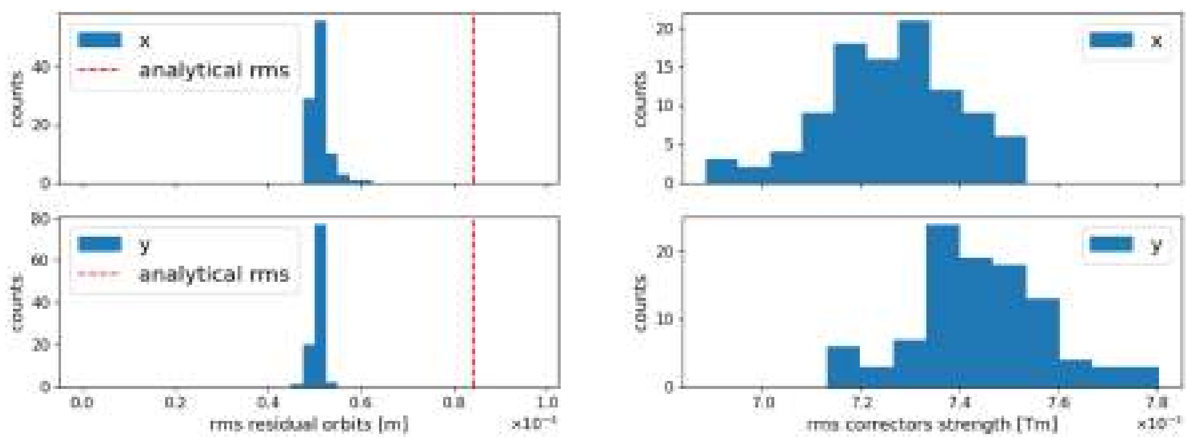


Fig. 5.11 RMS values of the residual orbit (left) and of the corresponding corrector strengths (right) for the different error configurations described in the text

(using the singular value decompositions method) are made on all arcs and in line in order to reduce the residual orbit.

This is sufficient to reduce the orbit enough to locate the closed orbit. Following this step, multiple iterations of orbit correction in the ring are performed until the residual RMS orbit falls below the analytical value [341]. Finally, the sextupoles are set to 33% of their nominal strength, and a final iteration of orbit correction in the ring is carried out.

Four iterations of orbit correction, coupling resonant driving terms (RDTs), horizontal and vertical dispersion correction, phase advance adjustments, and tune corrections are performed at this stage.

A total of 560 normal quadrupole correctors are distributed within the `F2D2` main quadrupole family along the eight arcs. In comparison, 568 skew quadrupole correctors are positioned at the sextupoles in the eight arcs.

This procedure is then repeated with the sextupoles set to 66%, of their nominal strength before being performed at full sextupole strength.

Various case scenarios were studied for 100 seeds. The alignment and field errors used are reported in Table 5.3. Assuming 200 µm misalignment from one girder to the other (about 25 m distance) and 50 µm misalignment for the elements placed on top of the same girder (BPM, Quadrupole, and Sextupole).

It is worth noting that all the errors applied on the elements are randomly Gaussian distributed within ±3 RMS.

5.2.7 Residual orbit and corrector strength required

Figure 5.11 shows the RMS values of the residual orbit for the 100 configurations of errors studied with the correction procedure described in the previous section. The dashed red lines on the distributions represent ±3 times the RMS calculated analytically. The right panel of Fig. 5.11 shows the distribution of the RMS orbit corrector strength for the same 100 machine configurations.

The RMS values of the correctors' strength for the same 100 different configurations are shown in Fig. 5.12. As for the residual orbit both optics have similar RMS corrector strength values. The average values of the RMS residual orbit and of the maximum corrector strength are presented in Table 5.4.

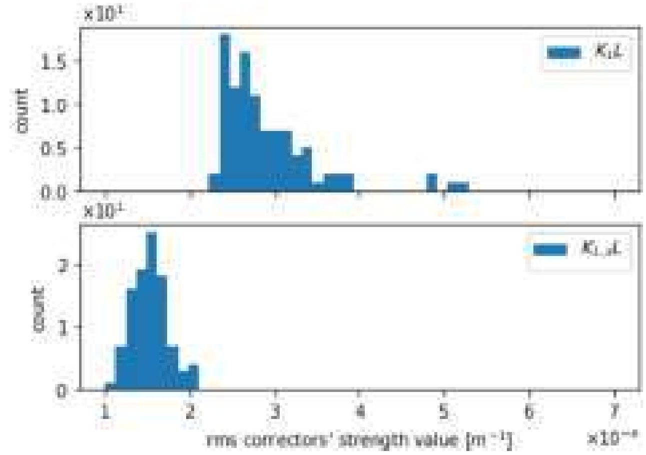


Fig. 5.12 RMS values of the normal and skew quadrupole correctors strength for the 100 configurations of errors, as described in the text

Table 5.4 Average RMS residual orbit and maximum RMS corrector strength values after correction for the 100 configurations based on Table 5.3

		Plane		3×RMS	
				Analytic	Seeds
Residual orbit	[μm]	x		253	181
		y		262	160
Orbit Corrector	[mT.m]	x	$t\bar{t}$	20	23
			inj	2.2	2.5
		y	$t\bar{t}$	21	24
			inj	2.2	2.6
Integrated Quadrupole Corrector	[T.m^{-1}.m]	Normal	$t\bar{t}$	-	0.32
			inj	-	0.03
		Skew	$t\bar{t}$	-	0.13
			inj	-	0.02

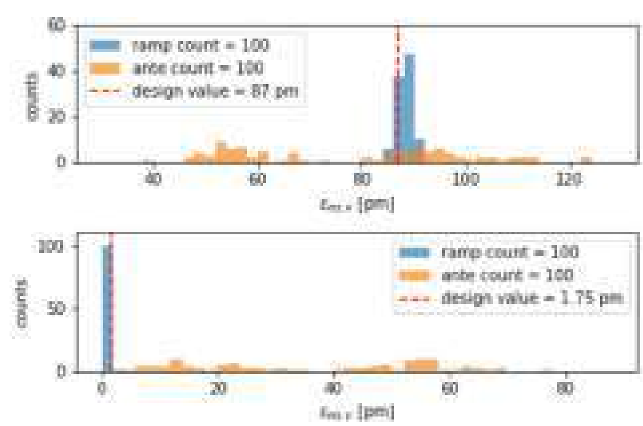


Fig. 5.13 Distribution of the equilibrium emittance in the horizontal (top) and vertical (bottom) planes at Z energy before (ante) and after (post) the four iterations of orbit and emittance correction described in Sect. 5.2.6

5.2.8 Emittance evaluation

The final equilibrium emittance for the 100 converging machine configurations is evaluated at a beam energy of 45.6 GeV. The distribution of the equilibrium emittance after orbit correction and before the correction of the coupling RDTs, dispersions, phase advances and tunes are shown in orange in Fig. 5.13. After the four iterations of orbit, coupling RDTs, dispersions, phase advances and tunes corrections the equilibrium emittance distributions are centred around the target values at Z energy.

5.2.9 Perspectives

Future studies can focus on reducing the number of independent correctors to simplify the correction process and enhance computational efficiency.

To achieve this, the autocorrelation of the trim (resp. skew) correctors, as well as the linear and non-linear correlations between correctors around the ring, will be analysed.

Finally, chromaticity correction will be implemented, and the dynamic aperture will be evaluated while accounting for various errors and their associated corrections.

5.3 Availability

This section details results from the enhanced Monte Carlo simulation environment for FCC-ee availability described in Sect. 2.4, focusing on systems specific to the booster ring.

5.3.1 Contributing systems

The same general framework for availability approximation was applied as per the collider systems, described in Sect. 2.4.1. The specifics of this process used for each booster system are described below. Only faults leading to downtime in the representative system were considered, thereby assuming a similar degree of redundancy for each basic component family as exists currently in the working accelerator. Details of subsystems, scaling numbers, and any additional system-level redundancy implemented are provided in Table 5.5. Fault data was taken from CERN's Accelerator Fault Tracking (AFT) database [234] and is specific to the LHC physics operation 2015-2024, unless otherwise stated.

1. **Beam Instrumentation**: Beam instrumentation faults are given beam position monitor (BPM), beam loss monitor (BLM) and "other" categories. These were scaled according to the relative number of monitors in the booster compared to the LHC.
2. **Beam Losses**: Downtime due to Unidentified Falling Objects (UFOs) and beam instabilities. Dumps in the former category were scaled with the length of the beam pipe, assuming similar amounts of dust and beam interaction as in the LHC. Dumps due to beam instabilities were applied without scaling. The LHC sees relatively long downtimes due to beam loss effects that cause quenches in nearby superconducting magnets, which is not representative of FCC-ee. Therefore, downtime due to quench recovery was subtracted to calculate the MTTR. FCC-ee dumps due to beam losses then appear frequently, with a short recovery time.
3. **Extraction**: Describes systems required for beam abort. These include controls and kicker hardware to divert the beam into the dump block. They appear twice in the LHC (one for each circulating beam), as for the booster, so they are applied without scaling. The dump blocks are excluded as these are shared with the collider rings.
4. **Injection Systems**: This includes kickers, septa, and control systems needed to inject and extract the beam under regular operation. The LHC has two injection systems (one for each beam). The booster has two injection systems from the injector complex and two extraction systems for the collider.
5. **Machine Protection & Interlocks**: Scaling for LHC subcategories is approximated from the relative number of hardware instances foreseen in the FCC-ee.
6. **Magnets**: Failure data from 3532 normal-conducting magnets around the CERN complex was applied to 12,500 magnets in the booster.
7. **Power Converters**: Failure data was taken from two families of power converters, each grouped according to similar MTBF, to represent powering hardware for various magnet types. Only faults leading to downtime in the LHC were considered, thereby assuming a similar degree of redundancy for each magnet group as currently exists in the LHC. Due to the large number of corrector magnets in the latest optics configuration, an MTBF of 9 days is observed in some categories.
8. **Radio Frequency (RF)**: The LHC has 16 accelerating superconducting RF cavities. The number in FCC-ee varies with energy mode. All cavities are horizontally tested to a margin 10% above their nominal voltage so, theoretically, nominal beam energy can be preserved if no more than 10% of the cavities are unavailable. The effect of losing cavities on beam stability and hardware protection has only been modelled in the collider so far, where it was determined that redundancy is severely limited in Z and W modes due to beam loading. In the booster, the transients required due to energy ramping complicate beam stability calculations, and it is presently unclear whether the beam could be preserved in the event of cavity loss. Pending further study, no redundancy was assumed in the lower energy (higher beam current) modes for the booster. In ZH and $t\bar{t}$, 10% is given as per the collider cavity circuits.
9. **Transverse Damper**: The booster will have one transverse damper system. The failure rate is scaled down from the two dampers in the LHC.
10. **Vacuum**: LHC vacuum faults are categorised according to the failed component (pump, gauge, valve, controller). These are then scaled according to the relative number of components in the booster vacuum system.

Table 5.5 Parameters used to simulate availability of systems and subsystems in the FCC-ee Booster

System	Subsystem	Representative System Machine	#	FCCee #	Redundancy* # (%)	Location AP	Unit MTBF days	Group MTBF days
Beam Instruments	BPM	LHC	1000	3369	0 (0)	all	20,671	6.1
	BLM		3600	200	0 (0)	all	36,632	183.3
	Other		1	1	0 (0)	all		24.5
Beam Losses	UFOs	LHC	54	91	0 (0)	all		2.4
	Beam Instability		1	1	0 (0)	all		4.3
Extraction	Controls	LHC	2	2	0 (0)	PB	36	18.2
	Hardware		2	2	0 (0)	PB	65	32.7
	Other		2	2	0 (0)	PB	71	35.6
Injection Systems	MKI	LHC	2	4	0 (0)	PB	20	5
	TDI		2	4	0 (0)	PB	71	17.8
Machine Protection	FMCM	LHC	1	10	0 (0)	all		39.2
	BIS		1	2	0 (0)	all		32.7
	SMP		1	1	0 (0)	all		87.1
	PIC		1	0.2	0 (0)	all		261.4
	WIC		1	6	0 (0)	all		21.8
Magnets	Normal-conducting	CERN	3532	12,500	0 (0)	all	71×10^6	5681
Power Converters	Dipole	LHC	194	16	0 (0)	all	3672	229.5
	Quadrupole		194	32	0 (0)	all	3672	114.8
	Sextupole Focusing		194	32	0 (0)	all	3672	114.8
	Sextupole Defocusing		194	32	0 (0)	all	3672	114.8
	Dipole Tapering		1032	346	0 (0)	all	15,485	44.8
	Quadrupole Tapering		1032	346	0 (0)	all	15,485	44.8
	Horizontal Corrector		1032	1672	0 (0)	all	15,485	9.3
	Vertical Corrector		1032	1672	0 (0)	all	15,485	9.3
	Quadrupole Corrector		1032	1384	0 (0)	all	15,485	11.2
	Skew Quadrupole		1032	1384	0 (0)	all	15,485	11.2
Radio Frequency	Cavity Circuit Z	LHC	16	112	0 (0)	PL	1462	0.54
	Cavity Circuit W		16	112	0 (0)	PL	1462	0.54
	Cavity Circuit ZH		16	112	11 (10)	PL	1462	314.6
	Cavity Circuit $t\bar{t}$		16	600	60 (10)	PL	1462	465.2
Transverse Damper		LHC	2	1	0 (0)	PL	65.4	65.4
Vacuum	Pumps	LHC	891	8360	0 (0)	all	349,448	41.8
	Gauges		1052	904	0 (0)	all	274,997	304.2
	Valves		323	226	0 (0)	all	84,434	373.6
	Controllers		789	2328	0 (0)	all	55,915	20.8

* System-level redundancy in addition to that already implemented in the component family of the representative system.

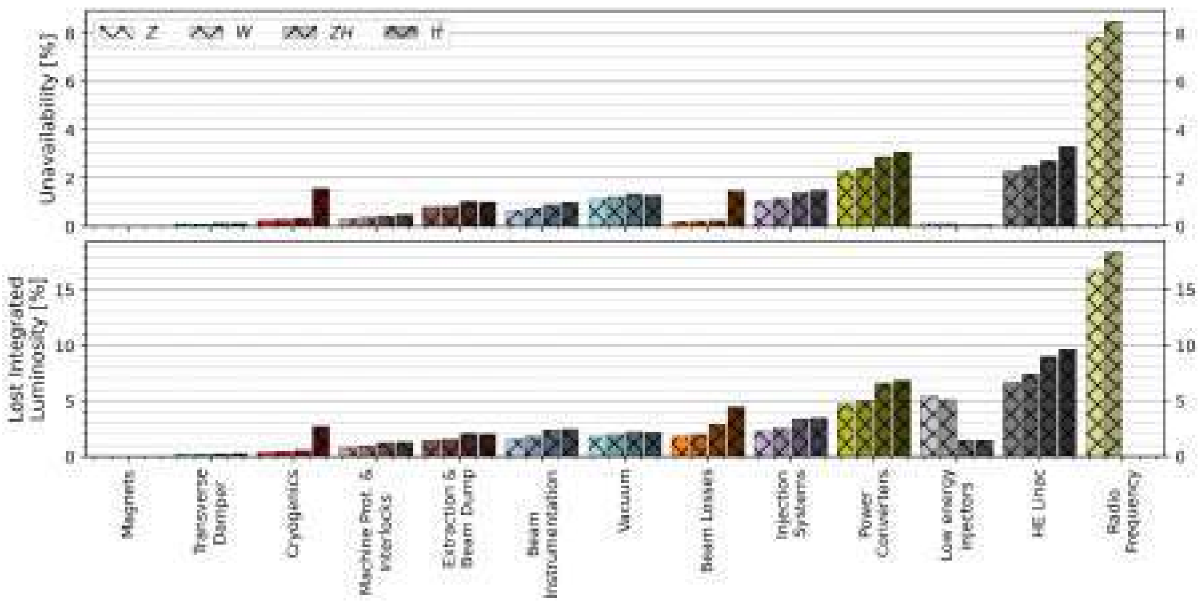


Fig. 5.14 Unavailability and lost luminosity contribution of each system in the booster. Systems are ordered according to Z mode lost luminosity contribution

5.3.2 Inherent resilience to shorter fault types

In the event of an outage in the booster and injector complex, stable beams can be maintained in the main collider rings for a lifetime of 10-15 minutes, depending on energy mode (see Table 2.2). If top-up injection can be restored at this time, normal physics can resume. This significantly reduces the FCC-ee's sensitivity to short-duration fault types in the booster and injector complex and leads to an inherent advantage for availability.

5.3.3 Simulation results

The breakdown of unavailability and lost luminosity contribution from each booster system is shown in Fig. 5.14. Contributions from the injector complex are also provided for illustration. For comparison with collider and technical infrastructure systems, see Fig. 2.22.

The RF is the largest contributor to unavailability and lost luminosity in Z and WW modes, largely because it does not benefit from redundancy as it does in the collider. Power converters suffer from the same challenges as identified for the collider in Sect. 2.4.1. Beam losses, although occurring at the same rate per metre of beam pipe as the collider, are much less significant for lost luminosity as their recovery time is relatively short.

5.3.4 R&D opportunities

Several R&D opportunities are identified to improve availability in the booster ring:

Radio frequency Presently, it is unclear whether redundancy could be implemented in the booster RF cavities as the transients due to ramping lead to additional complications. However, the beam current within the booster is significantly lower than in the collider, suggesting beam loading effects should be less problematic. Implementation of redundancy in this system could significantly benefit the achieved integrated luminosity.

Power converters Proposed solutions are treated in Sect. 2.4.4. Collaboration with the optics working group is required to consider how to preserve the beam if combinations of magnets fail. A system-level redundancy approach could make significant gains in this case, besides reducing the number of families for the corrector magnets.

Exploiting resilience to short faults Additional opportunities exist to exploit the booster's natural resilience to shorter fault types. A lengthy turnaround time may be avoided if a failed component can be brought back online before the beams in the main collider expire. To this end, there are two parallel approaches:

1. If the collider beam lifetime without top-up injection can be made longer, systems will have a better opportunity to recover before a beam abort is necessary. This requires intricate optimisation of the beam optics under various possible failure mechanisms; however, this could greatly alleviate the design task on the collider technical systems.
2. Measures to bring the recovery time of failed systems to below 10 minutes could be extremely powerful for the booster. For example, the automatic reset of recurring RF trips or the installation of redundant or back-up modules that can quickly be brought online to replace failed components.

5.4 Conclusion

The results presented in this section demonstrate the feasibility of the Future Circular Collider (FCC) design, outlining the operational strategies, technical requirements, and performance benchmarks necessary for its successful implementation. Through detailed analysis, the revised filling scheme, ramping strategy, and emittance evolution have been optimised to enhance collider efficiency while addressing challenges related to beam stability and machine protection. The study has also highlighted key advances in magnet technology, RF staging, vacuum control, and correction strategies to mitigate instabilities and improve overall reliability. Furthermore, availability assessments and R&D opportunities underscore the importance of system redundancy and resilience to minimise downtime and maximise integrated luminosity. Moving forward, continued refinements and targeted technological developments will be essential to ensuring the FCC meets its scientific and operational goals, paving the way for groundbreaking discoveries in high-energy physics.

Chapter 6

FCC-ee booster technical systems

6.1 Main magnets

The proposed booster magnet system meets the requirements of the booster FODO lattice V24 described in Sect. 4.1.3. The regular FODO lattice of the booster ring contains 2768 arc half-cells composed of a short straight section (SSS) and two dipoles. There are three lengths of arc half-cell depending on the composition of the short straight section (SSS): one quadrupole and either no sextupole, or a focusing sextupole, or a defocusing sextupole. The arc-half cells are organised into a periodic structure of 5 cells every 260.554 m, matching the collider. The positrons and electrons circulate in opposite directions in the booster so the magnet polarity is the same for both filling cycles.

In this version, all arc dipoles are identical. The dipoles in the dispersion suppressors are slightly longer and require different field levels but share a common cross-section with the arc dipoles. There are six main quadrupole circuits in the arcs, with strengths ranging from 24.9–26.6 $\mathrm{T\,m^{-1}}$. Since the strengths of the arc quadrupoles are similar, a single magnet design is proposed for all quadrupoles, with slight variations in powering. In the dispersion suppressors, strengths of up to 28.7 $\mathrm{T\,m^{-1}}$ are required. The current proposal is to use similar magnets, with additional magnetomotive force provided by trim circuits.

For the sextupoles, the dispersion in the defocusing sextupoles is half that of the focusing sextupoles. Consequently, the defocusing sextupoles require twice the integrated gradient. This has been achieved by using a common cross-section for both sextupoles while making the defocusing sextupoles twice as long. The sextupole strengths in the dispersion suppressor region are lower than those in the main arcs. The current proposal is to use the same magnets with a current bypass.

The requirements of the arc magnets are summarised in Table 6.1. A summary of the magnet cycles is given in Table 4.1. The relative field error dipole-to-dipole is required to be less than 1×10^{-3}. The relative harmonic field error is required to be better than 1×10^{-4} on a reference radius of 10 mm for all magnets. The following section describes the technical solutions and performance of the main magnets of the arcs: dipoles, quadrupoles, and sextupoles.

6.1.1 Dipoles

The cross section of the proposed booster dipole is shown in Fig. 6.1, and its key parameters are summarised in Table 6.2. The proposed dipole is an H topology with a laminated steel yoke and directly cooled aluminium busbars, the following paragraphs will discuss each of these key design aspects.

Table 6.1 Magnet requirements for the booster FODO lattice V24

	Dipole	Quadrupole*	Sextupole	
			Focus	Defocus
Total number in lattice...	6146	3346	576	560
... of which in arcs	5536	2728	528	528
Aperture [mm]	65	65	65	65
Length, arc [m]	11	1.3	0.7	1.4
Max strength†, arc at $t\bar{t}$ ext.	58.9 mT	26.6 $\mathrm{T\,m^{-1}}$	1147 $\mathrm{T\,m^{-2}}$	1219 $\mathrm{T\,m^{-2}}$
Min strength†, arc at 20 GeV in.	6.45 mT	2.7 $\mathrm{T\,m^{-1}}$	126 $\mathrm{T\,m^{-2}}$	134 $\mathrm{T\,m^{-2}}$

* The ratio of min:max quadrupole strength does not match the beam rigidity as there are multiple families.

† Sextupole strength given as B'', $B'' = 2S$.

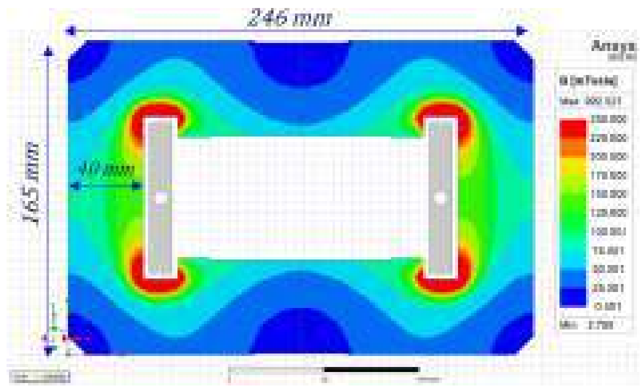


Fig. 6.1 Field map of the booster dipole at $t\bar{t}$ energy

Table 6.2 General parameters of the arc dipole magnets

Parameter	Unit	Value
Strength, B, 20–182.5 GeV	mT	6.5 - 58.9
Aperture (horizontal × vertical)	mm ^{2}	130 × 65
Magnetic length	m	11
Outer envelope	$\mathrm{mm^2}$	246 × 165
Peak current	A	3065
Magnet resistance	mΩ	0.70
Magnet inductance	µH	44
Peak voltage, magnet	V	2.2
Conductor (Aluminium)	$\mathrm{mm^2}$	12 × 79, ∅7
Turns		1
RMS current density, $t\bar{t}$	$\mathrm{A\,mm^{-2}}$	1.4
Magnet active mass	kg	2452
Busbar active mass (Al)	kg	54
Yoke active mass	kg	2398

Three topologies were initially considered: C, O, and H. A C topology is attractive from an integration perspective as it gives easy access to vacuum components. However, early studies showed that a C topology was not able to effectively shield the earth's magnetic field and led to relative field errors of 3×10^{-4} at injection energy (6.5 mT, 20 GeV) and therefore an O or H topology is necessary. It should be noted that the beam may be impacted by the Earth's field in areas not shielded by the magnets. An H topology is advantageous over an O topology as the poles can be used to optimise the field quality across the full cycle. The H topology was further optimised for field

Fig. 6.2 The short prototype booster dipole built and tested to demonstrate the feasibility of low field levels. In this prototype, the busbars are substituted with a coil for compatibility with test facilities

quality across the full range of operations. This optimisation led to a back leg that is wider than strictly necessary for magnetic return, 40 mm with a peak field around 150 mT. A lower back leg peak field reduces the remanent magnetisation of the steel, yielding a magnetic performance benefit. Additionally, the extra material removes the need for dedicated synchrotron radiation shielding and, therefore, represents a holistic design optimum. The yoke is laminated to reduce the eddy current during the ramp. The material chosen for the prototype is M270-50A, a 0.5 mm thick electrical steel with low coercivity that is readily available due to its prevalence in industrial applications. The lamination thickness is conservative, 1/15 of the skin depth, mitigating problems from yoke eddy currents.

Busbars have been used instead of coils for two key reasons: they allow end-to-end magnet interconnection, reducing transmission losses, and they simplify magnet construction. Aluminium is preferred over copper as it is cheaper for a given resistance per unit length. This choice is facilitated by the low field requirement, the magnet envelope is still reasonable even with the larger busbar section. The ground insulation will be an air gap set by 3 mm thick ceramic spacers. This solution is radiation hard and withstands voltages well in excess of the required 1 kV to ground. The root mean squared (RMS) current density is low, 1.4 $\mathrm{A\,mm^{-2}}$ for the $t\bar{t}$ cycle. This current density has been shown to optimise the combined total lifetime cost of the magnets and technical infrastructure. While a lower current density would allow an air-cooled solution, it is preferable to dissipate heat from the tunnel using water rather than air. Therefore, the magnets will be water-cooled.

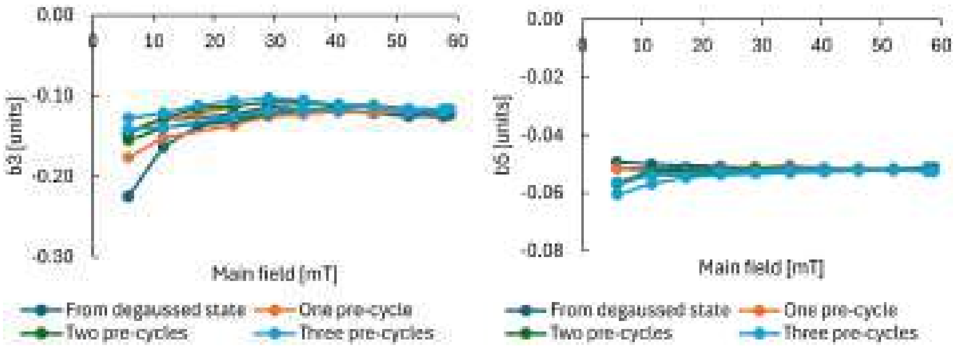
Other water-cooled systems in the tunnel are made of copper. To avoid the risk of galvanic corrosion or the need for multiple cooling circuits, the inner surface of the cooling tubes will be made of either stainless steel or copper. The baseline proposal is to use a mechanical assembly of a tube and a busbar; however, co-extrusion and electroplating are also being considered. This will be studied in detail during the next phase.

Test of short prototype dipole magnet The main field of the booster dipole at injection is lower than previous machines at CERN, less than half of both the LEP (22 mT) and the SPS as LEP injector (15.7 mT). Additionally, hysteresis effects are complex to model as they depend on material characteristics and previous magnetic states. Therefore, a 0.5 m long prototype booster magnet has been built to demonstrate the feasibility of the low field levels with respect to the remanent effect in the iron yoke. The short prototype produced is shown in Fig. 6.2.

The allowed field harmonics measured during magnetic cycles from 6.5–58.9 mT are presented in Fig. 6.3. The total field harmonics are below 1×10^{-4} relative field error up to a radius of 17 mm. The results show that the magnet stabilises quickly after only a few pre-cycles, with only minor, non-systematic field distortions observed throughout the cycle.

For practical reasons, testing has so far been conducted in a quasi-static manner, meaning it does not account for eddy fields from either the copper vacuum chamber or the magnet itself. Since the vacuum pipe is circular, the eddy fields have been calculated using analytical formulae and cross-checked with numerical modelling, showing good agreement. The eddy currents in the vacuum tube will generate a sextupole component of 15 $\mathrm{mT/m^2}$, corresponding to 0.15% of the total sextupole strength of the machine at injection. Due to the relatively long ramp times, the modelled eddy field harmonics from the magnet itself are 0.1×10^{-4} relative to the main field at injection.

The transfer function of the short prototype booster dipole is shown in Fig. 6.4. The remanent magnetisation of the yoke contributes around 60 µT, or 1%, of the main field at injection. From validated models, it can be seen that the remanent magnetisation is locally linear with material coercivity. It is therefore readily concluded that the coercivity of the yoke must be controlled to at least 10% between magnets to be within the currently allowed dipole-to-dipole relative field error of 1×10^{-3}. This consistency can be readily achieved by the use of a



(a) Sextupolar component. (b) Decapolar component.

Fig. 6.3 2D field harmonics in the short prototype booster dipole at the $t\bar{t}$ field levels. Values quoted at R = 10 mm in units of 1×10^{-4} [342]

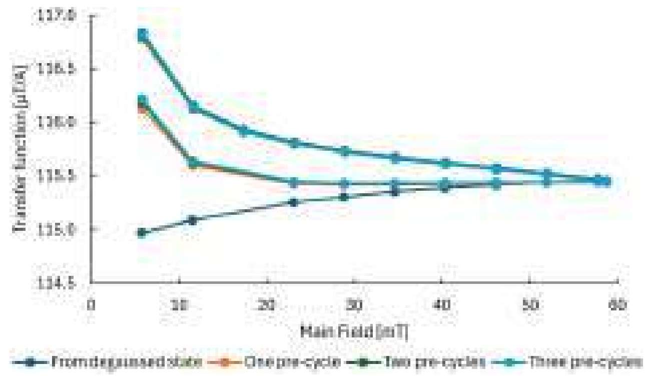


Fig. 6.4 The centred transfer function of the short prototype booster dipole at the $t\bar{t}$ field levels [342]

simple control on the steel supply[6] and, potentially, shuffling. It seems likely that a magnetic length correction with end shims will be needed. However, this is not a foregone conclusion and remains to be studied in detail. The transfer function is inversely proportional to the aperture, so a tolerance of 1×10^{-3} in the main field implies a 65 µm aperture tolerance within range for a stamped and stacked yoke. Material controls, shuffling, and length correction were successfully implemented with the SPS dipoles, which have a similar total weight of steel as the booster dipoles, though they are less numerous.

6.1.2 Quadrupoles

The parameters of the proposed quadrupole magnet are summarised in Table 6.3. The field map for the quadrupole magnet at $t\bar{t}$ energy is given in Fig. 6.5. To minimise the length of the short straight sections, thereby increasing the dipole filling factor and reducing the synchrotron radiation losses, the quadrupole has been designed with a relatively high gradient and a pole tip field around 0.9 T. As the requirements are more typical, the quadrupole design is correspondingly more conventional than that of the dipole. The coils will be simple racetrack-shaped windings made from hollow conductors, with copper used for compactness. The yoke will be laminated, as the booster operates in a cycled mode. The vacuum chamber diameter is constrained by impedance requirements, resulting in an aperture that is large relative to the good field region. Consequently, a relative harmonic distortion below 1×10^{-4} is achievable.

The cross section of the quadrupole has been optimised to minimise the total lifetime cost of both the magnet itself and the technical infrastructure. This optimisation began with a parametric cross-section, which was then refined in two stages. First, the geometry inboard of the coil was adjusted to maximise the gradient delivered per ampere-turn. Next, a global optimisation was performed to determine the number of turns, current density, and back leg thickness (see Sect. 3.8.1). These three parameters—number of turns, current density, and back leg thickness—are key trade-offs between capital expenditure (CapEx), operational expenditure (OpEx), and infrastructure requirements and costs.

To facilitate such a complex optimisation, a parametric code was used to generate design space maps, allowing for rapid interpolation during function calls. These maps plotted stored magnetic energy, magnetic efficiency, and

[6]The value of 10% is an upper bound of the variation seen even between completely different suppliers for a given electrical steel grade.

Table 6.3 General parameters for the quadrupole magnet

Parameter	Unit	Value
Strength, main arc at $t\bar{t}$ ext.	$\mathrm{T\,m^{-1}}$	26.6
Ultimate strength, disp. sup. at $t\bar{t}$ ext.	$\mathrm{T\,m^{-1}}$	28.7
Aperture diameter	mm	65
Length	m	1.3
Outer envelope	mm	∅584
Current, arc at $t\bar{t}$ ext.	A	939
Additional MMF for disp. sup. at $t\bar{t}$ ext.	A	1350
Magnet resistance	mΩ	11.4
Magnet inductance	mH	13.3
Peak voltage magnet	V	15.5
Conductor (copper)	$\mathrm{mm^2}$	14.3 × 18.25, ∅2.8
Turns		13
RMS current density, main arc at $t\bar{t}$	$\mathrm{A\,mm^{-2}}$	1.5
Temperature rise at 6 bar	°C	11.2
Magnet active mass	kg	2070
Coil active mass	kg	368
Yoke active mass	kg	1702
Coil overhang	mm	140

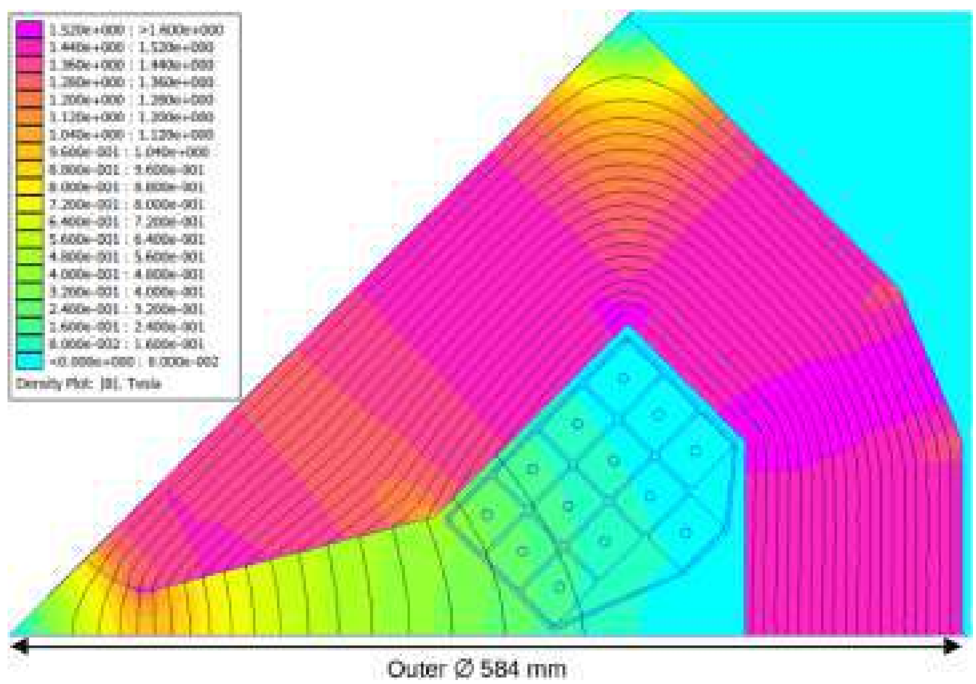


Fig. 6.5 Field map of the booster quadrupole magnet at 26.6 $\mathrm{T\,m^{-1}}$, main arc at $t\bar{t}$ extraction

yoke cross-section as functions of current density and pole width. A design could then be specified based on three interpolated variables and the number of turns. The required ampere-turns were determined from efficiency and bulk current density, while the cooling hole diameter was solved using Newton-Raphson for a given temperature rise and pressure. The resistance was calculated based on the cooling hole diameter and filling factor, and the inductance was derived from magnetic energy and the number of turns. Finally, the mass was determined from the yoke cross-section and the coil. The recommended design was then manually reviewed to finalise the cross-section.

The magnet's current density is relatively low, at 1.5 $\mathrm{A\,mm^{-2}}$ RMS in the main arcs during the $t\bar{t}$ cycle, demonstrating that despite the fixed magnet lifetime, investing in larger coils remains beneficial to reduce power consumption and electrical infrastructure requirements.

Table 6.4 General parameters for the sextupole magnet

Parameter	Unit	Sextupole	
		Defocus	Focus
Strength, B''	$\mathrm{T\,m^{-2}}$	1219	1147
Aperture diameter	mm	65	
Length	m	1.4	0.7
Outer envelope	mm	∅305	
Peak current	A	595	556
Magnet resistance	mΩ	51	27
Magnet inductance	mH	9.3	4.7
Peak voltage magnet	V	32	16
Conductor (copper)	$\mathrm{mm^2}$	8.4×8.4, ∅2.5	
Turns		10	
RMS current density at $t\bar{t}$	$\mathrm{A\,mm^{-2}}$	3.7	3.5
Temperature rise (6 bar)	°C	14	4.6
Magnet active mass	kg	614	312
Coil active mass	kg	105	57
Yoke active mass	kg	509	255
Coil overhang	mm	50	

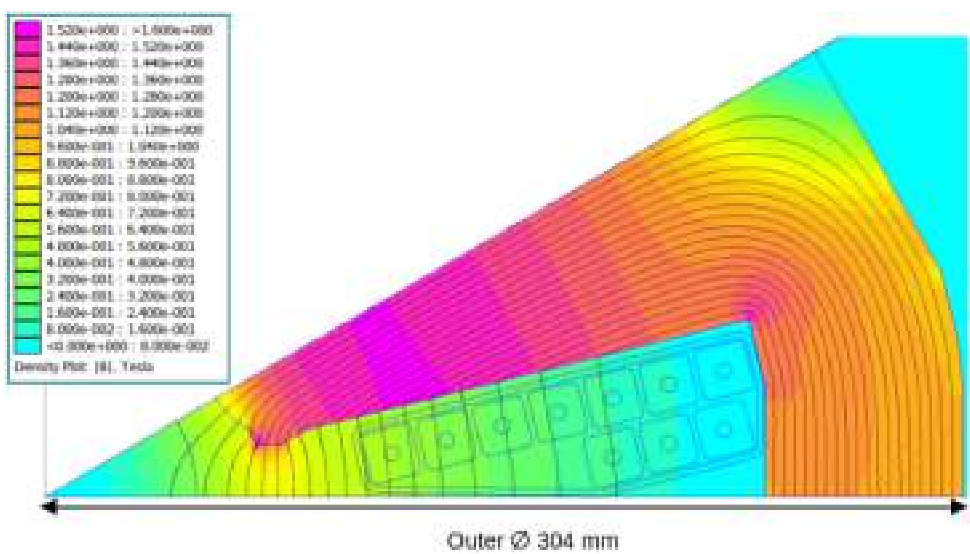


Fig. 6.6 Field map of the booster sextupole magnet at $t\bar{t}$ energy, $B'' = 1219\ \mathrm{T\,m^{-2}}$

There are 24 quadrupoles in the dispersion region that require ultimate strength. At this field level, the yoke begins to saturate, causing efficiency to drop from 96% at nominal to 93% at ultimate. A bespoke solution for these quadrupoles may be proposed at a later stage.

6.1.3 Sextupoles

The parameters of the proposed sextupole magnet are summarised in Table 6.4. The field map for the sextupole magnet at $t\bar{t}$ energy is given in Fig. 6.6. The sextupole is again relatively strong with a pole tip field of 0.7 T, and again a conventional design is proposed, with material and design choices similar to those for the quadrupole. The total harmonic distortion is below 1×10^{-4} relative to the main field.

6.1.4 Summary

In conclusion, the headline magnet requirements of v24 FODO optics are technically feasible including low dipole field and lens strengths. For reference, the power consumption of the proposed magnets are summarised in Ta-

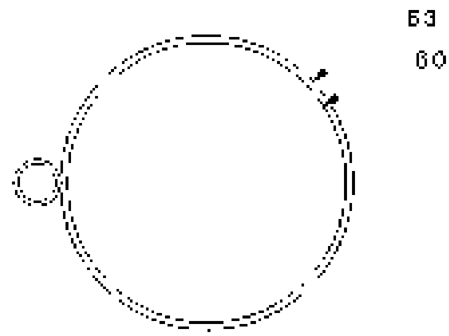


Fig. 6.7 Cross section of the FCC-ee booster vacuum chamber

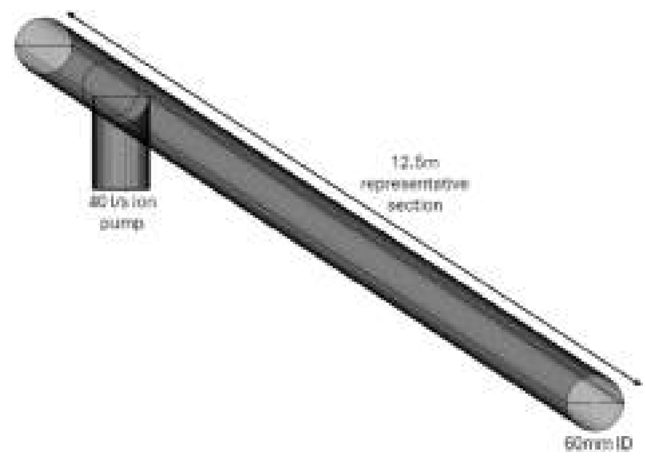


Fig. 6.8 Representative section of the vacuum chamber in the FCC-ee booster, modelled over 12.5 m

ble 8.15. There is a large design space of feasible magnets, giving an opportunity for holistic design and a cost optimised solution. Moving into the next phase the industrialisation, design for manufacture and assembly, and detailed integration with the other technical systems will be performed.

6.2 Booster vacuum system

The booster chamber design is based on a round seamless tube in OFE copper. The inner diameter is 60 mm and the thickness is 1.5 mm, see Fig. 6.7. A copper tube (size yet to be determined) is spot welded on it for water cooling. No lump photon absorber is planned. There is no need for a bakeout thermal cycle, and therefore, non-shielded bellows are used to compensate for mechanical and alignment tolerances. The chamber is neither coated nor baked.

6.2.1 Input parameters

To determine the pressure levels in the FCC-ee booster, the end-of-2024 state of the design has been used as a baseline, as summarised below: The vacuum chamber results in 26.6 l.m/s specific conductance (a value similar to the two storage rings).

It is assumed that one pump is placed every 12.5 m around the ring. Consequently, a 12.5 m section with periodic boundary corrections has been modelled (see Fig. 6.8). The section includes a single ion pump, which is simulated to operate at a pumping speed of 40 l/s, accounting for the conductance limitation of the orifice, despite its rated speed of 60 l/s.

In the following discussion, a distinction is made between static (background) gas, which is always present in the system, and dynamic (time-dependent) gas, which arises during operation. Since their calculation methods differ, they are addressed in separate sections. In both cases, the gas levels are estimated after 100 hours of conditioning.

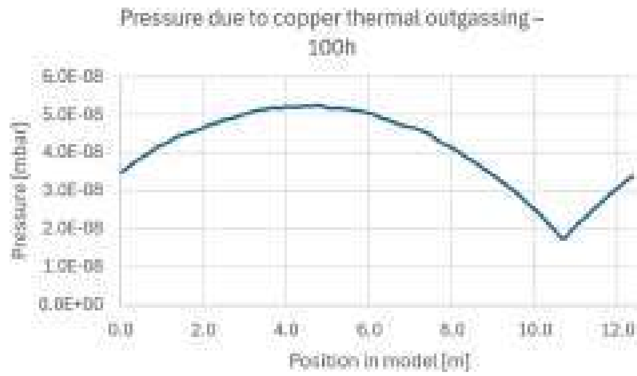


Fig. 6.9 Static (background) pressure after 100 h of conditioning in a 12.5 m long representative section

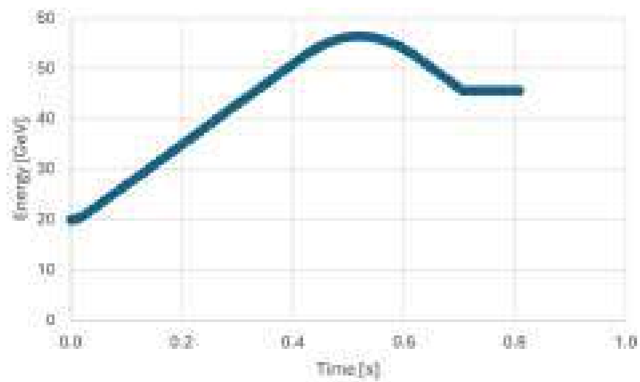


Fig. 6.10 Energy ramp-up from 20 to 45.6 GeV with an overshoot

6.2.2 Static pressure

For unbaked metals, the dominant gas to desorb is water vapour. Empirical tests show [343] that the outgassing rate is inversely proportional to the pumping time and can be estimated as:

$$Q_{H_2O} \approx \frac{3 \times 10^{-9}}{t} \quad (\text{mbar.l/s/cm}^2) \tag{6.1}$$

which corresponds to a specific outgassing rate of 3×10^{-11} mbar.l/s/cm^2 after 100 hours.

A MolFlow simulation was performed on the model of the representative section for this outgassing from the walls and the 40 l/s pumping speed on the pumping port.

The resulting pressure profile, in Fig. 6.9, shows an average pressure in the 3×10^{-8} mbar range, with the lowest pressure at the pump location, as expected.

6.2.3 Dynamic vacuum

High-energy photons are created by synchrotron radiation (SR) when the booster is operating. Estimating the dynamic vacuum requires calculating the amount of SR, calculating the resultant outgassing through photon-stimulated desorption (PSD), and then performing a vacuum simulation. As the booster is a cyclic machine, all quantities are time-dependent.

The SR photon flux scales linearly with the beam energy and current:

$$\text{Flux [photons/sec]} = 8.08 \times 10^{17} \times E_{\text{beam}}[\text{GeV}] \times I_{\text{beam}}[\text{mA}] \tag{6.2}$$

The booster's energy ramp up is depicted in Fig. 6.10 and the operation parameters in the Z mode are as follows:

- 1120 bunches per cycle.
- 2.5×10^{10} electrons per bunch.
- Revolution frequency: 3.3 kHz.
- Current: 14.8 mA.
- Operation cycle:

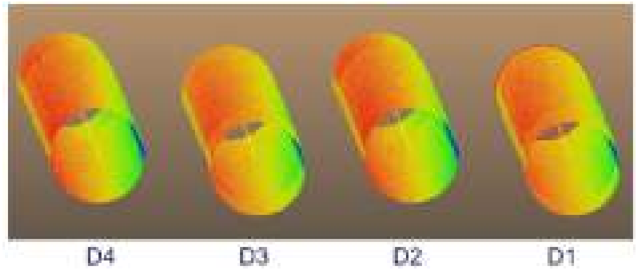


Fig. 6.11 SynRad model representing the four booster dipoles creating SR, in a periodic setup

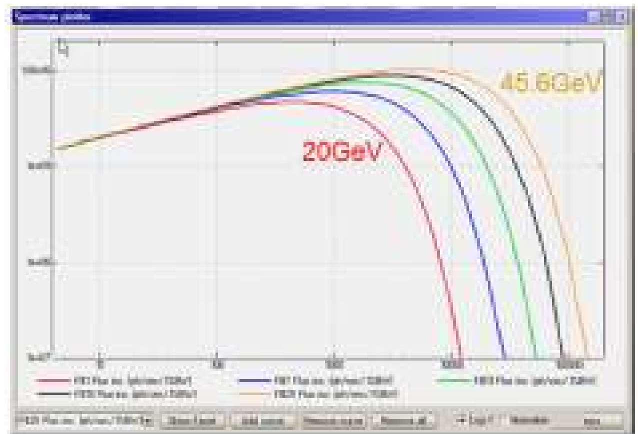


Fig. 6.12 Part of SR spectrum above 4 eV for beam energies at 20, 26, 32, 38 and 45.6 GeV

- 0-2.8 s: Accumulation (linear increase from 0 to 14.8 mA at 20 GeV).
- 2.8-3.6 s: Ramp-up (energy increase from 20 GeV to 45.6 GeV).
- 3.6-3.8 s: Ramp-down (cycling magnets, no beam).

6.2.4 SynRad simulations

To estimate the SR, the formula can be made more precise by applying the so-called SR_factor, which specifies what portion of the SR spectrum has an energy over 4 eV. The reason is that photons below that energy (equivalent to the work function for photo-electron generation on most metal alloys) are not powerful enough to desorb molecules from the surface.

The Monte Carlo simulation code SynRad was used to model and simulate four magnets in a periodic setup (D1-D2-D3-D4, then D1 again, see Fig. 6.11). Each magnet is 11 m long, and the magnetic field scales linearly with the energy, from 6.5 mT at 20 GeV.

SynRad does not support time-dependent beam parameters, however, it is possible to obtain the average SR factor by simulating 26 distinct energies equally spaced from 20.6 GeV to 45.6 GeV and taking the average (see Fig. 6.12).

Averaging the flux for the 26 energies at 14.83 mA, SynRad estimates the flux to be 2.24×10^{17} photons/s. Taking only the average SR factor of 88% from SynRad, and substituting in (6.2):

$$\text{Flux} = 8.08 \times 10^{17} \times 32.8 \times 14.83 \times 0.88 \times \frac{44}{64{,}486} = 2.36 \times 10^{17}\text{photons/s} \tag{6.3}$$

where 32.8 GeV is the average energy during the ramp, and 64,486 m is the dipoles' magnetic length. The SynRad and the theoretical results are thus very close.

The results of the 44 m length modelled in SynRad (for calculating the SR) to the 12.5 m length in MolFlow (for calculating the vacuum). The booster comprises more than just dipoles. It is estimated that the total radiation from the dipoles is distributed over a 90 km arc length:

$$\text{Flux [12.5 m]} = 8.08 \times 10^{17} \times E \times I \times 0.88 \times \frac{12.5\text{ m}}{90\text{ km}} \tag{6.4}$$

The following formula is used to convert the flux to outgassing:

$$Q[\text{molecules/sec}] = \text{Flux} * \eta \tag{6.5}$$

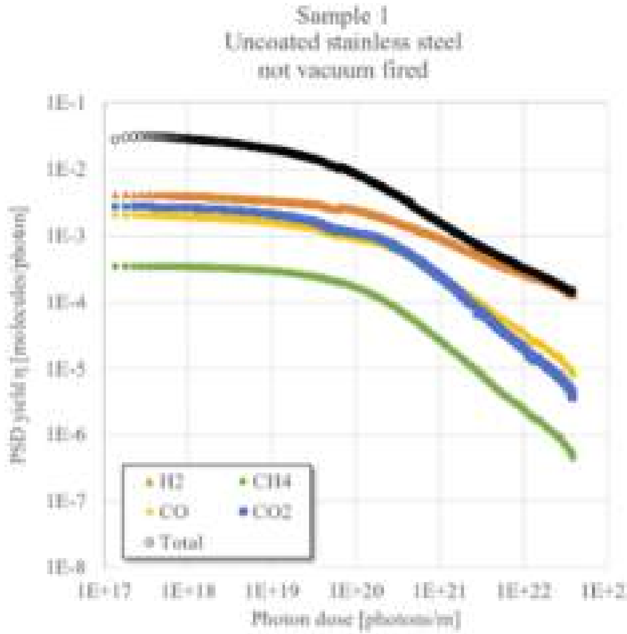


Fig. 6.13 Photon stimulated desorption yield of uncoated stainless steel

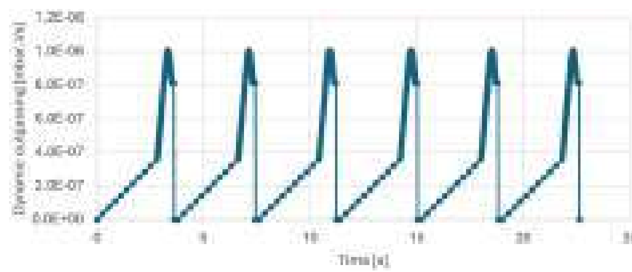


Fig. 6.14 Dynamic outgassing caused by PSD, over 6 booster cycles on a 12.5 m modelled region

where η, the molecular yield, describes how many photons on average are desorbed by an absorbed SR photon. This depends on the material and decreases over time as the surface is conditioned. The duration of this conditioning is estimated to be 100 h, based on data from an experiment performed at KEK [344] where 1.2 m long uncoated stainless steel vacuum chambers were irradiated with SR.

As shown in Fig. 6.13, the dominant gas species are typically H_2, CO, CO_2, CH_4, ordered by fraction (plus H_2O, if unbaked, which can initially be the predominant gas species–but the sample in the figure was baked). In this case, CO was considered because it has an atomic number much higher than that of hydrogen, and therefore its effect in terms of beam bremsstrahlung (BS) is approximately 56 times bigger than for H_2. The dependence for BS given by $Z_{\text{eff}}(Z_{\text{eff}}+1)$, where Z_{eff} is the weighted effective atomic number for C and O.

Calculating with an average cycle current of 8 mA, 100 h of operation corresponds to a photon density of 1×10^{21} photons/m, resulting in a CO yield of 3×10^{-4} mol/photon. As a result, the outgassing is:

$$Q = 8.08\times10^{17}\times E\times I\times0.88\times\frac{12.5}{90{,}000}\times k_BT\times10 \tag{6.6}$$

where E is the energy in GeV, I is the beam current in mA, T the temperature in K and the k_BT term originates from the ideal gas equation, allowing conversion from molecules/s to Pa· m^3/s, and the factor of 10 is the conversion from Pa· m^3/s to mbar· l/s. A temperature of 300 K was assumed.

Dynamic vacuum simulations The result of the equation (visualised in Fig. 6.14) was imported into MolFlow as a time-dependent outgassing parameter and applied it to the side wall of the modelled region, as the location of primary incidence of SR.

As the residence time of molecules in the booster is not negligible, the dynamic pressure builds up after approximately 3 cycles when starting the booster from a static state, as can be seen in Fig. 6.15.

The average pressure, after reaching a periodic state, cycles between 1.7×10^{-8} mbar and 2.8×10^{-8} mbar. The peak pressure was chosen to have a conservative estimate in the following stages.

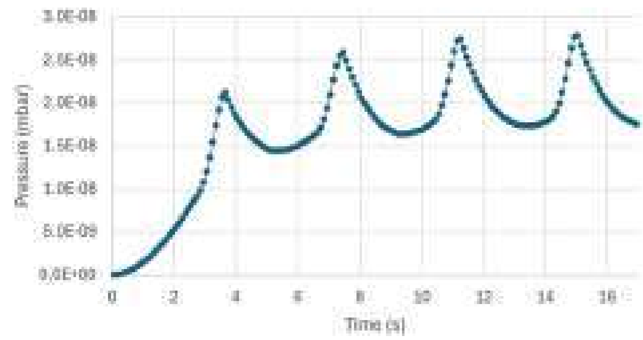


Fig. 6.15 Dynamic pressure, averaged over the 12.5 m modelled region, after starting the booster

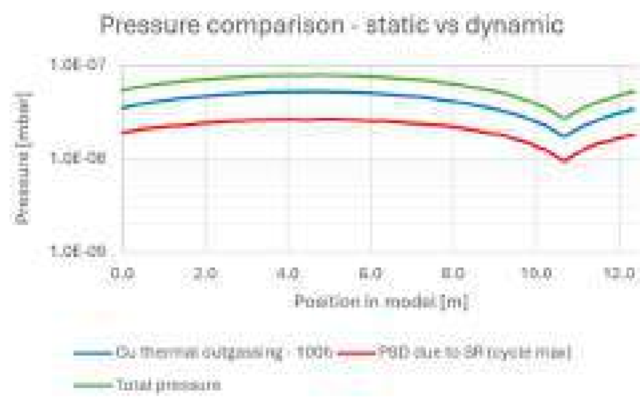


Fig. 6.16 Comparison of static and peak dynamic pressures after 100 h of conditioning

6.2.5 Comparison and conclusion

The pressures from the two sources, and their sum are plotted in Fig. 6.16. While the static pressure, due to thermal outgassing, is higher after 100 h, it also conditions faster:

- Thermal outgassing decreases with t^{-1} [343]
- Photon stimulated desorption of stainless-steel decreases with $t^{-0.6}$ [344]

After 100 h, the total pressure at the peak of a booster cycle is in the order of 4×10^{-8} mbar. The latest beam-gas calculations estimate that the booster pressure needs to be below 30 nTorr [345], which is the expected level.

It would be preferable to have an in-situ bakeout system installed, and consequently NEG-coating of the vacuum chambers, as this would reduce the number of external pumps and their cabling by a factor of about 5. Additionally, the NEG-coated solution would guarantee very fast reconditioning of any vacuum sector needing venting during operation.

6.3 Radio frequency system layout, configurations, and parameters

6.3.1 Introduction

The high-energy booster SRF system accelerates the electron and positron bunches before injection into the two collider rings. A booster transverse feedback system is required to cure coupled-bunch transverse instabilities, as specified in Sect. 4.2.1 as well as damping injection oscillations. Both RF systems will be installed in point PL.

6.3.2 Parameter choices for the SRF system

The present baseline RF system requires flexibility for switching between Z, WW, and ZH operating points. Then it needs to be upgraded for the highest energy $t\bar{t}$ operating point. The baseline solution assumes the same 6-cell 800 MHz elliptical cavities as in the collider. The main RF-related global parameters are summarised in Table 6.5 and Table 6.6. Note that the indicated maximum synchrotron radiation power includes the energy overshoot for the Z operating point without wigglers. To avoid hardware modification in the first stage, a common quality factor that minimises RF power requirements needs to be chosen. The RPO scheme must be deployed at the

Table 6.5 RF-related parameters for FCC-ee high-energy booster

Operating point		Z	WW	ZH	$t\bar{t}$
Maximum beam current*	[mA]	16.2	6.2	2.0	0.4
Extraction Energy loss / turn	[MeV]	36.1	342	1730	9270
Injection RF voltage	[MV]	50.1			
Extraction RF voltage	[MV]	57.2	402	1960	10,200
Maximum synchrotron radiation power	[MW]	1.07	2.13	3.49	3.99

*Including 80% injection efficiency in the FCC-ee collider.

Table 6.6 Main RF parameters of the FCC booster

	Z	W	ZH	$t\bar{t}$
RPO at extraction	yes	yes	no	no
RF frequency [MHz]	801.58			
Operating temperature [K]	2			
Number of cells per cavity	6			
Quality factor Q_0	3×10^{10}			
Cavity voltage at extraction [MV]	5.6	13.5	17.5	22.8
E_{acc} [MV/m]	4.9	12.0	15.6	20.3
Max. RF power per cavity [kW]	42			8.9 / 12.7
Coupling factor Q_L	1×10^7			9.2×10^7 / 2.7×10^7
Number of cryomodules	28			112
Number of cavities	112			448

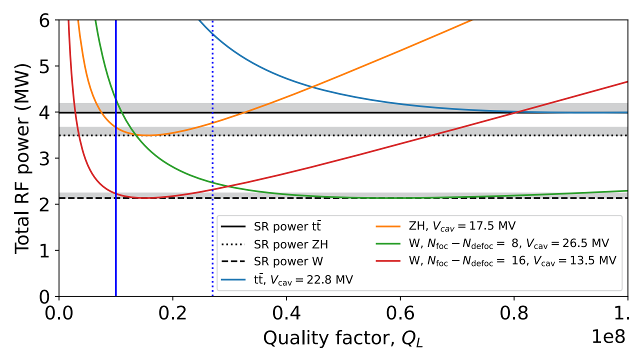


Fig. 6.17 RF power requirements as a function of the cavity quality factor. Vertical lines indicate the chosen quality factors for the first (solid) and second (dotted) stages of HEB SRF systems

injection energy. At higher energies, it remains active for the Z and WW operating points, while the transition to the normal phase operation mode has to be done for the ZH and $t\bar{t}$ ramps to achieve the maximum total RF voltage. It is assumed that the first 112 cavities share a single RF power source per four cavities. Therefore, the difference between the number of focusing and defocusing cavities, $N_{\mathrm{foc}} - N_{\mathrm{defoc}}$, can be changed in steps of eight cavities. Several scenarios for the WW operating points and corresponding RF power requirements were analysed (Fig. 6.17). Choosing $N_{\mathrm{foc}} - N_{\mathrm{defoc}} = 16$ and $Q_L = 10^7$ (solid blue vertical line) seems to be a good compromise that leads to a small RF power overshoot for both WW and ZH operating points and keeps the cavity bandwidth (half-height full-width) $\Delta f = f_{\mathrm{RF}}/Q_L \approx 80$ Hz. Switching to the $t\bar{t}$ operating point, Q_L needs to be changed to reduce RF power requirement, which can be done by adjusting waveguide length as described in Sect. 3.4.10. The optimal $Q_L = 9.2 \times 10^7$ results in an extremely small $\Delta f \approx 9$ Hz which might be challenging to control in an accelerator environment. Therefore, the $Q_L = 2.7 \times 10^7$ ($\Delta f = 30$ Hz) is chosen with a drawback of 43% more RF power than SR power at 182.5 GeV. The range $Q_L = 4.2 \times 10^6$–2.7×10^7 assumed to be covered by the common 800 MHz FPC design for collider and booster.

RF power requirements at injection energy The RF power requirements during the injection process depend on the LLRF system details and the beam loading compensation scheme in use. Extremely slow SR damping rate and

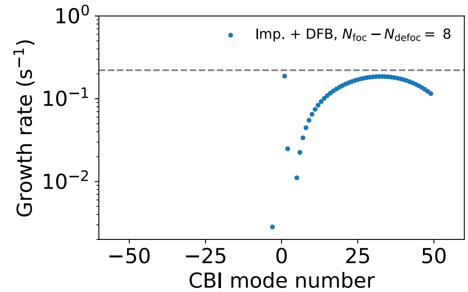


Fig. 6.18 Growth rates of longitudinal coupled-bunch instabilities driven by the fundamental cavity mode for the Z operating point

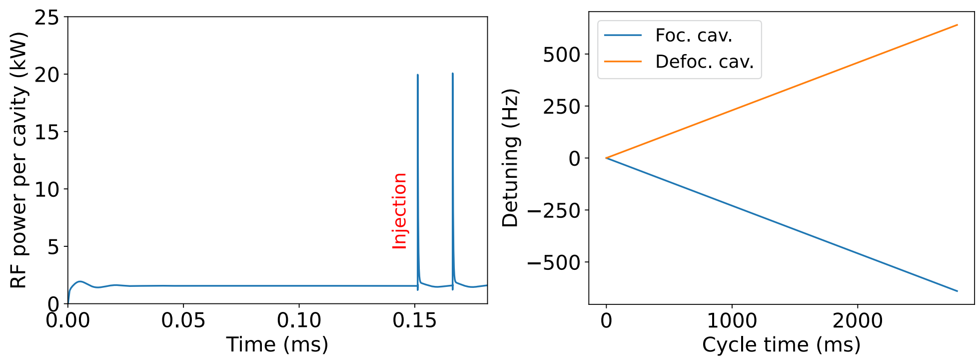


Fig. 6.19 Left: evolution of RF power before and after injection of the first four bunches at the Z operating point with parameters: $N_{\text{foc}} - N_{\text{defoc}} = 8$, the feedback gain is 20% of the optimal value. Right: evolution of cavity detuning at 20 GeV for Z operating point

very high impedance of the fundamental mode require a direct RF feedback system to suppress the longitudinal coupled-bunch instability. The expected growth rate for the Z operating point at the end of the filling at the injection energy is shown in Fig. 6.18. The stability can be improved by enhancement of the SR damping rate using a wiggler as described in Sect. 5.1.2. The dynamic model, similar to the one of the collider (Sect. 3.4), was applied to evaluate RF power transients during injection (Fig. 6.19, left). The peak RF power increases significantly even after injection of the first four bunches due to the fast and strong reaction of the direct RF feedback, so its gain must be reduced. This can be acceptable since the instability growth rates shown in Fig. 6.18 are computed for the maximum beam current. The RF power can be kept acceptable at the 50 kW limit if cavities are gradually detuned as the beam current increases (Fig. 6.19, right). At any moment the filling schemes should be maintained as uniform as possible to reduce modulations of beam and RF cavity parameters.

The development of a frequency tuning system able to operate in a pulsed regime with a resolution at the Hz level will be mandatory. It can be based on the elastic axial deformation of the cells by an electromechanical system equipped with a stepping motor and a piezo-electric actuator. A new type of tuning technology can also be considered, for example, a non-mechanical tuner using ferroelectric materials [346, 347].

6.3.3 Longitudinal coupled-bunch instabilities due to RF cavity HOMs

The low beam injection energy, combined with long longitudinal and transverse damping times, reduces the beam stability limit at the booster injection phase. The simultaneous installation of all 112 cavities brings the total beam impedance close to the stability threshold. To mitigate this, a transverse feedback system and wigglers can help improve stability.

From a cavity design perspective, modifying one of the end cells can improve the damping of the mode with the highest longitudinal impedance. Additionally, frequency spread in HOMs, caused by manufacturing imperfections, leads to resonance at different frequencies, which helps distribute and reduce peak impedance. A perturbation analysis, following the approach in Ref. [348], was conducted on the 6-cell cavity to assess its effect on the total longitudinal impedance of the cavity chain.

Figure 6.20(a) shows the longitudinal impedance of the lower-order modes within the fundamental mode (FM) passband for all 112 cavities, where the cavity geometries have been perturbed, and the total longitudinal impedance has been calculated accounting for these perturbations. Since these five modes lie within or below the FM passband, they couple primarily to the power coupler rather than the HOM couplers. Their coupling to the fundamental power coupler (FPC) depends on the target Q_L of the FM. However, for two different Q_L values, the frequency spread of the eigenmodes ensures that the longitudinal impedance peak remains below the Z-booster stability threshold. For the HOM with the highest longitudinal impedance, an alternative end-cell design (V2) was investigated as a potential improvement over the current design (V1) to reduce mode trapping. Additionally,

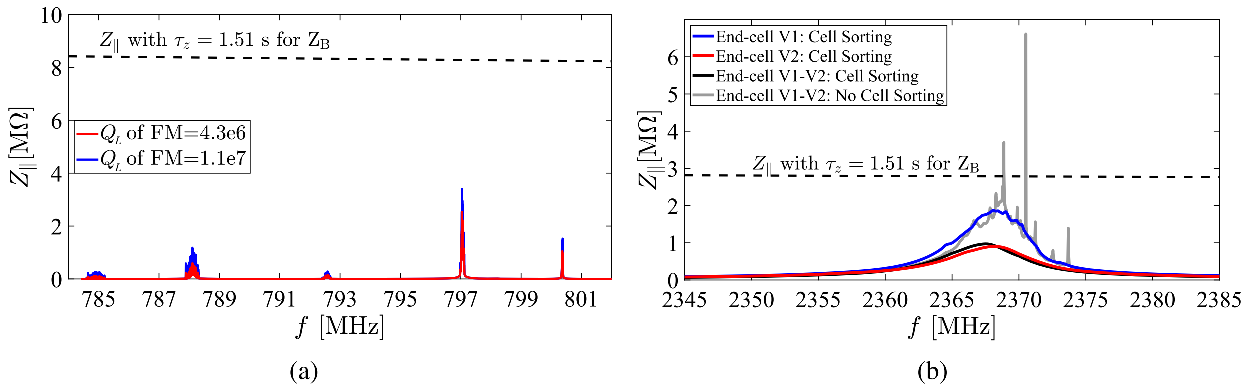


Fig. 6.20 (a) Longitudinal beam coupling impedance at the FM passband for 112 cavities under geometrical perturbations, compared with the beam stability limit determined by synchrotron radiation. The impedance is calculated by considering the average (R/Q) of the modes and the Q_L of the modes through their coupling with the FPC. (b) Longitudinal impedance for the 2.368 GHz mode, corresponding to the HOM with the highest longitudinal impedance. The impedance for 112 cavities, with no HOM coupler and damping occurring only through the open boundary condition, is calculated under geometrical uncertainties and compared to the stability limit (including a wiggler). Asymmetric end-cells and cell sorting during cavity assembly can reduce the impedance by a small margin below the stability limit

implementing cell sorting during assembly, as described in Ref. [348], can help prevent HOMs from being trapped at 2.37 GHz, as shown in Fig. 6.20(b). The combined effects of the transverse feedback system, increased beam energy loss from wigglers, the asymmetric end-cell design and frequency spread due to manufacturing imperfections should help keep the system below the stability limit, although with only a small safety margin.

6.4 Beam intercepting devices (halo collimators, beam dump)

As for any large accelerator, beam intercepting devices will be needed in the booster. At this stage the studies are not mature enough to define the actual requirements; however, it is estimated that some collimators will be needed, as well as extraction and injection protection devices, which will need to be able to withstand partial or full impacts of the high energy beams operated in the booster. Even though the total energy potentially deposited by the booster beams will be lower than that in the collider the materials used in the beam intercepting devices will also be submitted to significant loads. In addition, the other requirements (e.g., UHV compatibility, low impedance) will also make the design of these devices challenging. Another important device required by the booster is a beam dump. As described in Sect. 1.8.1, the collider dumps will be designed also to absorb the beams extracted from the booster. Additional requirements of beam intercepting devices, not foreseen at this stage, may be identified during the functional studies of the booster.

6.5 Beam transfer systems

6.5.1 Septa

Injection As discussed in Sect. 4.4, the beam is transferred from the injector complex and injected into the booster on either side of the PA experiment straight section. The hardware requirements for the present injection concept are listed in Table 4.2. The operation mode of each system will see injection at up to 100 Hz for up to ∼30 s, followed by ∼30 s without beam.

For injection into the booster, several septa topologies have been studied, and a Lambertson septum design has also been selected for the present concept [177]. To keep the apparent septum thickness to a minimum, the coil is located outside vacuum, but the second pole, including the septum, the magnet gap and the orbiting beam area are all under vacuum, see Fig. 6.21.

Extraction The septa used for extraction towards the collider will only extract one energy for each operation mode, and the list of requirements from the extraction design is summarised in Table 4.3. The leak field of the septum is less critical than for the collider injection septa since they only have to be powered at extraction and are not required to track the beam energy like the booster dump septa. This opens the possibility of using a pulsed device, which is less challenging with respect to thermal dissipation. Another option that was explored to achieve a more

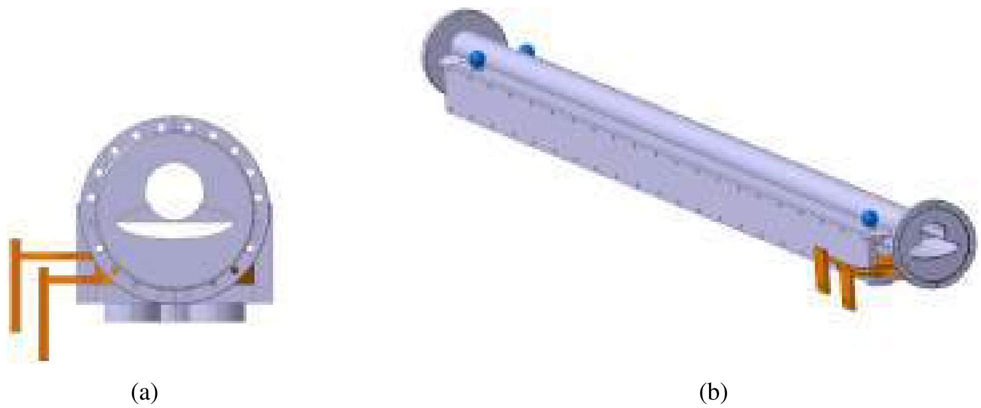


Fig. 6.21 Mechanical drawing of the Lambertson septum for booster injection in a cross-section side view (a) and isometric view (b)

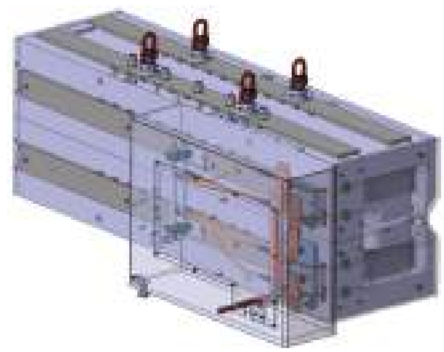


Fig. 6.22 Mechanical drawing of the booster dump septum without its vacuum chamber

sustainable solution was the use of a permanent magnet. This latter option, however, would lead to an apparent septum thickness that exceeds the requirements.

The present baseline consists of 2 pulsed septa outside vacuum. The pulse length is chosen to be relatively long to allow a flattop of >304 µs to allow extraction of the full circulating beam as well as to provide sufficient time for eddy currents in the extraction vacuum chamber to decay, preventing the generation of a lower quality field. To limit design effort and benefit from economies of scale, this magnet is chosen to be identical to the collider thick injection septum, albeit operating at a different current. To optimise the cost, the two magnets of each system are connected electrically in series.

Dump The booster dump septa shown in Fig. 6.22 are the same design as the collider dump septa described in Sect. 4.4.2. However, the following operational differences have an impact on the final design of the booster dump septa. First, the field of the dump septa in the booster must follow the energy of the particles in the booster during the ramp, making it a ramped device rather than a purely DC-operated device. Second, the dynamic range of the booster dump septa is larger, as the device will be used across the energy range from booster injection energy level to top energy in the $t\bar{t}$ mode.

Due to the first reason, the system will include a link to the Beam Energy Tracking System. Because of the further increased dynamic range with respect to the collider dump septa, further development of the proposed low-power septa topology is needed to ensure the field homogeneity and leak field levels remain within specification throughout the dynamic range. For both extractions, the two septa will be powered electrically in series, i.e., one power converter per extraction.

6.5.2 Kickers

Injection A stripline design has been chosen for the injection kicker system to meet the requirements listed in Table 4.2 and in particular the fast rise and fall times of 25 ns. Two systems are used, each consisting of a single device.

To meet the field homogeneity requirements, the stripline must be carefully designed. Numerical field simulations were carried out comparing several cross sections, finally resulting in a half-moon shaped electrode design offering the best field homogeneity parameters. To minimise the stripline's impact on the circulating beam, it is essential to achieve the desired characteristic impedance in the even mode while maintaining the odd-mode characteristic impedance as close as possible to 50 Ω to ensure the required field quality.

Further optimisation studies on impedance matching will be conducted, such as considering a termination network on the load side of the stripline. This termination method also requires a resistor between the electrodes, which presents some challenges. An in-vacuum design is difficult to implement due to concerns about power losses and vacuum compatibility, whereas an outside-vacuum design would be prone to parasitic inductance. In addition, mechanical design optimisation studies should commence soon to ensure the design is capable of withstanding synchrotron radiation.

For the generator side, the short flattop duration of 80 ns allows the use of either an inductive adder or very short pulse forming lines (PFL). Separate generators deliver both positive and negative driving pulses to the stripline via 50 Ω coaxial cables.

Extraction The extraction of electron and positron beams from the booster is achieved through two systems, each consisting of 14 kicker magnets and following the extraction scheme requirements listed in Table 4.3. These systems employ the same lumped inductance topology used for collider injection and dump kickers, leveraging the benefits of economies of scale. Each magnet could either be driven by a pulse-forming network or a Marx generator and is operated in short-circuit mode. The Marx generator consists of a main high-voltage stage and a low-voltage stage. Both stages are composed of multiple units: the stages in the high-voltage section are triggered throughout the entire pulse duration, while the low-voltage stages are triggered sequentially to compensate for voltage droop along the pulse. A matching resistor can be included on the generator side to address the mismatch between the magnet and the transfer cable. In order to provide the required flattop quality, the length of the cable connecting the magnet to the generator is limited to 100 m.

The cable length between each extraction kicker and its generator is defined by the pulse requirements. Thus, the location of the service galleries is affected by the required cable lengths. The required cable length is 100 m which includes the bending radius (1 m) and the handling path (15 m).

Dump The booster beam dump system will be very similar to the collider dump (see Sect. 4.4.2), only requiring adjustments for placement and control. The same magnet modules and generator topologies will be used. Compared to the collider dump, which operates at a fixed energy, beam energy tracking is required. This feature can be achieved using commercially available power supplies.

Controls An inductive adder (IA) pulse generator may be considered for some systems but would be a new technology for CERN, requiring a thorough analysis of its impact on controls. The IA introduces challenges such as managing the 100 Hz repetition rate, which limits the time for tasks like post-operational checks. Radiation to electronics (R2E) factors, including high-energy hadron flux and accumulated radiation dose, also need careful consideration to ensure the system's robustness.

Similarly, the Marx generator, another novel technology, requires a detailed evaluation of the impact of its control system and offers potential synergies with collider injection systems to enhance efficiency. A generator based on the LBDS design is planned for the dump kickers, balancing reliability with R2E considerations. An active or hybrid fail-safe retriggering architecture, akin to the SBDS system, is preferred to avoid complexities like signal reflections associated with passive systems.

6.6 Beam instrumentation

In the course of the feasibility study, the type of beam diagnostics has been identified for the booster, with an estimation of the number of instruments needed as outlined in Table 3.17. Similar to the collider ring, beam position monitors (BPMs) and beam loss monitors (BLMs) form the vast majority of the installed systems. Presently, the overall concept for such systems is that they will share the acquisition scheme adopted for the main ring BPMs and BLMs, where signals will be acquired and digitised in shielded racks installed in the tunnel in each arc half cell.

Current (DC and bunched) measurement, transverse and longitudinal profile measurement systems will also be present and capable of measuring throughout the energy ramp. This will form one of the main challenges of the next phase where a preliminary design for the booster BI systems will be produced, particularly for monitors based on synchrotron radiation due to the changing spectrum as a function of the beam energy.

6.7 Powering system

6.7.1 Booster magnet powering systems

Global optimisation of the magnet powering systems Please see Sect. 3.8.1.

Table 6.7 Booster magnet powering circuits quantities and parameters

	Magnet Quantity	Circuit Quantity	Peak Current (A)	Peak Voltage (V)
Dipole	5536	16	3065	851
Quadrupole (F and D)	2768	32	939	1998
Sextupole Focusing	576	16	525	1002
Sextupole Defocusing	560	16	595	1492
* *Dipole Tapering*	2768	346	10	396
* *Quadrupole Tapering*	2768	346	10	382
* *Horizontal Corrector*	1672	1672	20	68
* *Vertical Corrector*	1672	1672	20	69
* *Quadrupole Corrector*	1384	1384	20	65
* *Skew Quadrupole*	1384	1384	20	65
* *Straight Section*	n/a	1033	n/a	n/a
* *Injection*	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a
Booster Subtotal	**21,068**	**7917**	-	-
Collider subtotal	34,698	12,773	-	-
	55,766	**20,690**	-	-

* Magnet specifications not yet fully defined or non-existent, values extrapolated.

Booster magnet circuits Magnet powering is performed by power converters in alcoves located either at the end of the straight section or in the machine tunnel, called Big Electrical Alcove and Small Electrical Alcove, respectively The installation of power converters in the Machine Tunnel is not possible due to space and radiation constraints.

The location of the power converters is dictated by several factors, including the granularity of control required, the maximum voltage tolerance of the cable insulation and the resulting impact on expenditure for cables and converters. The granularity of control is determined by the optics layout:

- Booster dipoles, as well as booster quadrupole focusing and defocusing magnets, can be powered in series within their respective family.
- Focusing and defocusing booster sextupoles can be powered by half-octant.

The power converters for the booster dipoles, quadrupoles, and sextupoles are installed in the big alcoves at the end of the straight section. All other converters are located in the small alcoves of the tunnel, as they power fewer magnets in series. Table 6.7 presents the quantity of magnets and circuits and the powering parameters.

Magnet specifications and quantities for the tapering, correctors, dispersion suppressor, straight section and injection are not yet defined and therefore estimations were made. A different powering scheme is needed for the dispersion suppressor which uses the same magnets as in the arcs, see Sect. 6.1.

For the collider details, see Table 3.15 in Sect. 3.8.1.

Precision of power converters Please see Sect. 3.8.1.

Availability of power converters Please see Sect. 5.3.4.

6.8 Arc region: integration and supporting systems

This section complements Sect. 3.10, which describes the integration and development of supporting systems in the collider arcs. Arcs are made of a sequence of FODO half-cells, about 3000 for the high-energy optics, and consist of a short straight section (SSS) with quadrupole, sextupoles, beam diagnostics and correctors, followed by a long dipole length that can be achieved with a series of 2 or 3 interconnected magnets. This section describes the optimisation of the arc-supporting structures to maximise their performance, easing the installation and maintenance while also minimising cost. This study is being conducted within the scope of the FCC-ee Arc Half Cell Mock-up Project, and of the FCC-ee design study. It is planned to study elements of the arc cell in a full-scale mock-up (detailed in Sect. 3.10.5).

The analysis of the relative placement between the collider and the booster is not detailed in this section, as it has been covered in Sect. 3.10.1.

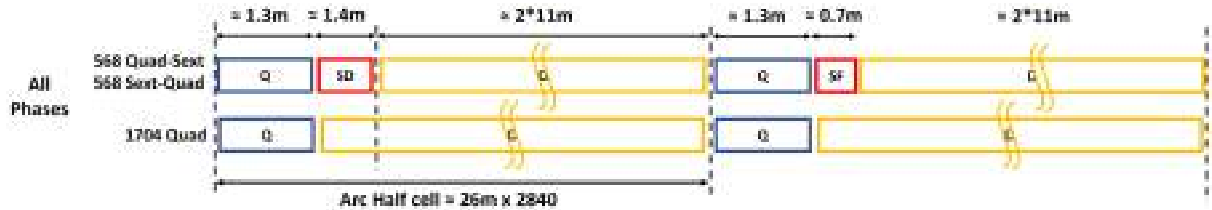
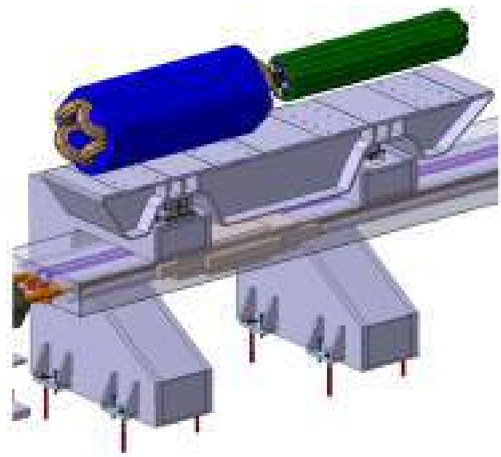


Fig. 6.23 Arc cell configurations for the booster, for all the phases - optic V24-FODO

Fig. 6.24 CAD model of a possible optimised version of the booster SSS



6.8.1 Arc cell configurations of the booster

The configuration of the booster arc cell does not change from the low to the high energy mode. In fact, the length of the arc half-cell remains 26 m for all the phases. As can be seen in Fig. 6.23, there are two configurations: 1136 half-cells with 1 quadrupole and 1 sextupole, and 1704 half-cells with 1 quadrupole. It should be noted that in Fig. 6.23, the drift distances are not represented. In addition, for the booster, the focusing and defocusing sextupoles are not of the same length: 1.4 m for the defocusing sextupole and 0.7 m for the focusing sextupole.

Among the different configurations, the FCC-ee Quad-Sext (defocusing) type has been studied in detail and will be installed in the mock-up. This SSS configuration is the bulkiest and, therefore, the most challenging in terms of integration. It is also the most complex in terms of static and dynamic stability.

6.8.2 Optimisation of the booster supporting structure - static and dynamic analyses

Overview and principles As discussed in Sect. 3.10.3, the goal is to optimise the design of the supporting structure by finding a balance between static and dynamic structural stability, integration constraints, and cost, while ensuring compliance with all safety requirements. This optimisation process is still ongoing, with alternative geometries currently under evaluation.

The design of the booster supporting structures for the SSS, which is currently under study, is illustrated in Fig. 6.24. This structure consists of two cantilever supports on which a girder is installed. Following the same principle as the collider's SSS, the use of girders to support the common elements in the SSS provides significant practical advantages. The SSS elements, including magnets and vacuum chambers, can be pre-assembled and pre-aligned on a girder in a clean room outside the tunnel, using the appropriate tools and environment. The module can then be transported as a single unit to the tunnel, streamlining transport and maintenance operations (for more details, see Sect. 3.10.3).

Specifications An initial estimation of the acceptable vibrations in the SSS was defined in 2022, and is reported in Table 6.8. This specification did not distinguish between vertical and lateral motion, and between booster and collider.

To consolidate the tolerance estimates, the sensitivity to vibrations of the GHC optics at the Z operating point was evaluated assuming a tolerance on the beam oscillation amplitude at the collision point of less than 5% relative to the collision point beam size [308]. Due to the small emittance ratio, vertical oscillations are more than an order of magnitude more critical than horizontal oscillations. Assuming that an orbit feedback system will efficiently

Table 6.8 Dynamic stability requirements in the arcs proposed in 2022%, presented by T. Raubenheimer at FCC IS workshop for the arcs [309]

Frequency range	Tolerance	Correlation
0.01 Hz < f < 1 Hz	1 µm	10 km
0.01 Hz < f < 1 Hz	100 nm	none
1 Hz < f < 10 Hz	20 nm	none
10 Hz < f < 100 Hz	5 nm	none
100 Hz < f	1 nm	none

Table 6.9 Updated dynamic stability requirements in the arcs at the level of the magnetic axis

	Tolerance at 1 Hz frequency
Collider vertical direction	20 nm
Collider lateral direction	200 nm
Booster vertical direction	40 nm
Booster lateral direction	400 nm

damp beam oscillations with frequencies below 1 Hz, the integrated RMS motion for frequencies higher than 1 Hz is ideally around 10 (100) nm for the vertical (horizontal) plane. If the beam orbit feedback bandwidth can be extended above 1 Hz, setting the targets for the vertical (horizontal) plane to 20 (200) nm, in line with Table 6.8 is possible. It must be noted that the sensitivity may evolve in the future with the optics and the machine layout. For the low-beta regions, the tolerances are an order of magnitude tighter.

These considerations are summarised in Table 6.9. The key frequency of interest is 1 Hz, and in this frequency range:

- The collider quadrupole acceptable vertical displacement is 20 nm.
- Laterally, the acceptable displacement of the collider quadrupole is higher by roughly one order of magnitude. Currently, a value of 200 nm is tentatively assumed.
- It is very likely that the quadrupoles in the booster can accept larger displacements than in the collider. It is, however, not evident to define how much the requirements can be relaxed. An increase of the tolerance by a factor of two in vertical and lateral directions is currently tentatively assumed, resulting in values of 40 nm and 400 nm, respectively.

Historical background It is interesting to compare the current stability specifications with what was studied in other projects or achieved in past CERN machines, such as the Large Hadron Collider (LHC/HL-LHC) and the future Compact LInear Collider (CLIC). Concerning the LHC/HL-LHC quadrupoles:

- In standard operation the root mean square (RMS) value should be < 5 µm at 1 Hz;
- Beam instabilities can be provoked if the RMS is between 5 µm and 20 µm at 1 Hz;
- A beam dump is usually triggered for an RMS > 20 µm at 1 Hz.

On the other hand, the future Compact LInear Collider (CLIC) has significantly more stringent specifications: given its very small beam sizes, even minor oscillations of one quadrupole reduce the luminosity. It has been estimated that in the vertical direction, the RMS must be below 1 nm at 1 Hz and similarly, it must be below 5 nm at 1 Hz laterally to ensure sufficient performance [311]. A study has demonstrated that these specifications can be achieved, albeit using active stabilisation based on piezo-actuators combined with a stiff and optimised design of the quadrupole support [312].

Hence, the FCC arc specifications are closer to those of a linear accelerator (CLIC) than those of existing circular accelerators (LHC/HL-LHC), which illustrates their challenging nature.

Numerical methodology As explained and detailed in Sect. 3.10.3, the supporting structures of the collider and the booster are being optimised in terms of static and dynamic stability. For this scope, a finite element method (FEM) procedure has been defined (see Sect. 3.10.3).

An example of a transfer function comparison for different geometries of the booster supports is shown in Fig. 6.25. Two graphs are presented: the first displays the transfer functions obtained vertically, and the second the transfer function obtained laterally. The transfer functions provide insight on how the system behaves and reacts over a range of frequencies. The greater the natural vibrational and rigid body frequencies, the more rigid

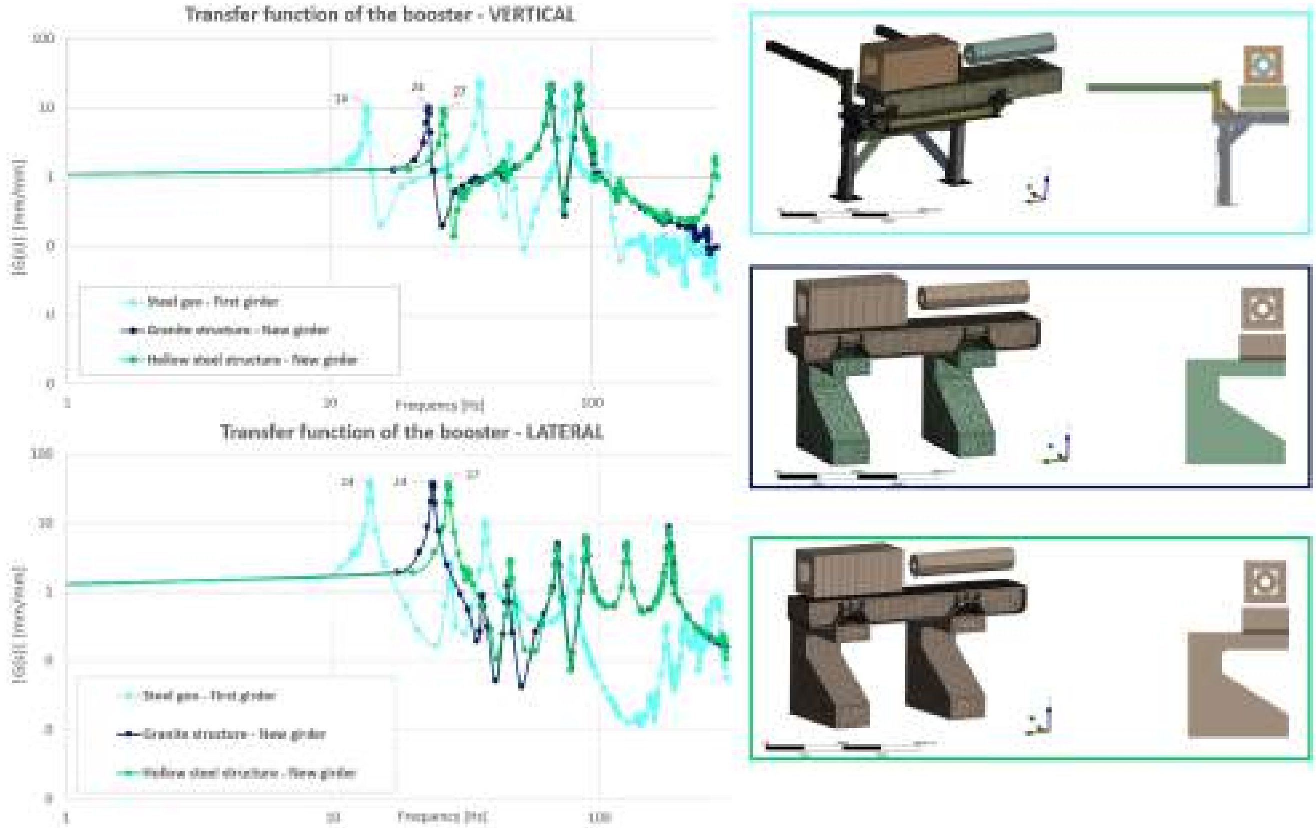


Fig. 6.25 Transfer function comparison for different supporting structure geometries in the vertical and lateral directions

the system is considered to be. Comparative studies can be carried out to analyse the impact on stability of the geometry, materials, position, rigidity and number of feet, etc. and to determine the most suitable geometry.

Knowing the spectrum of the ground motion over the relevant range of frequencies, as well as the transfer function of the supporting structure between the ground and the centre of the magnet, it is possible to estimate the displacement of the magnet mechanical axis in response to the ground motion. Since the values of the estimated movement of the ground in the FCC tunnel are not yet available, the power spectral density (PSD) of the ground motion measured in the LHC tunnel [314] has been used as an initial input instead. When performing a random vibration analysis of the system with such ground PSD as an input for the calculation, the PSD of the magnetic axis is obtained as an output, and then the integrated root mean square (RMS) displacements at the level of the axis can be computed. The methodology is explained in Fig. 3.76.

Experimental benchmarking It is important to note that the method described above is sensitive to several parameters that cannot be precisely estimated at this stage of the project. Similarly, the simulations involve certain approximations, such as simplified representations of magnets and interfaces (e.g., ground-support and support-magnet interactions). Therefore, it is crucial to experimentally benchmark and refine the simulations to build confidence in the numerical model.

To better understand how the different elements of the SSS influence system stability, a simple 2.5 m long short straight section demonstrator was assembled (see Sect. 3.10.3). The design of this demonstrator closely resembles what will be installed in the collider. However, during the next phase, the plan is to extend these measurements to the booster's SSS as well.

6.9 Machine protection

Machine protection hardware and software will be required. These protection elements are very similar to those described for the collider and are described in more detail in Sect. 3.11. As there are no superconducting magnets foreseen in the booster, there will be no such protection systems.

Chapter 7

FCC-ee injector complex

7.1 Injector overview

The FCC-ee injector complex must provide the electron and positron bunch trains for alternating bootstrapping injection during both top-up and filling-from-scratch operations. Given the charge per bucket and lifetime for this operational mode, an alternating injection of a train of positrons and electrons, approximately every few tens of seconds, is required to ensure the correct balance between positron and electron bunch charges during collider operation. It includes separate linacs for electrons and positrons up to a beam energy of 2.86 GeV – the electron linac (e-Linac) and the positron linac (p-Linac), respectively. Figure 7.1 shows the basic layout of the injector complex schematically. Following the positron and electron linacs, both species are injected into the damping ring (DR) for emittance reduction. The layout also includes the high-energy (HE) linac, which boosts the beam energy from 2.86 GeV up to 20 GeV in order to inject beams directly into the booster ring (BR). The baseline for the positron source is based on a conventional scheme, where electrons from the e-Linac impinge on a tungsten target. This approach allows all linacs to operate at 100 Hz with 4 bunches per pulse to meet the collider ring filling specification for the most demanding Z running mode.

Operating at a 100 Hz repetition rate with four bunches per RF pulse, the linac system incorporates beam-loading compensation and long-range wakefield suppression for enhanced stability. Although the injector complex is now longer, this new layout improves reliability, featuring a damping ring at a higher energy of 2.86 GeV and eliminates the need for a common linac, which would otherwise require doubling the repetition rate. This revised concept offers a more efficient and sustainable solution that aligns with performance and operational goals.

Table 7.1 lists the collider and booster parameters used as specifications for the injector design. It is worth emphasising that the injector must operate continuously due to the short beam lifetime and the strict requirement that the charge imbalance between the electron and positron beams in the collider remains within a narrow range of 3-5%. This constraint requires a precise and uninterrupted injection process to maintain beam-beam stability. For example, assuming a beam duration of about 1000 seconds, the injector must alternate between injecting electrons and positrons at intervals of about 50 seconds. This requirement imposes a significant operational challenge, particularly in the Z-mode, where any interruption in injector functionality could severely impact the collider's performance. Consequently, the reliability and availability of the injector are of critical importance, as any downtime could compromise the overall efficiency of the collider. This issue represents a critical limitation presented in more detail in Sect. 7.9, where potential risks and mitigation strategies associated with injector failures are discussed in more detail.

The top-up operation for each operating mode requires the charge of the individual bunch in the train to vary from a few tens of pC to about 4 nC per injection, depending on the charge imbalance of electrons and positrons of the individual bucket in the collider. This requirement results from the different lifetimes of the individual bunches in the collider rings, which will also determine the filling pattern for each injection. Regarding emittance,

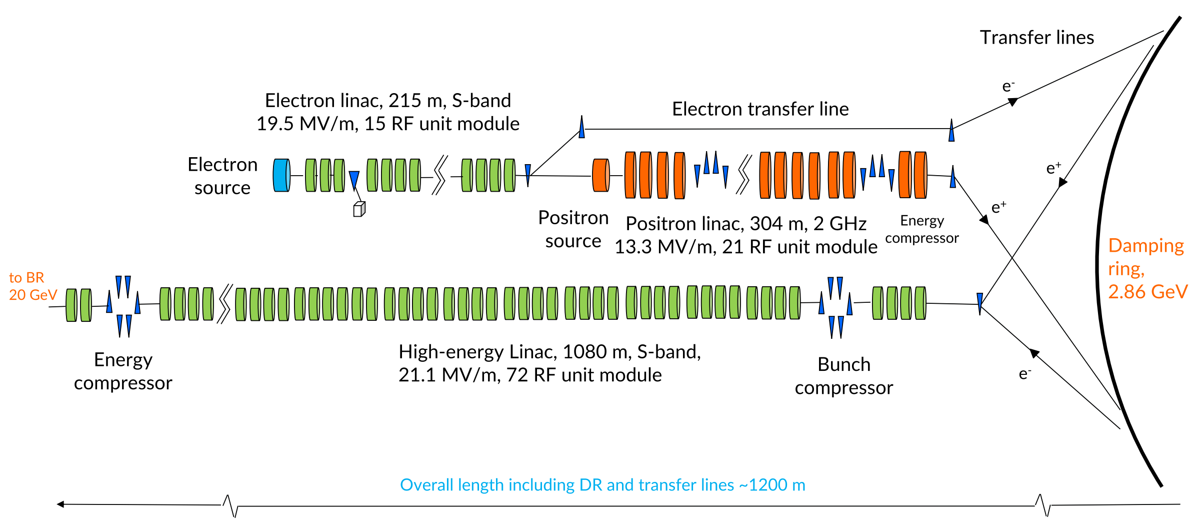


Fig. 7.1 Baseline layout of the pre-injector complex, including the high-energy (HE) linac

Table 7.1 Collider and booster parameters used as specifications for the injector design. Bunch charge is the maximum bunch charge to be injected into the collider ring. Emittance, bunch length and energy spread are the specifications at the injection into the booster ring

Running mode	Z	W	Z	$t\bar{t}$	Unit
Number bunches in collider	11,200	1856	300	64	
Nominal bunch charge in collider	34.40	22.08	27.04	23.68	nC
Allowable charge imbalance	5	3	3	3	%
Beam lifetime, lumi 4 IPs (q, BS, lattice)/4	916	517	428	497	s
Trains/Bunches per booster cycle	40×280	8×232	2×150	2×32	
Max injected bunch charge	3.43	3.43	1.60	1.60	nC
Number of bunches	4	4	2	2	
Linac rep. rate	100	100	50	50	Hz
Bunch spacing	25				ns
Beam energy at BR	20				GeV
Norm. emittance (x, y) (rms) (BR)	<20,2				mm mrad
Bunch length (rms) (BR)	∼4				mm
Energy spread (rms) (BR)	∼0.1				%

the specifications for injection into the BR require a beam with a flat normalised emittance of 20 mm·mrad and 2 mm·mrad in the horizontal and vertical planes, respectively, to ensure a shorter cycle in the booster itself. This specification has an impact on both the electron source and the DR parameters. In particular, the electron source must guarantee this emittance even during the required charge variation for top-up operation, and this question has an impact on the optimisation of the photo-cathode RF gun.

In order to achieve independent design specifications for the linacs in the injector from those of the BR, an energy compressor in the transfer line from the HE linac to the BR is planned. This arrangement is depicted in the left part of Fig. 7.1. By adopting this approach, the design of the linacs can converge towards a solution for the beam length and energy spread at the linac end specified in Table 7.1, without considering more complex layouts that include compression and/or decompression of the beam along the different linacs.

Table 7.2 provides a comprehensive summary of the key parameters of the electron and positron beams as they progress through the injector and booster up to the point of injection into the collider in Z-mode. This table serves as a crucial reference, consolidating the relevant beam characteristics at each stage of the acceleration and manipulation processes. By collecting these parameters in a structured manner, Table 7.2 played a key role in coordinating the various simulation studies conducted on the different injector subsystems. It allowed the results to be systematically compared and validated, ensuring consistency between simulations. Furthermore, this collection was crucial to verify that the beam parameters remain within the specifications required for successful injection in both the booster and the collider.

The findings from the injector study have also been documented in four detailed scientific reports submitted to CHART [349–352]. These reports serve as a comprehensive record of the research conducted, encompassing various aspects of the injector's design, performance, and operational constraints. Additionally, these reports include an extensive list of references that provide further context and background to the study. This bibliography features a wide range of scientific publications, including peer-reviewed journal articles, conference proceedings, and contributions presented at workshops and international conferences.

The following sections provide a summary of the key findings and achievements resulting from the efforts to address the recommendations outlined in the mid-term review. These results highlight the progress made in optimising the injector's design, performance, and integration within the overall system. Additionally, this discussion includes an overview of the proposed location of the injector on the CERN site. The positioning of the injector is a critical aspect, as it directly influences factors such as beam transport efficiency, infrastructure requirements, and operational feasibility.

7.2 Electron source

The baseline configuration of the injector complex, illustrated in Fig. 7.2, includes a single electron source for producing both the nominal electron beam and the driver electron beam for positron production. The electron source is composed of a photo-cathode 2.6 cell RF photo gun followed by three RF accelerating structures reaching the beam energy of approximately 200 MeV. The main requirement for the electron source is to generate four bunches with a charge of 5 nC each, keeping the normalised emittance below 4 mm·mrad in order to have a margin in any emittance growth along the linacs and transfer lines between linacs.

Table 7.2 Electron and positron bunch parameters along the injector and booster up to the injection into the collider for the Z-mode. Some parameters still have to be calculated (tbc). LE = Low-energy, HE = High energy, DR = Damping ring

	Beam Energy [GeV]	Bunch charge [nC]	Transm. [%]	Bunch length (rms) [mm]	Rel. energy spread (rms) 1E-3	Norm. emit. (rms) H/V [mm mrad]
LE Linac injection	0.2	3.79		1	5	3/3
LE Linac exit	2.86	3.75	0.99	1	6	3.3/3/3
Positron source target	0.045	26.53	7.07	1.34	>100	21,000/20,000
Positron capture exit	0.185	14.81	0.56	9	>100	13,000/12,000
Positron linac injection	0.263	12.06	0.81	8	140	13,000/12,000
Positron linac exit	2.86	10.73	0.89	2.8	8.7	13,000/12,000
Energy Compressor	2.86	10.09	0.94	2.8	8.7	13,000/12,000
DR injection	2.86	5.04	0.5	tbc	tbc	13,000/12,000
DR extraction	2.86	4.99	0.99	4.8	0.72	10/1
LE Linac injection	0.2	5.20		1	5	3/3
LE Linac exit	2.86	5.15	0.99	1	6	3.3/3.3
Transfer line	2.86	5.09	0.99	1	6	3.3/3.3
DR injection	2.86	5.04	0.99	1	7	5/5
DR exit	2.86	4.99	0.99	4.8	0.72	10/1
Bunch Compressor	2.86	4.94	0.99	1	7	10/1
HE Linac injection	2.86	4.89	0.99	1	7	12/1
HE Linac exit	20	4.84	0.99	1	6.1	16/1.6
Energy Compressor	20	4.80	0.99	4	1	16/1.6
Transfer line	20	4.56	0.95	4	1	16/1.6
Booster injection	20	4.33	0.95	4	1	20/2
Booster extraction	45.6	4.29	0.99	2.43	0.38	10.71/0.89
Collider injection	45.6	3.43	0.8	2.43	tbc	10.71/0.89

Table 7.3 Electron source beam parameters at 200 MeV with a bunch charge of 5 nC

Parameter	Uniform distribution	Gaussian distribution
Transverse Emittance [mm·mrad]	2	3
Energy Spread rms [%]	0.4	0.25
Bunch Length rms (mm)	0.98	1.3

Extensive simulations have been conducted on the electron source and downstream linacs. Uniform and truncated Gaussian initial distributions have been studied, and Table 7.3 lists the optimised beam parameters that were achieved at the end of the electron source. These parameters and the simulated distributions have been used as input for the design and simulations of the subsequent linacs. In particular, investigations into the yield of positron production indicate that 5 nC electron bunches are sufficient to achieve the desired positron bunch charge.

One of the most challenging aspects of the electron source is the top-up mode for the collider. In this operational mode, the bunches circulating in the collider rings will be topped up with charge, compensating for the charge decrease during collisions. Therefore, the injector has to deliver varying bunch charges in the range of 10-100% for each bunch. Nominal operation consists of a four bunch per RF pulse scheme, with a spacing of 25 ns. In theory, a single laser pulse could be split in 4 and then individually manipulated, but using up to 4 lasers would allow more flexibility to change the charge independently of a few hundred pC up to 5 nC. Several lasers may also be needed to achieve the required availability (see Sect. 7.9). The source and the linac will work with a 100 Hz repetition rate, leaving only 10 ms between pulses to adjust laser, RF or magnet parameters. A detailed beam dynamics

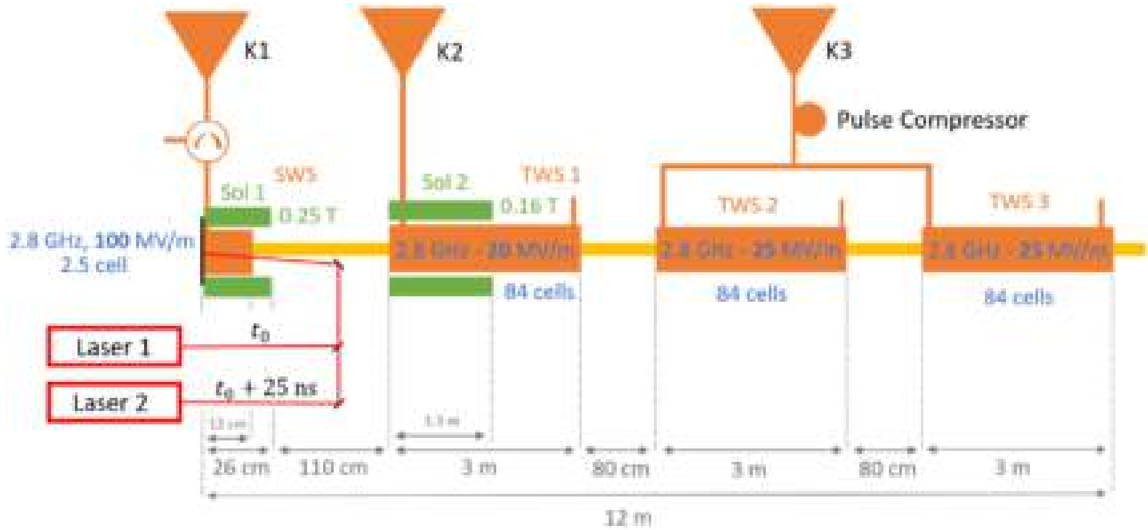


Fig. 7.2 Schematic layout of the 200 MeV pre-injector consisting of an RF-gun and 3 accelerating structures. Here the option with two redundant laser systems is shown

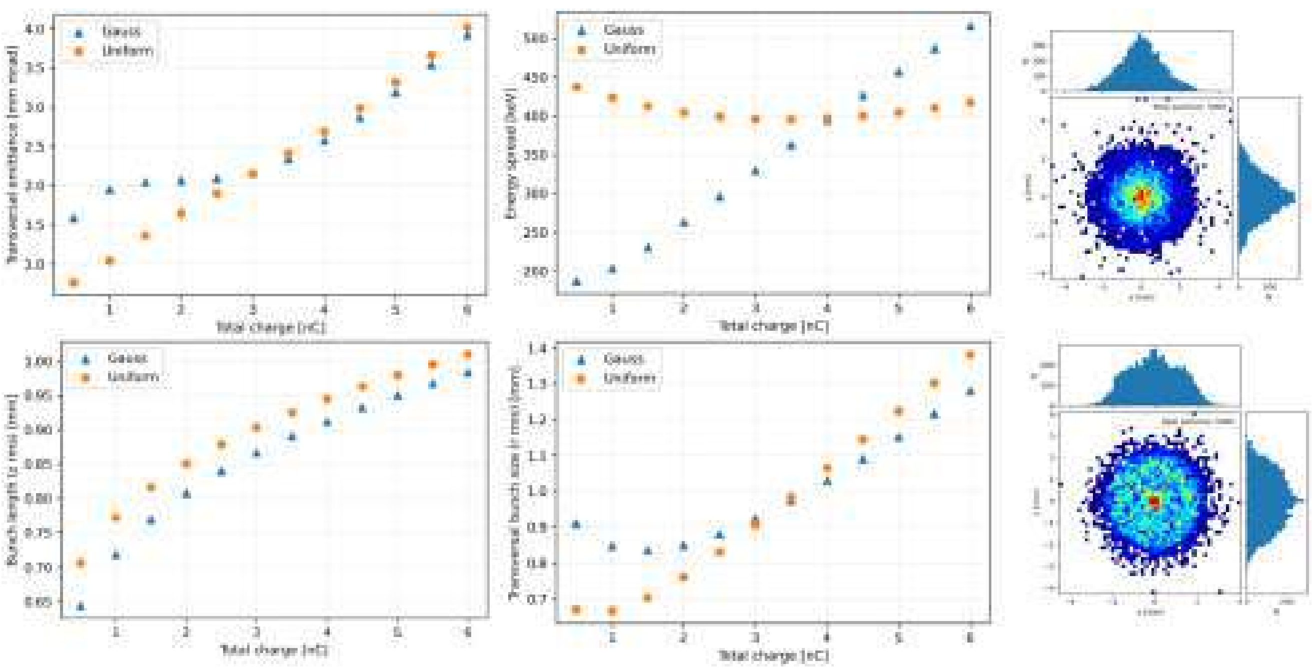


Fig. 7.3 Beam parameter variation as a function of bunch charge simulating the top-up operation of the electron source and pre-injector

study has been started to determine which parameters need to be changed for different bunch charges to deliver beams as similar as possible. The best option would be to leave RF and magnet parameters constant and only change the laser spot size and intensity on the cathode so that the charge density stays as similar as possible. The spot size could be manipulated fast enough using a controllable mirror array. Simulations show that, in this case, the beam parameter variation at the exit of the electron source is not too big (see Fig. 7.3). More details on the electron source study can be found in Ref. [353].

7.3 Electron linac

The electron linac accelerates electron beam of up to 4 bunches of 5 nC each from the energy of about 200 MeV to 2.86 GeV at the repetition rate of 100 Hz for Z-mode, which presents the most critical case for the linacs. The

Table 7.4 RMS of the Gaussian random distributions assumed for the misalignments of the lattice elements for the static effect simulations

Element	Value [µm]
Quadrupoles	50
RF accelerating structures	100
BPM	30

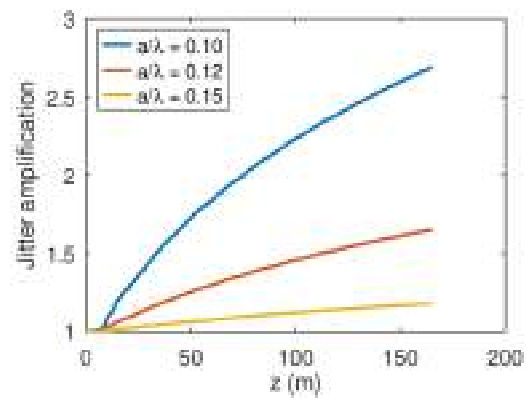


Fig. 7.4 Single-bunch jitter amplification along the electron linac at different RF apertures

electron linac is located right after the electron source, as shown in Fig. 7.1. In the electron production mode, the beam goes to the DR, and in the positron production mode, it goes to the target.

Beam dynamics simulations have been done to study both longitudinal and transverse beam dynamics in the electron linac using the tracking code RF-Track [354]. The main purpose was to define the specifications for RF structures in terms of iris aperture, working frequency, structure length, gradient, and lattice parameters, like quadrupole separation, kind of lattice, and phase advance. The following beam parameters were used in the simulations: bunch length 1 mm, relative energy spread 0.25% and emittance 3.2 mm·mrad at the start of the electron linac for the case of the 5 nC electron bunch.

The linac comprises a FODO lattice with 90 degrees phase advance per cell with one quadrupole and one BPM per RF structure, with a total cell length of 7.5 m. The RF structures are operated on-crest. This allows the accelerating efficiency to be maximised, and the beam quality degradation to be minimised.

Tracking simulations were conducted in terms of emittance growth to evaluate the robustness of the linac design against static misalignments. Gaussian-distributed misalignments were assumed for the RF accelerating structures, quadrupoles, and BPMs; the corresponding rms values are summarised in Table 7.4. A BPM resolution of 10 µm was also included in the computation of some of the steering corrections applied.

Based on these simulations, an RF structure aperture corresponding to $a/\lambda = 0.15$ was determined. To mitigate the effects of misalignments, a combination of one-to-one correction and dispersion-free steering (DFS) was applied sequentially, incorporating the randomly distributed errors. The minimum RF aperture corresponding to $< a > / \lambda = 0.15$ was determined by compromising the growth of transverse emittance from static effects with the efficiency of the RF structure. Finally, a maximum emittance growth of 0.3 mm·mrad was obtained at the end of the linac for 98% or more of the simulation seeds assuming the optimised RF parameters (on-crest operating phase and aperture corresponding to $a/\lambda = 0.15$).

Dynamic effects were also investigated, focusing specifically on the amplification of the incoming beam transverse jitter, whether in position, angle or a combination of both. To simulate transverse beam jitter, the transverse phase space was painted following a circular path at the entrance of the linac. The jitter amplification (JA) was then calculated as the square root of the ratio between the areas of the transverse phase space at the entrance and at the exit of the section. The final jitter, in either position or angle, was determined by multiplying the incoming jitter by the computed amplification. This method provides a quantitative measure of the robustness of the linac design to incoming beam transverse jitter and enables optimisation of parameters such as the RF structure aperture, the lattice phase advance per cell, and the spacing between quadrupoles linked in this design to the length of the RF structure. Both single- and multi-bunch effects were analysed following a different procedure. In the case of the single-bunch the JA was computed all along the linac varying the above-mentioned parameters. As an example, Fig. 7.4 shows the dependence of the JA on the RF structure aperture. The aperture corresponding to $a/\lambda = 0.15$ produces a maximum final JA of approximately 1.2. Assuming an initial orbit jitter of 0.12 σ (where σ is the transverse beam size), like, for example, that measured in AWAKE for similar beam parameters, results in a jitter of 0.14 σ.

The JA was also used to study multi-bunch dynamic effects, but assuming a variable kick imparted by the first bunch on the second bunch. Given the amount of jitter that can be accepted, the maximum tolerable kick

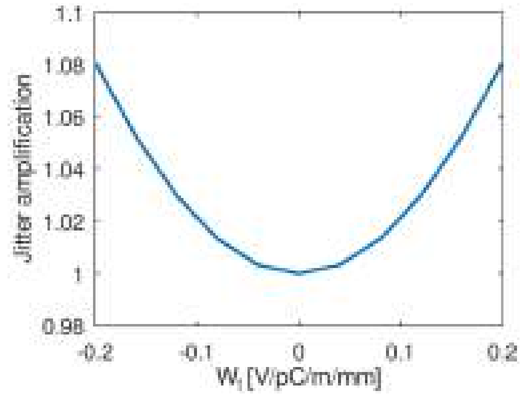


Fig. 7.5 Multi-bunch JA at the exit of the electron linac versus transverse wakefield kick imposed by the first to the following bunch

Table 7.5 Summary of the optimised RF and lattice parameters based on the beam dynamics studies

Parameter	Value
Mean RF structure aperture (mm)	16.1 ($a/\lambda = 0.15$)
RF structure length (m)	3
RF structure operating phase	on-crest
Phase advance/cell (degrees)	90
Number of BPM/RF structure	1
Number of quadrupoles/RF structure	1
Distance between the quadrupoles (m)	3.75

was determined and used to determine the specification for the HOM dipole suppression in the RF structure. The results are shown in Fig. 7.5, demonstrating that the kick on the following bunch of 0.1 V/pC/mm/m corresponds to a JA of 1.02 at the exit of the linac, which is significantly smaller than the single-bunch JA. From these simulations, the total JA, calculated as a product of single- and multi-bunch JAs, is 1.22. The corresponding total jitter is smaller than 0.15 σ, assuming 0.12 σ as the incoming jitter. This value has a negligible impact on the positron production, and is expected to be in the acceptance of the DR. The parameters obtained from the beam dynamics studies are summarised in Table 7.5 for convenience.

7.4 Positron source and linac

The production of positrons is always an extremely important topic for any electron-positron collider, especially for future colliders like the FCC-ee, which are designed to operate at extreme parameters. For the FCC-ee, a high-yield positron source is essential to provide the low-emittance positron beam with sufficient intensity to reduce the injection time into the collider. Specifically, at Z-pole operation, a positron bunch intensity of 2.14×10^{10} particles is required at injection into the collider rings. The positron rate for the FCC-ee is twice that achieved at the SLC at SLAC, while remaining an order of magnitude lower than the values typically proposed for linear collider projects [355]. At the injector level, the primary requirement for the positron source is to deliver a positron bunch charge of 5 nC, which must be accepted into the damping ring (DR), as indicated in Table 7.2. Based on the available experience of designing and operating previous or current positron sources, a safety margin of 2.56 has been applied to the FCC-ee positron source design, requiring the delivery of a total positron bunch intensity of 12.8 nC at the injection into the DR.

7.4.1 Positron production and capture system

A conventional positron source using 2.86 GeV electrons impinging on a 15 mm thick tungsten target is the basis for FCC-ee positron production. The bremsstrahlung radiation of the electrons in the field of the target nuclei is converted in e^+e^- pairs. The target thickness has been optimised to maximise the number of positrons produced at the target exit. This conventional production method has been successfully employed in all the e^+e^- colliders (ADA, ACO, DCI, SPEAR, ADONE, LEP, and also for the first linear collider SLC).

The capture section includes an Adiabatic Matching Device (AMD) [356], followed by a capture linac embedded in a DC solenoidal magnetic field to accelerate the positron beam to about 170 MeV. At the end of the capture

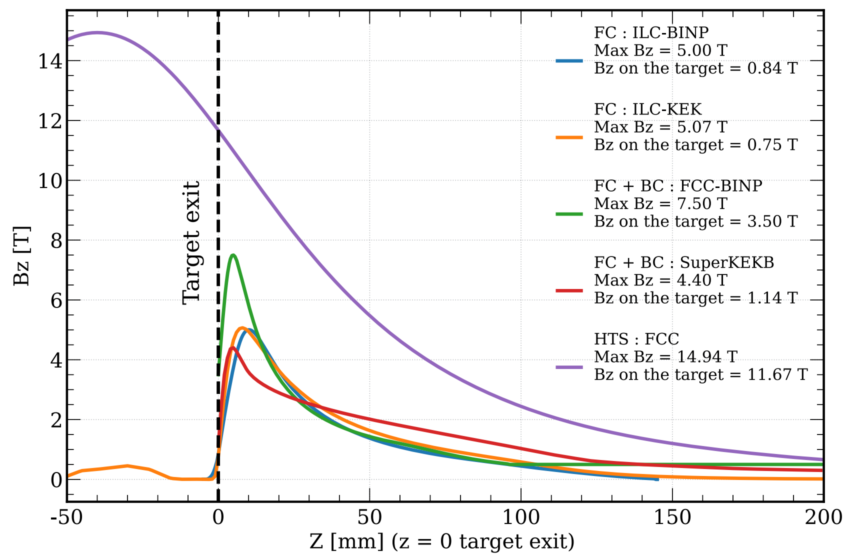


Fig. 7.6 Magnetic field profile of the AMD implemented in the form of the FC and HTS solenoid magnet. BC refers to the bridge coils, which are solenoid magnets surrounding the FC. The following FC models were analysed: BINP design for the ILC, KEK design for the ILC, BINP design for FCC-ee, and KEK design for SuperKEKB. A dashed line indicates the target exit surface

linac, positron and electron bunches are separated using a chicane at 170 MeV and the solenoid focusing is used up to a positron energy of 930 MeV. After the matching section at 930 MeV, the positron beam passes through quadrupole focusing and is accelerated up to the DR energy 2.86 GeV. An energy compressor system (ECS) is used before the DR to increase the number of positrons within the DR energy acceptance. The DR is an important part of the positron source design as its dynamic aperture, longitudinal and transverse acceptance parameters define the final performance of the positron source. The baseline design of the DR is described in Sect. 7.5.

Two AMD designs were investigated during the Feasibility Study: one employing a flux concentrator (FC) based on pulsed magnet technology (currently used in the SuperKEKB collider [357]) and another using a superconducting (SC) solenoid based on high-temperature superconducting (HTS) materials. The latter, an innovative approach for positron sources, will also be tested in the PSI Positron Production (P^3) experiment at SwissFEL [358], which has been designed as a demonstrator for the FCC-ee positron source technologies (see Sect. 7.4.6).

For the classical FC-based approach, several models were evaluated for the FCC-ee positron source design. These included the one designed by BINP for the FCC-ee and ILC projects, the FC developed by KEK for the ILC project, and the FC currently used in the SuperKEKB collider. Due to the conceptual and mechanical constraints of the FC, the peak of the magnetic field is located downstream the target and as a result, the available field on the target is reduced to ∼3.5 T/∼1.1 T (for the BINP/SuperKEKB designs respectively) manifesting a significant drop in capture efficiency. Moreover, the presence of a high transverse magnetic field component (with strong domination of dipole harmonic) makes the trajectories of positrons strongly distorted. As a result, the positron beam receives an offset in the vertical and horizontal planes. This must be mitigated for the positron beam transport in the capture line. Compared to the FC systems used in the SuperKEKB or BINP designs, the FCC-ee requires a higher repetition rate (up to 100 Hz), ideally with stronger magnetic fields and larger apertures. These requirements pose substantial technological and engineering challenges, particularly for high-power sources.

To address these challenges, an SC solenoid based on HTS technology was proposed for positron capture. The HTS solenoid offers several advantages over the FC design. It provides a significantly higher magnetic field at the target exit surface, a larger aperture and greater flexibility in target positioning, as the target can be placed inside the magnet bore. The axial symmetry of the solenoid ensures zero transverse magnetic fields at the magnet axis, eliminating beam distortion issues encountered with the FC option. The comparison of the field profiles for the FC and HTS solenoid designs, as used in the FCC-ee positron source studies, is shown in Fig. 7.6. Based on these considerations and simulation results, the AMD employing the HTS solenoid was selected as the baseline for the FCC-ee positron source.

The capture linac consists of six 3 m long, travelling wave (TW) 2 GHz RF structures with large iris apertures (2a = 60 mm), designed to provide enhanced transverse acceptance for positrons. The baseline design assumes an average RF gradient of 13.3 MV/m. Each accelerating structure is embedded within ten solenoid magnets, forming a solenoidal magnetic channel with a field strength of approximately 0.5 T, which efficiently guides the positron beam through the capture linac aperture. An additional solenoid magnet, referred to as the tuning solenoid, is placed between the AMD and the first accelerating structure. This solenoid increases the magnetic field experienced by the positron beam prior to entering the capture linac, further improving beam focusing and capture efficiency. The RF phases of the capture linac were optimised using the Xopt package [359] to maximise the final positron yield accepted by the DR.

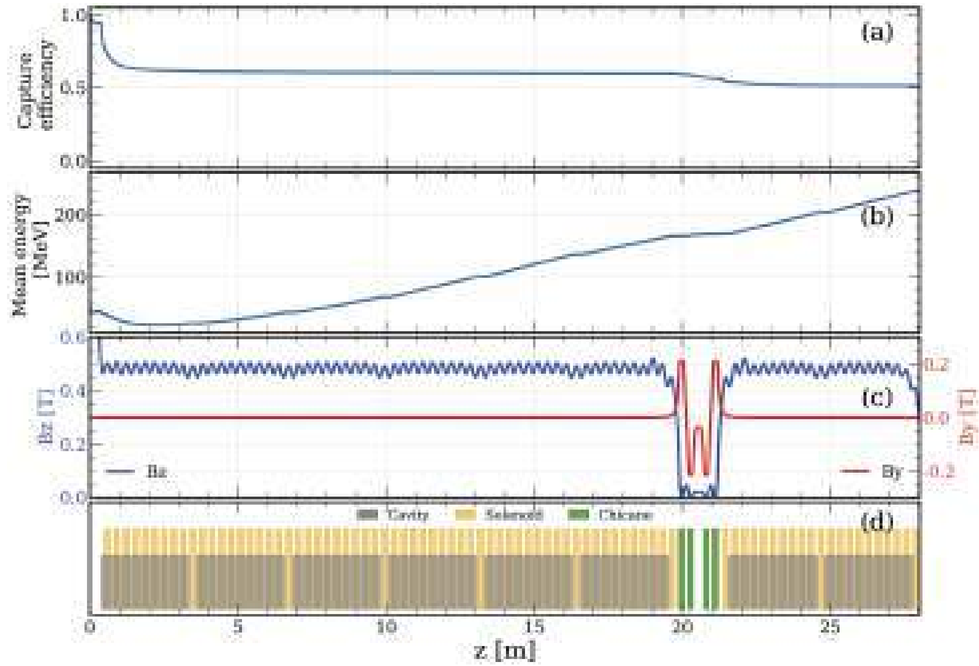


Fig. 7.7 Simulation results of the positron capture section, starting from the target exit surface. The plots illustrate: (a) the evolution of positron capture efficiency, (b) the positron beam energy, (c) the magnetic field profile along the capture section, and (d) the schematic layout of the capture section

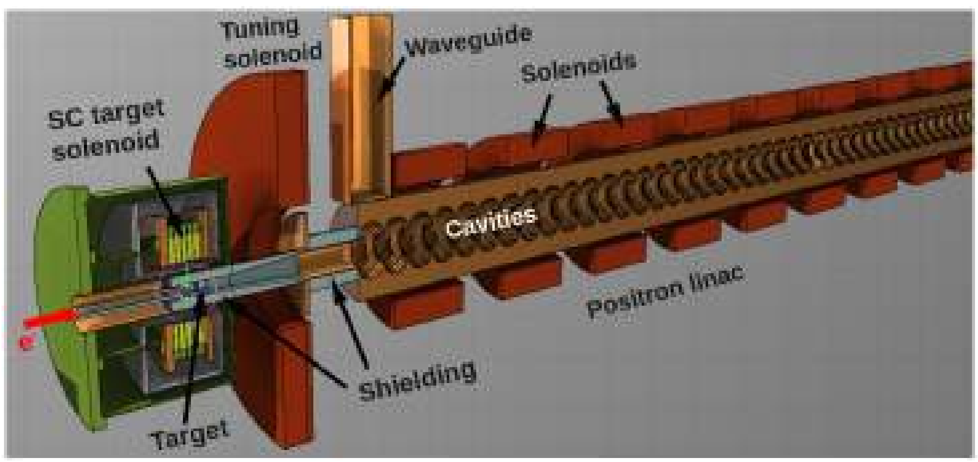


Fig. 7.8 FLUKA geometry model of the positron production target, the AMD with SC solenoid, the tuning solenoid, and the downstream positron capture linac

Figure 7.7 presents the key simulation results for the capture section, including the separator chicane and the first two accelerating structures of the positron linac. At the beginning of the capture section, a 33% drop in capture efficiency is observed, primarily due to the transverse acceptance of the accelerating structures. This is followed by a smaller 9% reduction in efficiency after the separator chicane.

7.4.2 Radiation load studies for target and capture system

The interaction of the electron drive beam with the positron production target gives rise to an intense flux of secondary particles. Only a fraction of the original drive beam energy contributes to the final positron yield, while most of the power is dissipated in the target, the AMD and the downstream capture linac. The resulting thermal load and cumulative radiation damage in the different components require a careful assessment in the engineering design process. This concerns in particular, the design of the production target and the optimisation of shielding components, which protect sensitive components like the SC coils of the AMD.

In order to quantify the impact of secondary radiation fields, radiation transport studies were carried out with the FLUKA Monte Carlo code. The FLUKA geometry model is illustrated in Fig. 7.8. The target was modelled as a stationary tungsten disk with a thickness of 15 mm. The target is surrounded by cylindrical tungsten shielding (13 cm long and 2 cm thick walls), which reduces the heat load and radiation damage in the AMD. The inner radius of the HTS coils of the AMD, placed in a cryostat, was 6.1 cm. A second tungsten shielding with a tapered

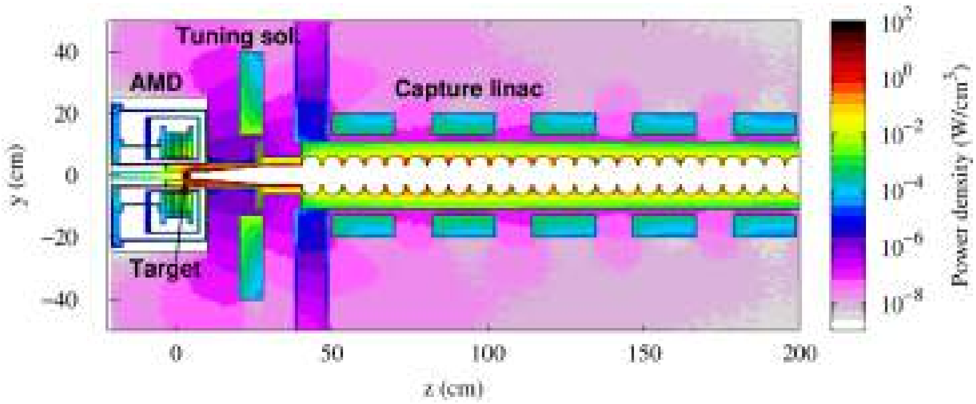


Fig. 7.9 Power density (Z-pole) in the target, AMD, shielding, tuning solenoid and the first RF cells of the capture linac. The peak power density in the target reaches 10 kW/cm^3 (out of the scale of the plot)

aperture was assumed to be located between the AMD and the tuning solenoid, and a third between the tuning solenoid and the first RF structure of the capture linac.

The radiation load studies assumed a 2.86 GeV electron drive beam with four bunches, a bunch charge of 2.37×10^{10} e$^-$, and a repetition frequency of 100 Hz, which results in an average drive beam power of 4.3 kW (Z-pole). The simulated power density distribution in the target, shielding, AMD and the first linac cells is illustrated in Fig. 7.9.

With such electron beam parameters, the target and surrounding shielding absorb around 1.3 kW, which poses a challenge for the target design; possible engineering solutions and cooling options are discussed in the next section. Another issue is the atomic dislocations in the target, which are mostly concentrated along the beam axis. Assuming 185 days of operation per year and a duty factor of around 80%, the radiation transport simulations show that the displacement damage in the target can reach a peak value of 1–2 DPA/year for FCC-ee operation at the Z-pole. Possible mitigation measures need to be determined, e.g., the design of a remote handling system, which would enable regular replacement of the target assembly.

The power deposition in the AMD, including cryostat, HTS solenoid and support structures, is only about 10 W, which demonstrates the effectiveness of the shielding. In particular, the power density in the HTS coils remains below 10 mW/cm^3, which is considered acceptable and is safely below the quench level of the solenoid. The simulations also show that the cumulative displacement damage in the HTS tapes is less than 1×10^{-4} DPA/year (Z-pole), which is not expected to degrade their properties. Furthermore, the total radiation dose to the coils reaches about 6 MGy/year. Since no organic insulation materials are used in the coils, such dose values should not pose a problem for the HTS solenoid, but require further assessment. If needed, a slight increase in the shielding thickness can reduce the dose further.

The capture linac is assumed to consist of six RF structures with 44 cells, which are surrounded by solenoids. About 0.6 kW are deposited in the shielding between the AMD and the capture linac. At the same time, most of the remaining power, i.e., about half of the power originally carried by the electron drive beam, is lost in the linac, mainly in the first structure. The tungsten shielding between the AMD and the linac protects the front face of the linac, but cannot intercept the most energetic secondary particles near the beam axis, which are then lost on the cavity walls. The highest radiation-induced power deposition in a single RF cell is about 70 W, but decreases to about 15 W at the end of the first RF structure. The thermal load due to RF wall losses is estimated to reach similar (or even higher) values as the average radiation-induced power deposition per cell. With an adequate cooling design, the radiation load in the linac is expected to be manageable. The solenoids around the RF structure are assumed to be normal conducting. The integrated dose in the solenoids is estimated to be about 1 MGy/year for operation at the Z-pole, which is considered acceptable. However, the peak dose in the upstream tuning solenoid reaches 5 MGy/year, which must be considered when choosing insulation materials. A better shielding of the tuning solenoid might be needed.

7.4.3 Design and integration of the positron source target

The current baseline design is based on a fixed target made of polycrystalline tungsten (W) with a thickness of 15 mm. The selection of tungsten as a material for the target is due to its high atomic number and its remarkable thermo-mechanical properties at high temperatures. However, to properly dissipate the thermal power produced by the beam impact, a thermal management strategy must be included in the design. For this purpose, a pressurised water cooling circuit is added in the target, as shown in Fig. 7.10a. This consists of a pair of embedded tantalum pipes that transport water from an upstream source and circulate through a 180° elbow inside the tungsten core. This setup will allow the beam-impacted region to properly transfer the 1.26 kW deposited on the target and its

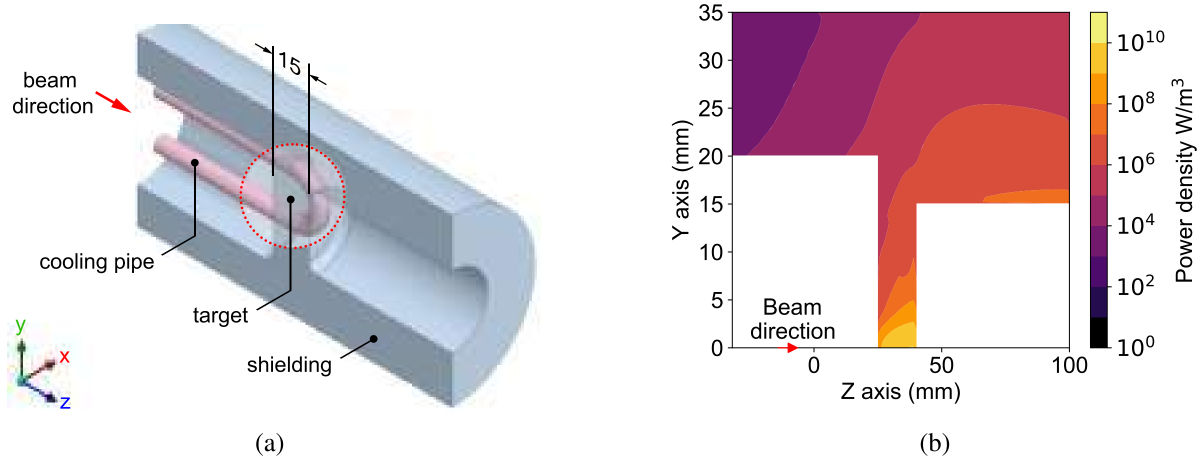


Fig. 7.10 FCC-ee e^+ source target. (a) Baseline design geometry: the detailed zone shows the embedded tantalum cooling pipes. Only one half of the geometry is shown because it is symmetrical with respect to the x-axis and (b) power density deposition map obtained from FLUKA

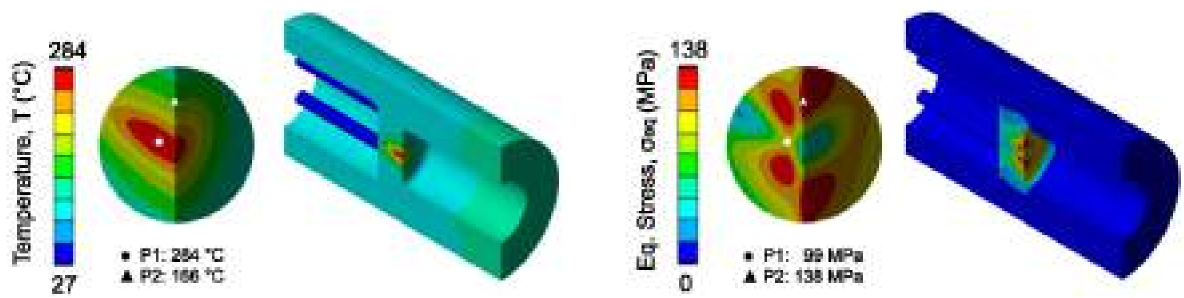


Fig. 7.11 Steady-state thermo-mechanical results: temperature (left) and equivalent stress (right) distributions for the baseline W target. Maximum temperature and stress points are marked with a circle and triangle, respectively

shielding and avoid the direct contact of water with bare tungsten. The power density distribution obtained from Monte Carlo simulations is shown in Fig. 7.10b, where the peak value is 10.4 kW/cm^3 and it takes place along the primary beam axis (z-axis), close to the exit face of the target.

Figure 7.11 shows the steady-state thermo-mechanical results. Note that the location of maximum temperature (P1) is not coincident with the position of maximum equivalent thermal stresses (P2). While P1 is along the beam axis beneath the exit surface, P2 is located at the exit surface at a height above P1. The maximum temperature at P1 is 284 °C. This means that the target is working below the ductile-to-brittle transition temperature (DBTT) for tungsten.[7] In terms of stresses at P1, the 99 MPa registered on the design are due to the constrained material surrounding the target. On the other hand, P2 reaches 166 °C with a maximum equivalent stress of 138 MPa located at the surface level and produced due to the strong thermal gradient. The resulting stress values are below the yield stress at the associated temperatures. The thermal fatigue analysis performed using the Universal Slope method [361] showed that the target is capable of withstanding the extreme service conditions and coping with the expected lifetime of the device, set to 155.4 days/year, which corresponds to 1.34×10^9 thermal cycles[8] with a duty factor of 0.84 [362]. Then, the number of thermal cycles is obtained by including the primary beam frequency of 100 Hz.

From the integration standpoint, the positron source target is a subsystem and its interaction with the required infrastructure is based on the mechanical layout of the P^3 experiment. The current configuration is being used to study the space requirements during the injector complex design. Figure 7.12 shows the tunnel cross section with dimensions of 4×4 m to host the expected services around the beam intercepting device. With the aim of allowing the installation and replacement of the target inside the HTS solenoid, a drift space of around 1.5 m is included. In

[7] For the results presented in this document, the DBTT was set to 400 °C, based on the behaviour of tungsten at high strain-rate loading conditions reported in [360].

[8] The target lifetime is estimated assuming an operation cycle of 185 days/year [13].

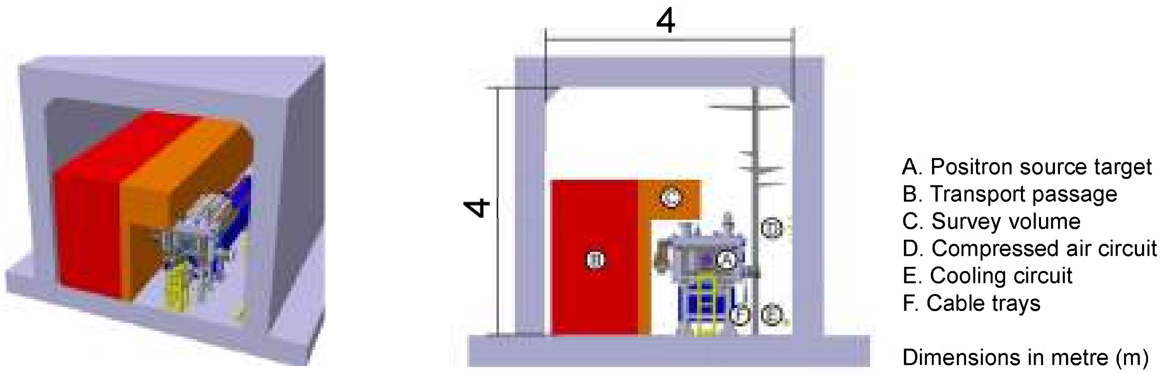


Fig. 7.12 Current layout of the FCC-ee injector complex cavern: tunnel overview (left) and expected utilities around the positron source target (right)

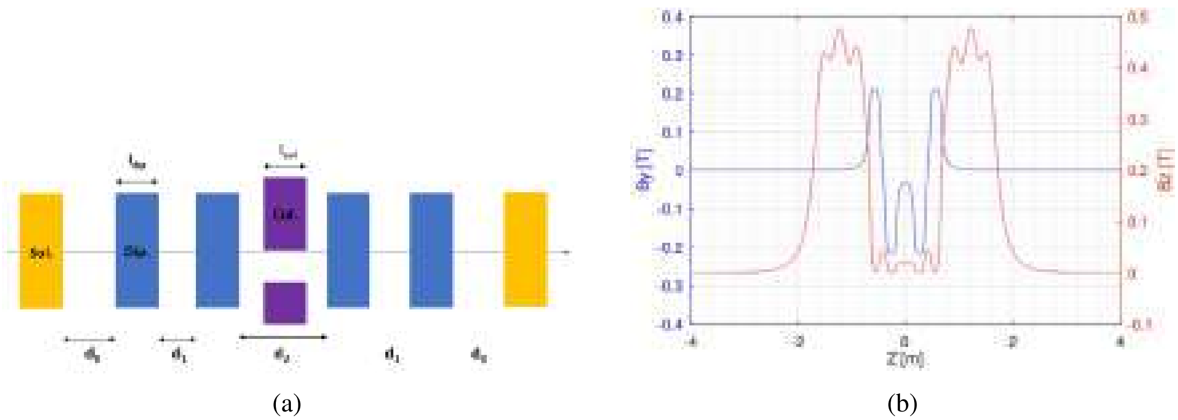


Fig. 7.13 Separator chicane design. (a) Schematic layout of the chicane and collimator used to stop the electron and photon beams. Sol. refers to Solenoid magnet; Dip. refers to Dipole magnet ($l_{\text{dip}} = 180$ mm) and Col. refers to Collimator ($l_{\text{col}} = 120$ mm) with $d_0 = d_1 = 125$ mm and $d_2 = 350$ mm. (b) On-axis magnetic field of the chicane, including three neighbouring solenoids on each side

addition, an overhead travelling crane with a capacity of 500 kg to handle the target and the surrounding shielding is under consideration. In parallel, a more detailed study of radiation protection where the use of mobile shielding is an option is being carried out. At the same time, an evaluation of the utilities required (e.g., cooling, cabling, handling equipment) needs to be developed. Further integration studies are ongoing to define the requirements in terms of civil engineering. The results of these studies will be incorporated into the model for the general integration of the injector complex.

7.4.4 Positron linac

The positron linac (p-Linac) begins with a chicane equipped with a collimator (beam stopper) at its centre to remove electrons and photons co-propagating with the positron beam. The p-Linac is divided into two sections, each with distinct layouts. In Sect. 1, the layout is the same as that of the capture linac, where the accelerating structures are surrounded by solenoids. In contrast, Sect. 2 employs a simple FODO lattice, with each FODO cell containing two accelerating structures and a phase advance of 76.35°, optimised for minimum positron beam size. The accelerating structures and solenoids used in both sections are identical to those in the capture linac. The separator chicane is situated between the capture linac and Sect. 1, featuring a symmetric layout of four dipole magnets with identical designs but different current settings. A schematic diagram of the chicane, along with the collimator/beam stopper, is presented in Fig. 7.13a.

The dipole yoke in the chicane has a length of 180 mm and a vertical aperture of 70 mm. The beam pipe within the dipoles assumes a rectangular aperture of $\Delta x = 150$ mm and $\Delta y = 50$ mm. The collimator is horizontally offset by -35 mm. To account for field crosstalk between the chicane and the upstream and downstream solenoids, a 3D magnetic field simulation was performed using Maxwell3D. This simulation includes three solenoids upstream and three downstream of the chicane. The resulting on-axis magnetic field is shown in Fig. 7.13b.

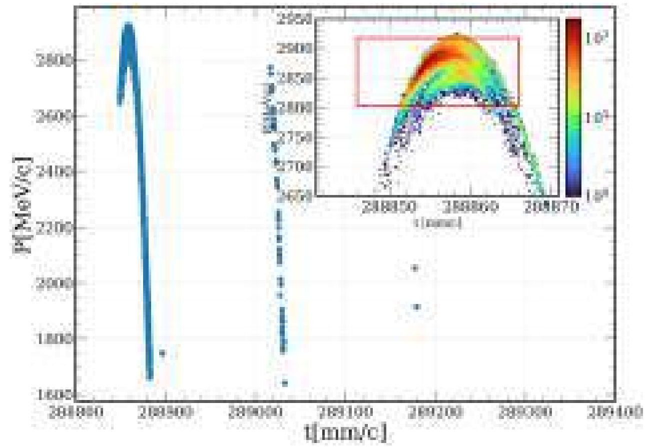


Fig. 7.14 Longitudinal phase space at the end of the positron linac. The inset provides a zoomed view of the main RF bucket. The red region represents the energy and time cut window used to estimate the fraction of positrons accepted by the damping ring

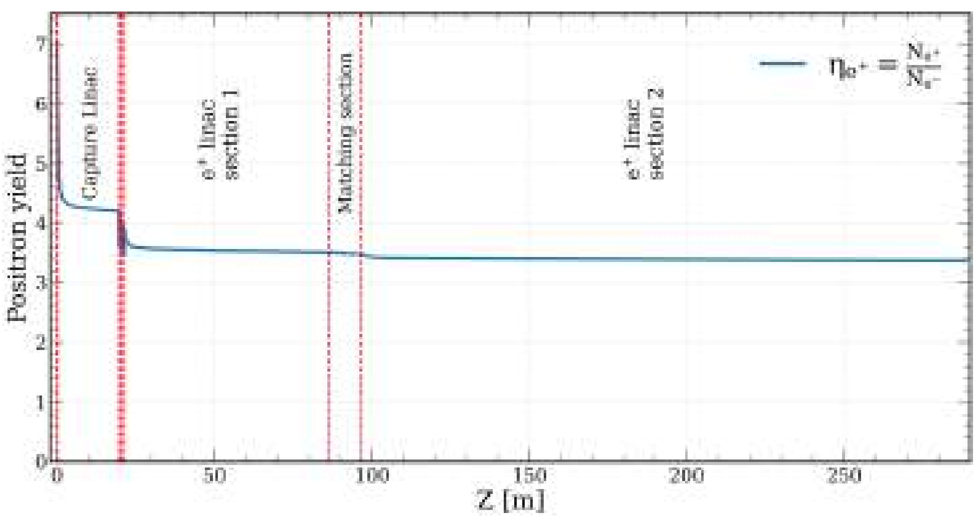


Fig. 7.15 Evolution of the positron yield along the longitudinal axis, from the target exit to the end of the positron linac. The dashed lines indicate the boundaries of the different sections of the positron pre-injector up to the end of the positron linac

Section 1 of the p-Linac contains 20 accelerating structures, with an average RF gradient of 13.3 MV/m. The RF phase is set to −10° off peak, optimised to maximise the final positron yield. At the end of this section, the average energy of the positron beam around the bunch core is approximately 932 MeV. Section 2 contains 52 accelerating structures, with an average RF gradient of 12.8 MV/m. Here, the RF phase is adjusted to 5° off crest for optimal positron yield.

Beam tracking throughout the p-Linac was simulated using RF-Track, including short-range wakefield and space charge effects. To estimate the effective positron yield accepted by the DR, particle selection was applied using energy and time cuts. For all results presented here, an energy window of ±2% around 2.86 GeV (i.e., 2.86 GeV ±57.2 MeV) and a time window of ± 10 mm/c were used. In the next phase of the FCC, positron tracking simulations in the positron linac followed by the injection in the DR should be carried out to have a more realistic estimate of the positron yield accepted.

7.4.5 Simulation results and final performance

Comprehensive start-to-end tracking simulations were conducted to evaluate the performance of the FCC-ee positron source. The final longitudinal phase space of positrons at the end of the p-Linac is shown in Fig. 7.14. Approximately 99% of the positrons reaching the end of the p-Linac are accelerated in the first main RF bucket. Furthermore, about 88% of these positrons fall within the assumed DR acceptance window, demonstrating the effectiveness of the positron source and linac design. The evolution of the positron yield along the longitudinal axis, from the target exit to the end of the p-Linac, is depicted in Fig. 7.15.

Table 7.6 summarises the key parameters and simulation results for the baseline design of the positron source and linac. Beam dynamics simulations confirm that the proposed design ensures reliable positron production, achieving a final accepted yield of 3 N_{e^+}/N_{e^-}. This meets the requirements set by the FCC-ee (Z-pole) with a safety margin of 2.56. To date, no critical issues have been identified that would prevent the use of a superconducting solenoid as

Table 7.6 Parameters and simulation results for the baseline design of the positron source and linac, delivering a positron bunch charge of 5 nC accepted into the damping ring, including safety margins. CS (capture system), CL (capture linac), p-Linac (positron linac), DR (damping ring)

Parameter	Value	Unit
e^- Drive Beam		
Beam energy	2.86	GeV
Repetition rate	100	Hz
Number of bunches per pulse	4	
Bunch charge	3.8	nC
Bunch length (rms)	1	mm
Beam size (rms)	1	mm
Beam power	4.3	kW
Target		
Thickness	15	mm
Production rate	7.07	N_{e+}/N_{e-}
Deposited power	1	kW
PEDD	5.8	J/g
Capture System		
AMD peak field (@Target)	15 (12)	T
Solenoid strength	0.5	T
AMD/CS aperture	60	mm
Average energy @CL	173	MeV
Positron yield @CS (before chicane)	4.2	N_{e+}/N_{e-}
Positron Linac		
Positron yield @p-Linac	3.4	N_{e+}/N_{e-}
Positron yield accepted @DR	3.0	N_{e+}/N_{e-}
Average energy	2.87	GeV
Bunch length (rms)	2.84	mm
Energy spread (rms)	0.87	%
Spot size x/y (rms)	5.28 / 2.78	mm
Normalized emittance x/y (rms)	13.1 / 13.0	mm·rad
Geometric emittance x/y (rms)	2.36 / 2.32	mm·rad

the AMD, along with the proposed capture system and positron linac, in the baseline design. For comparison, in a similar layout using an FC-based capture system (SuperKEKB model), the accepted positron yield is approximately 1.5 N_{e+}/N_{e-}. This lower yield would likely result in use of a thermionic gun to deliver the required electron drive beam bunch charge ($\geq$ 5 nC), significantly increasing the target power load.

Simulations incorporating imperfections in the positron source systems were also conducted. The imperfections considered, from the target to the end of the p-Linac, are summarised in Table 7.7, with RMS values reported. The impact of these imperfections is found to be negligible. The average positron yield accepted by the DR decreases by only 1.3%, while the average transverse emittances increase by 0.4% horizontally and 0.8% vertically. These results indicate the robustness of the proposed design.

7.4.6 PSI positron production (P^3) project

The PSI Positron Production (P^3) experiment is a demonstrator for the positron source and the goal is to design and install such a demonstrator in the SwissFEL facility, and experimentally validate a range of novel techniques that, according to simulations, have proven potential to increase the positron yield by one order of magnitude with respect to the state of the art [358]. The P^3 project is driven by the high luminosity requirements of the FCC-ee collider ring and its results will be one of the key outcomes of the feasibility study concerning the injector. The remarkable positron capture capabilities of P^3 are enabled to a great extent, by the usage of a high-temperature